Adobe Premiere Pro

2024 Release

Classroom in a Book®

The official training workbook from Adobe

Maxim Jago

Adobe Premiere Pro

2024 Release

Classroom in a Book®

The official training workbook from Adobe

Maxim Jago

Adobe Permiere Pro Classroom in a Book® 2024 Release

The official training workbook from Adobe

Maxim Jago

Adobe Premiere Pro Classroom in a Book® 2024 Release

© 2024 Adobe. All rights reserved.

Adobe Press is an imprint of Pearson Education, Inc. For the latest on Adobe Press books, go to *peachpit.com/adobepress*. To report errors, please send a note to errata@peachpit.com. For information regarding permissions, request forms, and the appropriate contacts within the Pearson Education Global Rights & Permissions department, please visit *pearson.com/permissions/*.

If this guide is distributed with software that includes an end user license agreement, this guide, as well as the software described in it, is furnished under license and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of such license. Except as permitted by any such license, no part of this guide may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Adobe. Please note that the content in this guide is protected under copyright law even if it is not distributed with software that includes an end user license agreement.

The content of this guide is furnished for informational use only, is subject to change without notice, and should not be construed as a commitment by Adobe. Adobe assumes no responsibility or liability for any errors or inaccuracies that may appear in the informational content contained in this guide.

Please remember that existing artwork or images that you may want to include in your project may be protected under copyright law. The unauthorized incorporation of such material into your new work could be a violation of the rights of the copyright owner. Please be sure to obtain any permission required from the copyright owner.

Any references to company names in sample files are for demonstration purposes only and are not intended to refer to any actual organization.

Adobe, the Adobe logo, Adobe Audition, Adobe Fonts, Adobe Media Encoder, Adobe Premiere Pro, Adobe Press, After Effects, CinemaDNG, Classroom in a Book, Creative Cloud, Illustrator, Lumetri, and Photoshop are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe in the United

States and/or other countries. Adobe product screenshots reprinted with permission from Adobe.

Apple, iOS, macOS, Macintosh, and Safari are trademarks of Apple, registered in the U.S. and other countries. Android, Google, and YouTube are registered trademarks of Google Inc. Microsoft and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Unless otherwise indicated herein, any third-party trademarks that may appear in this work are the property of their respective owners and any references to third-party trademarks, logos or other trade dress are for demonstrative or descriptive purposes only. Such references are not intended to imply any sponsorship, endorsement, authorization, or promotion of Pearson Education, Inc. products by the owners of such marks, or any relationship between the owner and Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliates, authors, licensees or distributors.

Adobe Inc., 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, California 95110-2704, USA

Notice to U.S. Government End Users. The Software and Documentation are “Commercial Items,” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. §2.101, consisting of “Commercial Computer Software” and “Commercial Computer Software Documentation,” as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §§227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation are being licensed to U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. Unpublished-rights reserved under the copyright laws of the United States. Adobe Inc., 345 Park Avenue, San Jose, CA 95110-2704, USA. For U.S. Government End Users, Adobe agrees to comply with all applicable equal opportunity laws including, if appropriate, the provisions of Executive Order 11246, as amended, Section 402 of the Vietnam Era Veterans Readjustment Assistance Act of 1974 (38 USC 4212), and Section 503 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, and the regulations at 41 CFR Parts 60-1 through 60-60, 60-250, and 60-741. The affirmative action clause and regulations contained in the preceding sentence shall be incorporated by reference.

Writer: Maxim Jago
Adobe Press Executive Editor: Laura Norman
Sponsoring Editor: Anshul Sharma
Development Editor: Victor Gavenda
Adobe Press Production Editor: Tracey Croom
Technical Reviewer: Jarle Leirpoll
Keystroke Reviewer: Megan Ahearn
Copyeditor: Linda Laflamme
Proofreader: Kim Wimpsett
Compositor: Kim Scott, Bumpy Design
Indexer: James Minkin
Cover Illustration: Fanny Texier, behance.net/fannytexier
Interior Designer: Mimi Heft

ISBN-13: 978-0-13-831856-7

ISBN-10: 0-13-831856-5

Where are the Lesson Files?

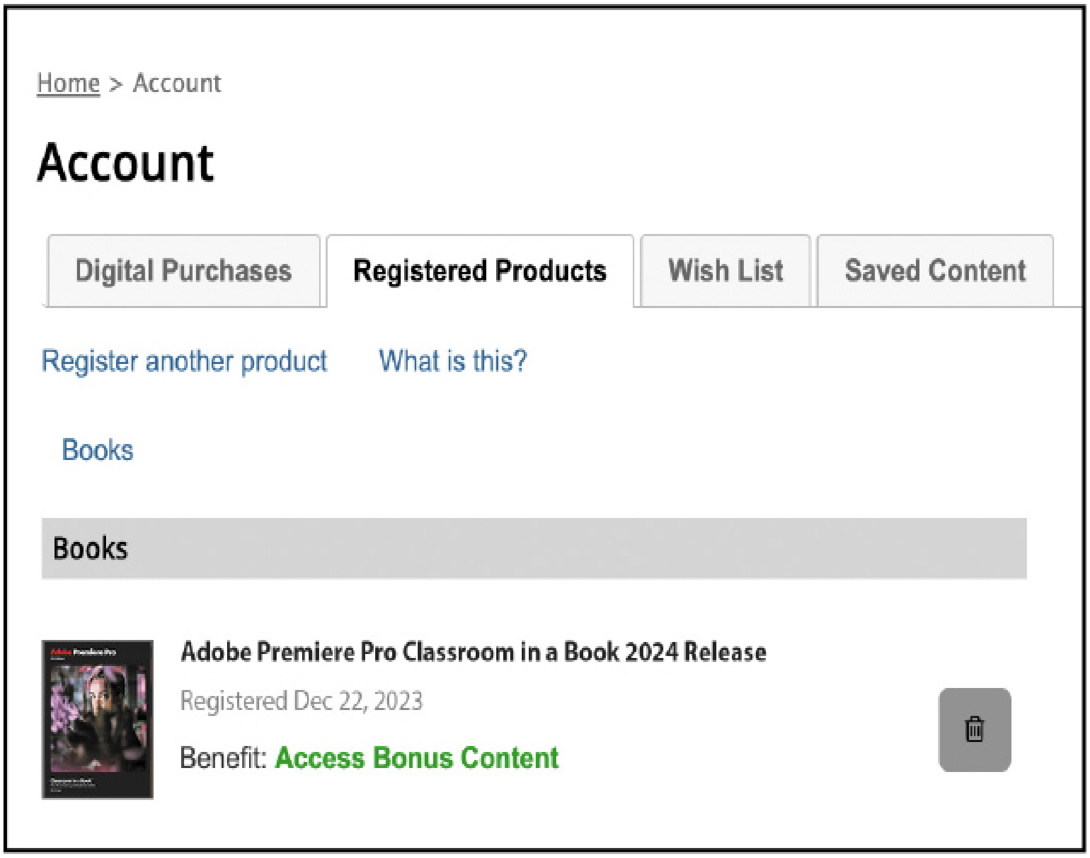
Purchase of this Classroom in a Book in any format gives you access to the lesson files you'll need to complete the exercises in the book.

1. Go to *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*.
2. Sign in or create a new account.
3. Click Submit.

   ● **Note**

   If you purchased a digital product directly from *peachpit.com*, your product will already be registered. Look for the Access Bonus Content link on the Registered Products tab in your account.

4. Answer the questions as proof of purchase.
5. The lesson files can be accessed through the Registered Products tab on your Account page.
6. Click the Access Bonus Content link below the title of your product to proceed to the download page. Click the lesson file links to download them to your computer.


Home > Account

Account

Digital Purchases
Registered Products
Wish List
Saved Content
Register another product
What is this?
Books

Books

Adobe Premiere Pro Classroom in a Book 2024 Release

Registered Dec 22, 2023

Benefit: Access Bonus Content

● Note

If you encounter problems registering your product or accessing the lesson files or web edition, go to *peachpit.com/support* for assistance.

Important!

The video clips and other media files provided with this book are practice files, provided for your personal, educational use in these lessons only. You are not authorized to use these files commercially or to publish, share, or distribute them in any form without written permission from Adobe Inc., and the individual copyright holders of the various items. Do not share videos created with these lesson files publicly. This includes, but is not limited to, distribution via social media or online video services including YouTube and Vimeo. You will find a complete copyright statement on the copyright page at the beginning of this book.

Thanks to Patrick Cannell for the music “Ambient Heavens,” copyright © 2015 by Patrick Cannell.

Thanks to Patrick Cannell for the music “Cooking Montage,” copyright © 2015 by Patrick Cannell.

Thanks to Luisa Winters at MidAtlanticDrones.com for Valley Of Fire footage, copyright © 2019 Maxim Jago.

Footage from *Andrea Sweeney NYC*, copyright © 2015 by Maxim Jago.

Footage from *Laura in the Snow*, copyright © 2015 by Maxim Jago.

Footage from *Theft Unexpected*, copyright © 2014 by Maxim Jago.

Footage from *She*, copyright © 2017 by Maxim Jago.

Acknowledgments

Producing effective learning materials for such an advanced technology is a team effort. Friends, colleagues, fellow filmmakers, and technology experts have all contributed to this book. There are too many names to mention, but let’s say this: I have often joked that in Britain we don’t say “awesome.” Instead, we say “perfectly acceptable.” On this occasion, “perfectly acceptable” simply isn’t enough. Rather, I will have to say our British equivalent of “super awesome.” Those people who make this world better by sharing, nurturing, caring, showing, telling, demonstrating, making, and helping are all definitely “much more than acceptable.”

Everything on these pages was inspected by a team of experienced editors who checked and corrected typos, spelling errors, naming errors, false attributions, suspect grammar, unhelpful phrasing, and inconsistent descriptions. This wonderful team didn’t just highlight text that needed correcting. They offered positive alternatives that I could simply agree to and so, in a literal sense, this book is the product of many people’s contributions. I’d like to thank the teams at Peachpit and Adobe Press, who made it possible to produce such a beautifully finessed work.

As each draft lesson was completed, the most amazing and highly experienced Victor Gavenda checked over the text to make sure it was ideally accessible for learners, and all references to the technology were reviewed by the remarkable media technology expert Jarle Leirpoll, who has an incredible depth of knowledge of Premiere Pro. I tip my hat to Linda Laflamme for reviewing the copy and spotting things we would otherwise have completely missed. Tracey Croom kept us all on-track, Kim Scott and Kim Wimpsett take the credit for the beautiful layout you see before you, and Megan Ahearn has the enviable title of Keystroker—checking each and every step in the exercises presented here to make sure everything happens just as expected.

Some of the content of this book is derived from material originally written by the world-renowned media trainer Richard Harrington. The original table of contents was worked out by the two of us, and a substantial amount of the content remains unchanged or is significantly informed by his original work.

Finally, let’s not forget Adobe. The passion and enthusiasm demonstrated by those wonderful individuals, who are so committed to creatives like you and me, qualifies as “the most acceptable of all.” They are, indeed, extraordinarily awesome!

—Maxim Jago

Contents

GETTING STARTED

About Classroom in a Book
Prerequisites
Installing Premiere Pro
Optimizing performance
Online content
Using the lesson files
Relinking the lesson files
How to use these lessons
Additional resources

1 TOURING ADOBE PREMIERE PRO

Starting the lesson
Performing nonlinear editing in Premiere Pro
Expanding the workflow
Touring the Premiere Pro interface
Hands-On: Editing your first video
Exploring workspaces
Introducing preferences
Using and setting keyboard shortcuts
Review questions

Review answers

2 SETTING UP A PROJECT
Starting the lesson
Creating a project
Setting up a sequence
Exploring the Project Settings dialog box
Review questions
Review answers

3 IMPORTING MEDIA
Starting the lesson
Importing media files
Working with ingest options and proxy media
Working with Import mode and the Media Browser
Importing still image files
Recording a voice-over
Customizing the media cache
Review questions
Review answers

4 ORGANIZING MEDIA
Starting the lesson
Using the Project panel
Working with bins
Reviewing footage
Modifying clips
Review questions
Review answers

5 EDITING VIDEO—THE ESSENTIALS
- Starting the lesson
- Using the Source Monitor
- Editing in the Timeline panel
- Using essential editing commands
- Performing storyboard-style editing
- Review questions
- Review answers

6 WORKING WITH CLIPS AND MARKERS
- Starting the lesson
- Using the Program Monitor controls
- Setting the playback resolution
- Playing back VR video
- Using markers
- Using Sync Locks and Track Locks
- Working with gaps in the sequence
- Selecting clips
- Moving clips
- Extracting and deleting segments
- Review questions
- Review answers

7 ADDING TRANSITIONS
- Starting the lesson
- What are transition effects?
- Understanding the importance of clip handles
- Adding video transition effects

Using A/B mode to fine-tune a transition
Adding audio transition effects
Review questions
Review answers

8 EDITING VIDEO—ADVANCED TECHNIQUES
Starting the lesson
Performing a four-point edit
Changing clip playback speed
Replacing clips and media
Using Text-Based Editing
Performing regular trimming
Performing advanced trimming
Trimming in the Program Monitor
Review questions
Review answers

9 PUTTING CLIPS IN MOTION
Starting the lesson
Adjusting the Motion effect
Changing clip position, size, and rotation
Working with keyframe interpolation
Applying the Auto Reframe effect
Combining a drop shadow with motion effects
Review questions
Review answers

10 EDITING AND MIXING AUDIO
Starting the lesson

Setting up the interface to work with audio
Examining audio characteristics
Adding Adobe Stock Audio
Adjusting audio volume
Auto-ducking the music level
Retiming music with Remix
Creating a split edit
Adjusting audio levels for a clip
Review questions
Review answers

11 IMPROVING AUDIO
Starting the lesson
Improving audio with the Essential Sound panel
Adjusting dialogue audio
Review questions
Review answers

12 ADDING VIDEO EFFECTS
Starting the lesson
Working with video effects
Applying source clip effects
Masking and tracking video effects
Keyframing effects
Using effect presets
Exploring frequently used effects
Using the Render And Replace command
Review questions

Review answers

13 APPLYING COLOR CORRECTION AND GRADING

Starting the lesson
Understanding display color management
Following the color adjustment workflow
Using Comparison view
Matching colors
Exploring the color-adjustment effects
Fixing exposure problems
Correcting color offset
Using special color effects
Creating a distinctive look
Review questions
Review answers

14 EXPLORING COMPOSITING TECHNIQUES

Starting the lesson
What is an alpha channel?
Making compositing part of your project
Working with the Opacity effect
Adjusting alpha channel transparencies
Color keying a greenscreen shot
Partially masking clips
Review questions
Review answers

15 CREATING NEW GRAPHICS

Starting the lesson

Exploring the Essential Graphics panel
Learning video typography essentials
Creating new titles
Styling text
Working with shapes and logos
Making a title roll
Working with Motion Graphics templates
Adding captions
Review questions
Review answers

16 EXPORTING FRAMES, CLIPS, AND SEQUENCES
Starting the lesson
Making quick exports
Understanding the full media export options
Exporting single frames
Exporting a full quality media file
Working with Adobe Media Encoder
Uploading to social media
Exchanging projects with other editing applications
Final practice
Review questions
Review answers

INDEX

GLOSSARY

17 MANAGING YOUR PROJECTS

Getting Started

Adobe Premiere Pro, the essential video-editing application for professionals and video enthusiasts, is an incredibly scalable, efficient, and flexible video-editing system. It supports a broad range of video, audio, and image formats. Premiere Pro lets you work faster and more creatively without converting your media. The complete set of powerful and exclusive tools lets you overcome any editorial, production, and workflow challenges to deliver the high-quality work you demand.

Adobe has developed a user experience that is intuitive, flexible, and efficient, with unified design elements that match across multiple applications, making it easier to explore and discover new workflows.

About Classroom in a Book

Adobe Premiere Pro Classroom in a Book 2024 Release is part of the official training series for Adobe. The lessons are designed so that you can learn at your own pace. If you're new to Premiere Pro, you'll learn the fundamental concepts and features you'll use to create projects. This book also teaches many advanced features, including tips and techniques for using the latest version of this software.

The lessons in this edition include opportunities for hands-on practice using features such as chroma keying, dynamic trimming, color correction, media management, audio and video effects, audio mixing, and captioning. You'll also learn how to create files for the web and social media with Adobe Media Encoder. Premiere Pro is available for both macOS and Windows and uses the same project files on both platforms.

Prerequisites

Before following the exercises in the *Adobe Premiere Pro Classroom in a Book 2024 Release*, make sure your system is set up correctly and that you’ve installed the required software and hardware. You can view updated system requirements here:

helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/system-requirements.xhtml

You should have a working knowledge of your computer and operating system. For example, you should know how to use the mouse or trackpad and standard menus and commands and also how to open, save, and close files. You should also feel comfortable navigating folders and copying files between folders. If you need to review these techniques, see the support pages for your macOS or Windows system.

It’s not necessary to have a working knowledge of video concepts and terminology. If you come across a term you’re not familiar with, consult the glossary at the end of the book.

Installing Premiere Pro

You must purchase an Adobe Creative Cloud subscription, or obtain a trial version, separately from this book. For system requirements and complete instructions on installing the software, visit *helpx.adobe.com/support*. You can purchase Adobe Creative Cloud by visiting *adobe.com/creativecloud*. Follow the on-screen instructions. In addition to Premiere Pro, you may want to install Photoshop, After Effects, and Audition. Adobe Media Encoder is installed automatically when you install Premiere Pro. These are all included with the full Adobe Creative Cloud license.

Selecting audio hardware

Premiere Pro has preferences to choose the audio hardware to use for playback and recording. This is useful because you may want the audio for your editing projects to come through professional studio monitors while other system sounds come through smaller or built-in computer monitors.

When you open Premiere Pro for the first time, you may need to select the audio hardware to use before playback will work. Access the Audio Hardware preferences in Premiere Pro > Settings > Audio Hardware (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Audio Hardware (Windows).

There are advanced options for configuring audio hardware, but you'll generally just need to choose the System Default Input and System Default Output. With the System Default options selected, Premiere Pro can automatically switch to your system audio selection if you change it—for example, if you plug headphones in.

Optimizing performance

Editing video places high demands on your computer processor and memory. A more powerful computer will make your editing experience faster and more efficient, which translates to a more fluid and enjoyable creative experience—that is, more creative flow.

Premiere Pro takes advantage of multicore processors (CPUs) and multiprocessor systems. The faster the processors and the more CPU cores there are, the better the performance you'll experience.

The minimum system memory is 8 GB, and 16 GB or more is recommended for High-Definition (HD) media; 32 GB or higher is recommended for Ultra-High-Definition (UHD, or 4K) media.

The speed of the storage drives you use for video playback is also a factor. A dedicated fast storage drive is recommended for your media. A RAID disk array or fast solid-state drive for your media files is strongly recommended, particularly if you’re working with high-resolution or high data-rate RAW media content. Storing your media files and program files on the same hard drive can affect performance. Keep your media files on a separate disk, if possible, for speed and easier media management.

Premiere Pro can harness the power of your computer’s graphics hardware, or *graphics processing unit* (GPU), to improve playback performance. GPU acceleration provides a significant performance improvement, and most video cards with at least 2 GB of dedicated video memory (VRAM) will work, but 4 GB VRAM or more is recommended. You will find information about hardware and software requirements on the Adobe website at *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/system-requirements.xhtml*.

Online content

Your purchase of this Classroom in a Book includes online materials provided by way of your Account page on *peachpit.com*.

Lesson files

To work through the projects in this book, you will need to download the lesson files by following the instructions.

Web Edition

The Web Edition is an online interactive version of the book providing an enhanced learning experience. Your Web Edition can be accessed from any device with a connection to the internet, and it contains the following:

- The complete text of the book
- Hours of instructional video keyed to the text
- Interactive quizzes

Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition

Note

If you encounter problems registering your product or accessing the lesson files or web edition, go to *peachpit.com/support* for assistance.

You must register your purchase on *peachpit.com* to access the online content.

1. Go to *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*.
2. Sign in, or create a new account.
3. On the "Register a Product" page, the ISBN for this title should be prepopulated into the ISBN box. Click Submit.
4. Answer the question as proof of purchase.
5. The lesson files can be accessed from the Registered Products tab on your Account page. Click the Access Bonus Content link below the title of your product to proceed to the download page. Click the lesson file link(s) to download them to your computer.

   The Web Edition can be accessed from the Digital Purchases tab on your Account page. Click the Launch link to access the product.

   Note

   If you purchased a digital product directly from *peachpit.com*, your product will already be registered. Look for the Access Bonus Content link on the Registered Products tab in your account.

Bonus material

This book has so much great material that we couldn't fit it all in the printed pages, so we placed these items on *peachpit.com*:

- Lesson 17, "Managing Your Projects"
- A glossary of common technical terms used in video production and editing

You will find this lesson on your account page (Lessons & Update Files tab) once you register your book, as described in "Accessing the lesson files and

Web Edition.”

Using the lesson files

▶ Tip

> If you don’t have a dedicated storage location for your video files, placing the lesson files on your computer’s desktop will make them easy to find and work with.

The lessons in this book use the downloadable lesson files, including video clips, audio files, photos, and image files created in Photoshop and Illustrator. Some lessons use files from other lessons, so you’ll need to keep the entire collection of lesson assets on your storage drive as you work through the book. You will need about 7 GB of storage space for the lesson files.

Relinking the lesson files

The Premiere Pro projects included with the lesson files have links to specific media files. Because you are copying the files to a new location, you may need to update those links when you open projects for the first time.

If you open a project and Premiere Pro is unable to find a linked media file, the Link Media dialog box may open, inviting you to relink offline files. If this happens, select an offline clip on the list and click the Locate button. A file browser panel will appear.

Locate your copy of the Lessons folder using the navigator on the left, and click Search. Premiere Pro will locate the media file inside the Lessons folder. To hide all other files, making it easy to select the correct one, select the option to display only exact name matches.

Premiere Pro displays the last known file path and filename and the currently selected file path and file name at the top of the panel for reference. Select the file, and click OK.

The option to relink other files is enabled by default, so once you’ve located one file, the rest should reconnect automatically. For more information about relocating offline media files, see Lesson 17 (if you have the print version of this book, see “Bonus material” later in this section).

How to use these lessons

The lessons in this book include step-by-step instructions. Each lesson stands alone, but many build on previous lessons. For this reason, the best way to learn from this book is to proceed through the lessons one after another.

The lessons teach you new skills in the order you might normally use them. The lessons begin with acquiring media files such as video, audio, and graphics; and they go on to creating a rough-cut sequence, adding effects, sweetening the audio, and ultimately exporting the project.

Many pages contain additional “sidebar” information boxes that explain a particular technology or offer alternative workflows. It’s not necessary to read these additional boxes, or follow the workflows, to learn Premiere Pro, but you may find them interesting and helpful as they will deepen your understanding and often provide additional context.

By the end of these lessons, you’ll have a good understanding of the complete end-to-end video post-production workflow, with the specific skills you need to edit on your own.

As you explore the skills described in this book, you may find it helpful to review earlier lessons you have already completed and to practice the fundamental editing techniques regularly. The later advanced workflows build on fundamental principles introduced early on, and if you take a few moments to recap earlier lessons, it makes it easier to discover the common principles that apply. The more you practice, the faster you will build your confidence as an editor.

The focus of this book is on the technical skills editors use every day to produce film, television, and social media videos. Taking time to try different ways of achieving results can help to expand your artistic skills. As you learn new technical skills, watch videos created by experienced editors with a critical eye and see if you can recognize the technical workflow they employed. More often than not, the most impactful techniques are the simplest, once you know the workflow.

Practice makes perfect!

Additional resources

Adobe Premiere Pro Classroom in a Book 2024 Release is not meant to replace documentation that comes with the program or to be a comprehensive reference for every feature. Only the commands and options used in the lessons are explained in this book. For comprehensive information about program features and tutorials, refer to the following resources, which you can reach by choosing commands from the Premiere Pro Help menu.

Adobe Premiere Pro Learn and Support: *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro.xhtml* is where you can find and browse Help and Support content on Adobe.com. You can also reach that page by choosing Help > Premiere Pro Help or by pressing F1. On the Learn & Support page, click User Guide for documentation on individual features or visit *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/user-guide.xhtml*.

Premiere Pro tutorials: For a wide range of interactive tutorials on Adobe Premiere Pro features that you can follow in the app, choose Help > Premiere Pro In-App Tutorials. For online tutorials, choose Help > Premiere Pro Online Tutorials or visit *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/tutorials.xhtml*. You can also access tutorials from the Home screen by clicking Learn. A different set of tutorials is provided inside Premiere Pro in the Learn panel.

Premiere Pro blog: *blog.adobe.com* brings you tutorials, product news, and inspirational articles about using Premiere Pro.

Creative Cloud tutorials: For inspiration, key techniques, cross-application workflows, and updates on new features, go to the Creative Cloud tutorials page, *helpx.adobe.com/creative-cloud/tutorials.xhtml*, and click the link for Premiere Pro.

Adobe Community: Tap into peer-to-peer discussions, questions, and answers on Adobe products at the Adobe Support Community page at *community.adobe.com*. Click the Premiere Pro link to visit the Premiere Pro community.

Adobe Creative Cloud Discover: This online resource offers thoughtful articles on design and design issues, a gallery showcasing the work of top-notch designers and artists, tutorials, and more. Check it out at *creativecloud.adobe.com/discover*.

Resources for educators: *adobe.com/education* and *edex.adobe.com* offer a treasure trove of information for instructors who teach classes on Adobe software. Find solutions for education at all levels, including free curricula that use an integrated approach to teaching Adobe software. These curricula can be used to prepare for the Adobe Certified Professional exams. To learn more about the exams, visit *edex.adobe.com/adobe-certified-professional/exams*.

Adobe Premiere Pro product home page: *adobe.com/products/premiere* has more information about the features and functionality of the application.

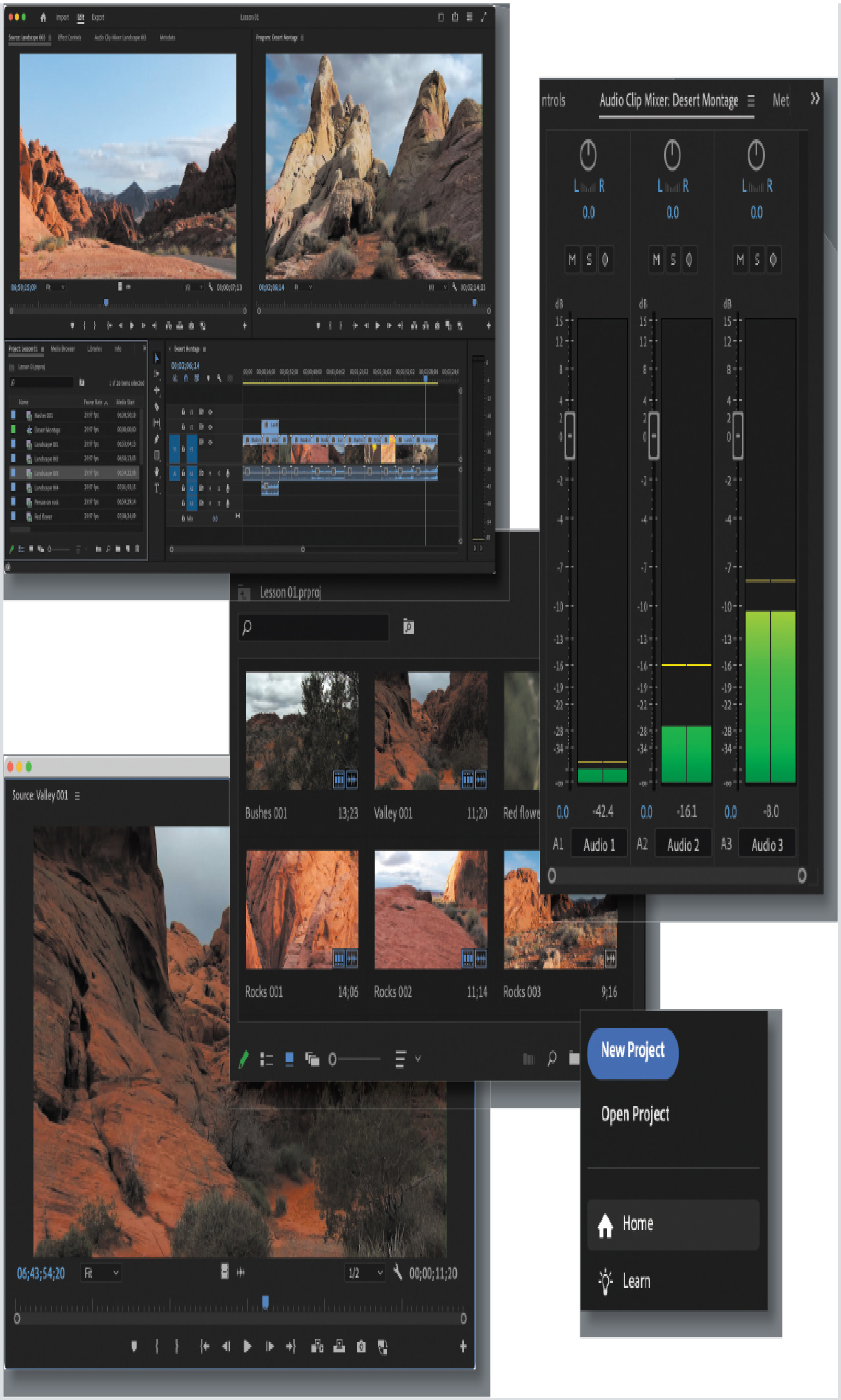
1 Touring Adobe Premiere Pro

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Perform nonlinear editing.
- Understand the standard digital video workflow.
- Enhance the workflow with high-level features.
- Explore workspaces.
- Customize workspaces.
- Set keyboard shortcuts.

This lesson will take about 75 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


Audio Clip Mixer: Desert Montage
Met
Audio 1
Audio 2
Audio 3
A1
A2
A3
0.0
-42.4
-16.1
-8.0
Lesson 01.prproj
Bushes 001
13;23
Valley 001
11;20
Red flowe
Rocks 001
14;06
Rocks 002
11;14
Rocks 003
9;16
Source: Valley 001
06;43;54;20
Fit
1/2
00;00;11;20
New Project
Open Project
Home
Learn

Adobe Premiere Pro is a video-editing system that supports the latest technology and cameras with powerful tools that are intuitive to use and that integrate perfectly with almost every video acquisition source and delivery standard.

Starting the lesson

There is always great demand for high-quality video content. Today's video producers and editors work in a fast-changing landscape of old and new technologies. Despite rapid change in camera systems and the video creation and distribution landscape—particularly with the expansion of social media platforms, generative artificial intelligence (AI) technologies, and increased marketing production values—the goal of great video editing remains unchanged: You want to take your source footage and shape it, guided by your original vision, so that you can effectively communicate with your audience.

In Adobe Premiere Pro, you'll find a powerful and intuitive video-editing system that supports the latest technology and cameras with flexible tools that are easy to use. These tools integrate perfectly with almost every type of media and support a wide range of third-party plug-ins and other post-production tools.

In this lesson, you'll begin by reviewing the essential post-production workflow that most editors follow, and then you'll learn about the main components of the Premiere Pro interface and how to create custom workspaces.

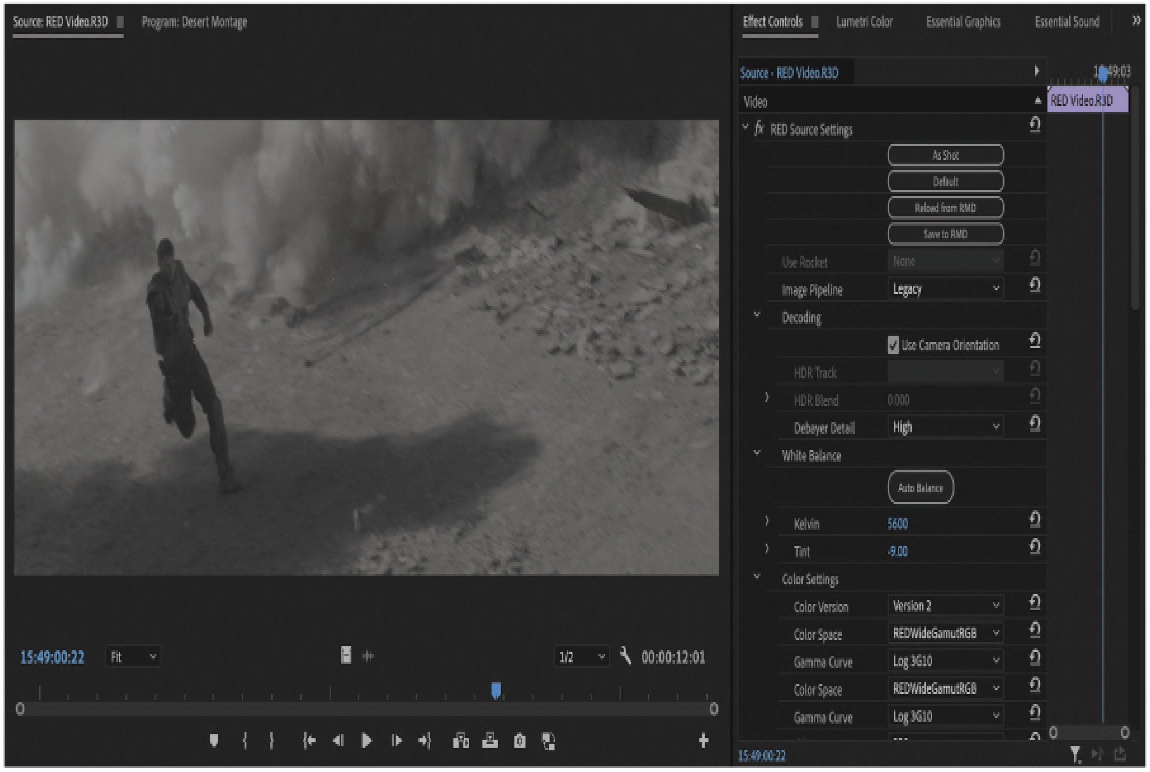
Performing nonlinear editing in Premiere Pro

Premiere Pro is a *nonlinear editor* (NLE). Like a word processing application, Premiere Pro lets you place, replace, and move video, audio, and images anywhere you want in your final edited work. You don't need to make adjustments in a particular order; you can change any part of your project at any time—that's the nonlinear part of an NLE.

You'll combine multiple pieces of media, called *clips*, to create a *sequence*. You can edit any part of the sequence in any order and then change the contents or move clips so that they play earlier or later. You can blend layers of video together, change the image size, adjust the colors, add special effects, adjust the audio mix, and more.

You can combine multiple sequences and jump to any moment in a video clip or sequence without needing to fast-forward or rewind. In Premiere Pro, organizing the clips you’re working with is like organizing files on your computer.

Premiere Pro supports many media file formats, including XDCAM, XAVC, DPX, DVCProHD, QuickTime (including Apple ProRes), AVCHD (including AVCCAM and NXCAM), AVC-Intra, DNxHR, and Canon XF. RAW video formats are supported, including media from RED, ARRI, Sony, Canon, and Blackmagic cameras, as well as Apple ProRes RAW and multiple 360° video, DSLR video, and phone camera formats.


Source: RED Video.R3D
Program: Desert Montage
15:49:00:22
Fit
1/2
00:00:12:01
Effect Controls
Lumetri Color
Essential Graphics
Essential Sound
Source · RED Video.R3D
15:49:03
RED Video.R3D
Video
RED Source Settings
As Shot
Default
Reload from RMD
Save to RMD
Decoding
White Balance
Auto Balance
Color Settings
15:49:00:22

Use Rocket	None
Image Pipeline	Legacy
☑ Use Camera Orientation	
HDR Track	
HDR Blend	0.000
Debayer Detail	High
Kelvin	5600
Tint	-9.00
Color Version	Version 2
Color Space	REDWideGamutRGB
Gamma Curve	Log 3G10
Color Space	REDWideGamutRGB
Gamma Curve	Log 3G10

Premiere Pro features native support for RAW media from RED cameras, with settings to control the way the media is interpreted.

Using the standard digital video workflow

As you gain editing experience, you'll develop your own preferences for the order in which to work on the different aspects of your project. Each stage of post-production requires a particular kind of attention and different tools. Also, some projects call for more time spent on one stage than another.

Whether you skip through some stages with a quick mental check or spend hours (even days!) dedicated to perfecting an aspect of your project, you'll almost certainly go through the following steps:

1. **Acquire your media:** This can mean recording original footage, creating new animated content, selecting stock media, using generative AI to create new media, or gathering a variety of assets for a project.
2. **Ingest the video to your editing storage:** Premiere Pro can read media files (like video files from a camera) directly, usually with no need for conversion. Be sure to back up your files to a second location because storage drives sometimes physically fail unexpectedly. For video editing, use fast storage for smooth playback of your media files.
3. **Organize your clips:** Your project may have a lot of video content to choose from. Invest the time to organize clips into special folders in your project called *bins*—a term taken from the days of editing celluloid film. Organized strips of film would be stored in large cloth-lined bins to allow quick access for the editor. You can add color labels and other information as metadata (metadata is additional information about the clips or media files) to help keep things organized.
4. **Create a sequence:** In the Timeline panel, selectively combine the parts of the video and audio clips that you want into a sequence. A *sequence* is your complete edited video.
5. **Add transitions:** Place special transition effects between sequence clips, add video effects, and create composite visuals by placing clips on multiple layers (called *tracks* in the Timeline panel).
6. **Create or import titles, graphics, and captions:** Add them to your sequence to help tell the story.
7. **Adjust the audio mix:** Adjust the volume of your audio clips to get the mix just right, and use transitions and effects on your audio clips to

improve the sound.

8. **Output:** Export your finished project to a file.

Premiere Pro supports each of these steps with industry-leading tools. A large community of creative and technical professionals is waiting to share their experience and support your development as an editor.

Enhancing the workflow with Premiere Pro

Premiere Pro has easy-to-use tools for video-editing beginners. It also has advanced tools for manipulating, adjusting, and fine-tuning your projects.

You may not make use of all the following features in your first few video projects. However, as your experience and understanding of nonlinear editing grows, you'll want to expand your capabilities.

It's beyond the scope of one book to cover all of the expansive creative tools and capabilities of Premiere Pro. Still, this book will enable you to fully post-produce professional projects and get you ready to take your skills to the next level.

The following topics will be covered:

- **Advanced audio editing:** Learn to use the advanced audio effects and editing tools in Premiere Pro. As well as producing a soundtrack mix, you can clean up noisy audio, reduce reverb, make sample-level edits, apply multiple audio effects to audio clips or whole tracks, and use state-of-the-art Virtual Studio Technology (VST) plug-ins.
- **Color correction and grading:** Correct and enhance the look of your footage with advanced color-correction filters, accessed via a dedicated color correction and grading panel. You can make secondary color-correction selections that allow you to adjust isolated colors, adjust selected areas of an image to improve the composition, and automatically match the colors in two images.
- **Keyframe controls:** Premiere Pro gives you precise control over the timing of visual and motion effects without using a separate compositing or motion graphics application. Keyframes use a standard

interface design; if you learn to use them in Premiere Pro, you'll know how to use them in all Adobe Creative Cloud products in which they're available.

- **Broad hardware support:** Choose from a wide range of compatible input and output hardware. Premiere Pro system specifications range from low-cost desktop computers and laptops for video editing up to high-performance workstations that can easily edit high-definition (HD), 4K, 8K, 3D stereoscopic, and 360° video.
- **GPU acceleration:** The Mercury Playback Engine operates in two modes: one that uses only software running in the central processing unit (CPU) for playback and one that uses graphics processing unit (GPU) acceleration for enhanced playback performance. GPU acceleration mode requires graphics hardware that meets minimum specifications in your workstation. See *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/system-requirements.xhtml* for a list of recommended graphics cards. Most modern cards with a minimum of 2 GB of dedicated video memory will work.
- **Multicamera editing:** You can quickly and easily edit productions shot with multiple cameras. Multiple camera sources are displayed in a split view, and you can choose a camera view by clicking the appropriate screen or using a shortcut key. You can automatically sync multiple camera angles based on clip audio or timecode.
- **Project management:** View, delete, move, search for, and reorganize clips and bins. Consolidate your projects by copying just the media used in sequences to a single location, and then reclaim storage space by deleting unused media files.
- **Metadata:** Premiere Pro supports Adobe XMP, which stores additional information about media as metadata that multiple applications can access. You can use this metadata to locate clips or communicate important information, such as preferred takes or copyright notices.
- **Creating titles:** Create titles and graphics with the Essential Graphics panel. You can also use graphics created in almost any suitable software. For instance, you can import Adobe Photoshop files as flattened images or as separate layers that you can combine or animate

selectively. You also can use Adobe After Effects motion graphics templates.

- **Advanced trimming:** Make precise adjustments to the start and end timing of clips in sequences using dedicated trimming tools. Premiere Pro provides quick, simple trimming keyboard shortcuts, as well as advanced on-screen trimming tools to make complex timing adjustments to multiple clips.
- **Reframing visual elements:** Perhaps you are delivering widescreen, vertical, and square video versions of your content. You can adjust and perfect the composition for every type of output manually or automatically.
- **Media encoding:** Export your sequence to create a media file that is perfect for your needs using simplified Quick Export presets or details settings. Use the advanced features of Adobe Media Encoder to create copies of your finished sequence in multiple formats, based on presets or your own detailed specifications. You can apply color adjustments, timing changes, and information overlays during export, as well as upload media to social media platforms in a single step.
- **360° video for VR headsets:** Edit and post-produce 360° video footage using a special VR Video display mode that lets you see specific regions of the picture, or view both your video and your edited clips via a VR headset, allowing a more natural and intuitive editing experience. Dedicated visual effects that meet the unique demands of 360° video are available.

Expanding the workflow

Although you can work with Premiere Pro as a stand-alone application, it is also a team player. Premiere Pro is part of Adobe Creative Cloud, which means you have access to several other specialized tools.

Understanding the way these software components work together will improve your efficiency and give you more creative freedom.

Including other applications in the editing workflow

Premiere Pro is a versatile video and audio post-production tool, but it’s just one component of Adobe Creative Cloud—a complete print, web, and video environment that includes video-focused software for the following:

- High-end 3D motion effects creation
- Complex text animation generation
- Layered graphics production
- Vector artwork creation
- Audio production

To incorporate one or more of these features into a production, you can use other components of Adobe Creative Cloud. The software set has everything you need to produce advanced, professionally finished videos.

Here’s a brief description of the other components:

- **Adobe Express:** All-in-one design, photo, and video tool to make content creation easy.
- **Adobe Premiere Rush:** Intuitive mobile and desktop video editing tool that can produce projects compatible with Premiere Pro (for advanced finishing).
- **After Effects:** The popular tool of choice for motion graphics, animation, and visual effects artists.
- **Adobe Character Animator:** A tool for creating advanced animation with natural movement for 2D puppets using your webcam for face and body movement tracking.
- **Adobe Photoshop:** The industry-standard image-editing and graphics-creation product. You can work with photos and video to prepare them for your project.
- **Adobe Audition:** The powerful and intuitive system for audio editing, audio cleanup and sweetening, music creation and adjustment, and

multitrack mix creation.

- **Adobe Illustrator:** Professional vector graphics-creation software for print, video, and the web.
- **Adobe Media Encoder:** A tool that allows you to process files to produce content for any screen directly from Premiere Pro, After Effects, and Audition.
- **Adobe Dynamic Link:** A cross-product technology that enables you to work in real time with media, compositions, and sequences shared between After Effects, Audition, and Premiere Pro.

Exploring the Adobe Creative Cloud video workflow

Your Premiere Pro and Creative Cloud workflow will vary depending on the needs of each project. Here are a few scenarios:

- Use Photoshop to touch up and apply effects to still images and layered image compositions from a digital camera, a scanner, or a video clip. Then use them as source media in Premiere Pro. Changes made in Photoshop update in Premiere Pro.
- Send clips directly from the Premiere Pro timeline to Adobe Audition for professional audio cleanup and sweetening. Changes made in Audition update in Premiere Pro.
- Send an entire Premiere Pro sequence to Adobe Audition to complete a professional audio mix, including compatible effects and level adjustments; the session can contain video so you can compose and adjust levels in Audition based on the action.
- Using Dynamic Link, include video compositions from After Effects in Premiere Pro projects. Apply special effects, add animation, and add visual elements in After Effects. Adjustments made in After Effects appear in Premiere Pro immediately.
- Use After Effects to create motion graphics templates that are directly editable in Premiere Pro. Dedicated controls allow specific types of

changes to be made while retaining the original look and feel of the template.

- Use Adobe Media Encoder to export video projects in multiple resolutions and codecs for display on websites, display via social media, or archiving. You can use the built-in presets, effects, and social media support to upload directly from Premiere Pro to social media platforms.

Naturally, most of this book focuses on workflows involving only Premiere Pro. However, sidebars will explain ways to include Adobe Creative Cloud components in your workflows for additional effects work and finishing.

Touring the Premiere Pro interface

● Note

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

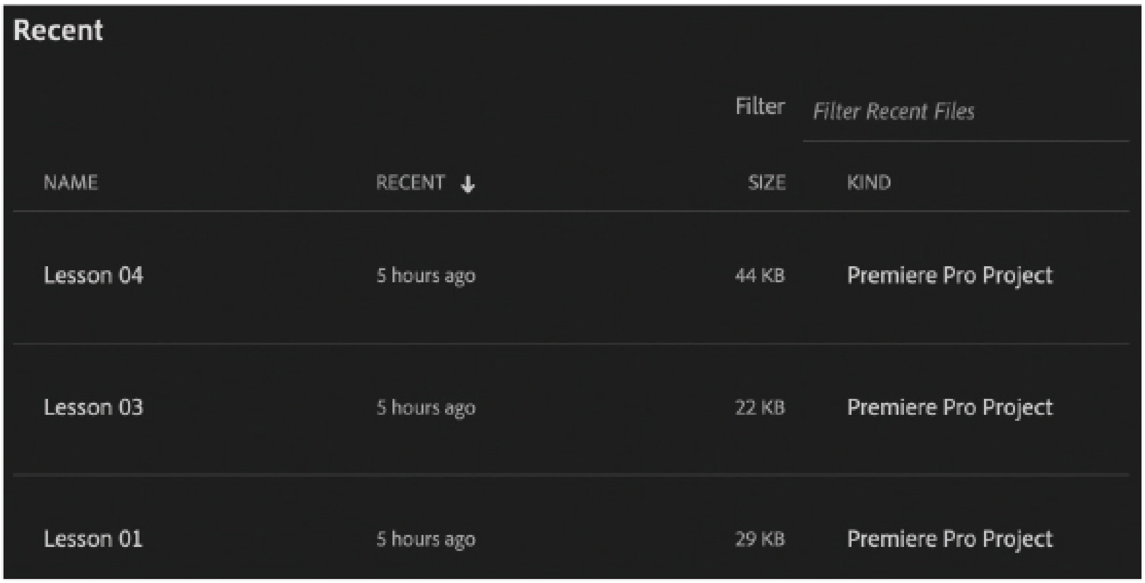
It's helpful to begin by getting familiar with the editing interface so you can recognize the tools as you work with them in the following lessons. To make it easier for you to customize the user interface, Premiere Pro includes *workspaces*. Workspaces quickly position the various panels and tools onscreen in ways that are helpful for particular activities, such as editing, special effects work, or audio mixing.

You'll begin by taking a brief tour of the Editing workspace. In most of the exercises in this book, you'll use a Premiere Pro project from this book's companion DVD (or downloaded lesson files if you are using the eBook). Before you continue, make sure you've copied all the lesson folders and contents to your computer storage.

Next, launch Premiere Pro. The Home screen appears.

The first few times you launch Premiere Pro, the Home screen shows links to online training videos that will help you get started.

If you have opened projects previously, a list will appear in the middle of the Home screen. You can hover the pointer over a recent item to see the project file location in a pop-up window.



Recent

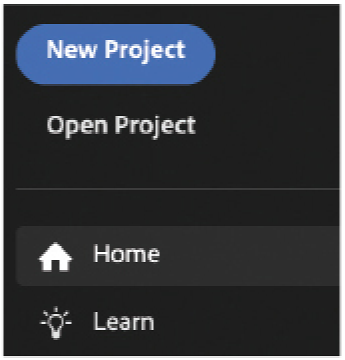
Filter *Filter Recent Files*

NAME	RECENT ↓	SIZE	KIND
Lesson 04	5 hours ago	44 KB	Premiere Pro Project
Lesson 03	5 hours ago	22 KB	Premiere Pro Project
Lesson 01	5 hours ago	29 KB	Premiere Pro Project

A Premiere Pro project file contains all your creative decisions for a project, links (referred to as *clips*) to your selected media files, sequences made by combining those clips, special effects settings, and more. Premiere Pro project files have the filename extension .prproj.

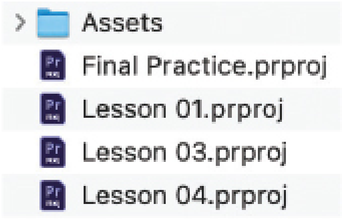
Pr
PROJ
Lesson 01.prproj

Whenever you work in Premiere Pro, you will be making adjustments to a project file. You need to create a new project file or open an existing one to use Premiere Pro.



There are a few important buttons on the Home screen, some of which look like text but can actually be clicked (look out for text that works as a button in the Premiere Pro interface):

- **Home:** Takes you back to this screen.
- **Learn:** Displays multiple tutorials to help you get up to speed with Premiere Pro.
- **New Project:** Creates a new project file. It's a good idea to choose a name that will be easy to identify later (in other words, avoid using the name New Project).
- **Open Project:** Click this to open an existing project by browsing for the project file. You can also double-click an existing project file in the macOS Finder or Windows Explorer to open it in Premiere Pro.
- **New Team Project:** Creates a new collaborative project using the Adobe Team Project service. Team Projects are beyond the scope of this book but use the same tools and editing techniques that you will learn here—just collaboratively.
- **Open Team Project:** Opens the Manage Team Projects dialog box to allow you to select an existing Team Project to work on.
- **Open Premiere Rush Project:** Opens an existing Premiere Rush project in Premiere Pro. Any projects you created with Premiere Rush will be available here, as long as you used the same Adobe ID as for Premiere Pro.



Assets
Final Practice.prproj
Lesson 01.prproj
Lesson 03.prproj
Lesson 04.prproj

Try opening an existing Premiere Pro project:

1. Click Open Project.
2. In the file navigation dialog box that appears, navigate to the Lessons folder; then double-click the Lesson 01.prproj project file to open the first lesson. Leave the file open for the next exercise.

After you open an existing project file, the Link Media dialog box may open, asking where a particular media file is. This will occasionally happen when the original media files are saved on a storage device (or drive letter) different from the one you're using. You'll need to tell Premiere Pro where the file is.

Note

> If you are using a version of Premiere Pro later than the one used in making this book, when you open the Lesson 01.prproj file, an alert may ask you to save it in a new format. Updating the format of the file won't interfere with working through the exercises, so click OK.

In the Link Media box that prompts you to link the media file, you'll see a list of missing items, with the first already highlighted. Click Locate, at the bottom right.

At the top of the Locate File dialog box you'll see Last Path (that's the last known location for the file) and Path (that's the current location you have browsed to).

Using the folders on the left, navigate to the Lessons/Assets folder, and click Search at the bottom right. Premiere Pro will locate the missing file and highlight it on the right side of the window. Select the file, and click OK. Premiere Pro will remember this location for other missing files and relink them automatically without your needing to link each one individually.

To learn more about managing media, see the online bonus chapter "Managing Your Projects."

Hands-On: Editing your first video

● Note

It's best to copy all the lesson assets to your computer storage and leave them there until you complete this book; some lessons reuse assets from previous lessons.

The first series of exercises walks you through editing a simple video. You'll get hands-on experience using the principal features of Premiere Pro.

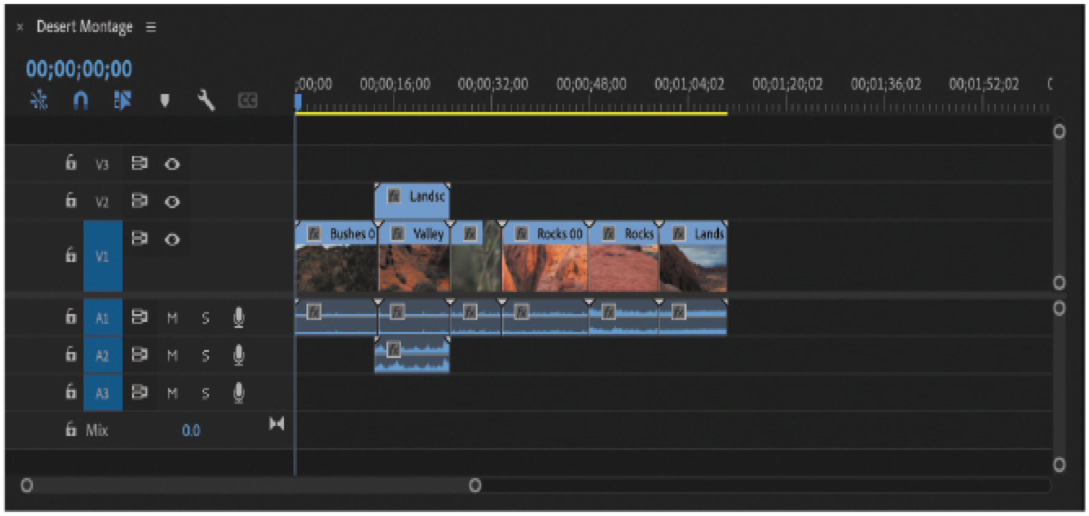
Because you are going to make changes to the project file, you'll start by saving a new version. Then to ensure the steps described here match your screen, you'll reset the Premiere Pro user interface to its default configuration. After that, you'll learn about the main editing tools and user interface features in Premiere Pro.

1. With Lesson 01.prproj open in Premiere Pro, choose File > Save As. Save a copy of the project with the name **Lesson 01 Working.prproj**.
2. By default, Premiere Pro opens in the Learning workspace. We're going to dive right in to editing using the Editing workspace: Choose Window > Workspaces > Editing to make sure the Editing workspace is selected (see "Exploring workspaces" for more information on workspaces).
3. Choose Window > Workspaces > Reset To Saved Layout to reset the workspace to the default settings.

   This project contains a number of video clips. Some have already been edited into a sequence in the Timeline panel (for more information about panels, see "Exploring workspaces").

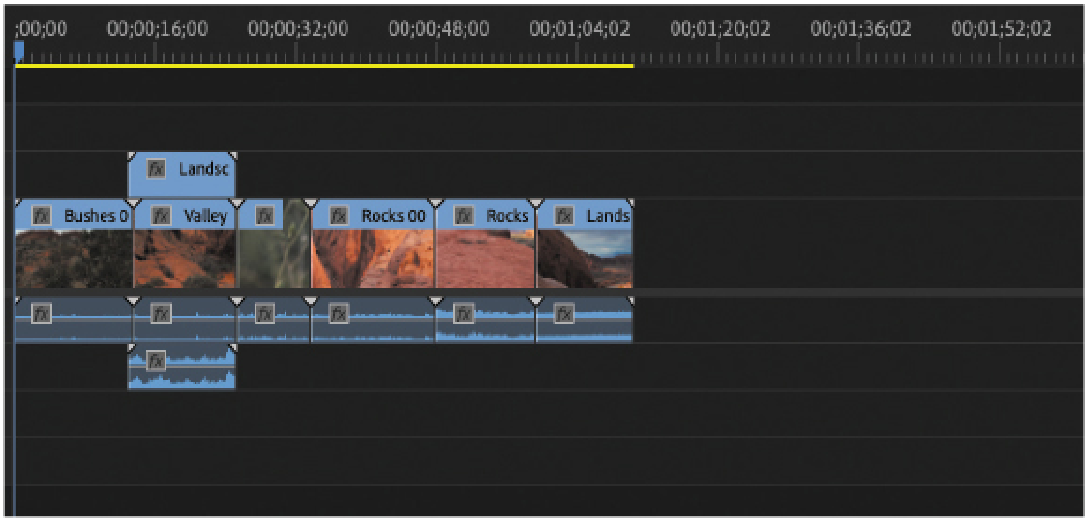
   ● Note

   Unlike most other panels, the Timeline panel does not include its own name in its heading. Instead, the name of the current sequence is shown. In this case, it's Desert Montage.


Desert Montage
00;00;00;00
;00;00
00;00;16;00
00;00;32;00
00;00;48;00
00;01;04;02
00;01;20;02
00;01;36;02
00;01;52;02
V3
V2
V1
A1
A2
A3
Mix
0.0
Landsc
Bushes 0
Valley
Rocks 00
Rocks
Lands

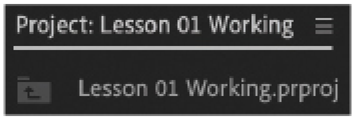
Let’s add some more clips to the sequence.

4. Along the top edge of the Timeline panel, named Desert Montage in this project, notice the horizontal bar with a series of numbers—the *time ruler*. The blue playhead control connected to the time ruler works the same way as the playhead when viewing video files in a player. Try clicking a location on the time ruler—the playhead jumps to the time you click.
5. Place the playhead to the far left of the Timeline panel time ruler.


;00;00
00;00;16;00
00;00;32;00
00;00;48;00
00;01;04;02
00;01;20;02
00;01;36;02
00;01;52;02
Landsc
Bushes 0
Valley
Rocks 00
Rocks
Lands

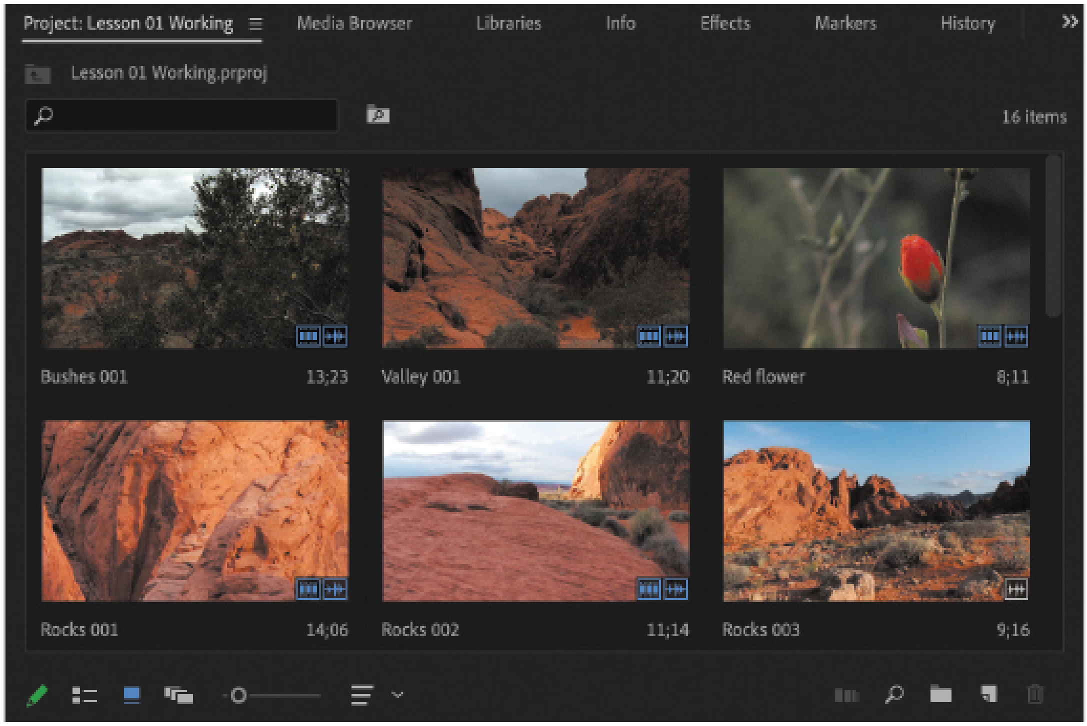
6. Press the spacebar to play the current sequence. The Program Monitor (top-right corner of the Premiere Pro interface) displays the contents of the sequence.

In the lower-left corner of the Premiere Pro interface, you will find the Project panel, which contains clips and other assets associated with the current project. The panel name includes the current project name, Project: Lesson 01 Working.


Project: Lesson 01 Working
Lesson 01 Working.prproj

The lower-left corner of the Project panel holds a series of buttons that you use to select different ways of viewing the contents of the panel.

7. Click the Icon View button if it’s not already selected.


Project: Lesson 01 Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History
Lesson 01 Working.prproj
16 items
Bushes 001
13;23
Valley 001
11;20
Red flower
8;11
Rocks 001
14;06
Rocks 002
11;14
Rocks 003
9;16

Icon view makes it easier to identify clips based on their contents.

8. Drag the clip named Bushes 001 from the Project panel to the end of the existing series of clips already in the Timeline panel. Be sure to drag it by the thumbnail image and not the clip name.

If you line up the new clip with an existing clip, you’ll notice the new clip jumps into position, exactly aligning with the end of the existing clip. If this does not happen, snapping is turned off in the Timeline panel. Click the Snap In Timeline button at the upper-left corner of the Timeline panel to turn it on.

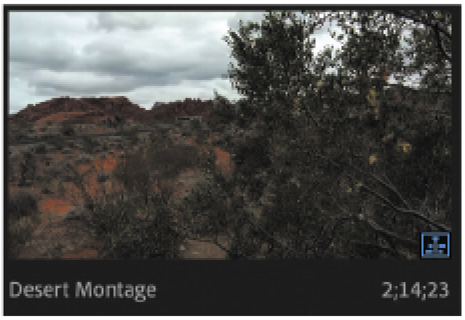
9. Scroll down in the Project panel and find several more clips of your choice to add to the sequence. Drag each one into the sequence.

   At any time, you can review your sequence by positioning the Timeline playhead at the beginning of the sequence (at its left end) and using the spacebar to start and stop playback.

10. When you have finished adding several clips to the sequence, play through it to see the result.

    You can place the Timeline playhead anywhere and play from that moment.

There is one item you will not be able to drag from the Project panel into the sequence: the sequence itself, called Desert Montage.



The Project panel displays both clips and sequences. You can have as many sequences as you like in a project, and they are identifiable by the icon in the lower-right corner of the clip thumbnail (in Icon view or in Freeform View) or the item icon in List view.

Congratulations! You edited a sequence!

Exploring workspaces

The Premiere Pro interface is divided into *panels*. Each panel has a particular purpose. For example, the Effects panel lists all the effects available for you to apply to clips, while the Effect Controls panel gives you access to the settings for those effects.

Tip

The Reset To Saved Layout command displays a keyboard shortcut in the menu. Many tasks can be performed using keyboard shortcuts, including choosing workspaces. If you're using a computer with a non-U.S. keyboard, the shortcuts available to you might use different keys from the ones shown here. See "Using and setting keyboard shortcuts" later in this lesson for more information.

A *workspace* is a preset arrangement of panels, organized to make particular tasks easier. There's one for editing, another for working on audio, and another for making color adjustments, for example.

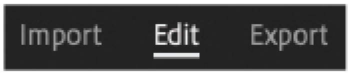
Every panel is accessible from the Window menu, but workspaces are a quicker way to access several panels at once and have them laid out exactly as you need them.

Before you begin, make sure you're using the default Editing workspace by choosing Window > Workspaces > Editing. Then, to reset the Editing workspace, choose Window > Workspaces > Reset To Saved Layout.

The name of your current project is displayed at the top of the Premiere Pro interface.

At the top left of the interface, the Home button ⌂ opens the Home screen, allowing you to quickly open a recent project or create a new one.

Next to the Home button, the words *Import*, *Edit*, and *Export* are all buttons you can click; these floating words are examples of an elegant design feature you'll discover in a number of areas in Premiere Pro. The buttons switch the interface between these three important modes.



For now, stay in the Edit mode—you will learn about the other modes in later lessons.

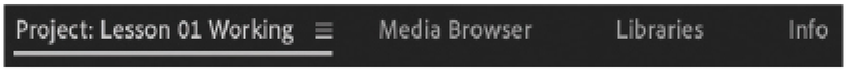
At the top right of the interface, the Workspaces menu gives quick access to several workspaces for particular tasks. You'll use some of these workspaces as you progress through these lessons. For now, make sure Editing is selected.

▶ **Tip**

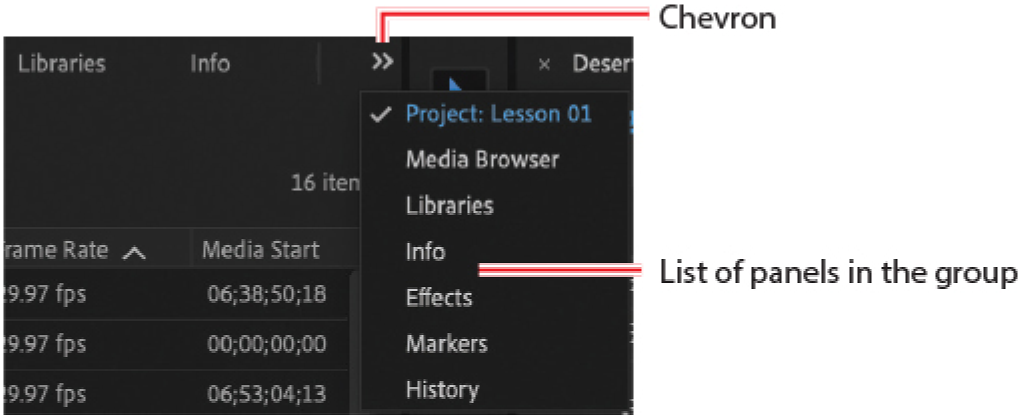
In the Workspaces menu, choose Show Workspace Label to display the name of the current workspace next to the menu.

If you're new to nonlinear editing, the default Editing workspace might look like a lot of new buttons and menus to learn. Don't panic. Things become simpler when you know what the buttons are for. The interface is designed to make video editing easy, so commonly used controls are immediately accessible.

Workspaces consist of particular panels positioned and sized helpfully. You can save space by gathering several panels into a *panel group*. The names of all the panels in the group are displayed across the top. Click a panel name to bring that panel to the "front" of the group.

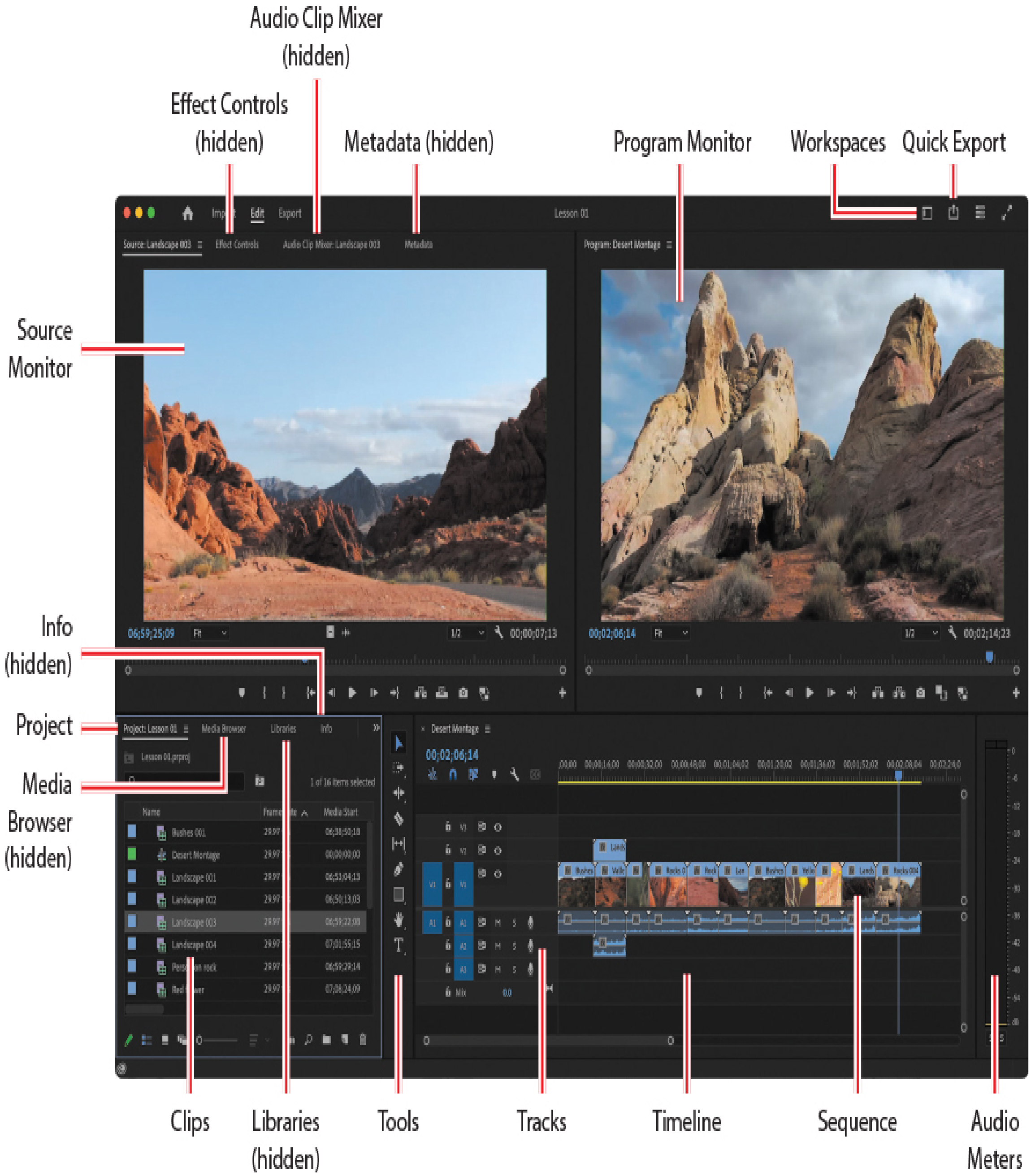

Project: Lesson 01 Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Info

When many panels are combined, there may not be enough space to display all their names. If this is the case, a list of all the panels in the group becomes available. Click the chevron in the upper-right corner of the panel group to access a particular panel.


Chevron
Libraries
Info
Deser
16 iten
rame Rate
Media Start
9.97 fps
06;38;50;18
9.97 fps
00;00;00;00
9.97 fps
06;53;04;13
Project: Lesson 01
Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History
List of panels in the group

You can display any panel by choosing it from the Window menu, so if you can't locate a panel, just look there.

The principal elements are shown here.

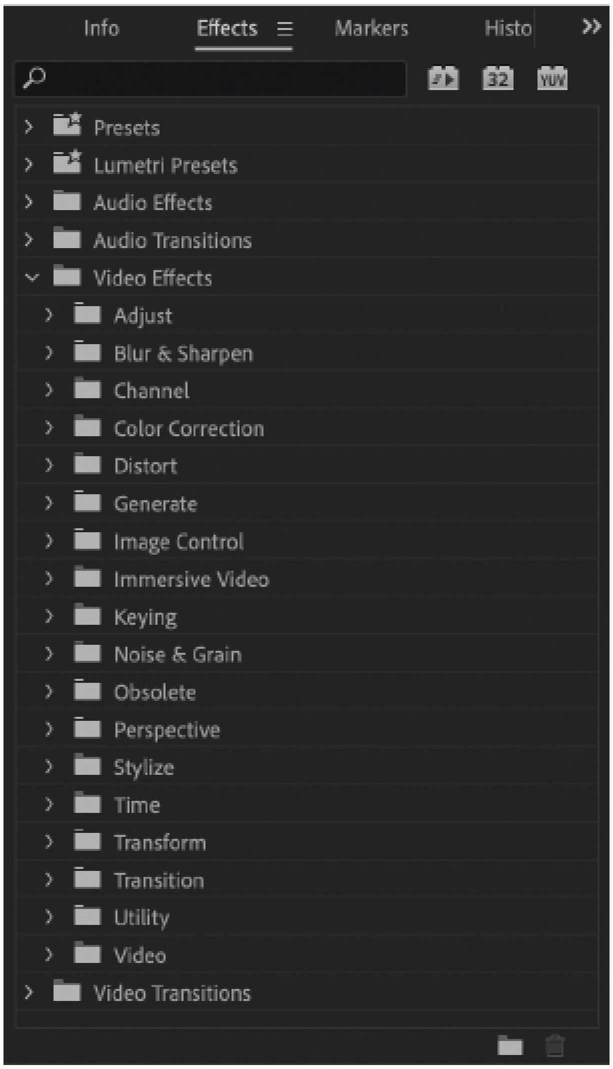

Audio Clip Mixer (hidden)
Effect Controls (hidden)
Metadata (hidden)
Program Monitor
Workspaces
Quick Export
Source Monitor
Info (hidden)
Project
Media Browser (hidden)
Clips
Libraries (hidden)
Tools
Tracks
Timeline
Sequence
Audio Meters

Some of the important interface elements include:

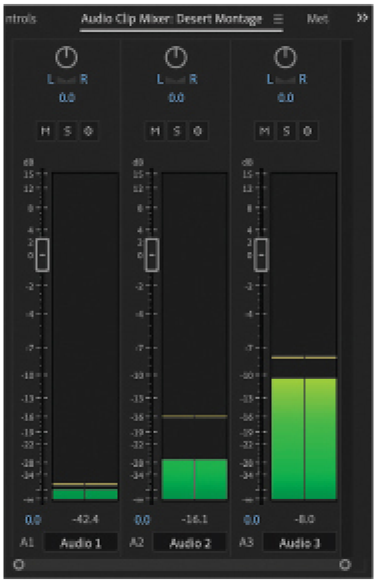
- **Project panel:** This is where you organize your clips (these are the links to your media files), sequences, and graphics in *bins*. Bins are similar to folders—you can place one bin inside another for more advanced organization of your project.

- **Timeline panel:** This is where you’ll do most of your creative work. You view and work on *sequences* (the term for video clips edited together) in the Timeline panel. One feature of sequences is that you can *nest* them (place one sequence inside another sequence). Combining sequences this way, you can break up a production into manageable chunks or create unique special effects.
- **Tracks:** You can layer—or *composite*—video clips, images, graphics, and titles on an unlimited number of tracks. Video and graphic clips on upper video tracks cover whatever is directly below them on the timeline. Therefore, you need to give clips on higher tracks some form of transparency or reduce their size if you want clips on lower tracks to show.
- **Monitors:** Use the Source Monitor (on the left) to view and select parts of clips (your original footage). To view a clip in the Source Monitor, double-click its icon in the Project panel, or drag it into the Source Monitor. The Program Monitor (on the right) shows the contents of your current sequence, displayed in the Timeline panel.
- **Media Browser:** This panel allows you to browse your storage to choose media to import into your project. Like Import mode, the Media Browser is especially useful for camera media and RAW files because it allows you to preview the files before importing. You can use Import mode to import, too, but the Media Browser has additional options to help you stay organized.
- **Libraries:** This panel gives access to assets that you can share between projects, such as custom Lumetri color Looks, Motion Graphics templates, graphics, and shared libraries. For more information, go to *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/using/creative-cloud-libraries.xhtml*.
- **Effects panel:** This panel contains most of the effects you will use in your sequences, including video and audio effects and transitions. Effects are grouped by type to make them easier to find, and there’s a search box at the top of the panel. Once applied, the controls for these effects are displayed in the Effect Controls panel.
- **Effect Controls panel:** This panel displays the controls for any effects applied to a clip you select in a sequence or open in the Source

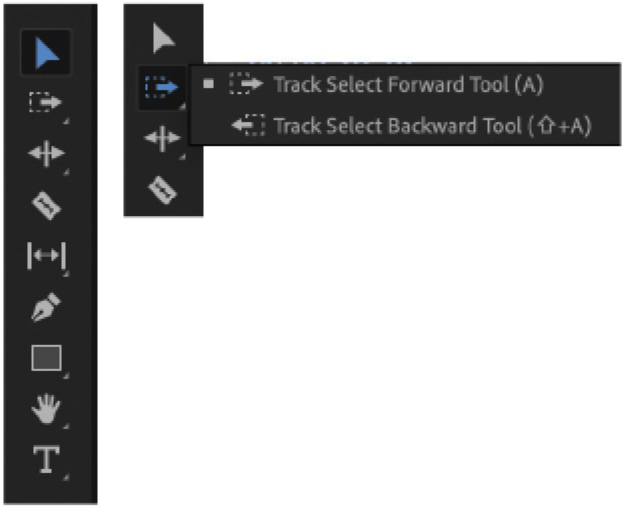
Monitor. If you select a visual clip in the Timeline panel, Motion, Opacity, and Time Remapping adjustment controls are automatically available. Most effect settings can be adjusted over time.


Info
Effects
Markers
Histo
32
YUV
Presets
Lumetri Presets
Audio Effects
Audio Transitions
Video Effects
Adjust
Blur & Sharpen
Channel
Color Correction
Distort
Generate
Image Control
Immersive Video
Keying
Noise & Grain
Obsolete
Perspective
Stylize
Time
Transform
Transition
Utility
Video
Video Transitions

- **Audio Clip Mixer:** This panel is based on audio production studio hardware, with volume sliders and pan controls. There is one set of controls for each audio track on the timeline. The adjustments you make are applied to audio clips. There’s also an Audio Track Mixer for applying audio adjustments to tracks rather than to clips.


ntrols
Audio Clip Mixer: Desert Montage
Met
L R
0.0
M S
A1 Audio 1
A2 Audio 2
A3 Audio 3
-42.4
-16.1
-8.0

- **Tools panel:** Each icon in this panel gives access to a tool that performs a specific function in the Timeline panel or the Program Monitor. You'll use and learn more about many of these tools in upcoming lessons. The Selection tool is context-sensitive, which means it changes function depending on where you click. If your pointer doesn't work as you expect, check to see you have the right tool selected.

  
  Track Select Forward Tool (A)
Track Select Backward Tool (⇧+A)

  Several tools have a small triangle icon, indicating a menu of additional tools. Click and hold one of these tools to see the menu of options.

- **Info panel:** The Info panel displays information about any item you select in the Project panel or any clip or transition you select in a sequence.

- **History panel:** This panel tracks the steps you take and lets you easily undo a series of changes. When you select a previous step, all steps that followed it are also undone.
- **Quick Export:** This button in the upper-right corner gives fast access to popular media file export options for sharing your work.

Most panels display their name at the top. When a panel is grouped with other panels, the name is underlined when you select it. The currently active panel is outlined in blue. Most panels have a menu next to their name ☰ with options particular to that panel; this important menu is simply called the *panel menu*. For example, the Project panel menu provides options for the Project panel.

Using the Learning workspace

Although other workspaces are intended to facilitate a particular creative activity, the Learning workspace is an exception. This workspace includes the Learn panel, which offers tutorials to help you build familiarity with the Premiere Pro interface and learn important skills.

You will find the tutorials complement the exercises in this book well, and you may find it helpful to practice first with this book and then explore the relevant tutorials to reinforce the lessons you have learned.

Customizing a workspace

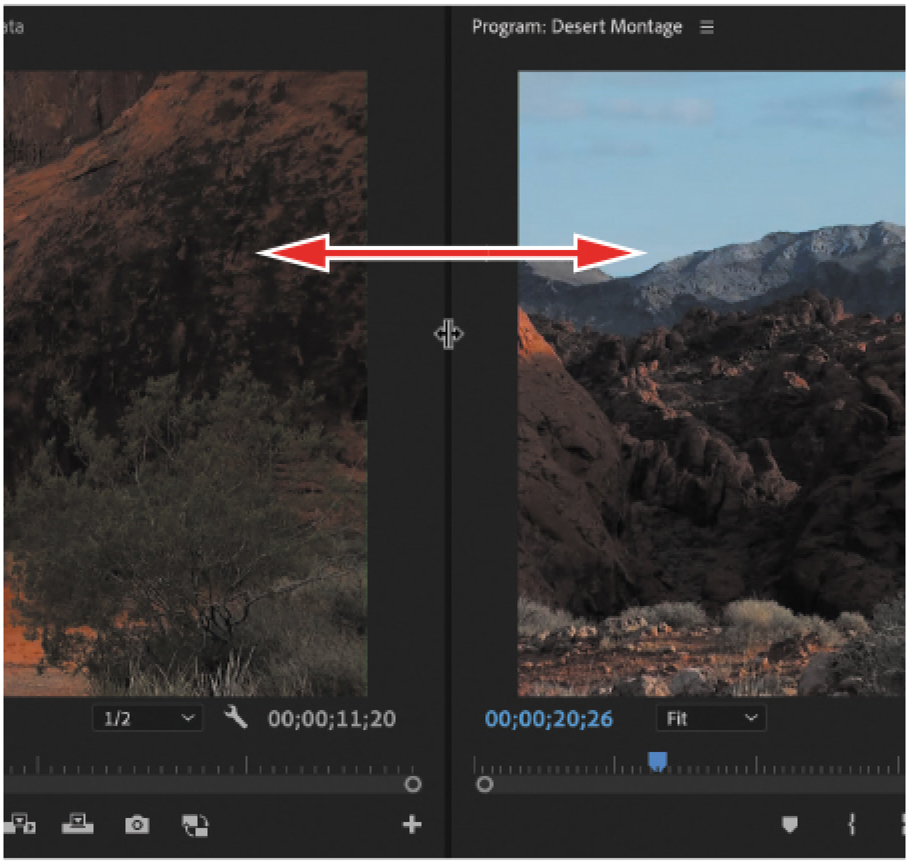
In addition to choosing between the default workspaces, you can adjust the position and location of panels to create a workspace that works best for you. You can create multiple custom workspaces for different tasks.

- As you change the size of a panel or panel group, other panels change size to compensate.
- Every panel within a panel group is accessible by clicking its name.

- All panels are movable—you can drag a panel from one group to another.
- You can drag a panel out of a group to become a separate floating panel.
- You can double-click the name of any panel to toggle it between full screen and its original size.

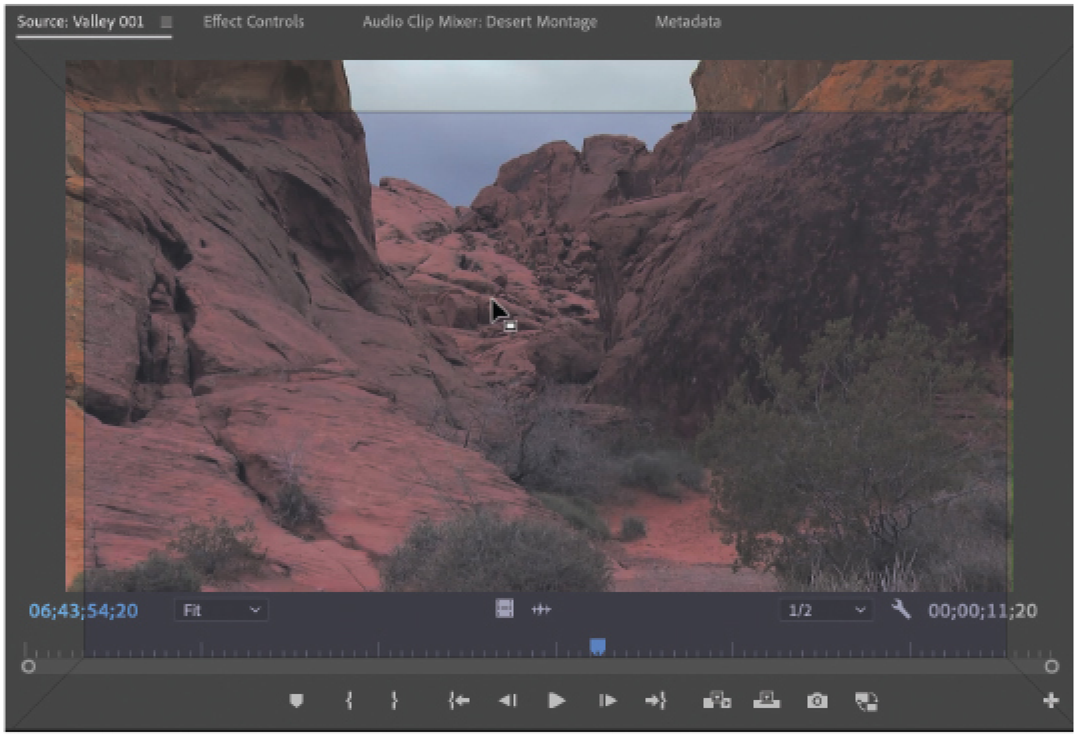
In this exercise, you’ll adjust some panels and save a customized workspace.

1. In the Project panel, double-click the icon for the clip Valley 001 to open it in the Source Monitor.
2. Position your pointer on the vertical divider between the Source Monitor and the Program Monitor. The pointer will change to a double-headed arrow ↔ when it’s in the right position. Drag left and right to change the sizes of those panels. You can choose to have different sizes for your video displays, which is useful at different stages of post-production.

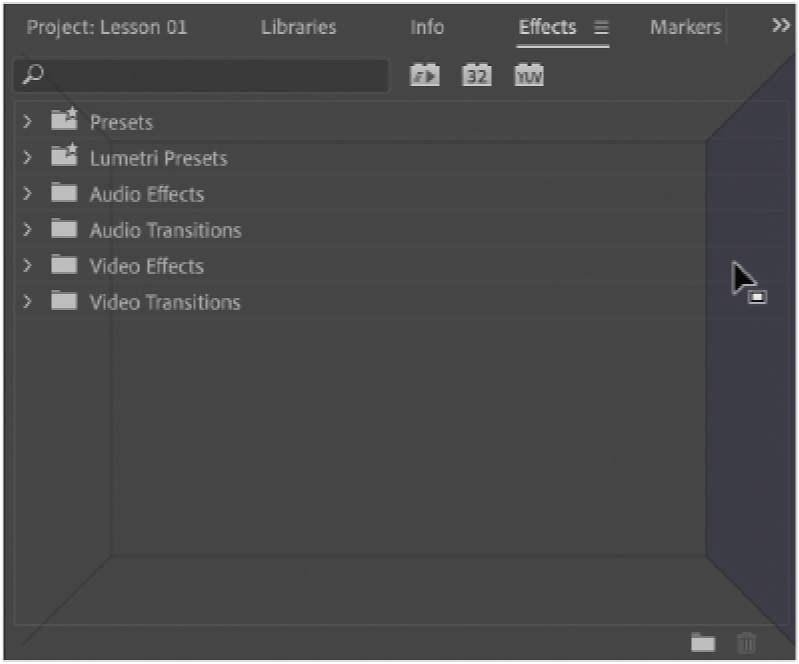

ta
Program: Desert Montage
1/2
00;00;11;20
00;00;20;26
Fit

3. Now place the pointer on the horizontal divider between the Program Monitor and the Timeline panel. The pointer will change when it's in the right position. Drag up and down to change the sizes of these panels.

4. Click the name of the Media Browser (at its top), and drag it to the middle of the Source Monitor until a blue rectangle appears (the *drop zone*—displayed as a center highlight). Release the Media Browser to dock it in that panel group.


Source: Valley 001
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Desert Montage
Metadata
06;43;54;20
Fit
1/2
00;00;11;20

5. Drag the Effects panel (which is grouped with the Project panel by default) by its name to a point just inside the right edge of its current panel group until a blue trapezoid-shaped area (the drop zone) is highlighted.


Project: Lesson 01
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
Presets
Lumetri Presets
Audio Effects
Audio Transitions
Video Effects
Video Transitions

6. Release the Effects panel; it is now alone in its own panel group. Remember, if you can't see the Effects panel, you can choose it from

the Window menu.

When you drag a panel by its name, a drop zone is displayed. If the highlighted drop zone is a rectangle, the panel will go into the selected panel group as an additional tab when it’s dropped. If the drop zone is a trapezoid, it will create a new panel group. If the drop zone is green, you’ll create a new panel group that is the full length or width of the Premiere Pro interface.

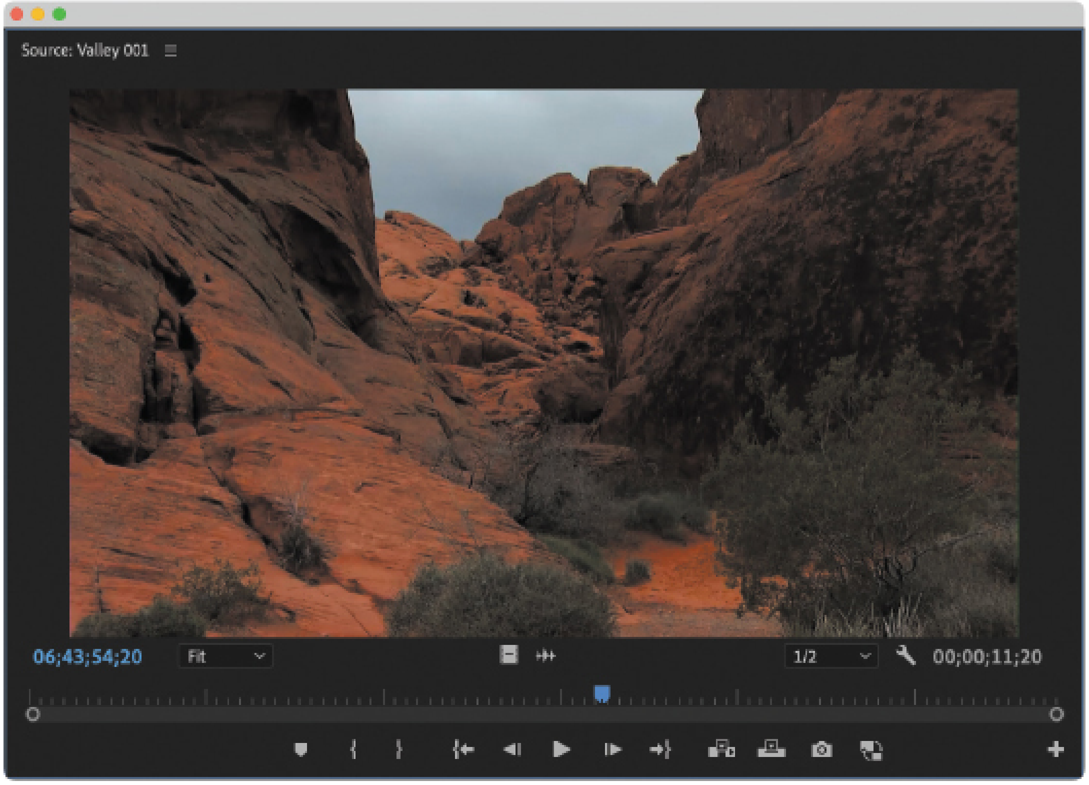
You can also pull panels into their own floating windows.

7. Command-drag (macOS)/Ctrl-drag (Windows) the Source Monitor out of its panel group.

Tip

You may need to resize some panels to see all of their controls.

8. Drop the Source Monitor anywhere, creating a floating panel. You can resize the panel by dragging a corner or a side.



Note

You can save changes to new workspaces you have created. When you do, resetting to default will restore the most recently saved version of the workspace.

As you gain experience, you might want to create and save the layout of your panels as a customized workspace. To do so at any time, choose Window > Workspaces > Save As New Workspace. Type a name, and click OK.

9. Now, to return to a recognizable starting point, choose Window > Workspaces > Editing. Then, to reset the Editing workspace, choose Window > Workspaces > Reset To Saved Layout.

Introducing preferences

The more you edit video, the more you'll want to customize Premiere Pro to match your specific needs. Premiere Pro has several types of settings. For example, panel menus ☰, which are accessible by clicking the menu button next to a panel name, have options that relate to each panel, while individual clips in a sequence have settings you can access by right-clicking them.

The panel name, displayed at the top of each panel, is often referred to as the *panel tab*. This is the area of a panel you use to move the panel, almost like a handle you can grab the panel by.

There are also application-wide user preferences, which are grouped into a single dialog box for easy access. These don't change from project to project. Preferences will be covered in depth as they relate to the individual lessons in this book. Let's look at an example.

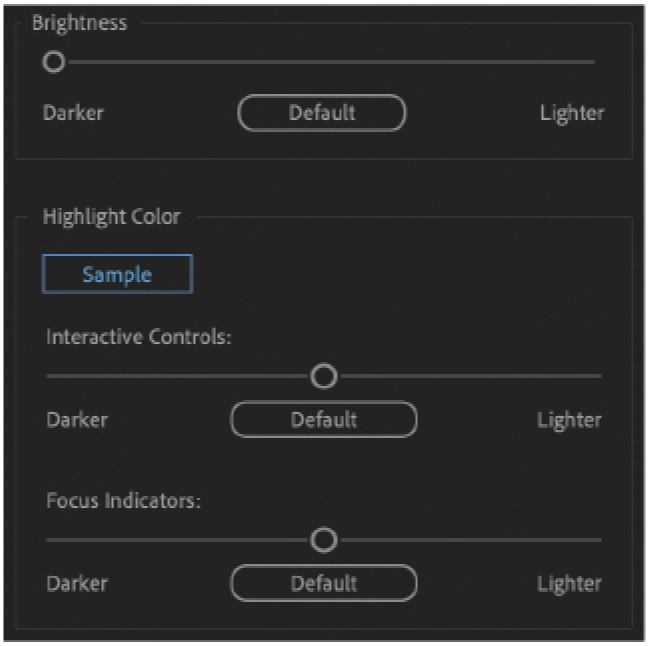
Note

You can change the font size for List view in the Project panel by choosing Font Size from the panel menu and then choosing Small, Medium (Default), Large, or Extra Large from the submenu.

1. Choose Premiere Pro > Settings > Appearance (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Appearance (Windows).

Note

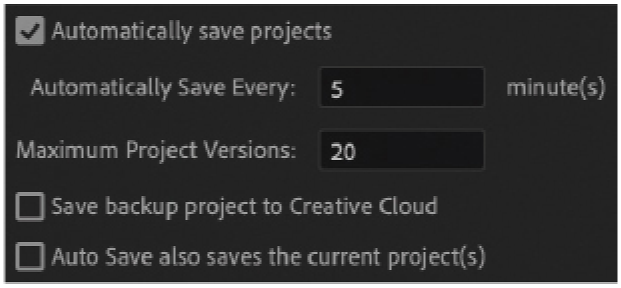
When you open the Preferences dialog box, it’s not too important which category you choose from the menu first, as you can always quickly switch to another.


Brightness
Darker
Default
Lighter
Highlight Color
Sample
Interactive Controls:
Darker
Default
Lighter
Focus Indicators:
Darker
Default
Lighter

2. Drag the Brightness slider to the right to suit your preference.

   The default brightness is a dark gray to help you see colors correctly (human perception of color is influenced by surrounding colors). There are additional options for controlling the brightness of interface highlights.

3. Experiment with the Interactive Controls and Focus Indicators sliders. The difference in the brightness of the onscreen sample is subtle, but adjusting these sliders can make quite a big difference to your editing experience.
4. Set all three settings to Default by clicking the Default buttons when you have finished experimenting.
5. Switch to the Auto Save preferences by clicking Auto Save on the left.



☑ Automatically save projects

Automatically Save Every: 5 minute(s)

Maximum Project Versions: 20

☐ Save backup project to Creative Cloud

☐ Auto Save also saves the current project(s)

Imagine if you had worked for hours and then there was a power outage. If you hadn’t saved recently, you’d have lost a lot of work. With the Auto Save options, you can decide how often you would like Premiere Pro to save an automated backup of your project file and how many versions you would like to keep in total. Auto Save backups automatically have the date and time they were created added to the filename.

Note

Premiere Pro allows you to open multiple projects at the same time. For this reason, you’ll see options for “project(s)” rather than just “project.”

Project files are small relative to media files, so you can usually increase the number of project versions without impacting system performance.

You’ll notice there’s an option to save a backup project to Creative Cloud.

This option creates an additional backup of your project file in your Creative Cloud Files folder. If you suffer a total system failure while working, you can log in to any Premiere Pro editing system with your Adobe ID to access the backup project file and quickly continue working. For this to work, you also have to make sure that you have backups—preferably multiple backups—of all your media files.

6. Click Cancel to close the Preferences dialog box without applying any changes.

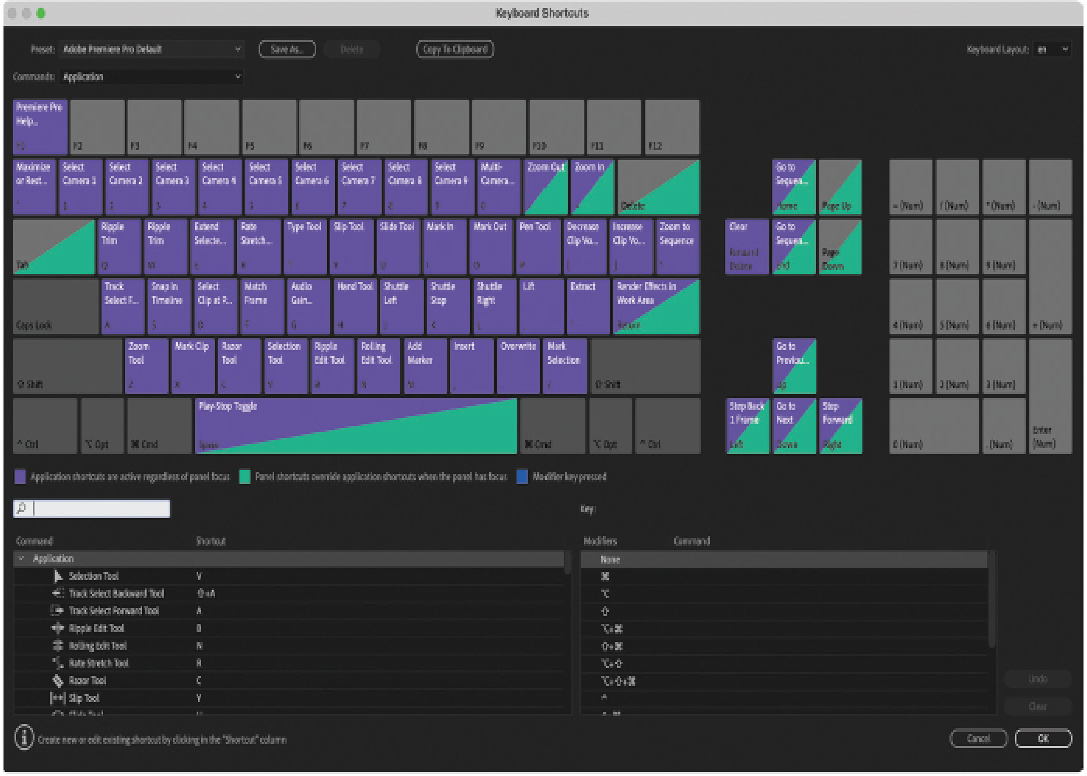
Using and setting keyboard shortcuts

Premiere Pro makes extensive use of keyboard shortcuts. Once you know them, these are usually faster and easier than clicking an item in a menu or hunting down an item in a panel. Several keyboard shortcuts are shared universally by nonlinear editing systems. The spacebar, for example, starts and stops playback—this even works on some websites.

Some standard keyboard shortcuts come from celluloid film-editing traditions. The I and O keys, for example, are used to set In and Out points for footage and sequences: These special marks indicate the start and end of a desired section and were originally drawn on celluloid directly.

Many shortcuts are available, but not all are assigned a key by default. This allows flexibility when setting up your editing system.

1. Choose Premiere Pro > Keyboard Shortcuts (macOS) or Edit > Keyboard Shortcuts (Windows).


Keyboard Shortcuts
Preset: Adobe Premiere Pro Default
Save As...
Delete
Copy To Clipboard
Keyboard Layout: en
Commands: Application
Play-Stop Toggle
Step Back 1 Frame
Go to Next
Step Forward
🟪 Application shortcuts are active regardless of panel focus
🟩 Panel shortcuts override application shortcuts when the panel has focus
🟦 Modifier key pressed
Key:
Undo
Clear
Cancel
OK

Command	Shortcut
Application	
Selection Tool	V
Track Select Backward Tool	⇧+A
Track Select Forward Tool	A
Ripple Edit Tool	B
Rolling Edit Tool	N
Rate Stretch Tool	R
Razor Tool	C
Slip Tool	Y

Modifiers	Command
None	
⌘	
⌥	
⇧	
⌥+⌘	
⇧+⌘	
⌥+⇧	
⌥+⇧+⌘	
^	

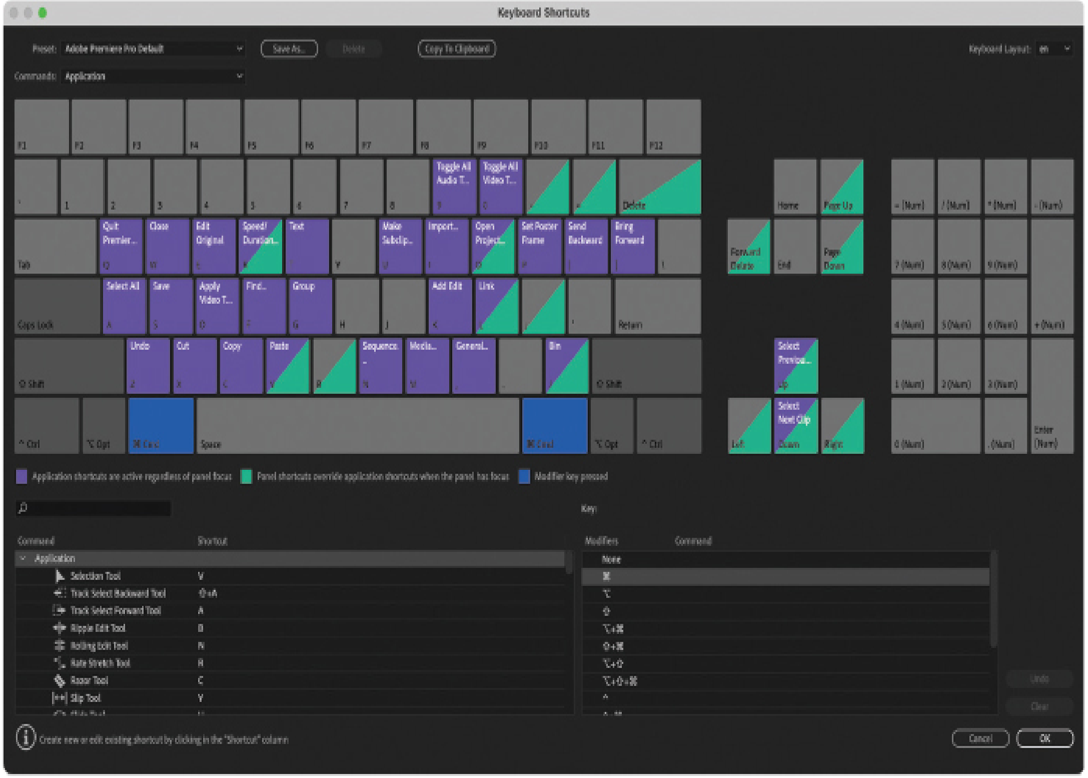
Create new or edit existing shortcut by clicking in the "Shortcut" column

It can be a little daunting to see the number of keyboard shortcuts available, but by the end of this book you will recognize most of the options displayed here. Some keyboard shortcuts are specific to individual panels.

2. You can use the Commands menu at the top of the dialog box to choose the name of a panel to create or edit shortcuts for that panel. By default, the dialog box shows application-wide shortcuts.

   Specialized keyboards are available with color-coded keys that have shortcuts printed on them. These make it easier to remember commonly used shortcuts.

3. When you open the Keyboard Shortcuts settings, the search box is automatically active to help you find a particular shortcut. Click outside of the search box (to deselect it), and try pressing Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows).


Keyboard Shortcuts
Save As...
Delete
Copy To Clipboard
Toggle All Audio T...
Toggle All Video T...
Delete
Home
Page Up
Tab
Quit Premier...
Close
Edit Original
Speed/ Duration...
Text
Make Subclip...
Import...
Open Project...
Set Poster Frame
Send Backward
Bring Forward
Forward Delete
End
Page Down
Caps Lock
Select All
Save
Apply Video T...
Find...
Group
Add Edit
Link
Return
⇧ Shift
Undo
Cut
Copy
Paste
Sequence...
Media...
General...
Bin
⇧ Shift
Select Previou... Up
^ Ctrl
⌥ Opt
⌘ Cmd
Space
⌘ Cmd
⌥ Opt
^ Ctrl
Left
Select Next Clip Down
Right
Enter (Num)
Undo
Clear
Cancel
OK

Preset: Adobe Premiere Pro Default

Commands: Application

Keyboard Layout: en

🟪 Application shortcuts are active regardless of panel focus 🟩 Panel shortcuts override application shortcuts when the panel has focus 🟦 Modifier key pressed

Command	Shortcut
Application	
Selection Tool	V
Track Select Backward Tool	⇧+A
Track Select Forward Tool	A
Ripple Edit Tool	B
Rolling Edit Tool	N
Rate Stretch Tool	R
Razor Tool	C
Slip Tool	Y

Key:

Modifiers	Command
None	
⌘	
⌥	
⇧	
⌥+⌘	
⇧+⌘	
⌥+⇧	
⌥+⇧+⌘	
^	

Create new or edit existing shortcut by clicking in the "Shortcut" column

The keyboard shortcut display updates to show the results of combining the modifier key with the character keys. Notice there are many keys without shortcuts assigned when you use a modifier key. These are available for you to assign your own shortcuts.

4. Now try combinations of modifier keys including Shift+Option (macOS) or Shift+Alt (Windows). You can set keyboard shortcuts with any combination of modifier keys.

If you press a character key, or character and modifier key combination, that particular shortcut information is displayed.

The list at the bottom left of the Keyboard Shortcuts dialog box includes every option you can assign to a key—it's a long list, so use the search box at the top to help you find the option you want.

5. To change a keyboard shortcut:
   - Having found an option you would like to assign to a key, drag it from the list onto the key you would like to use in the upper part of the dialog box. If you hold modifier keys while performing this operation, they'll be included in the shortcut. You can also drag a key from the virtual keyboard onto an option.
   - To remove a shortcut, click the key, and choose Clear at the lower-right corner.
6. For now, click Cancel.

Moving, backing up, and syncing user settings

User settings include a number of important options. The defaults work well in most cases, but it's likely you'll want to make a few adjustments over time. For example, you might prefer the interface to be brighter than the default.

Premiere Pro includes the option to share your user settings between multiple computers: When installing Premiere Pro, you will enter your Adobe ID to confirm your software license. You can use the same ID to store your user settings in Creative Cloud, allowing you to synchronize and update them from any installation of Premiere Pro.

You can sync your user settings while working with Premiere Pro by choosing Premiere Pro > Sync Settings > Sync Settings Now (macOS) or File > Sync Settings > Sync Settings Now (Windows).

If a dialog box appears asking if you would like to save changes you have made, click Yes.

Review questions

1 Why is Premiere Pro considered a nonlinear editor?

2 Describe the basic video-editing workflow.

3 What is the Media Browser used for?

4 Can you save a customized workspace?

5 What is the purpose of the Source Monitor and the Program Monitor?

6 How can you drag a panel to its own floating panel?

Review answers

1 Premiere Pro lets you place video clips, audio clips, and graphics anywhere in a sequence; rearrange items already in a sequence; add transitions; apply effects; and do any number of other video-editing steps in any order that suits you. You're not tied to a particular line of action.

2 Transfer media to your computer; create a sequence by combining video, audio, and still-image clips in the Timeline panel; make color correction adjustments; add effects and transitions; add text and graphics; mix your audio; and export the finished product as a video file.

3 The Media Browser allows you to browse and import media files without having to open an external file browser. It's particularly useful when you're working with video camera footage because it allows you to easily preview footage.

4 Yes. You can save any customized workspace by choosing Window > Workspaces > Save As New Workspace.

5 You can view and select part of your original footage in the Source Monitor and use the Program Monitor to view the

contents of the current sequence displayed in the Timeline panel.

6 Drag the name of the panel while holding down Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows).

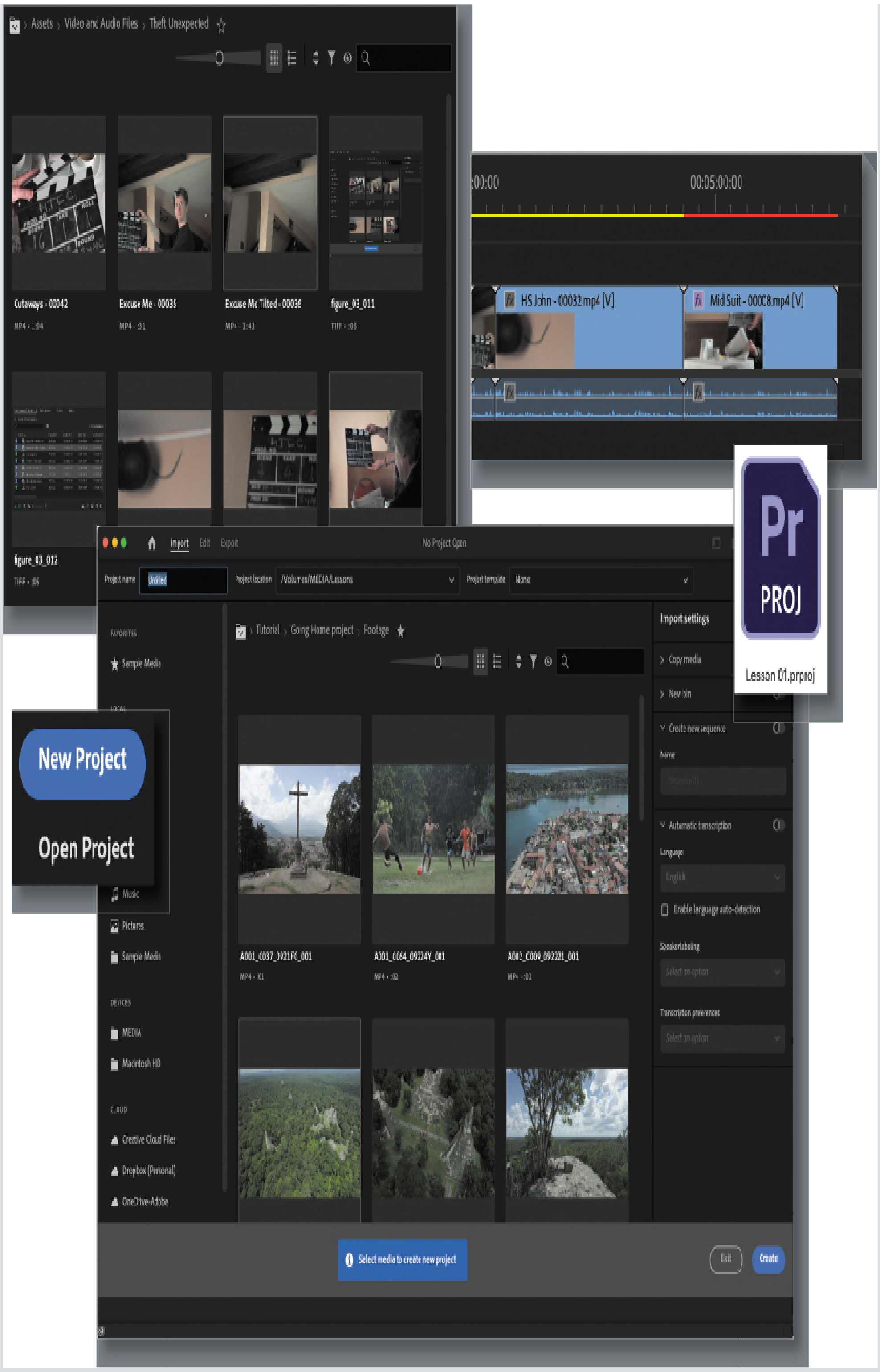
2 Setting Up a Project

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Choose project settings.
- Choose video rendering and playback settings.
- Choose video and audio display settings.
- Create scratch disks.
- Use sequence presets.
- Customize sequence settings.

This lesson will take about 60 minutes to complete. You will not need any of the lesson files.


Assets › Video and Audio Files › Theft Unexpected
Cutaways - 00042
MP4 • 1:04
Excuse Me - 00035
MP4 • :31
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036
MP4 • 1:41
figure_03_011
TIFF • :05
figure_03_012
TIFF • :05
00:00
00:05:00:00
HS John - 00032.mp4 [V]
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4 [V]
Pr
PROJ
Lesson 01.prproj
Import
Edit
Export
No Project Open
Project name
Untitled
Project location
/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons
Project template
None
Tutorial › Going Home project › Footage
Import settings
Copy media
New bin
Create new sequence
Name
Automatic transcription
Language
English
Enable language auto-detection
Speaker labeling
Select an option
Transcription preferences
Select an option
FAVORITES
Sample Media
LOCAL
Music
Pictures
Sample Media
DEVICES
MEDIA
Macintosh HD
CLOUD
Creative Cloud Files
Dropbox (Personal)
OneDrive-Adobe
A001_C037_0921FG_001
MP4 • :01
A001_C064_09224Y_001
MP4 • :02
A002_C009_09221_001
MP4 • :01
New Project
Open Project
Select media to create new project
Exit
Create

Before you begin editing, you’ll learn how to create a new project and choose sequence settings that tell Premiere Pro how to play your video and audio clips.

Starting the lesson

If you’re not yet familiar with video and audio technology, you might find all the options a little overwhelming. Luckily, Adobe Premiere Pro gives you easy shortcuts to get started. Plus, the principles of video and sound reproduction are the same no matter what kind of project you’re creating.

It’s just a question of knowing what you want to do. To help you plan and manage your projects, this lesson contains information about formats and video technology. You may decide to revisit this lesson later, as your familiarity with Premiere Pro and nonlinear video editing develops. You don’t need to understand all of these concepts to edit videos.

In practice, you’re unlikely to make changes to the default settings when creating a new project, but it’s helpful to know what the options mean.

Pr
PROJ
Lesson 01.prproj

A Premiere Pro project file stores links to all the video, graphic, and sound files you have imported.

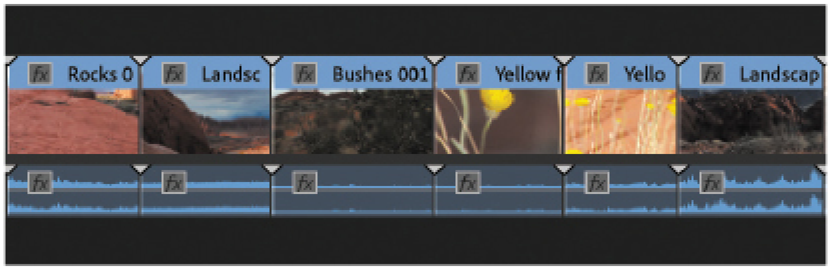
Each item is displayed in the Project panel as a clip. The name *clip* originally described a section of celluloid film (lengths of film were literally clipped to separate them from a roll), but these days the term refers to any item in the project, regardless of the type of media. You could have an audio clip or an image sequence clip, for example.

● Note

> Premiere Pro project files are identical on macOS and Windows. Apart from a small number of differences in menu layouts, the user experience is the same on both operating systems too.

Clips displayed in the Project panel appear to be media files, but they are actually only links to those files. It’s helpful to understand that a clip displayed in the Project panel and the media file it links to are two separate things. For example, you can delete one without affecting the other (more on this later).

When working on a project, you will create at least one *sequence*—that is, a series of clips that play, one after another, sometimes overlapping, with special effects, titles, and sound, to form your completed creative work. While editing, you will choose which parts of your clips to use and in which order they'll play.



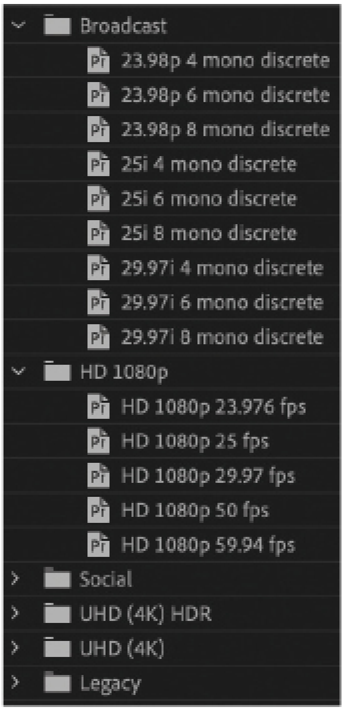
The beauty of nonlinear editing with Premiere Pro is that you can change your mind about almost anything, at any time.

Premiere Pro project files have the file extension *.prproj*.

Starting a new project is straightforward. You create a new project file, import media, choose a sequence preset, and start editing. The first three of these steps can be completed all at once!

When you create a new project, you can choose to automatically create a sequence with settings that match your media. You can also create one or more sequences later. Whichever method you choose, your sequence(s) will have playback settings (such as frame rate and frame size).

It's important to understand how the sequence settings change the way Premiere Pro plays your video and audio clips (all clips are automatically adjusted, if necessary, to match the sequence settings). If you decide to configure sequence settings manually, you can speed up the process by using a preset to choose the settings and then make adjustments, if necessary, for your particular project.


Broadcast
23.98p 4 mono discrete
23.98p 6 mono discrete
23.98p 8 mono discrete
25i 4 mono discrete
25i 6 mono discrete
25i 8 mono discrete
29.97i 4 mono discrete
29.97i 6 mono discrete
29.97i 8 mono discrete
HD 1080p
HD 1080p 23.976 fps
HD 1080p 25 fps
HD 1080p 29.97 fps
HD 1080p 50 fps
HD 1080p 59.94 fps
Social
UHD (4K) HDR
UHD (4K)
Legacy

Even if you create a sequence automatically based on your media, it’s helpful to understand all of the settings because you may discover you need to adjust one or more options for a particular project.

You need to know the kind of video and audio your camera records because your sequence settings will usually be based on your source footage to minimize conversion during playback. Sequence settings presets are named after delivery standards like Broadcast, HD, Social, and UHD. Still, you’ll want to choose an option that is as close as possible to your original media, leaving any conversion to the final output stage.

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to create a new Premiere Pro project and choose sequence settings. You’ll also learn about different kinds of audio tracks and what preview files are.

About seconds and frames

When a camera records video, it captures a series of still images of the action. When it captures enough images each second, the result looks like moving video during playback. Each picture is called a frame, and the number of frames each second is usually called the frames per second (fps) or the recording or playback frame rate.

The fps will vary depending on your camera/video format and settings. It could be any number, including 23.976, 24, 25, 29.97, 30, 50, or 59.94. Most cameras allow you to choose between more than one frame rate and more than one frame size. It's important to know the recording settings for your media so you can be sure you have selected the correct playback options in Premiere Pro

Creating a project

● Note

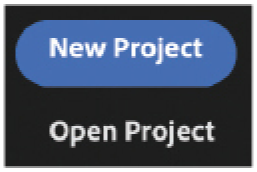
To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding the Option/Alt key while launching the application and then clicking Continue.

Let's begin by creating a new project.

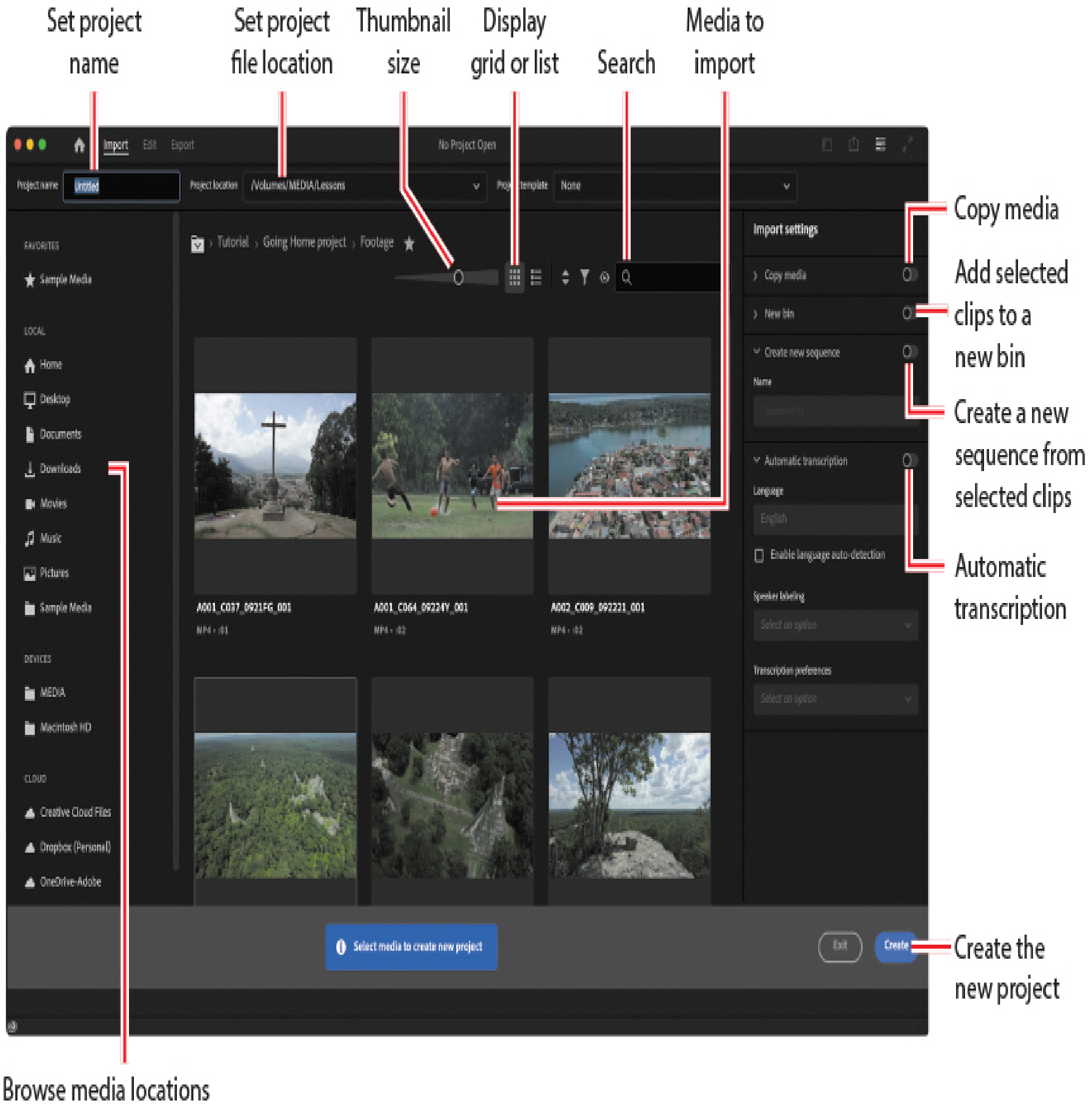
1. Launch Premiere Pro. The Home screen appears. Click the magnifying glass at the top right of the Home screen to open a multipurpose Search screen. If you enter text into the text box at the top of the screen, Premiere Pro will list the names of previously opened project files and tutorials from Adobe Premiere Pro Learn & Support that contain the text. You must be connected to the internet to access the tutorials.
   - **What's new:** Next to the magnifying glass is a gift box icon. Click this to display a list of significant features in the Premiere Pro version you are using.

- **User button:** Next to the gift box icon is a thumbnail of your Adobe ID profile picture. If you just signed up, this may be a generic thumbnail. Click the button to manage your Creative Cloud account online.

2. Click New Project to open Premiere Pro in Import mode, with project creation options displayed.


New Project
Open Project

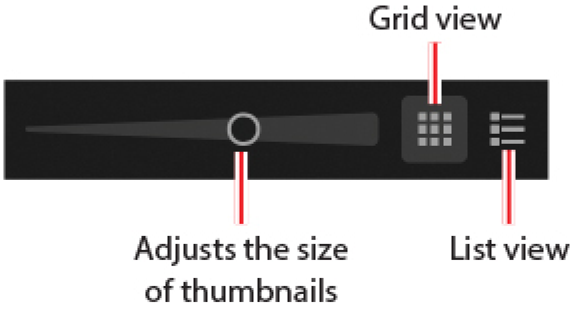
The dialog box that appears serves two purposes.


Set project name
Set project file location
Thumbnail size
Display grid or list
Search
Media to import
Copy media
Add selected clips to a new bin
Create a new sequence from selected clips
Automatic transcription
Create the new project
Browse media locations

While you work on an existing project, this is the screen you'll use to browse and import media. You can also create a new project and sequence here, which is what you're going to do next.

On the left side, you can browse the various storage locations on your system. When you select a location, media files stored there will appear in the middle section of the screen. By default, sample media is displayed.

You can change the size of thumbnails and switch between displaying thumbnails in a grid or a list of items using the controls at the top.



On the right side, there are four options you can select to speed up project creation:

- **Copy Media:** Copies of the media files you have selected will be placed in the location of your choice. Premiere Pro will then use these copies in your project, not the original files. This can be useful if you are adding media from external drives or camera cards that you might remove later.
- **New Bin:** In a project, clips can be organized in containers that work a lot like folders, called *bins*. With this option toggled on, a bin will be added to the project automatically with selected clips placed inside it.
- **Create New Sequence:** Automatically create a sequence with settings that match the first clip you select (for more information on sequence settings, see "Setting up a sequence" later in the lesson).
- **Automatic Transcription:** Automatically transcribe clips to allow Text-Based Editing techniques and fast caption creation.

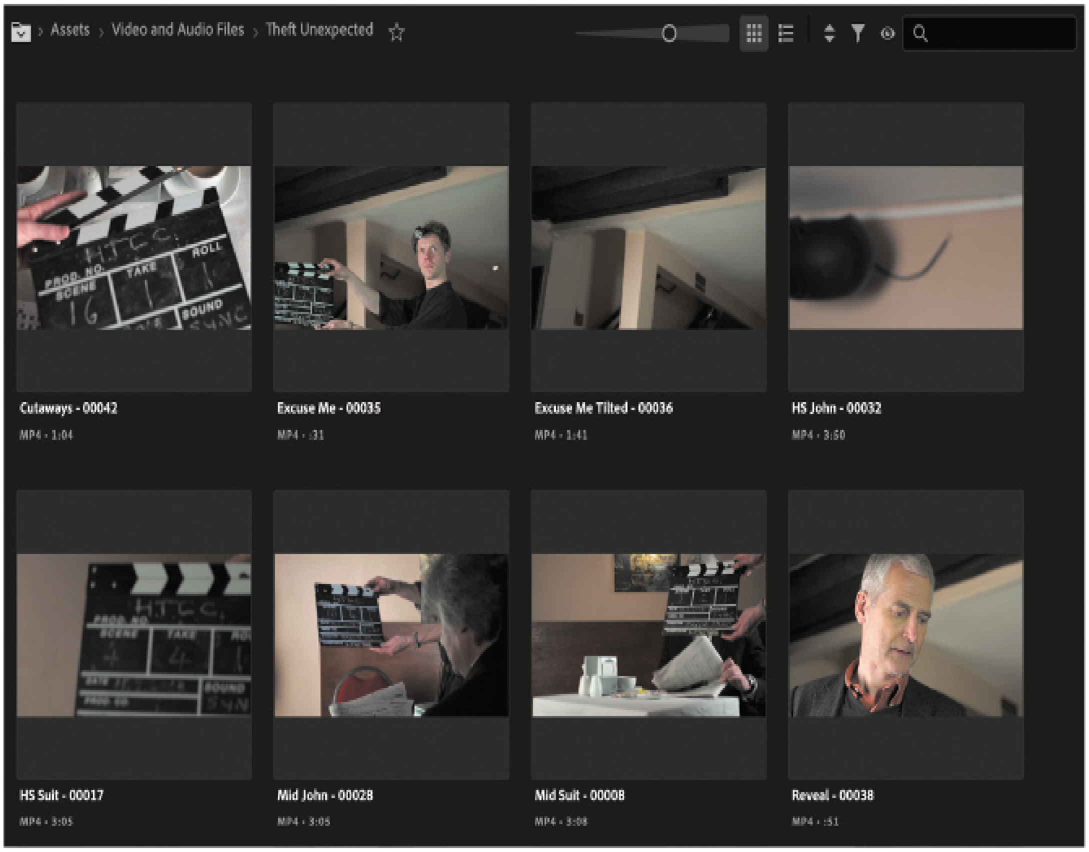
For now, you'll create a new project and sequence with just three clips so you can explore the important settings relating to project sequence setup.

3. Click in the Project Name box, and name your new project **First Project**.
4. Click the Project Location menu and click Choose Location. Browse to the Lessons folder and click Choose to establish this folder as the location for the new project.

● Note

When choosing a location for future project files, you may want to choose a recently used location from the Project Location menu.

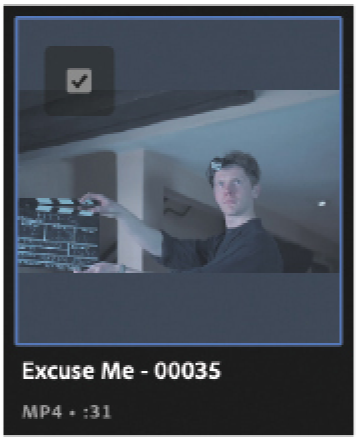
5. From the list of storage locations on the left side of the interface, select the location for the Lessons folder, and then, in the middle of the window, browse to the folder Lessons/Assets/Video And Audio Files/Theft Unexpected. Make sure the display is set to Grid View so you can view the clip thumbnails.

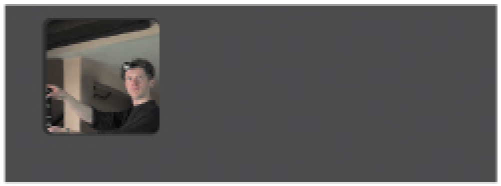

Assets
Video and Audio Files
Theft Unexpected
Cutaways - 00042
MP4 · 1:04
Excuse Me - 00035
MP4 · :31
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036
MP4 · 1:41
HS John - 00032
MP4 · 3:50
HS Suit - 00017
MP4 · 3:05
Mid John - 00028
MP4 · 3:05
Mid Suit - 00008
MP4 · 3:08
Reveal - 00038
MP4 · :51

6. Click the Excuse Me – 00035 clip once to select it. Notice you can hover over thumbnails in the grid view to see a preview of their

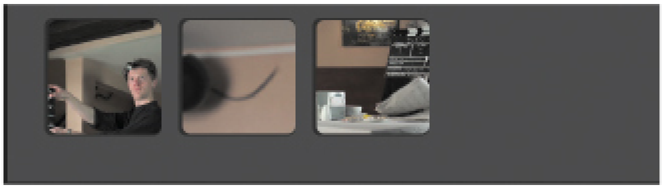
contents.

When you select the clip, Premiere Pro highlights it in blue and adds it to a collection at the bottom of the window.





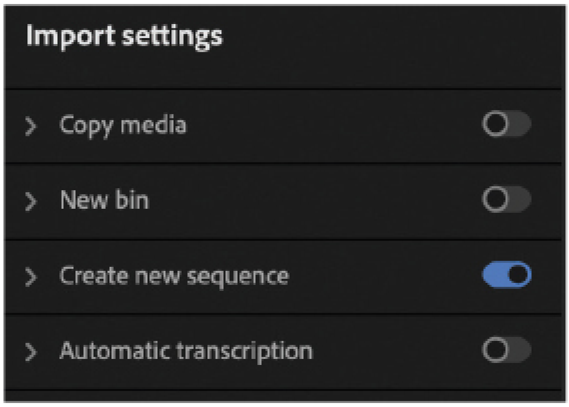
7. Single-click the clip HS John - 00032 and the clip Mid Suit - 00008. Notice all three clips are highlighted in blue and displayed in the collection at the bottom of the window.



   You have now selected three clips to include in your new project. It’s not necessary to select media while creating a project, but it can speed up the process, particularly if you are working on a simple project with few clips.

8. On the right side of the window, in the Import Settings area, make sure Copy Media, New Bin, and Automatic Transcription are toggled off. Make sure Create New Sequence is toggled on.
9. Click Create to create your new project.

   You just created a project with three clips already added along with a sequence, ready and waiting for you to begin editing.



Import settings

Copy media ○

New bin ○

Create new sequence ●

Automatic transcription ○

10. Until now, you have been selecting and resetting workspaces using the Window menu, but there's a handy shortcut: In the upper-right corner, click the Workspaces menu and choose Editing. This opens and positions several interface elements that are commonly used when editing.
11. To ensure you are viewing the default version of the Editing workspace, open the Workspaces menu again, and choose Reset To Saved Layout.
12. This is probably a good time to save your work. Choose File > Save.

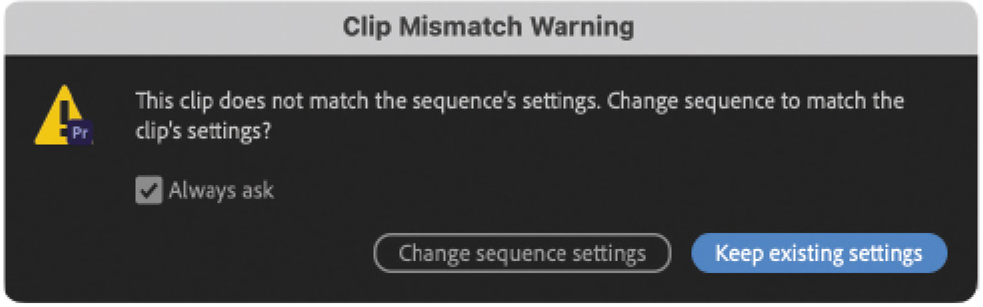
Setting up a sequence

In your Premiere Pro project, you will create a sequence (or several sequences) into which you'll place video clips, audio clips, and graphics. A *sequence* is an item that appears in your project, a little like an empty bucket that you will fill with clips. Just like media files, sequences have a frame rate (frames per second) and frame size (image resolution). If a clip has a frame rate or frame size that doesn't match the sequence settings, it's converted during playback. This automatic process of adapting all clips in a sequence to match the sequence settings (if necessary) is called *conforming*.

Each sequence in your project can have different settings. You'll generally want to choose settings that match your original media as precisely as possible to minimize conforming during playback. Matching the settings reduces the work your system must do to play your clips, improving playback performance and maximizing image quality.

If you’re editing a project with mixed-format media, you may have to choose which media to match with your sequence settings. You can mix formats easily, but because playback performance improves when the clips match the sequence settings, you’ll often choose settings that match the majority of your media files.

If the first clip you add to a sequence does not match the settings of your sequence, Premiere Pro checks if you would like to change the sequence settings automatically to match it.



Clip Mismatch Warning

This clip does not match the sequence's settings. Change sequence to match the clip's settings?

☑ Always ask

When you’re starting out in video editing, you may find the number of available file types, codecs, and formats a little overwhelming. Premiere Pro can work natively with a wide range of video and audio formats and codecs and will often play mismatched formats smoothly.

However, when Premiere Pro has to adjust video for playback because of mismatched sequence settings, your editing system must work harder to play the video, and this will impact real-time performance (you might experience more dropped frames that make the playback appear to freeze occasionally). It’s worth taking the time before you start editing to make sure the sequence settings closely match your original media files.

The essential factors for video formats are always the same: the number of frames per second, the frame size (the number of pixels in the picture horizontally and vertically), and the audio format (Stereo, Mono, or 5.1 Surround Sound). If you were to turn your sequence into a media file without applying a conversion to it, then the frame rate, audio format, frame size, and so on for the new file would all match whichever settings you chose when you created the sequence.

When you output your sequence to a file, you can choose any format you like (for more on exporting, see Lesson 16, “Exporting Frames, Clips, and

Sequences”).

Creating a sequence that automatically matches your source

If you’re not sure what sequence settings you should choose, don’t worry. Premiere Pro can create a sequence based on your clip. In fact, you have already made a sequence this way, while creating your project.

You can also automatically create a new sequence with matching settings in the Project panel. At the bottom of the Project panel, you’ll find the New Item menu. You may need to resize the panel to see the icon. Use this menu to create new items for your project, including sequences, captions, and color mattes (full-screen color graphics useful for backgrounds).

To automatically create a sequence with format settings that match your media, drag any clip (or multiple clips, or even a whole bin) in the Project panel onto the New Item menu. A new sequence will be created with the same name as the first clip selected, as well as a matching frame size and frame rate.

You can also select one or more clips, right-click the selection, and choose New Sequence From Clip.

Using this method, you can be confident your sequence settings will work with your media. If the Timeline panel is empty, you can also drag a clip (or multiple clips) into it to create a sequence with matching settings.

Choosing the correct preset

If you know exactly the settings you need for a new sequence, you can configure the sequence settings precisely. If you’re not so sure, you can begin with a preset.

1. Click the New Item menu at the lower-right corner of the Project panel now and choose Sequence.

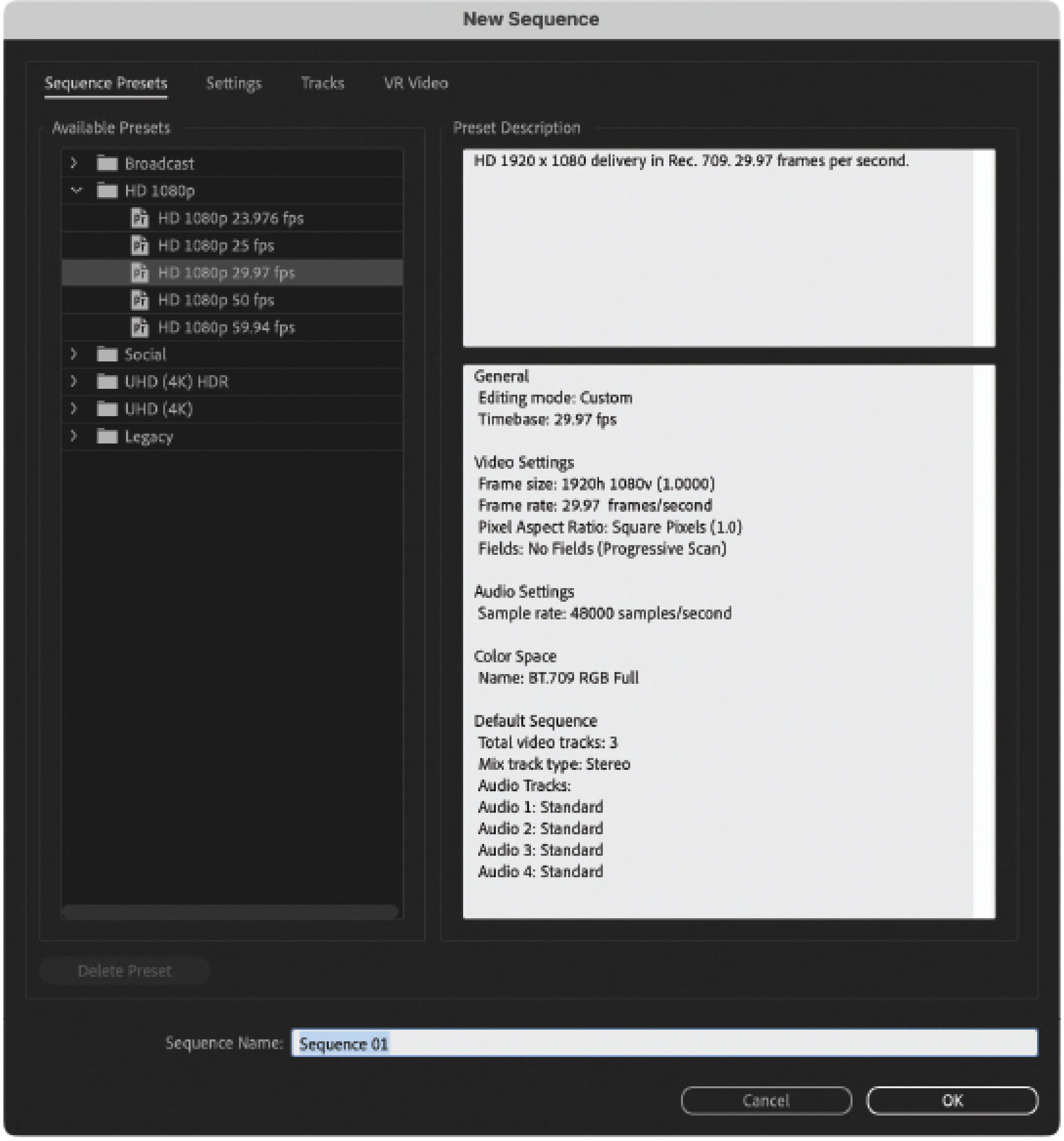
Tip

You can also press the keyboard shortcut Command+N (macOS) or Ctrl+N (Windows) to open the New Sequence dialog box.

Note

The Preset Description area on the right side of the Sequence Presets tab often describes the kind of camera used to capture media in this format.

The New Sequence dialog box has four tabs: Sequence Presets, Settings, Tracks, and VR Video.


New Sequence
Sequence Presets
Settings
Tracks
VR Video
Available Presets
Broadcast
HD 1080p
HD 1080p 23.976 fps
HD 1080p 25 fps
HD 1080p 29.97 fps
HD 1080p 50 fps
HD 1080p 59.94 fps
Social
UHD (4K) HDR
UHD (4K)
Legacy
Preset Description
Delete Preset
Cancel
OK

HD 1920 x 1080 delivery in Rec. 709. 29.97 frames per second.

General
Editing mode: Custom
Timebase: 29.97 fps

Video Settings
Frame size: 1920h 1080v (1.0000)
Frame rate: 29.97 frames/second
Pixel Aspect Ratio: Square Pixels (1.0)
Fields: No Fields (Progressive Scan)

Audio Settings
Sample rate: 48000 samples/second

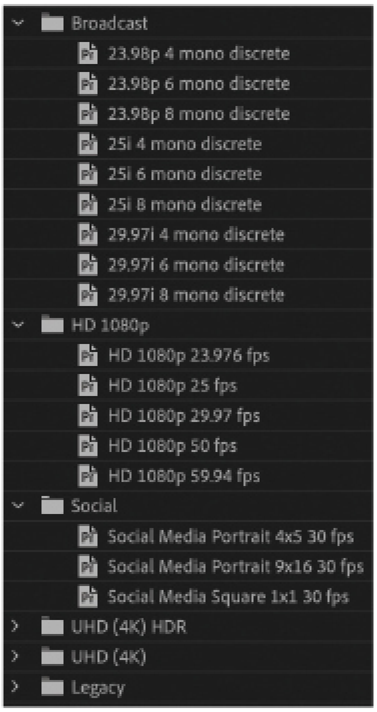
Color Space
Name: BT.709 RGB Full

Default Sequence
Total video tracks: 3
Mix track type: Stereo
Audio Tracks:
Audio 1: Standard
Audio 2: Standard
Audio 3: Standard
Audio 4: Standard

Sequence Name: Sequence 01

When you choose a preset, Premiere Pro applies several settings that control the way video clips will be displayed when added to the sequence. After choosing a preset, you can adjust these settings on the Settings tab if necessary.

You’ll find a wide range of preset configuration options for the most commonly used media formats, grouped based on delivery formats. There are also several legacy presets used by previous versions of Premiere Pro.


Broadcast
23.98p 4 mono discrete
23.98p 6 mono discrete
23.98p 8 mono discrete
25i 4 mono discrete
25i 6 mono discrete
25i 8 mono discrete
29.97i 4 mono discrete
29.97i 6 mono discrete
29.97i 8 mono discrete
HD 1080p
HD 1080p 23.976 fps
HD 1080p 25 fps
HD 1080p 29.97 fps
HD 1080p 50 fps
HD 1080p 59.94 fps
Social
Social Media Portrait 4x5 30 fps
Social Media Portrait 9x16 30 fps
Social Media Square 1x1 30 fps
UHD (4K) HDR
UHD (4K)
Legacy

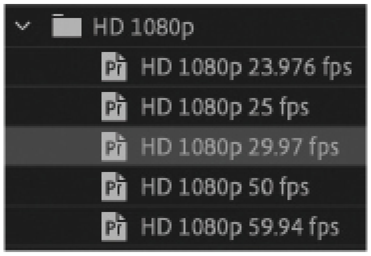
You can click the disclosure triangle to see specific formats in a group. These are typically designed around frame rates and frame sizes. Let’s look at an example.

2. Click the disclosure triangle next to the group HD 1080p.

   You can now see five options based on frame rates, all with the same frame size. Remember that video cameras can often shoot video using multiple frame rates.

3. Select the HD 1080p 29.97 fps preset by clicking its name.

   For this sequence, use the default settings. Take a moment to familiarize yourself with the description displayed on the right.



HD 1080p

HD 1080p 23.976 fps

HD 1080p 25 fps

HD 1080p 29.97 fps

HD 1080p 50 fps

HD 1080p 59.94 fps

4. Click in the Sequence Name box, and name your sequence **First Sequence**.
5. Click OK to create the sequence.

   You now have two sequences in the Project panel, Sequence 01 and First Sequence, and they have confusingly similar names! Even with a simple project of this kind, it's clear that staying organized is important.

   ● **Note**

   The name Sequence 01 is the default name given to sequences created when you use Import mode. To change it, expand the Create New Sequence setting and enter a new name in the Name field.

6. Choose File > Save.

   Congratulations! You have made a new project with Premiere Pro.

Codecs and formats

Codec is a shortening of the words *coder* and *decoder*. It’s the way video and audio information is stored and replayed.

A file used to store video and/or audio, such as QuickTime MOV, MP4, or MXF, is a *container* that can contain one of many different video and audio codec configurations.

The media file is referred to as the *wrapper*, and the video and audio inside the file, stored using a codec, are sometimes referred to as the essence.

If you output your finished sequence to a file, you’ll choose a format, a file type, and a codec.

The word *format* has multiple meanings depending on the context.

A format is a frame rate, frame size, audio sample rate, and so on. The word is also used to describe a type of media file or a collection of settings that incorporate both the visual and sound settings and the type of codec used, and its configuration.

For clarity, in this book we tend to use the word *format* to describe the frame rate, frame size, audio sample rate, and so on.

Customizing sequence settings

Once you’ve selected the sequence preset that most closely matches your source video, you may want to adjust the settings to meet a particular delivery requirement or in-house workflow. Let’s take a look at those settings.

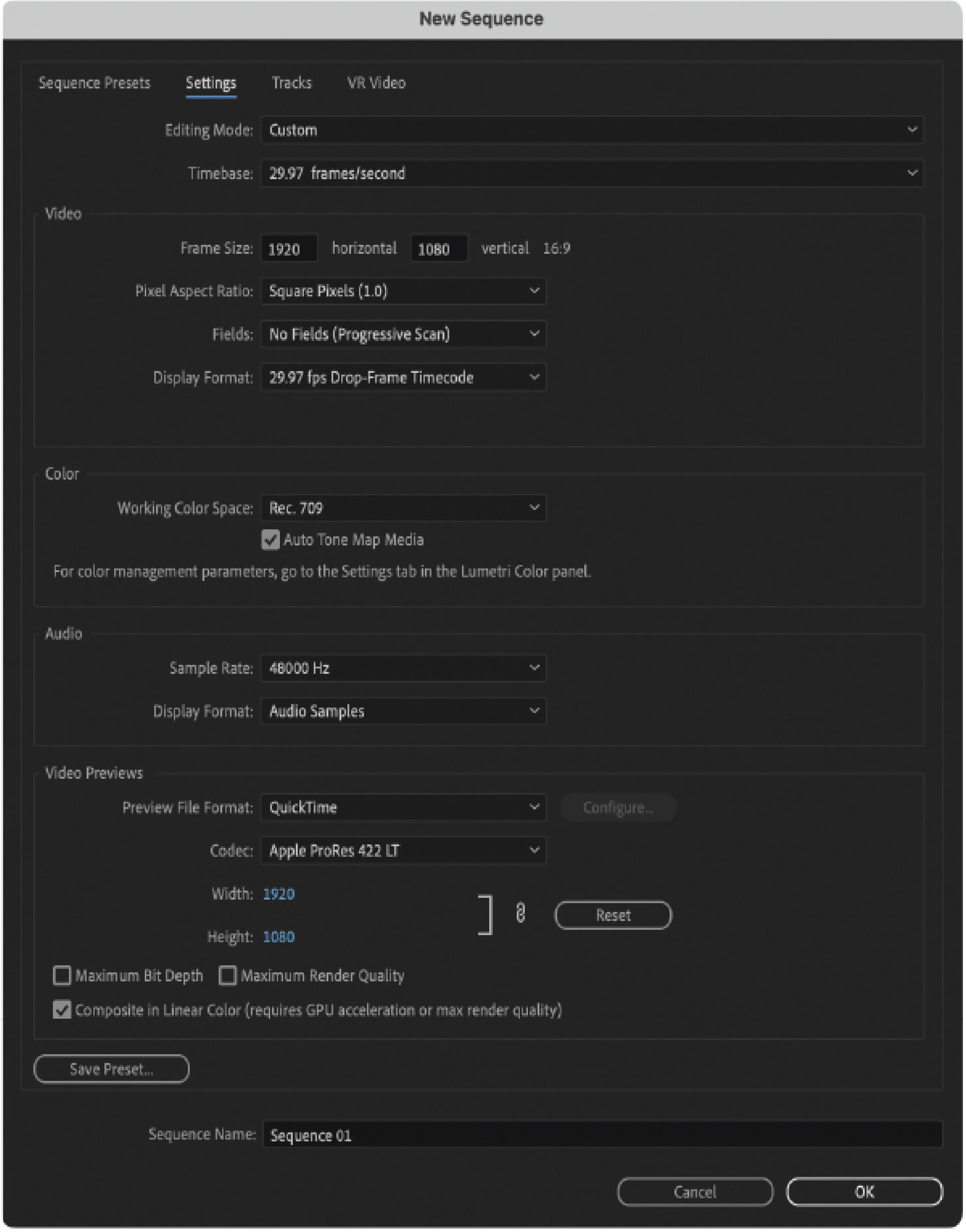
1. Choose File > New > Sequence.
2. Choose the HD 1080p 29.97 fps preset again by clicking its name. This lets you view the settings while reading about them.

Premiere Pro will automatically conform footage you add to your timeline so that it matches your sequence settings, giving you a standard frame rate and frame size, regardless of the original clip format. This makes the sequence settings a critical part of your project configuration.

▶ Tip

You created a new sequence using the File menu this time. There are often several ways to achieve the same goal in Premiere Pro.

3. Click Settings at the top of the dialog box.


New Sequence
Sequence Presets
Settings
Tracks
VR Video
Video
Color
Audio
Video Previews
Configure...
Reset
Save Preset...
Cancel
OK

Editing Mode: Custom

Timebase: 29.97 frames/second

Frame Size: 1920 horizontal 1080 vertical 16:9

Pixel Aspect Ratio: Square Pixels (1.0)

Fields: No Fields (Progressive Scan)

Display Format: 29.97 fps Drop-Frame Timecode

Working Color Space: Rec. 709

☑ Auto Tone Map Media

For color management parameters, go to the Settings tab in the Lumetri Color panel.

Sample Rate: 48000 Hz

Display Format: Audio Samples

Preview File Format: QuickTime

Codec: Apple ProRes 422 LT

Width: 1920

Height: 1080

☐ Maximum Bit Depth ☐ Maximum Render Quality

☑ Composite in Linear Color (requires GPU acceleration or max render quality)

Sequence Name: Sequence 01

Tip

If you wanted to produce a square video for social media, you could change the frame size to 1080x1080 (or any other square resolution). To access the Frame Size options, use the Editing Mode menu to choose Custom.

You chose a 29.97 fps (frames per second) preset, which is used when broadcasting NTSC video on traditional TV networks.

Creating a sequence preset

Although the standard presets usually work, you may sometimes need to create a custom preset. To do so quickly, first choose a sequence preset that matches your media closely, and then make custom selections in the Settings and Tracks areas of the New Sequence dialog box. Having adjusted the settings, you can save your custom preset for future use by clicking the Save Preset button near the bottom of the Settings area.

When you save a preset, you can give your customized sequence settings preset a name in the Save Sequence Preset dialog box, add notes if you want, and click OK. The preset will appear in a Custom folder with the other sequence presets.

4. If your media matches the selected preset, it's not necessary to change the settings. Take a moment to look at each setting in the New Sequence dialog box to build familiarity with the choices required to configure a sequence.

   The new sequence you are creating is intended for online distribution only, so change the Timebase to **30 frames/second** to accurately measure playback speed.

   The Editing Mode menu can be used to limit the options available to settings that best match specific types of media. Some options will make several menus unavailable to help avoid choosing incompatible options. For complete flexibility, keep the menu set to Custom.

Maximum Bit Depth and Maximum Render Quality sequence settings

When you’re editing with GPU acceleration (that’s when dedicated computer graphics hardware performs some of the visual effects rendering and playback), advanced algorithms are used, and effects that support it always render in 32-bit color—which is very high quality.

When working without GPU acceleration, you can enable Maximum Bit Depth, and Premiere Pro will render effects at the maximum quality possible. For many effects, this means 32-bit floating-point color, which allows for trillions of color combinations. This is the best possible quality for your effects but is more work for your computer, so you may get lower performance in real-time playback (unwanted video freezing during playback).

If you enable the Maximum Render Quality option or if you have GPU acceleration enabled in the project’s settings, Premiere Pro uses a more advanced system for *transforms* (those are visual adjustments such as scaling, rotation, and repositioning). Without this option, you might see minor artifacts or noise in the picture when you perform transforms.

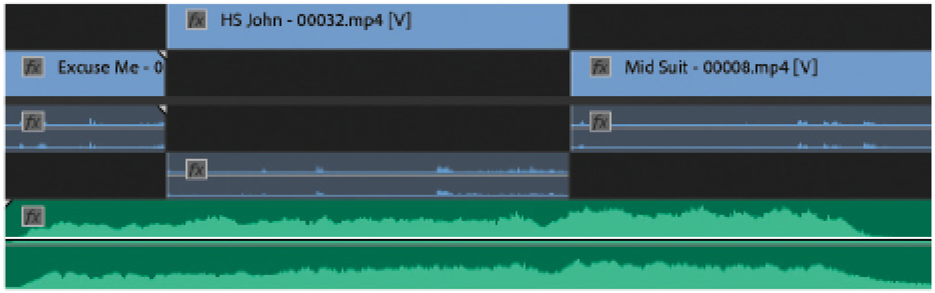
Both of these options can be turned off or on at any time, so you can edit without them to maximize performance and then enable them in the export settings when you output your finished work. Even with both options enabled you can use real-time effects and expect reasonable performance from Premiere Pro.

For a more detailed explanation of these settings, see: *blog.frame.io/2021/06/07/premiere-pro-max-render-quality-max-bit-depth*.

5. Click the Tracks tab to view those settings. You’ll explore these in the next step.

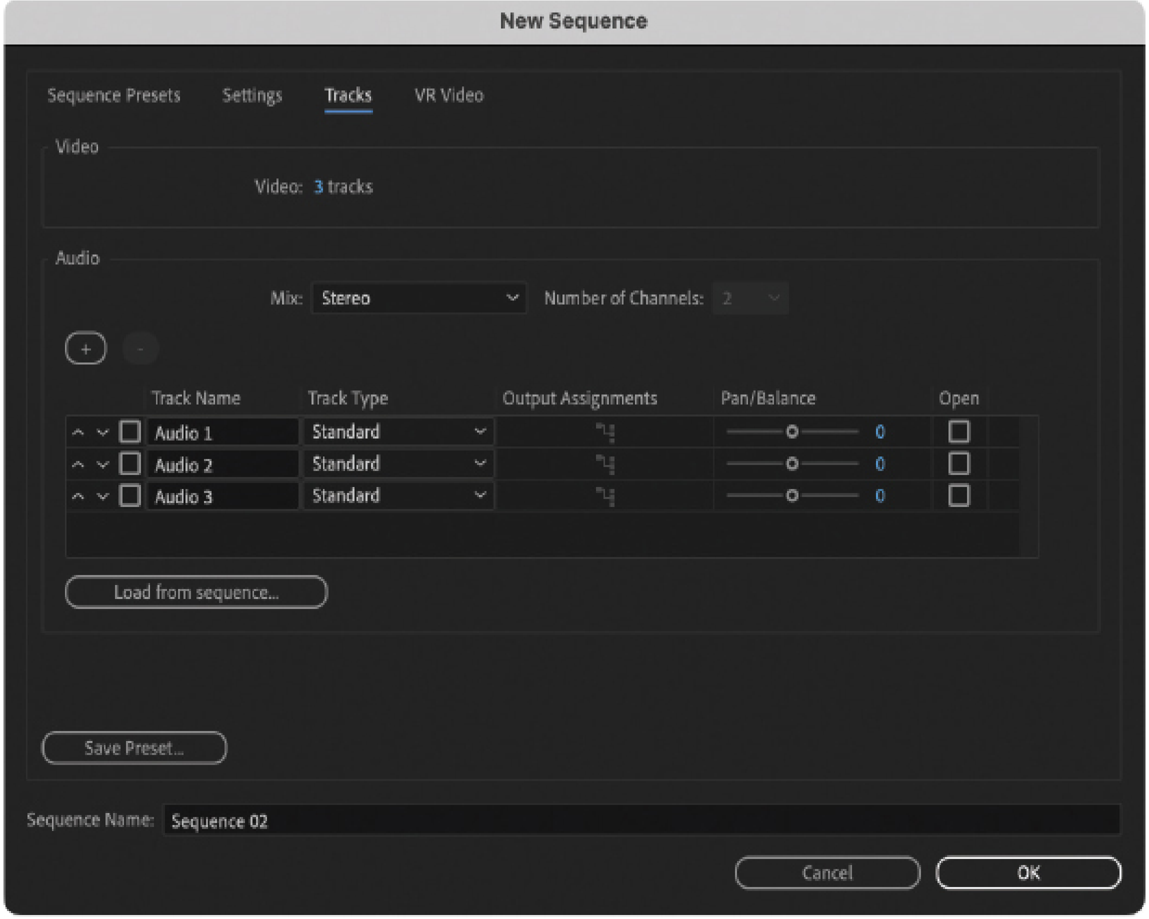
Understanding audio track types

When you add a video or audio clip to a sequence, you’ll always put it on a *track* in the Timeline panel. Tracks are horizontal areas in the Timeline panel that hold clips in a particular position in time.



There is more than one video track, and video clips placed on an upper track will appear in front of clips on a lower track. For example, if you have text or a graphic on your second video track and a video clip on your first video track (below it), you’ll see the graphic in front of the video.

The Tracks tab in the New Sequence dialog box allows you to preselect the track types for the new sequence. You can add or remove tracks at any time while editing, so these options are perhaps most useful when creating a custom sequence preset with names already assigned to audio tracks.



Video: 3 tracks

Mix: Stereo

Number of Channels: 2

	Track Name	Track Type	Output Assignments	Pan/Balance	Open
☐	Audio 1	Standard		0	☐
☐	Audio 2	Standard		0	☐
☐	Audio 3	Standard		0	☐

Sequence Name: Sequence 02

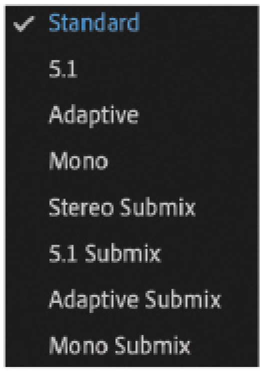
All audio tracks are played at the same time to create a combined audio mix. To create a mix, simply position your audio clips on different tracks, lined up in time. Narration, sound bites, sound effects, and music can be organized by putting them on different tracks. You can also rename tracks, making it easier to find your way around more complex sequences.

Premiere Pro lets you specify how many video and audio tracks will be included when the new sequence is created. The setting you choose from the Audio > Mix menu configures the sequence audio mix output your sequence will produce. This can be Stereo, 5.1, Multichannel, or Mono. You can’t change this setting later, so choose carefully when creating a new sequence. For now, leave this set to Stereo (the default).

An audio track can be one of several types. Each track type is designed for a specific type of audio clip. When you choose a particular track type from the menu in the Track Type column, Premiere Pro shows the right controls to make adjustments to the sound, based on the number of audio channels in the track. For example, stereo clips need different controls than 5.1 surround-sound clips.

The types of audio tracks are:

- **Standard:** These tracks are for both mono and stereo audio clips.
- **5.1:** These tracks are for audio clips with 5.1 audio (the kind used for surround-sound mixes).
- **Adaptive:** Adaptive tracks are for mono, stereo, or multichannel audio and give you precise control over the output routing for each audio channel. For example, you could decide the track audio channel 3 should be output to your mix in channel 5. This workflow is used for multilingual TV, where precise control of audio channels is used at the point of transmission.



- **Mono:** This track type will accept only mono audio clips.

The Submix options available in the Track Type menu are used in advanced audio mixing workflows that are beyond the scope of this book.

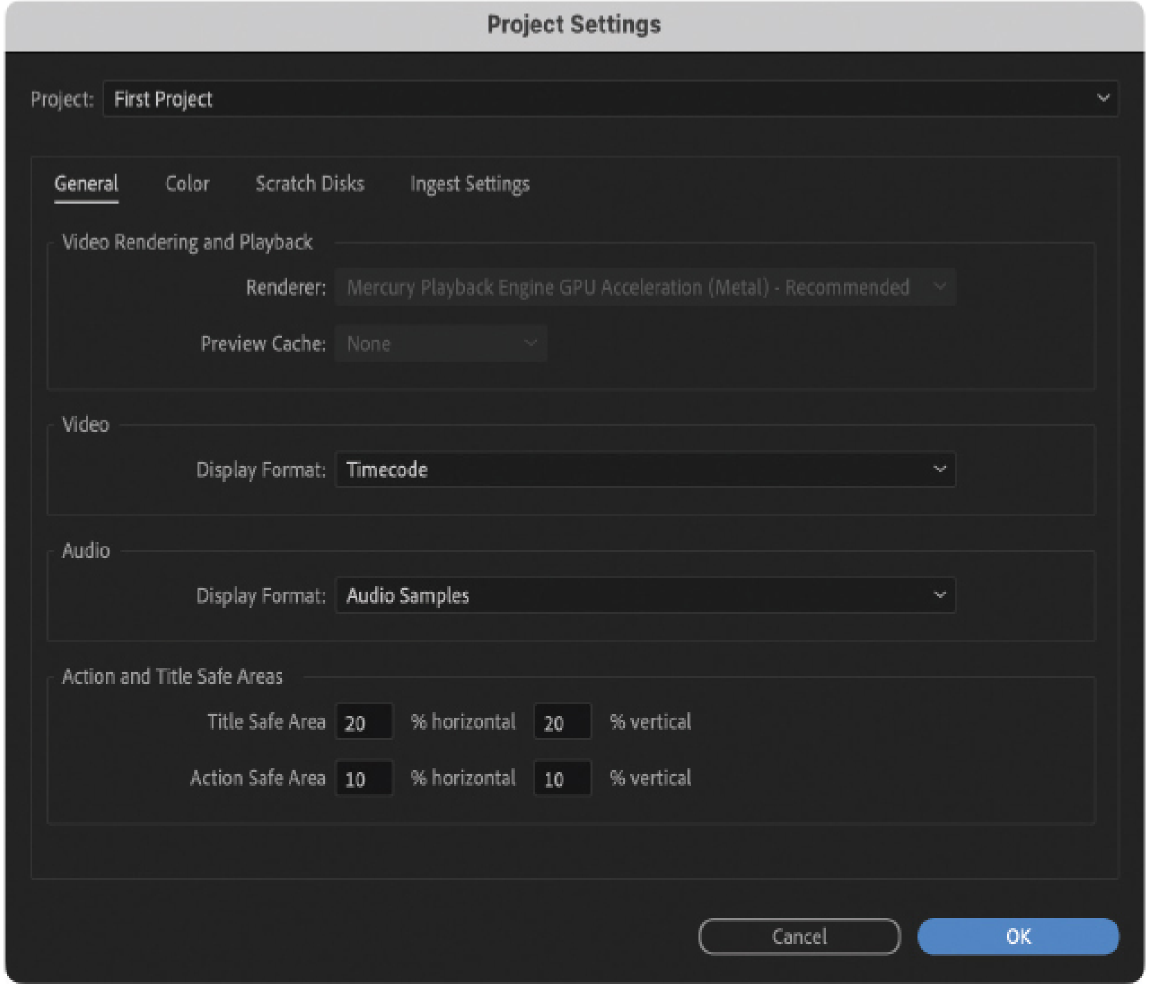
You can’t accidentally put an audio clip on the wrong kind of track. Premiere Pro makes sure clips go to the right kind of track. In fact, when you add a clip to a sequence, Premiere Pro will automatically create the right kind of track if one doesn’t exist already.

You’ll explore audio more in Lesson 10, “Editing and Mixing Audio.” For now, click Cancel to close the New Sequence dialog box.

Exploring the Project Settings dialog box

Now that you have created a new project and added sequences and clips, let’s explore the important options available in the Project Settings dialog box.

Choose File > Project Settings > General to open the Project Settings dialog box for your current project.



Project: First Project

Video Rendering and Playback

Renderer: Mercury Playback Engine GPU Acceleration (Metal) - Recommended

Preview Cache: None

Video

Display Format: Timecode

Audio

Display Format: Audio Samples

Action and Title Safe Areas

Title Safe Area 20 % horizontal 20 % vertical

Action Safe Area 10 % horizontal 10 % vertical

You can modify any of these settings at any time, so don’t worry about getting things wrong.

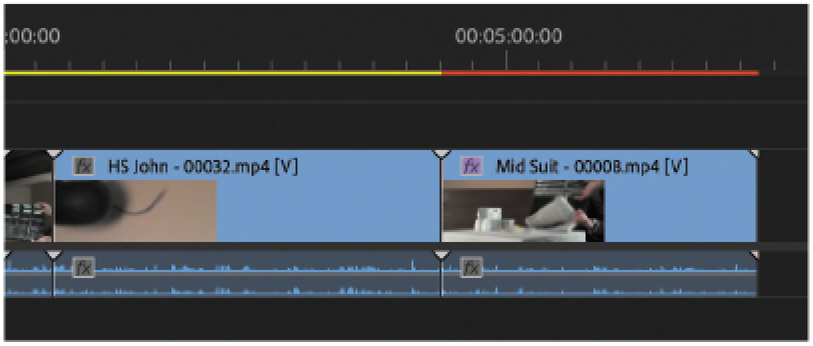
Choose video rendering and playback settings

While you’re working creatively with video clips in your sequences, it’s likely you will apply some visual effects to adjust the appearance of your footage. Some special effects can be played immediately, combining your original video with the effect and displaying the results as soon as you click Play. When this happens, it’s called *real-time playback*.

Real-time playback is desirable because it means you can watch the results of your creative choices right away, staying in your creative flow without waiting.

If you use lots of effects on a clip or if you use effects that are not designed for real-time playback, your computer may not be able to display the results at the full frame rate. Premiere Pro will attempt to display your video clips, combined with the special effects, but it may not show every single frame each second. When this happens, it’s described as *dropping* frames.

Premiere Pro displays colored lines along the top of the Timeline panel, where you build sequences, to tell you when extra work is required to play back your video. No line, a green line, or a yellow line means Premiere Pro expects to be able to play without dropping frames. A red line means Premiere Pro expects to drop frames when playing that section of the sequence.



● **Note**

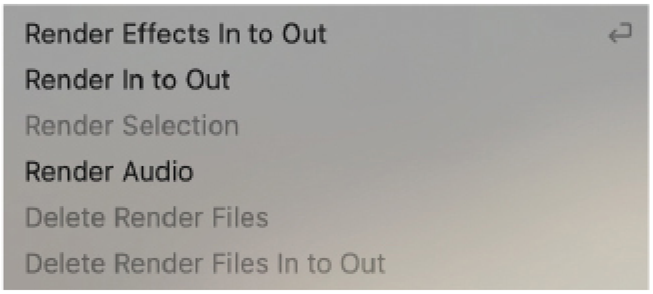
> A red line at the top of the Timeline panel doesn’t mean frames definitely will be dropped. It just means visual adjustments aren’t accelerated, so on a less powerful machine dropped frames are more likely.

If you can’t see every frame when you play your sequence, it’s okay! It won’t affect the final results. When you’re done editing and you output your finished sequence, it’ll be full quality, with all the frames intact (more on this in Lesson 16).

Real-time playback can make a difference to your editing experience and your ability to preview the effects you apply with confidence. If frames are being dropped, there is a simple solution: preview rendering.

When you render, Premiere Pro creates new media files that look like the results of your effects work and then plays back those files in place of the original footage. The rendered preview is a regular video file, so playback is at reasonable quality and full frame rate, without your computer having to do any extra work.

You render effects in a sequence by choosing a render command from the Sequence menu.


Render Effects In to Out
Render In to Out
Render Selection
Render Audio
Delete Render Files
Delete Render Files In to Out

▶ Tip

Many menu items display a keyboard shortcut on the right. In this case, the shortcut for Render Effects In To Out is Return (macOS) or Enter (Windows).

What do *rendering* and *real time* mean?

Rendering visual effects is a little like producing an artist's rendering with a pencil. Drawing an image takes up paper and time—both of which are limited resources.

When you render a section of a sequence, it takes time, and a new media file is created.

For example, imagine you have a piece of video that is too dark. You add a visual effect to make it brighter, but the video-editing system you are using is unable to both play the original video and make it brighter at the same time. In this situation, you'd have your system render the effect, creating a new temporary video file that looks like the original video combined with the visual effect that makes it brighter.

When your edited sequence plays, sections that are rendered display the newly rendered video file instead of the original clip (or clips). The process is invisible and seamless. In this example, the rendered file would look like the original video file but brighter.

When the part of your sequence with the brightened clip has finished playing, your system invisibly and seamlessly switches back from playing that preview file to playing the other original video files in the sequence.

Rendering takes up extra media storage space, and it takes time. Also, because you're viewing a new video file that is a copy of your original media, there might be some minor loss of quality. Once a section of your sequence is rendered, you will be able to preview the results of your effect smoothly with the Playback Resolution set to Full.

Real-time playback, by contrast, is immediate! When using a real-time effect, your system plays the original video clip combined with the effect right away, without waiting for the effect to render. The only limitation with real-time performance is that the amount you can do without rendering depends on how powerful your system is. More effects require more work to play back, for example. You can dramatically improve real-time performance by using the right kind of graphics card (see the sidebar “The Mercury Playback Engine”). Plus, you’ll need to use effects that are designed for GPU acceleration (not all effects are).

Back in the Project Settings dialog box, in the Video Rendering And Playback settings on the General tab, if the Renderer menu is available, it means more than one option is available.

The menu has two types of settings you will choose between:

- **Mercury Playback Engine GPU Acceleration:** If you choose this rendering option, Premiere Pro will send many playback tasks to the graphics hardware on your computer, giving you lots of real-time effects and smooth preview playback of mixed formats in your sequences. You may see an option to use CUDA, OpenCL, or Metal for GPU acceleration, depending on your graphics hardware and your operating system. Performance can vary, and some graphics hardware configurations allow multiple types of acceleration, so you may need to experiment to find the best option for your system. On macOS, you will only be able to use Metal. Some advanced system GPU configurations also allow you to choose a persistent Preview Cache in Premiere Pro to improve playback. You’ll want to experiment with this option for optimum playback performance.
- **Mercury Playback Engine Software Only:** This mode will still usually give acceptable performance. If your system does not have graphics hardware that can be used for GPU acceleration, only this option will be available, and you won’t be able to open the Renderer menu.

You will almost certainly want to choose GPU acceleration and benefit from the additional performance if you can. However, if you experience performance or stability issues using GPU acceleration, choose the Software Only option in this menu. You can change these options at any time—including in the middle of working on a project.

Choose a GPU option now, if it’s available.

The Mercury Playback Engine

The Mercury Playback Engine, which decodes and displays video files in Premiere Pro, has three main features.

- **Playback performance:** Premiere Pro plays back video files efficiently, even when working with video formats that are difficult to play back, such as H.264, H.265, or AVCHD. If you’re filming with a DSLR camera or phone camera, for example, chances are your media is recorded using the H.264 codec. Thanks to the Mercury Playback Engine, you’ll find that these files play back smoothly. If your GPU supports hardware acceleration (see CUDA, OpenCL, Apple Metal, and Intel graphics support), you can improve playback performance by enabling hardware-accelerated decoding in the Premiere Pro Media Preferences.
- **64-bit and multithreading:** Premiere Pro can use all the random-access memory (RAM) on your computer. This is particularly useful when you’re working with high-definition or ultra-high-definition video (for example, 4K and above). The Mercury Playback Engine is multithreaded, which means it uses all the CPU cores in your computer. The more powerful your computer is, the higher the performance you’ll see in Premiere Pro.
- **CUDA, OpenCL, Apple Metal, and Intel graphics support:** If you have the right graphics hardware, Premiere Pro can send some of the work for playing back video to the graphics card, rather than putting the entire processing burden on the CPU in your computer. The results are even better performance and responsiveness when working with sequences, and many special effects will play in real time, without dropping frames.

For more information about supported graphics cards, see: *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/system-requirements.xhtml*.

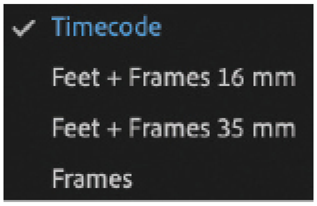
Choosing the video and audio display formats

The next two areas of the General tab in the Project Settings dialog box allow you to choose how Premiere Pro should display time for your video and audio clips.

In most cases, you’ll want the default options: From the Video Display Format menu, choose Timecode, and from the Audio Display Format menu, choose Audio Samples. These settings don’t change the way Premiere Pro plays video or audio clips, only the way time measurement is displayed—and you can change the settings at any time.

The Video Display Format menu

There are four options for Video Display Format. The correct choice for a given project largely depends on whether you are working with video or celluloid film as your source material. It’s rare to produce content using film, so if you are not sure, choose Timecode.



The choices are as follows:

- Timecode: This is the default option. Timecode is a universal system for counting hours, minutes, seconds, and individual frames of video. The same system is used by cameras, professional video recorders, and nonlinear editing systems around the world.
- **Feet + Frames 16mm or Feet + Frames 35mm:** This is used if your source files are captured from celluloid film and you intend to give your editing decisions to a lab so it can cut the original negative.
- **Frames:** This option counts the number of frames of video. This is sometimes used for animation projects.

For now, leave the menu set to Timecode.

The Audio Display Format menu

For audio files, time can be displayed as samples or milliseconds.

✓ Audio Samples
Milliseconds

The choices are as follows:

- **Audio Samples:** When digital audio is recorded, the sound level (technically, the air pressure level) captured by the microphone is sampled thousands of times a second. In the case of most professional video cameras, this happens 48,000 times per second. When playing clips and sequences, you can choose to display (and edit) audio time as hours, minutes, seconds, and *frames*, or as hours, minutes, seconds, and *samples*.
- **Milliseconds:** With this mode chosen, audio time can be displayed as hours, minutes, seconds, and *thousandths of a second* instead of samples.

By default, you can zoom the Timeline panel enough to view individual clip segment frames. However, you can easily switch to showing the audio display format instead. This powerful feature lets you make the tiniest adjustments to your audio.

For now, leave the Audio Display Format option set to Audio Samples.

Action and Title Safe areas

When creating projects intended for home TVs, you’ll probably need to compensate for the way TVs crop the edge of the picture to produce a clean edge.

Traditionally, there are two areas to be concerned with:

- **Action Safe:** The image area that might be cropped on most TVs; keep important image content inside this area.
- **Title Safe:** The image area that might be cropped on a really badly calibrated TV; keep titles inside this area so they will always be

readable and not cropped by the edge of the screen.

Premiere Pro can display onscreen overlay guides to indicate the Title Safe and Action Safe areas. You’ll want to consider the type of screen you are delivering for carefully before using the guides. Modern screens, for example, have smaller margins than older displays, showing more of the image. See Lesson 4, “Organizing Media,” to learn more about configuring onscreen overlays.

Color Management settings

Premiere Pro offers support for High-Dynamic Range (HDR) video, which allows you to capture and produce video content with much more dynamic range between the dark and light areas of the frame and more saturated colors. HDR is beyond the scope of this book but is well worth exploring as it is quickly becoming an industry standard for broadcast and online video delivery.

Producing HDR content requires a camera capable of capturing the content, an editing system that supports it (Premiere Pro), and a screen capable of displaying it.

The Color tab provides advanced options for handling the interpretation and display of color and brightness information in clips and sequences. There are shortcuts for these settings in the Lumetri Color panel, which you will explore in Chapter 13, “Applying Color Correction and Grading.”

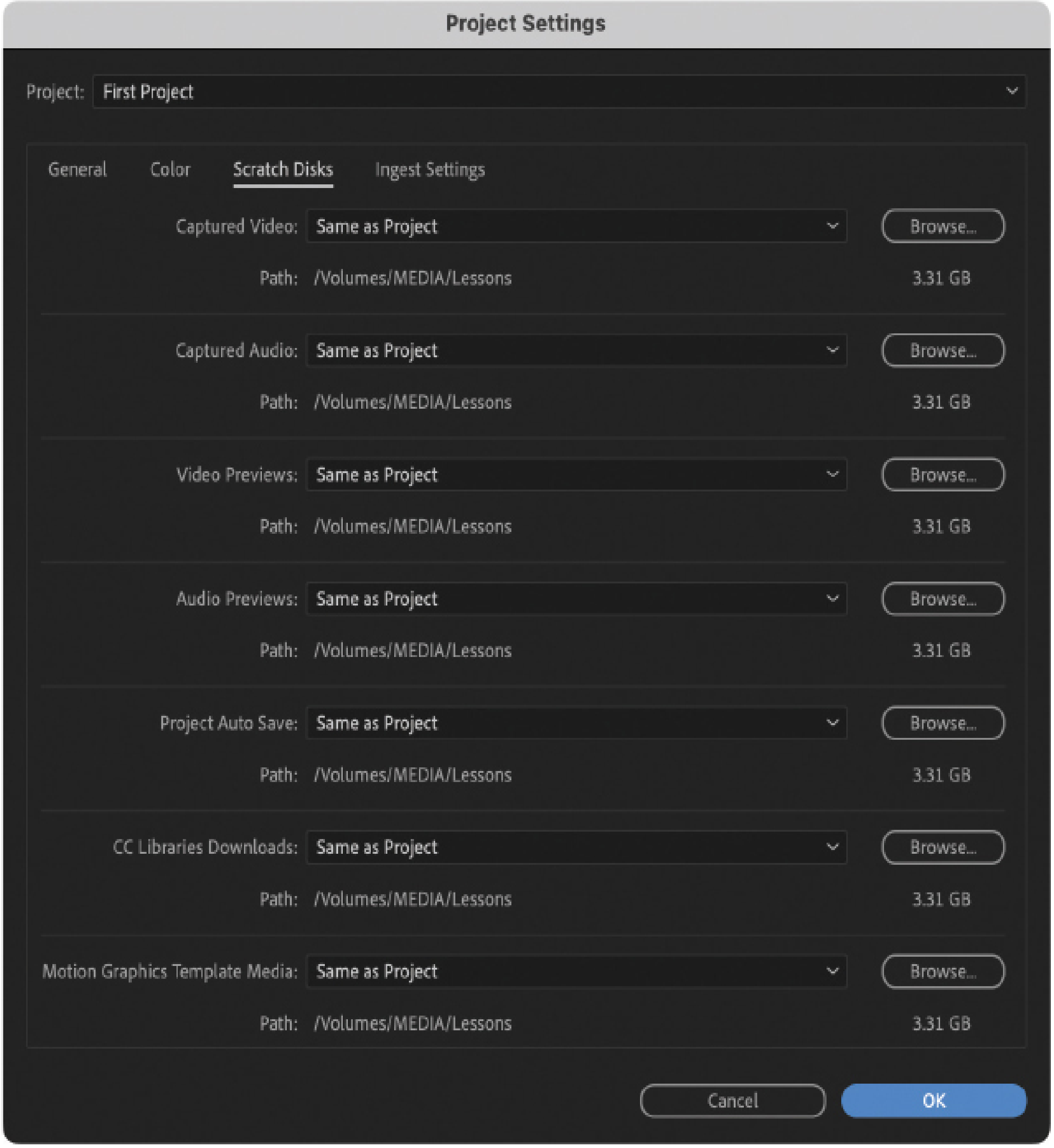
For now, click the Scratch Disks tab to view the options.

Setting up the scratch disks

Whenever Premiere Pro renders special effects, saves backup copies of the project file, downloads content from Adobe Stock, or imports animated motion graphics templates, or whenever you record a voiceover, it creates new files.

The various *scratch disks* are the storage locations where Premiere Pro stores these files. Although they are described as disks, they are actually folders. Some of the files that are stored will be temporary, and some will be new media created in Premiere Pro or imported.

Scratch disks can be stored on physically separate drives or in any subfolder on your storage. Scratch disks can be located all in the same place or in separate locations, depending on your hardware and workflow requirements. If you’re working with really large media files, you may get a performance boost by putting each scratch disk on a physically separate hard drive.



Project: First Project

Captured Video: Same as Project
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons 3.31 GB

Captured Audio: Same as Project
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons 3.31 GB

Video Previews: Same as Project
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons 3.31 GB

Audio Previews: Same as Project
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons 3.31 GB

Project Auto Save: Same as Project
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons 3.31 GB

CC Libraries Downloads: Same as Project
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons 3.31 GB

Motion Graphics Template Media: Same as Project
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons 3.31 GB

There are generally two approaches to storage for video editing:

- **Project-based setup:** All associated media files are stored with the project file in the same folder. This is the default option in the Scratch Disks menus and the simplest to manage.
- **System-based setup:** Media files associated with multiple projects are saved to one central location (often high-speed network-based storage), and the project file is saved to another location. This might include storing different kinds of media files in different locations.

To change the location of the scratch disk for a particular type of data, choose a location from the menu next to the data type. The choices are:

- **Documents:** Stores the scratch disk in the Documents folder in your system user account, using a subfolder for Premiere Pro.
- **Same As Project:** Stores the scratch disk with the project file. This is the default option.
- **[Custom]:** Enables you to specify any location. This option is automatically chosen if you click Browse and choose a specific location for the scratch disk.

Below each Scratch Disk location menu, a file path shows the current setting and the space available at that location.

Your scratch disks might be stored on local hard drives inside your computer or on a network-based remote storage system; any storage location your computer has access to will work. However, the speed and responsiveness of your scratch disks can have a big impact on both playback and rendering performance—choose fast storage if possible.

Using a project-based setup

By default, Premiere Pro keeps newly created media together with the associated project file (this is the Same As Project option in the Scratch Disk menus). Keeping everything together this way makes finding relevant files simple.

It also makes staying organized easier if you move media files into the same folder before you import them into the project. When you’re finished with your project, you can remove everything from your system by deleting the single folder your project file is stored in.

You can use subfolders to keep your project media, notes, scripts, and associated assets organized.

There’s a downside: Storing your media files on the same drive as your project file means the drive has to work a little harder while you edit, and this can impact playback performance on slower drives.

Using a system-based setup

Some editors prefer to have all their media stored in a single location, for all projects. Others choose to store their capture folders and preview folders in a different location from their project. This is a common choice in editing facilities where multiple editors share several editing systems, all connected to the same network-based storage. It’s also common among editors who have fast hard drives for video media and slower hard drives for everything else.

There’s a downside with this setup too: Once you finish editing, it’s likely you’ll want to gather everything together for archiving. This is slower and more complex when your media files are distributed across multiple storage locations. See the online bonus lesson “Managing Your Projects” for more information.

Typical drive setup and network-based storage

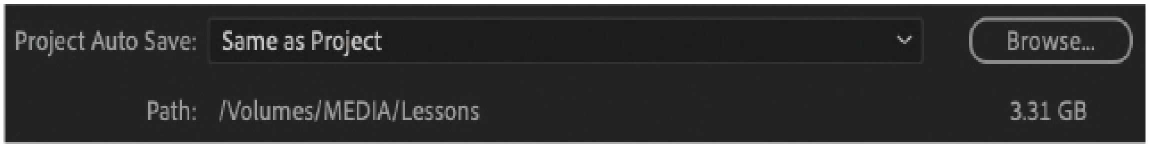
Although all file types can coexist on a single storage drive, a typical editing system will have two storage drives: Drive 1, dedicated to the operating system and programs, and Drive 2 (often a faster drive), dedicated to media, including captured video and audio, video and audio preview files, still images, and exported media. For even better performance, a third storage drive, preferably a solid-state drive (SSD), can be dedicated to temporary Media Cache files.

Modern NVMe SSD drives are so fast that you may never notice any impact on playback performance when storing everything on one drive. Nonetheless, it can make project organization simpler to use a separate drive for media, and you are likely to see an impact when working with particularly large media files, like 8K RAW.

Some storage systems use local computer networks to share storage between multiple systems. If this is the case for you, check with your system administrators to make sure you have the right settings and then check the performance.

Setting up a Project Auto Save location

In addition to choosing where new media files are created, you can set the location to store automatically saved project backup files. These additional copies of your project file are created in the background while you work. Choose a location from the Project Auto Save menu on the Scratch Disks tab.


Project Auto Save: Same as Project

Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons

Storage drives occasionally fail, and you may lose files stored on them without warning. In fact, any computer engineer will tell you that if you have only one copy of a file, you can't count on having the file at all! For this reason, it’s a great idea to set the Project Auto Save location to a physically separate storage location.

If you use a synchronized file sharing service like Dropbox, OneDrive, or Google Drive, storing your auto-save files using that service will mean you always have access to all your automatically saved project files.

Creative Cloud Libraries downloads

The Libraries panel provides access to media assets that can be shared between projects and with other users. Assets can be dragged from the Libraries panel into the Project panel or Timeline panel to add them to your current project.

Motion Graphics template media

Premiere Pro can import and display prebuilt animated Motion Graphics templates and titles that have been created with After Effects or Premiere Pro. When you import a Motion Graphics template into the current project, a copy will be stored in the location you choose.

● Note

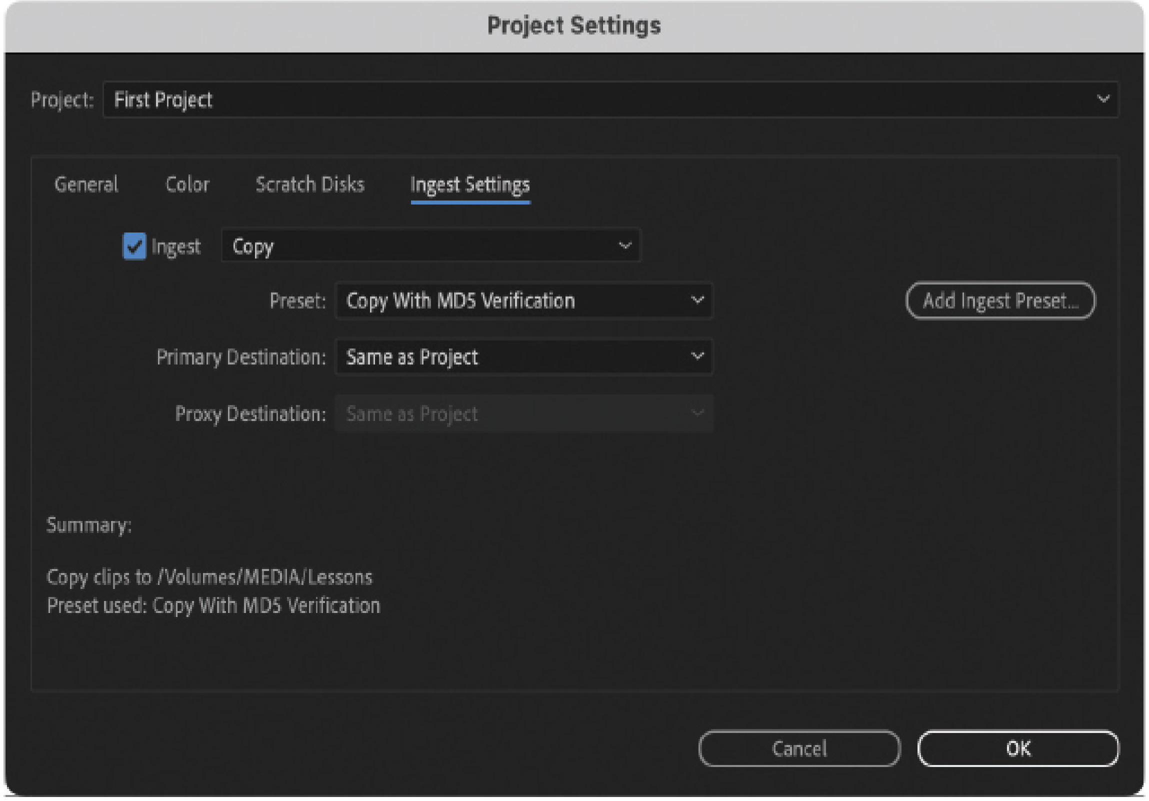
> For this project, leave all your scratch disks set to the default option: Same As Project.

Choosing ingest settings

Professional editors describe adding media to a project as *importing* or *ingesting*. The two words are often used interchangeably but actually have different meanings.

When you *import* a media file into a Premiere Pro project, a clip is created in the project that is linked to the original file. The media file stays in its current location, and you’re ready to include the clip in a sequence.

If you select Ingest on the Ingest Settings tab or Copy Media while in Import mode, things are a little bit different. The original media file may also be copied to a different location (which is useful for keeping your media files organized) and/or converted to a new format and codec before it’s imported into your Premiere Pro project.



Project: First Project

☑ Ingest Copy

Preset: Copy With MD5 Verification

Primary Destination: Same as Project

Proxy Destination: Same as Project

Summary:

Copy clips to /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons
Preset used: Copy With MD5 Verification

From the Ingest menu you can choose to:

- **Copy** the media files to a new storage location. This option is useful if you want to be sure all your media is in one folder.
- **Transcode** the media files to a new codec and/or format. This option is useful if you choose to standardize your media as part of a larger-scale organization-wide workflow.
- **Create Proxies** of the media file. This option creates lower-resolution copies of media files that are easier for a lower-powered computer to play and that take up less storage space. The original media is always available too, and you can switch between the full-quality and proxy-quality files whenever you like.
- **Copy And Create Proxies** to copy the media files to a new location and create proxies for them in a single step.

You’ll be exploring these settings in Lesson 3, “Importing Media.” They can be changed at any time; for now, leave Ingest deselected.

Now that you have checked that the settings are correct for this project, click OK to apply any changes. Save, and close the project by choosing File > Close Project.

● **Note**

There are several ways to import clips into a project. Once you enable the ingest options, Premiere Pro applies them regardless of the import method you use. Note that existing clips that have already been imported into your project will not have new ingest options applied automatically.

VR video

Premiere Pro offers exceptional support for 360° video and 180° video. Both are often described as *VR video or immersive video,* where multiple cameras or an extremely wide lens are used to capture a video image that can be viewed with a VR headset to create an immersive experience.

On the VR Video tab in the New Sequence dialog box, you can specify the angle of view captured so Premiere Pro can accurately display the image.

VR video is beyond the scope of this book, but it is well worth exploring when you have mastered the basics of video editing.

Review questions

1 What is the purpose of the Settings tab in the New Sequence dialog box?

2 How should you choose a sequence preset?

3 What is timecode?

4 How do you create a custom sequence preset?

5 How can you choose where to store temporary files created automatically while editing?

Review answers

1 The Settings tab is used to customize an existing sequence preset or to create a new custom preset.

2 It’s generally best to choose a preset that matches your original footage to minimize conversion during playback. Premiere Pro makes this easy by describing the presets in terms of camera systems.

3 Timecode is the universal system for measuring time in hours, minutes, seconds, and frames. The number of frames per second varies depending on the recording format.

4 When you’ve chosen the settings you want for your custom preset on the Settings tab in the New Sequence dialog box, click the Save Preset button, give the preset a name and a description, and click OK.

5 Use the settings on the Scratch Disks tab of the Project Settings dialog box to specify locations for newly created files.

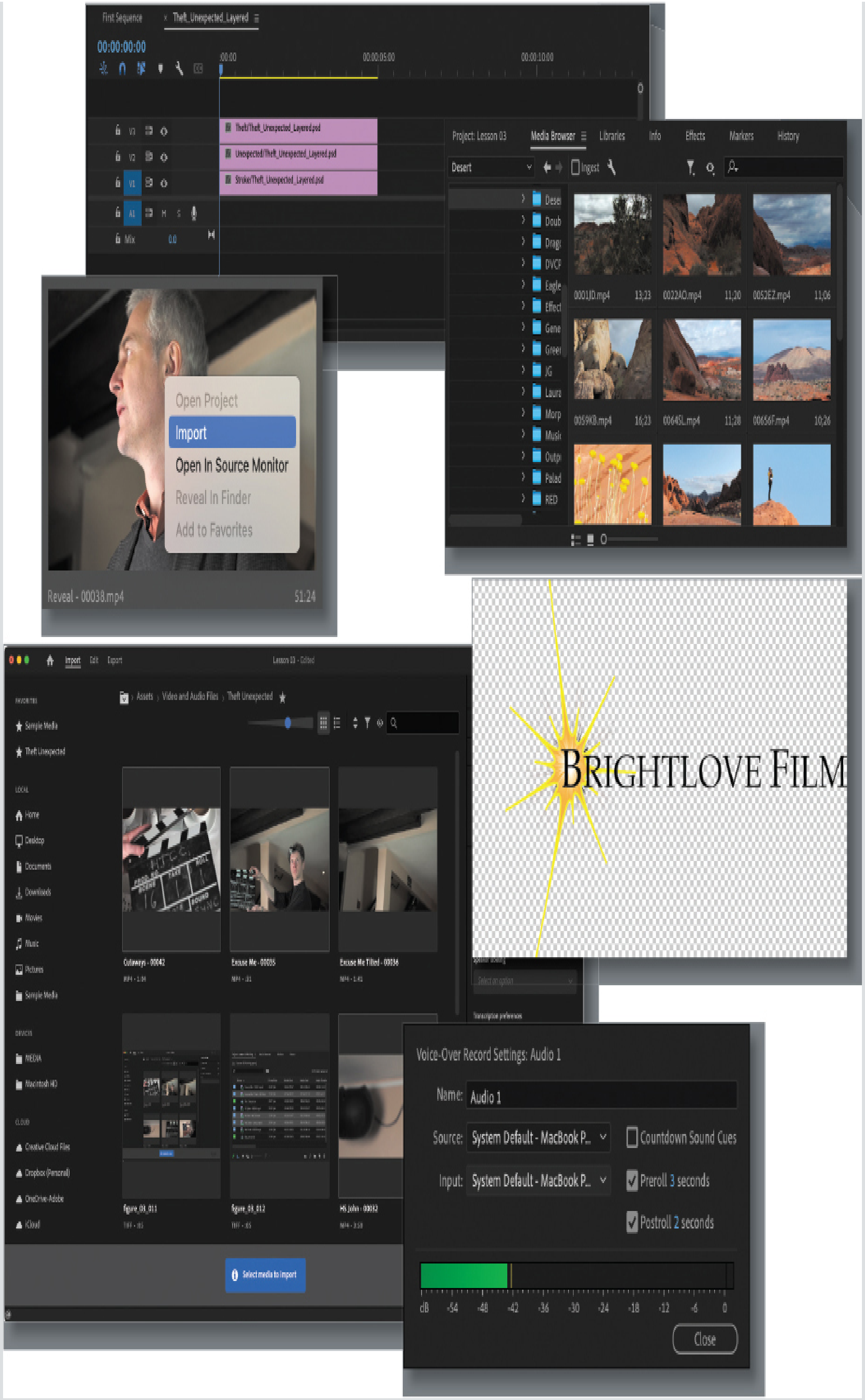
3 Importing Media

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Use the Media Browser and Import mode to add video files.
- Use the Import command to load graphic files, including files from Photoshop and Illustrator.
- Work with proxy media.
- Record a voice-over.
- Choose where to store cache files.

This lesson will take about 75 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


First Sequence
Theft_Unexpected_Layered
00:00:00:00
Project: Lesson 03
Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History
Desert
Ingest
0001JD.mp4
0022AO.mp4
0052EZ.mp4
0059KB.mp4
0064SL.mp4
00656F.mp4
Open Project
Import
Open In Source Monitor
Reveal In Finder
Add to Favorites
Reveal - 00038.mp4
51:24
Import
Edit
Export
Lesson 03 - Edited
Assets
Video and Audio Files
Theft Unexpected
Cutaways - 00042
Excuse Me - 00035
Excuse Me Titled - 00036
figure_03_011
figure_03_012
HS John - 00032
Select media to import
BRIGHTLOVE FILM
Close

Voice-Over Record Settings: Audio 1

Name: Audio 1

Source: System Default - MacBook P...

Input: System Default - MacBook P...

☐ Countdown Sound Cues

☑ Preroll 3 seconds

☑ Postroll 2 seconds

However you approach editing sequences, importing clips to the Project panel and getting them organized are the first steps. In this lesson, you'll learn multiple methods for browsing and importing media.

Starting the lesson

Before creating a sequence, you’ll probably need to import media files into your project. This might include video footage, animation files, narration, music, atmospheric sound, graphics, or photos. In brief, anything that you might incorporate into a sequence will be imported into your project first.

● **Note**

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding the Option/Alt key while launching the application and then clicking Continue.

With the exception of the graphics, titles, and captions that you create in Premiere Pro, items in sequences always also appear in the Project panel. For example, if you import a video clip directly to a sequence, it will also automatically appear in the Project panel. If you delete that clip in the Project panel, it will also be removed from sequences that it appears in (you’ll be given a warning and the option to cancel before this happens).

In this lesson, you’ll learn to import media assets into Adobe Premiere Pro. For most media, you’ll import using Import mode or the Media Browser, a robust asset browser that works with many media types you’ll import into Premiere Pro. You’ll also learn about special cases, such as importing single and multilayer graphics.

For this lesson, you can continue to use the project file you created in Lesson 2, “Setting Up a Project.” If you do not have the previous lesson file, you can open the file Lesson 03.prproj from the Lessons folder.

1. Continue to work with your project file from the previous lesson, or open it from your hard drive.
2. Choose File > Save As.
3. Browse to Lessons, and save the project with the name **Lesson 03 Working.prproj**.

4. Click the Workspaces menu, choose Editing; then click the Workspaces menu again and choose Reset To Saved Layout.

> **Note**
>
> When you open a project created on another computer, you may see a message warning you about a missing renderer. It's fine to click OK in this message. It indicates that the project was last saved with project settings configured for a different (or missing) GPU.

Importing media files

When you import items into a Premiere Pro project, you are not actually copying the file into the project. Instead, importing creates a link to the media file with a pointer that lives inside your project.

The pointer is called a *clip*. Think of a clip as a special kind of alias (macOS) or shortcut (Windows).

When you work with a clip in Premiere Pro, you are not making a copy of the original file or modifying it; instead, you're selectively playing a part of, or all of, that file from its current location, nondestructively.

For example, if you choose to include only part of a clip in your sequence, you're not throwing away the unused media. A copy of the clip is added to the sequence with built-in instructions to play only the part you selected. This changes the apparent duration in the sequence, even though the full original duration in the media file is unchanged and still available.

Also, if you add an effect to a clip to brighten the image, the effect is applied to the clip, not the media file it links to. In a sense, the original media file is played "through" the clip, with interpretation settings and effects applied.

You can import media in four principal ways:

- Choose File > Import.

- Drag media files directly from Finder (macOS) or Explorer (Windows) into the Project panel or Timeline panel in Premiere Pro.
- Use Import mode.
- Use the Media Browser.

Let’s explore the benefits of each.

Tip

Another way to open the Import dialog box is to double-click an empty area of the Project panel.

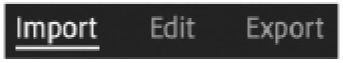
When to use Import mode or the Media Browser

If in doubt, use Import mode. It has a robust, user-friendly interface that automatically manages reviewing your media assets and makes it simple to import them into Premiere Pro. If your camera has produced footage made up of multiple fragmented files, they will automatically be presented as whole clips; you’ll see each recording as a single item, with the video and audio combined, regardless of the original recording format.

This means you can avoid dealing with complex camera folder structures and instead work with easy-to-browse thumbnails.

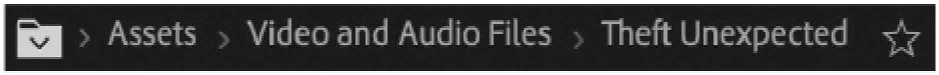
For more advanced media browsing tools, use the Media Browser while in Edit mode. This panel offers similar media previewing and navigation options to Import mode, with the additional option to preview clips in the Source Monitor before importing them, and full access to clip metadata. Being able to see this metadata (which contains important information, such as clip duration, recording date, and file type) makes it easier to select the correct clip in a long list. The Media Browser also supports Illustrator files and image sequences, which are not supported by Import mode.

Accessing Import mode is straightforward. Click to select the mode at the top-left corner.



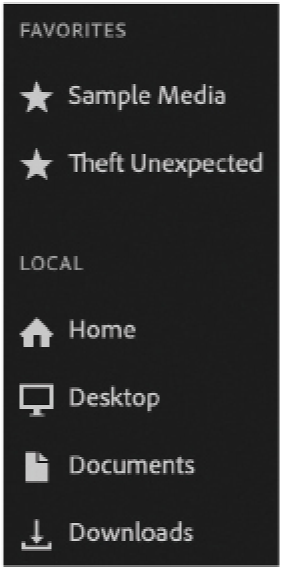
To browse for files in Import mode, select a location from the list on the left and double-click folders displayed in the middle of the window to access their contents. As you navigate into subfolders, you’ll see the folder path displayed at the top—click a folder name inside the path to navigate to that folder.

If you have a cloud-based storage location on your computer, you’ll find it listed under the Cloud heading at the end of the locations list.



› Assets › Video and Audio Files › Theft Unexpected ☆

If there is a folder you expect to visit often, click the star to the right of the folder path to add the location to the Favorites list, which you’ll find on the left side of the screen above the available locations.



FAVORITES

- ★ Sample Media
- ★ Theft Unexpected

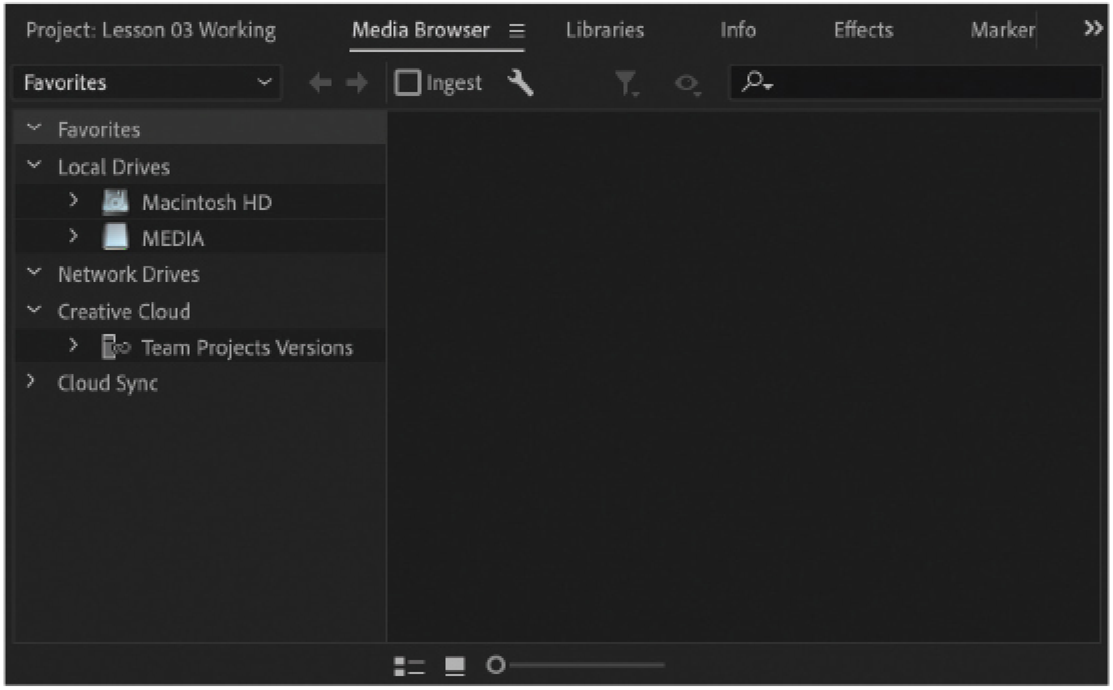
LOCAL

- Home
- Desktop
- Documents
- Downloads

Switching back to Edit mode, in the default layout of the Editing workspace, you’ll find the Media Browser in the lower-left corner of your Premiere Pro Editing workspace. It’s docked in the same panel group as the Project panel.

▶ **Tip**

You can also quickly access the Media Browser by pressing Shift+8 (be sure to use the 8 key at the top of the keyboard, not the one in the numerical keypad, if you have one).


Project: Lesson 03 Working
Media Browser ☰
Libraries
Info
Effects
Marker
Favorites
☐ Ingest
Favorites
Local Drives
Macintosh HD
MEDIA
Network Drives
Creative Cloud
Team Projects Versions
Cloud Sync

As you can any other panel, you can position the Media Browser in another panel group by dragging its panel tab (identified by the panel name).

You can also undock it to make it a floating panel by clicking the panel menu ☰ next to the panel name and choosing Undock Panel.

Browsing for files in the Media Browser is similar to browsing with Finder (macOS) or Explorer (Windows). The contents of your storage are displayed as navigation folders on the left, with buttons to navigate forward and backward at the top.

After you select a folder or media file in the Media Browser, you can use the arrow keys to select items.

You can use Import mode and the Media Browser interchangeably at any time. As your familiarity with Premiere Pro grows, you'll quickly discover the occasions you prefer one option over the other.

Both Import mode and the Media Browser offer several benefits over the regular Import option:

- Filtering the display while browsing a folder. In fact, while Import mode allows you to filter video, audio, or image files, the Media Browser's File Types Displayed menu enables you to narrow the clips displayed to a specific file type, such as JPEG, PSD, XML, or ARRIRAW files.
- Autosensing camera data—AVCHD, Canon XF, P2, RED, Cinema DNG, Sony HDV, or XDCAM (EX and HD)—to correctly display and import the clips.
- Correctly displaying and importing media files that span multiple camera media cards. Premiere Pro will automatically import the files as a single clip even if a longer video file filled a storage card and continued onto another.
- In the Media Browser, viewing and customizing the kinds of metadata to display.
- In Import mode, automatically creating a bin or sequence when importing new clips.

Opening or browsing projects

Premiere Pro allows you to open multiple project files at the same time. This makes it simple to copy clips from one project to another.

All open projects are editable, which means you'll need to be careful not to make unwanted changes to a project you have opened just to copy a clip from it.

You can switch between projects by choosing Window > Projects, followed by the project you would like to work on.

You can also browse inside another project file using the Media Browser. Use the Media Browser to locate the project file and double-click it to view its contents. You can then select and import clips and sequences to your current Project panel.

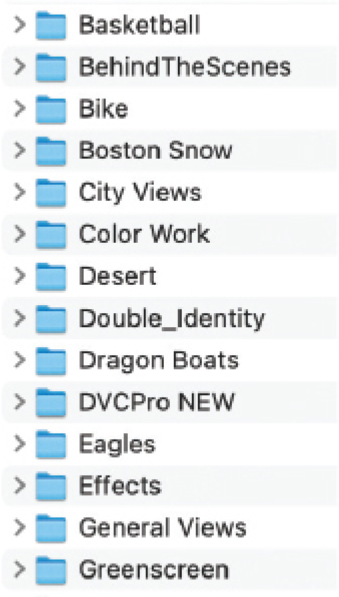
Projects you browse inside using the Media Browser are locked, meaning you cannot make unwanted changes.

Remember, when copying clips or sequences from one project to another, you are not copying media files—only clips that link to the media files.

When to use the Import command

Using the Import command is straightforward (and may match your experience in other applications). To import a file, just choose File > Import.

You can also use the keyboard shortcut Command+I (macOS) or Ctrl+I (Windows) to open the Import dialog box.


Basketball
BehindTheScenes
Bike
Boston Snow
City Views
Color Work
Desert
Double_Identity
Dragon Boats
DVCPro NEW
Eagles
Effects
General Views
Greenscreen

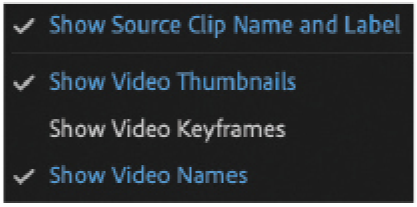
This method works best for self-contained assets such as graphics and audio files or video files like MOV (QuickTime) or MP4 (H.264), especially if you know exactly where those assets are on your drive and can quickly navigate to them.

This import method is not ideal for RAW media files or when camera media has separate folders for audio, video, and important additional data describing the footage (metadata). For most camera-originated media, you'll want to use Import mode or the Media Browser.

Showing source clip names and labels in the Timeline panel

In the Project panel, it's possible you will change a clip name or label color to help keep everything organized. If you then add it to a sequence, the new name and label color will be displayed in the Timeline panel. However, by default, instances of that clip already in the Timeline panel will still show their original name and label color.

You can choose to display the original clip names and label colors or the updated names and label colors in the Timeline panel. Make sure that a sequence is open in the Timeline panel to enable access to the Timeline Display Settings menu 🔧. Click the menu and choose Show Source Clip Name And Label.


✓ Show Source Clip Name and Label
✓ Show Video Thumbnails
Show Video Keyframes
✓ Show Video Names

Both options can be useful, depending on your chosen workflow for a particular project, and you can switch between them at any time.

Working with ingest options and proxy media

Premiere Pro offers excellent performance when playing back, and applying special effects to, a broad range of media formats and codecs. However, there may be occasions when your system hardware will struggle to play media, especially if it's ultra-high resolution or RAW footage.

▶ Tip

When project ingest options are enabled, they are applied to all newly imported media, regardless of the way it is imported.

You may decide it will be more efficient to work with low-resolution copies of your media while you edit and then switch to the full, original-resolution media to check your effects and output your finished work. This is a *proxy workflow*—creating low-resolution "proxy" files to use temporarily instead of your original content. You can switch between the two types of media whenever you like.

Premiere Pro can automatically create proxy files during import. If you're happy with the performance on your system when working with original footage, you'll probably skip this feature. Still, it offers significant advantages, both for system performance and for collaboration, particularly if you're working with high-resolution media on a less powerful computer.

You define the options for ingesting media and creating proxy files using the Ingest Settings tab of the Project Settings dialog box. Choose File > Project Settings > Ingest Settings and select Ingest to access them.

- **Copy:** When you import media files, Premiere Pro will copy them to a location you choose from the Primary Destination menu below, leaving the original files in place. This is a valuable option if you are importing media files directly from your camera storage, because media files must be available to Premiere Pro when your cards are not connected to the computer.

  ▶ **Tip**

  When copying media files, Premiere Pro can perform MD5 verification. This checks that the files have copied correctly at the expense of extra time to perform the copy.

- **Transcode:** When you import media files, Premiere Pro will convert the files to a new format and codec based on the preset you choose and will place the new files in a destination location you choose. This is useful if you are working in a post-production facility that has adopted a standard format and codec for all projects—sometimes called a *mezzanine media* file.
- **Create Proxies:** When you import media files, Premiere Pro creates additional copies that may have smaller file sizes, are lower resolution, and may be easier for your system to play. They are stored in the location you choose from the Proxy Destination menu. Proxies are useful if you are working on a lower-powered computer or you want to temporarily save on storage space while traveling with a copy of your project. You would not want to use these files for your final delivery because they are usually lower quality, but they facilitate a number of collaborative workflows as well as speed up visual effect setup.
- **Copy and Create Proxies:** When you import media files, Premiere Pro will copy the original files to a location you choose in the Primary Destination menu *and* create proxies that are stored in the Proxy Destination menu.

Note

Adobe Media Encoder does the work of transcoding files and creating proxies in the background, so you can use your original media right away, and as the new proxy files are created, they'll automatically be used instead of the original media files.

If proxy media exists for clips in your project, it's easy to switch between displaying your original, full-quality media and your low-resolution proxy versions. Click the Toggle Proxies button in the Source Monitor or Program Monitor.

Let's check out the options.

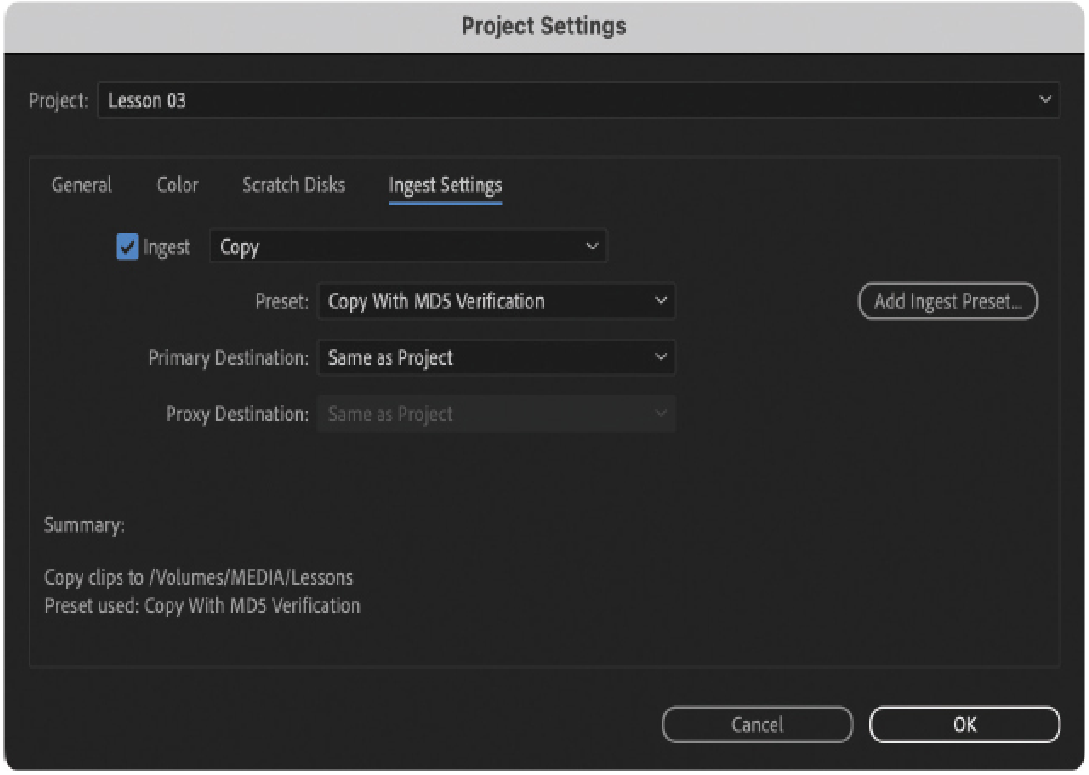
1. Choose File > Project Settings > Ingest Settings.

Tip

You can also open the Project Settings dialog box to the Ingest Settings tab from the Media Browser by selecting the box for Ingest or by clicking the Open Ingest Settings button.

By default, all the Ingest options are deselected. It's worth noting that whichever options you choose for ingesting, those actions will be performed regardless of the way you import media files from now on. Importantly, files you have already imported are not affected by these settings.

2. Enable Ingest by selecting it, and open the adjacent menu to see the options.


Project Settings
General
Color
Scratch Disks
Ingest Settings
Add Ingest Preset...
Cancel
OK

Project: Lesson 03

☑ Ingest: Copy

Preset: Copy With MD5 Verification

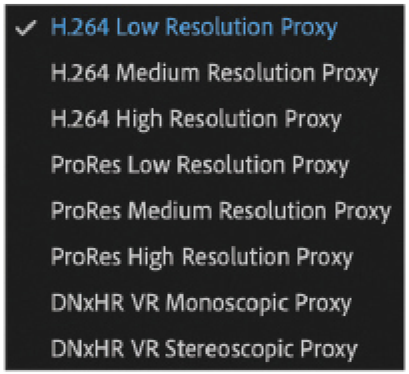
Primary Destination: Same as Project

Proxy Destination: Same as Project

Summary:

Copy clips to /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons
Preset used: Copy With MD5 Verification

3. Choose Create Proxies, open the Preset menu, and try choosing a few options. Look at the Summary in the lower part of the dialog box for an explanation of each option.


✓ H.264 Low Resolution Proxy
H.264 Medium Resolution Proxy
H.264 High Resolution Proxy
ProRes Low Resolution Proxy
ProRes Medium Resolution Proxy
ProRes High Resolution Proxy
DNxHR VR Monoscopic Proxy
DNxHR VR Stereoscopic Proxy

4. When you finish looking at the settings, click Cancel to exit without applying any of the options.

● Note

By default, when you output a sequence that is set to display proxy media, the full-quality original media is automatically used rather than the low-resolution proxy media for the export.

This was just an introduction to the proxy media workflow. For more information about managing and viewing proxy files, linking proxy media, and creating new proxy file presets, see the Adobe Premiere Pro Help. For a deep dive into this subject, visit: *blog.frame.io/2023/10/02/guide-to-premiere-pro-proxies-proxy-workflows/*.

Working with Import mode and the Media Browser

You can switch to Import mode at any time to browse your available media files and add clips to your current project. Alternatively, you can open the Media Browser while in Edit mode. This panel can stay open as part of your editing workspace, allowing you to quickly access and compare available media with clips already in your project.

● Note

> To complete this lesson, you will import files from your computer. Be sure you have copied all the lesson files included with this book to your computer. For more details, see "Getting Started" at the beginning of the book.

Working with media files

Premiere Pro can use footage from file-based cameras without conversion, including compressed native media from camera systems such as P2, XDCAM, and AVCHD; RAW media from Canon, Sony, RED, and ARRI; and post-production-friendly codecs such as Avid DNxHD, Apple ProRes, and GoPro Cineform.

For best results, follow these guidelines (no need to follow along for now):

- Create a separate media folder for each project. This will make it easier to differentiate between projects when cleaning up your storage.
- Copy camera media to your editing storage with the existing folder structure intact. For example, transfer the complete data folder directly from the root directory of the memory card. For best results, consider using the transfer application that is often included by the camera

manufacturer to move your video files. Check that all media files have been copied and that the original card and the copied folder sizes match.

- Clearly name the copied folder of the media with the camera information, including card number and the date of the shoot.
- Create a second copy of the media on a physically separate drive, in case of hardware failure.
- Really do actually create that second copy of your media on a physically separate drive, and consider making a third copy! Storage fails without warning.
- Ideally, create a long-term archive copy of your media using another backup method, such as Linear Tape-Open (LTO—a popular long-term storage system), an external storage drive, or cloud-based file storage.

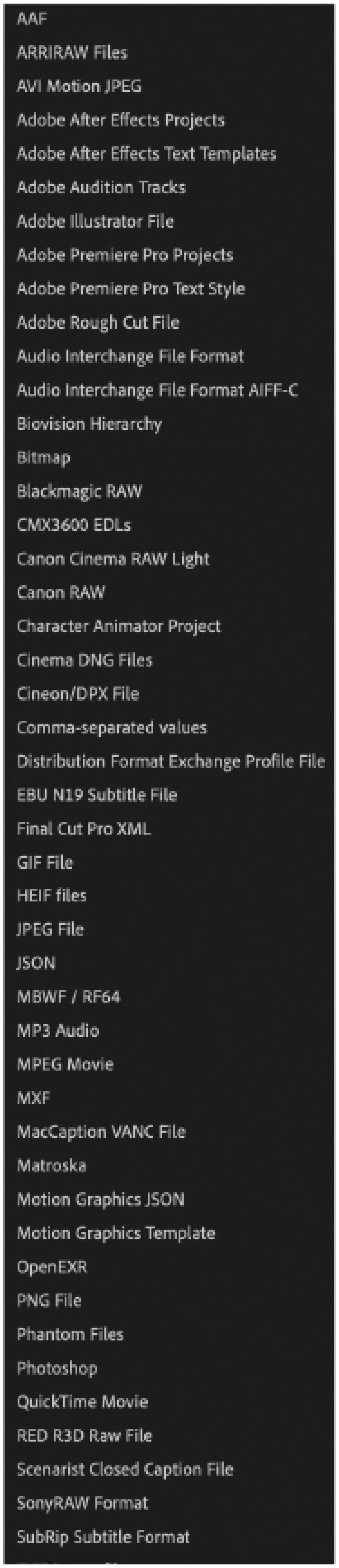
Understanding supported video file types

It’s not unusual to work on a project with video clips from multiple cameras using different file types, media formats, and codecs. This is no problem for Premiere Pro because you can mix different types of media in the same sequence. Also, Import mode and the Media Browser can display and import almost any media file type.

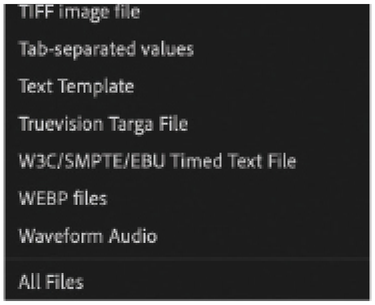
Premiere Pro supports media from many camera manufacturers, including:

- Most DSLR cameras
- Panasonic
- RED
- ARRI
- Canon
- Sony
- Blackmagic Design

Many standard media types are also supported, including QuickTime, MXF, DPX, and OMF. For a full list of supported camera and delivered media types, see the Adobe Help.



AAF
ARRIRAW Files
AVI Motion JPEG
Adobe After Effects Projects
Adobe After Effects Text Templates
Adobe Audition Tracks
Adobe Illustrator File
Adobe Premiere Pro Projects
Adobe Premiere Pro Text Style
Adobe Rough Cut File
Audio Interchange File Format
Audio Interchange File Format AIFF-C
Biovision Hierarchy
Bitmap
Blackmagic RAW
CMX3600 EDLs
Canon Cinema RAW Light
Canon RAW
Character Animator Project
Cinema DNG Files
Cineon/DPX File
Comma-separated values
Distribution Format Exchange Profile File
EBU N19 Subtitle File
Final Cut Pro XML
GIF File
HEIF files
JPEG File
JSON
MBWF / RF64
MP3 Audio
MPEG Movie
MXF
MacCaption VANC File
Matroska
Motion Graphics JSON
Motion Graphics Template
OpenEXR
PNG File
Phantom Files
Photoshop
QuickTime Movie
RED R3D Raw File
Scenarist Closed Caption File
SonyRAW Format
SubRip Subtitle Format


TIFF image file
Tab-separated values
Text Template
Truevision Targa File
W3C/SMPTE/EBU Timed Text File
WEBP files
Waveform Audio
All Files

Adding clips using Import mode

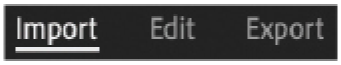
Import mode offers a simplified, easy-access approach to locating and importing media. Storage locations and favorites are listed on the left, with their contents displayed in the middle and additional import options available on the right.

Add some clips to your project using Import mode, and then try using the Media Browser to compare the experience.

● Note

When importing media, be sure to copy the files to your local storage, or use the project ingest options to create copies before removing your memory cards or external drives.

1. Switch to Import mode by clicking Import at the top-left corner.

   
   Import
   Edit
   Export

   Notice that now that you are importing to an existing project, rather than creating a new project, the option to create a project is not displayed.

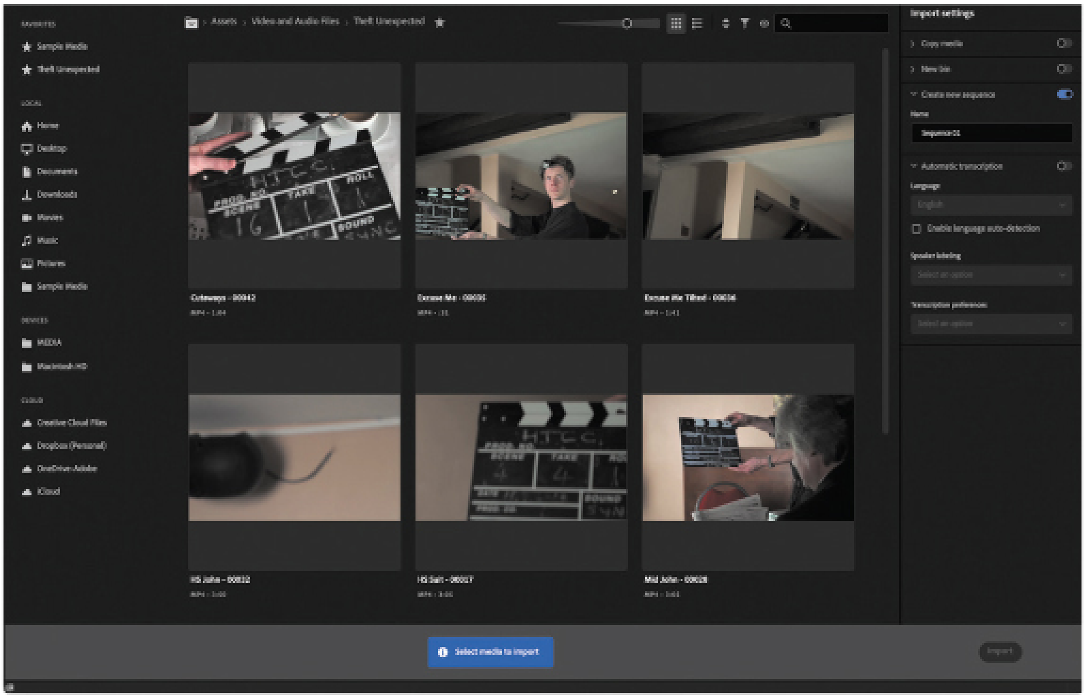
2. By using the locations listed on the left and double-clicking subfolders in the middle, browse to the folder Lessons/Assets/Video And Audio Files/Theft Unexpected.

Selecting versus browsing

Be careful not to single-click a folder while in Import mode, as that will select the entire contents of the folder for import. If you do (but don’t want everything in the folder to be imported), single-click the folder again to deselect it; then you can double-click the folder to browse into it.

Alternatively, select the unwanted folder icon at the lower-left corner of the interface (which will display the number of items in the folder), and press Delete (macOS) or Backspace (Windows).

3. If it is not already selected, click the Grid View button ▦ at the top, and drag the Resize slider next to it to enlarge the thumbnails of the clips. Choose any size you like.


Sample Media
Theft Unexpected
Home
Desktop
Documents
Downloads
Movies
Music
Pictures
Sample Media
MEDIA
Macintosh HD
Creative Cloud Files
Dropbox (Personal)
OneDrive-Adobe
iCloud
Assets
Video and Audio Files
Theft Unexpected
Import settings
Copy media
New bin
Create new sequence
Name
Automatic transcription
Language
Enable language auto-detection
Speaker labeling
Transcription preferences
Cutaways - 00042
Excuse Me - 00035
Excuse Me Tilted - 00034
HS John - 00032
HS Sait - 00027
Mid John - 00028
Select media to import
Import

You can hover your pointer over any clip thumbnail to see a preview of the clip contents. Hovering over the left edge shows the start of the clip; hovering over the right edge shows the end of the clip.

4. Select the following clips by single-clicking them:

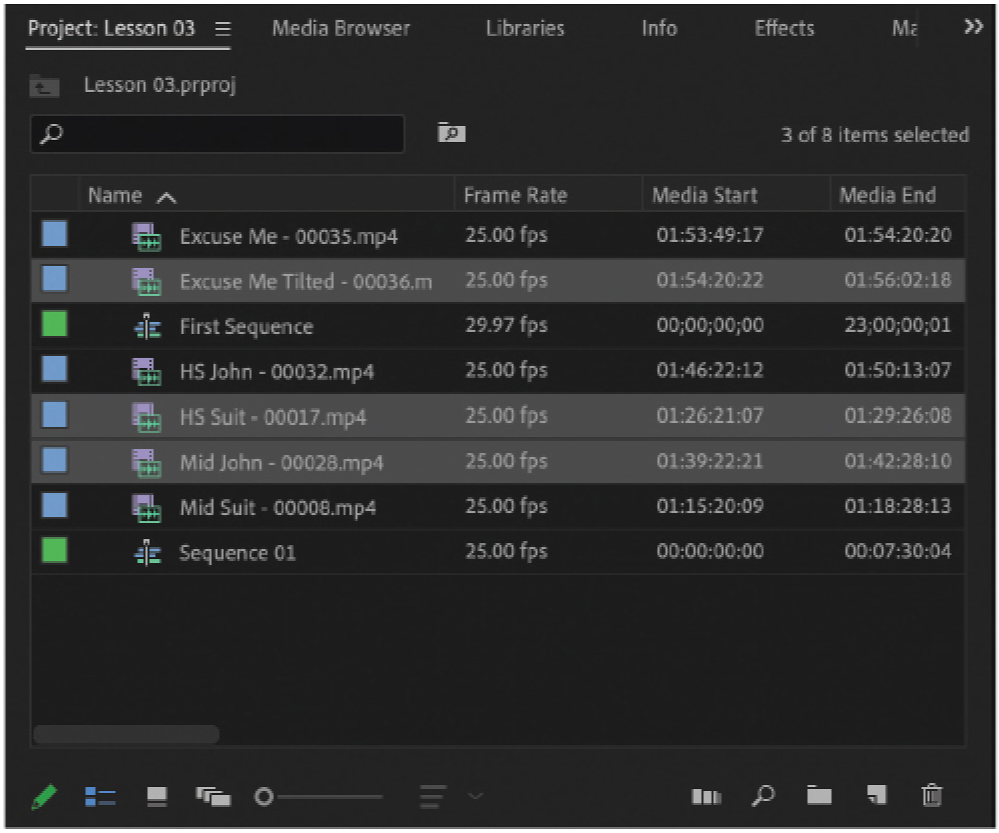
   Excuse Me Tilted – 00036

   HS Suit – 00017

   Mid John – 00028

5. Check that all of the Import settings (Copy Media, New Bin, and New Sequence) are deselected, and click Import.

   You have now imported some clips! The Edit mode is restored, and your newly imported clips have been added to the Project panel.



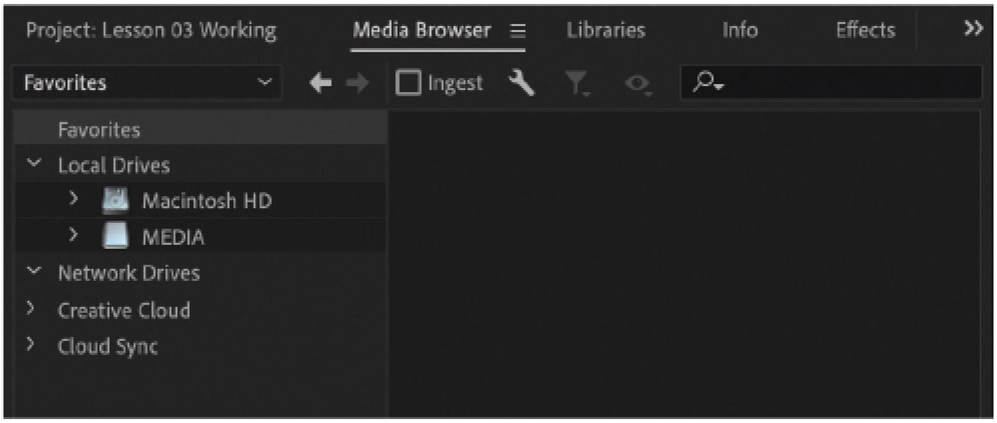
	Name	Frame Rate	Media Start	Media End
🟦	Excuse Me - 00035.mp4	25.00 fps	01:53:49:17	01:54:20:20
🟦	Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.m	25.00 fps	01:54:20:22	01:56:02:18
🟩	First Sequence	29.97 fps	00;00;00;00	23;00;00;01
🟦	HS John - 00032.mp4	25.00 fps	01:46:22:12	01:50:13:07
🟦	HS Suit - 00017.mp4	25.00 fps	01:26:21:07	01:29:26:08
🟦	Mid John - 00028.mp4	25.00 fps	01:39:22:21	01:42:28:10
🟦	Mid Suit - 00008.mp4	25.00 fps	01:15:20:09	01:18:28:13
🟩	Sequence 01	25.00 fps	00:00:00:00	00:07:30:04

You can easily switch between the Import and Edit modes at any time while working on a project, so it’s quick to add new content to your project as it becomes available. Now let’s compare this import method with importing using the Media Browser.

Adding clips using the Media Browser

The Media Browser is even more like the Finder (macOS) or Explorer (Windows). It has Forward and Back buttons to go through your recent navigation. If you select a storage location in the left area, its contents are displayed on the right.

1. Begin by resetting the workspace to the default: From the Workspaces menu, choose Editing. Then, open the menu again and choose Reset To Saved Layout.
2. Click the Media Browser's name to bring the panel to the front of the panel group (it should be docked with the Project panel by default).


Project: Lesson 03 Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Favorites
Ingest
Favorites
Local Drives
Macintosh HD
MEDIA
Network Drives
Creative Cloud
Cloud Sync

3. To make the Media Browser easier to see, position your pointer over the panel, and then press the ` (accent grave) key (it is often in the upper-left corner of a keyboard; non-English keyboards may use a different key) or double-click the panel name.

   The Media Browser should now fill the screen.

   ▶ Tip

   Finding the ` (accent grave) key can be difficult in some keyboard layouts. If you can't locate the correct key, you can double-click the name of a panel to enlarge it to fill the screen.

4. In the navigation area, browse to and select the folder Lessons/Assets/Video And Audio Files/Theft Unexpected.

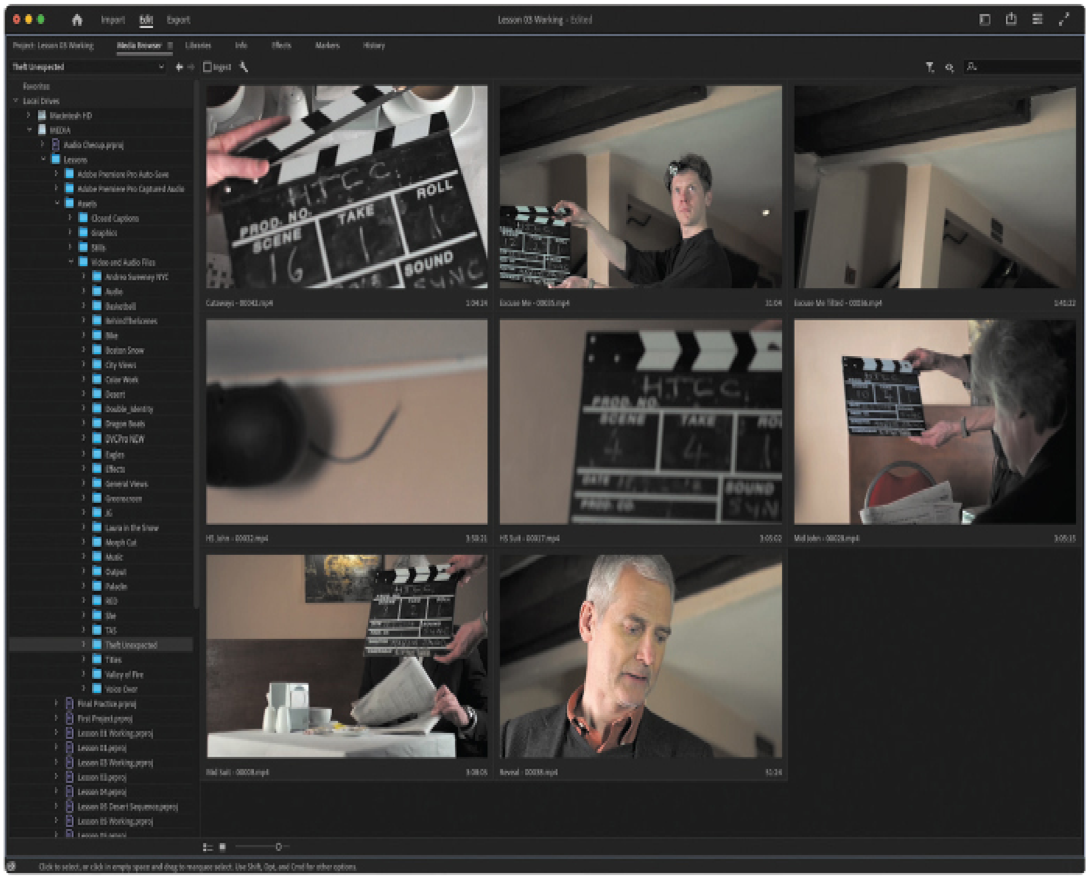
Tip

As you browse a folder system, the navigation area on the left of the Media Browser can fill up with folders. Drag the vertical divider to resize the navigation area or scroll within the navigation area to display the folders you are interested in.

Note

The Media Browser filters out non-media and unsupported files, making it easier to browse for video or audio assets.

5. If it is not already selected, click the Thumbnail View button at the lower left of the Media Browser, and drag the Resize slider next to it to enlarge the thumbnails of the clips. Choose any size you like.

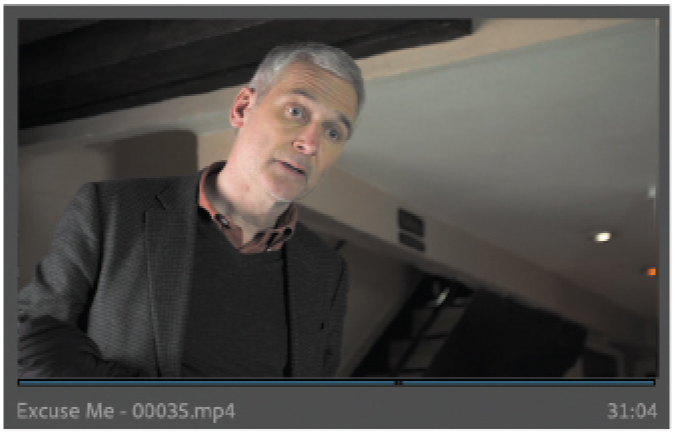

Import
Edit
Export
Lesson 03 Working - Edited
Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History
Theft Unexpected

Just as in Import mode, you can hover your pointer over any clip thumbnail that is *not* selected, without clicking, to see a preview of the clip contents. Hovering over the left edge shows the start of the clip; hovering over the right edge shows the end of the clip.

6. Click any clip once to select it.

   You can now preview the clip using keyboard shortcuts. When a clip is selected while in Thumbnail view, a small preview timeline appears under the clip.

7. Press the L key or the spacebar to play a clip.
8. To stop playback, press the K key or press the spacebar again.
9. To play backward, press the J key.

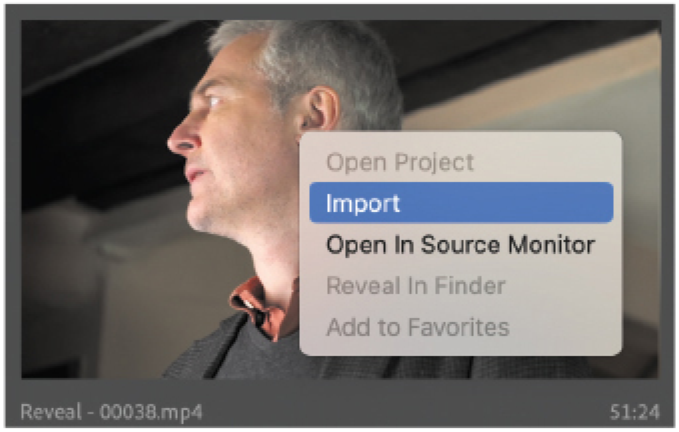
10. Experiment with playing other clips. You should be able to hear the clip audio during playback.

    You can press the J or L key multiple times to increase the playback rate for fast previews. Use the K key or the spacebar to pause playback.

● Note

If you can’t hear audio, check the Audio Hardware preferences to make sure the correct output device is selected.

11. Now you’ll import the two remaining clips into your project. Click once on the clip Cutaways – 00042 to select it. Next, hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) and click the clip Reveal - 00038. This selects both clips.
12. Right-click one of the selected clips and choose Import.


Open Project
Import
Open In Source Monitor
Reveal In Finder
Add to Favorites
Reveal - 00038.mp4
51:24

Tip

You can also drag selected clips onto the Project panel’s tab and then down into the empty area to import the clips.

The Project panel opens automatically and displays the clips.

13. Position your pointer over the Project panel and press the ` (accent grave) key or double-click the Project panel name to restore the panel group to its original size.

As in Import mode and the Media Browser, you can view clips in the Project panel as icons or as a list, with information about each clip displayed. There is an additional, more flexible viewing mode for working with icons, called Freeform view. You can switch between these three viewing modes by clicking the List View button, Icon View button, or Freeform View button at the bottom left of the Project panel.

Making the most of Import mode and the Media Browser

Both Import mode and the Media Browser have a number of features that make it easy to navigate your storage.

- If you expect to import files from a location often, you can add the folder to a list of favorites at the top of the navigation area. To create a favorite in the Media Browser, right-click the folder and choose Add To Favorites. In Import mode, click the Favorite Location button ☆. Whichever way you add a favorite location, it will appear in both views.
- To ignore regular media file types and just display media from a particular camera system, open the Directory Viewers menu 👁.
- The Media Browser Forward and Back buttons ⇦ ⇨ work like those in a web browser, allowing you to navigate to locations you have viewed previously.
- You can limit the types of files displayed to make it easier to browse large folders by opening the File Types Displayed menu ▼.
- In the Media Browser, just above the navigation area on the left, there’s a menu with recent storage locations. Choose an option to jump straight to that location.
- You can open multiple Media Browsers and access the contents of several folders at once. To open a new Media Browser, open the panel menu ☰ and choose New Media Browser Panel.
- By default, the Media Browser List view displays limited information about clips (unlike the Project panel, which displays lots of information by default). To display more information while in List view, you can add multiple columns of meta-data by

clicking the Media Browser panel menu and choosing Edit Columns. In the Edit Columns dialog box, select each type of metadata you would like to display.

Importing still image files

Graphics are an integral part of post-production. People expect graphics to both convey information and add to the visual style of a project. Premiere Pro can import almost any image file type. Support is especially excellent when you use the native file formats created by Adobe’s leading graphic tools, Adobe Photoshop and Adobe Illustrator.

Anyone who works with print graphics or performs photo retouching has probably used Adobe Photoshop. Photoshop is a powerful tool with great depth and versatility, and it’s an important part of the video production world. Let’s explore how to properly import files from Photoshop.

First, you’ll import a basic graphic.

Importing single-layer image files

Most graphics and photos you will work with will have a single layer—one flat grid of pixels that you can work with as a simple media file. Let’s import one.

1. Choose File > Import, or press Command+I (macOS) or Ctrl+I (Windows).
2. Navigate to Lessons/Assets/Graphics.
3. Select the file Theft_Unexpected.png, and click Import.

   This PNG graphic is a simple logo file, and it appears in the Premiere Pro Project panel. If the Project panel is in Icon view, it will display the contents of the graphic as a thumbnail.

Theft Unexpected
Theft_Unexpected.png
5:00

Introducing Dynamic Link

Premiere Pro integrates beautifully with the other tools available as part of Adobe Creative Cloud. In fact, there are several workflows, unique to Creative Cloud, that speed up your post-production workflow.

A good example is Dynamic Link. This technology allows you to import Adobe After Effects compositions (which are a little like Premiere Pro sequences) into a Premiere Pro project while maintaining a live connection between the two applications. Once added in this way, the After Effects compositions will look and behave like any other clip in your Premiere Pro project.

However, when you make changes in After Effects, the imported compositions continuously and automatically update in Premiere Pro —a great time-saver.

Dynamic Link works automatically, creating links between Premiere Pro and After Effects and between Premiere Pro and Adobe Audition, provided the same versions of the applications are installed and used.

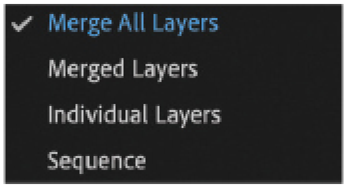
Importing layered Adobe Photoshop files

Adobe Photoshop can create graphics with multiple layers, which are saved as files in PSD or TIFF format. Layers are similar to tracks in a Premiere Pro sequence and allow for separation between visual elements. While TIFF files with layers are imported as flattened images, you can import Photoshop document layers into Premiere Pro individually to perform layer-specific adjustments and create animations.

As with any other media you import, changes made to the PSD file in Photoshop will update automatically in Premiere Pro when the file is saved. This means a designer can continue to work on an image you have already incorporated into a sequence.

If you import a layered Photoshop file, the Import Layered File dialog box appears automatically, allowing you to choose options for handling the layers.

- **Merge All Layers:** Merges all layers into one, importing the file into Premiere Pro as a single, flattened clip.
- **Merged Layers:** Merges only the specific layers you select in this dialog box into a single, flattened clip.



- **Individual Layers:** Imports only the specific layers you select in this dialog box, with each layer becoming a separate clip in a bin in the Project panel.
- **Sequence:** Imports only the layers you select in this dialog box, each as a single clip. Premiere Pro then automatically creates a new sequence (with its frame size based on the imported PSD dimensions) containing each clip on a separate track (matching the original stacking order).

If you choose Sequence or Individual Layers, you can choose one of the following from the Footage Dimensions menu:

- **Document Size:** Brings all the selected layers into Premiere Pro at the frame size of the original Photoshop document.
- **Layer Size:** Matches the frame size of the new Premiere Pro clips to the frame size of their individual layers in the original Photoshop file. Layers that do not fill the entire canvas will be cropped tightly, as transparent areas outside of the rectangle containing the layer’s pixels

are automatically removed. Layers are also then centered in the frame, losing their original relative positioning.

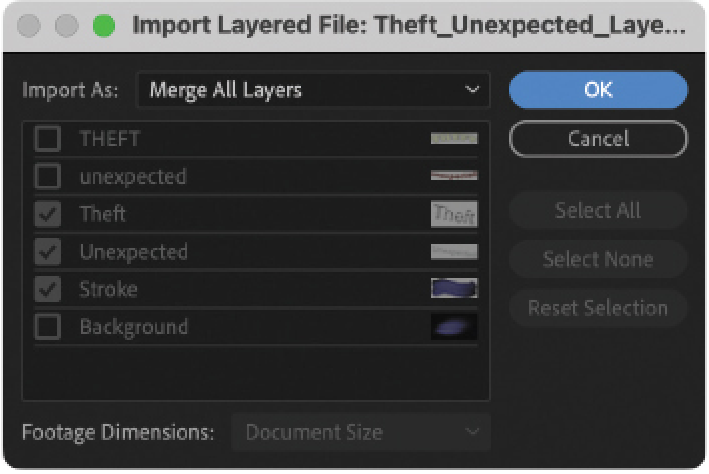
▶ Tip

There are good reasons to import individual PSD layers with different layer sizes. For example, some graphic designers create multiple images for editors to incorporate into video edits, with each image occupying a different layer in the PSD. The PSD itself is a kind of one-stop image store when used this way.

Let’s import a layered Photoshop file into our project.

1. Double-click an empty area of the Project panel to open the Import dialog box, or choose File > Import.
2. Navigate to Lessons/Assets/Graphics.
3. Select the file Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd, and click Import.

   The Import Layered File dialog box appears.



Import Layered File: Theft_Unexpected_Laye...

Import As: Merge All Layers

☐ THEFT
☐ unexpected
☑ Theft
☑ Unexpected
☑ Stroke
☐ Background

Footage Dimensions: Document Size

● Note

There are some deselected layers in this PSD. These are layers with layer visibility turned off in Photoshop but not deleted. Premiere Pro honors this layer selection automatically on import.

4. For this exercise, choose Sequence from the Import As menu, and make sure Document Size is chosen from the Footage Dimensions menu. Click OK.

5. Look in the Project panel for the newly created bin called Theft_Unexpected_Layered (named after the file). Double-click it to open it.

   ● **Note**

   In the Project panel, when you double-clicked the Theft_Unexpected_Layered bin, it opened in a new panel in the same group as the Project panel. Bins have the same options as the Project panel, and opening multiple bins to browse their contents is a common way to navigate the available media in a project.

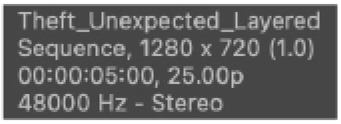
   ● **Note**

   Bins in the Project panel look and behave a lot like folders in your computer file system, but they exist only inside the project file. They are a great way to stay organized.

6. Inside the bin, double-click the sequence Theft_Unexpected_Layered to open it in the Timeline panel.

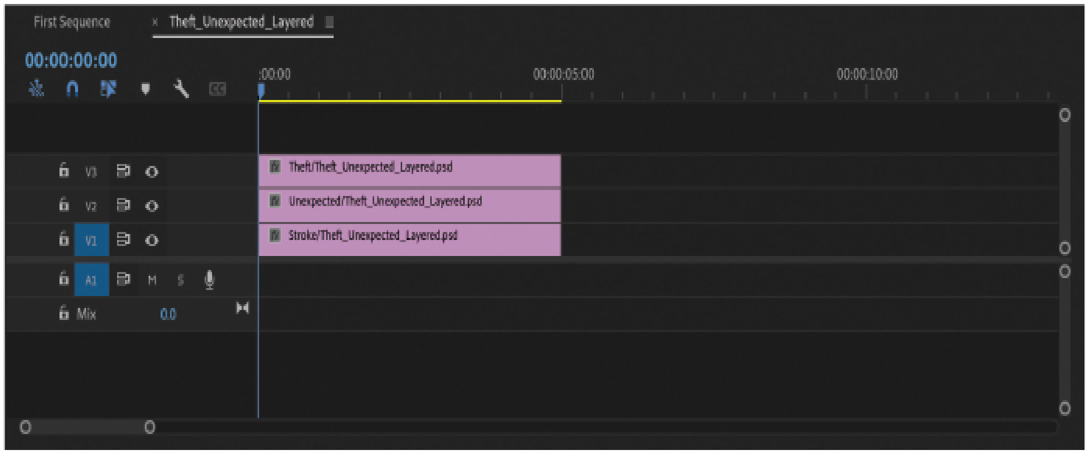
   Sequences have a particular icon in List view. A similar icon is displayed as an overlay on their thumbnail in Icon view.

   If you’re unsure which item is which, hover your pointer over an item name (not the icon) to display a detailed tool tip, which will tell you if it’s a clip or a sequence.

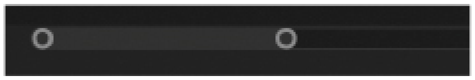
   Theft_Unexpected_Layered
   Sequence, 1280 x 720 (1.0)
   00:00:05:00, 25.00p
   48000 Hz - Stereo

   The sequence opens in the Timeline panel and is displayed in the Program Monitor.


First Sequence
Theft_Unexpected_Layered
00:00:00:00
:00:00
00:00:05:00
00:00:10:00
V3
V2
V1
A1
M
S
Mix
0.0
Theft/Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd
Unexpected/Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd
Stroke/Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd

7. There’s a navigator along the bottom of the Timeline panel.

   Drag one end of the navigator to shorten it, and zoom in so you can see the clips in the sequence more clearly.



8. Look at the sequence in the Timeline panel. The contents of the sequence are displayed in the Program Monitor. Try clicking the Toggle Track Output button 👁 at the left of the timeline for each track to reveal and hide the content on each layer.
9. Close the Theft_Unexpected_Layered bin by choosing Close Panel from its panel menu ☰.

Working with Adobe Photoshop files

Here are a few tips for working with images from Adobe Photoshop:

- Remember that importing a layered Photoshop document as a sequence with Footage Dimensions set to Document Size produces a clip in Premiere Pro with the same frame size as the pixel dimensions of the Photoshop document.
- Even if you don't plan to zoom in or pan around the image, try to use full-frame image files with a frame size at least as large as the frame size of the project. Otherwise, you'll have to scale up the image, and it may appear to lose some of its sharpness.
- If you do plan to zoom or pan, create images so that the resulting zoomed or panned area of the image has a frame size at least as large as the frame size of the sequence. For example, if you were working in full HD, which is 1920×1080 pixels, and you wanted to perform a 2X zoom, you'd need 3840×2160 pixels in the image to keep it perfectly sharp without scaling up the pixels.
- Importing large image files uses more system memory and can slow down your system. If you are working with original photos (which can be massive), consider processing them to make them smaller before using them.
- If possible, use 16-bit RGB color. The CMYK color mode is for print workflows (and is not supported by Premiere Pro). For video editing, use RGB or YUV color modes.

Importing Adobe Illustrator files

Another important graphics component in Adobe Creative Cloud is Adobe Illustrator. Unlike Photoshop, which is primarily designed to work with pixel-based (or raster) graphics, Adobe Illustrator is a vector-based application. *Vector graphics* are mathematical descriptions of shapes rather than drawn pixels. This means you can scale them to any size in Adobe Illustrator and they always look sharp—useful for titles and graphics.

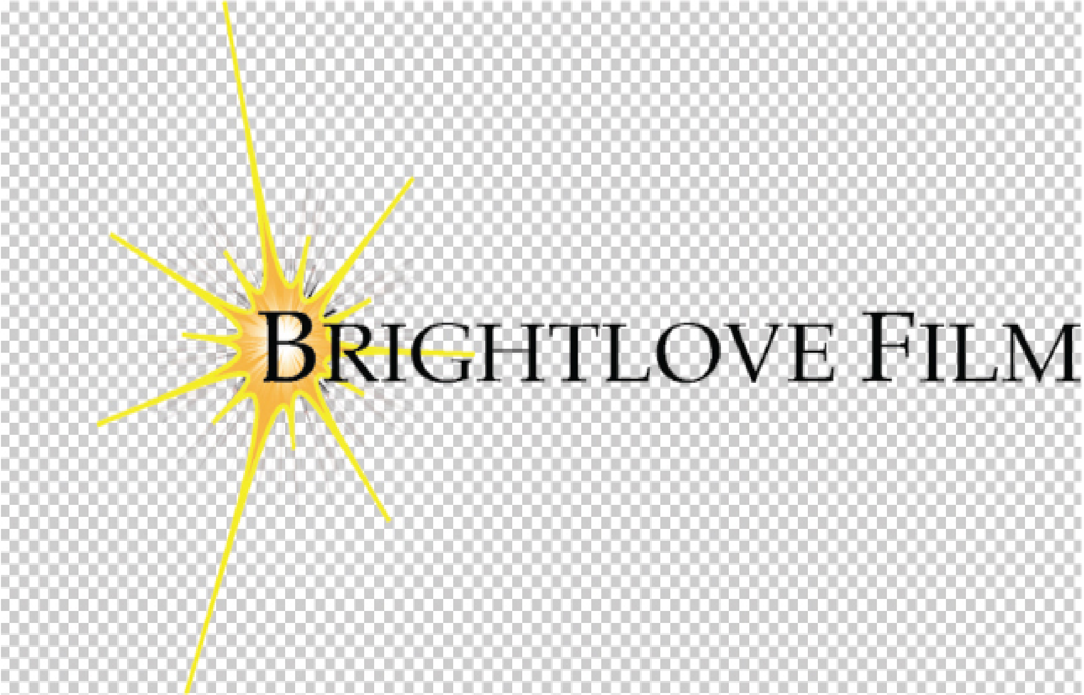
Vector graphics are typically used for technical illustrations, line art, or complex graphics.

Let’s import a vector graphic.

1. Switch back to the Project panel by clicking the panel name.
2. In the Project panel, make sure the Theft_Unexpected_Layered bin is deselected (otherwise the item you are about to import will be imported into that bin).
3. Double-click an empty area of the Project panel to open the Import dialog box, or press Command+I (macOS) or Ctrl+I (Windows).
4. Navigate to Lessons/Assets/Graphics.
5. Select the file Brightlove_film_logo.ai and click Import, or double-click its icon.
6. A clip linked to the Illustrator file you imported appears in the Project panel. Double-click the clip icon to view the logo in the Source Monitor.

   There’s black text in the logo that disappears into the black background of the Source Monitor. That’s because the logo has transparent areas, and the background of the Source Monitor is black.

7. The Source Monitor has a Settings menu 🔧 with options that change the way clips are displayed. Use this menu to choose Transparency Grid.



● **Note**

If you right-click Brightlove_film_logo.ai in the Project panel, you have the option to choose Edit Original. If you have Adobe Illustrator installed on your computer, choosing Edit Original will open the graphic in Illustrator, ready to be edited. This means, even though the layers are merged in Premiere Pro, you can return to Adobe Illustrator, edit the original layered file, and save it; the changes will update automatically in Premiere Pro.

Now you can see the text more clearly because the background of the Source Monitor has been replaced with a grid.

8. Use the Source Monitor Settings menu to select Transparency Grid again to disable it. You'll learn more about working with layers and transparency in Lesson 14, "Exploring Compositing Techniques."

How Premiere Pro deals with Adobe Illustrator files

- Like the Photoshop file you imported earlier, Illustrator files can be layered. However, Premiere Pro doesn't give you the option to import Adobe Illustrator files in separate layers. It always merges them into a single-layer clip.
- Premiere Pro uses a process called *rasterization* to convert the vector-based Adobe Illustrator art into the pixel-based image format used by Premiere Pro. This conversion happens during import automatically, so be sure your graphics are configured in Illustrator to be high enough resolution before importing them into Premiere Pro.
- Premiere Pro automatically anti-aliases (smooths the edges of) Adobe Illustrator art.
- Premiere Pro sets all empty areas of Illustrator files as transparent so that clips on lower tracks in your sequence will show through.
- Illustrator files (which end in .ai) cannot be imported using Import mode. Instead, use the File > Import command, double-click the background of the Project panel to browse to the file, or use the Media Browser.

Importing subfolders

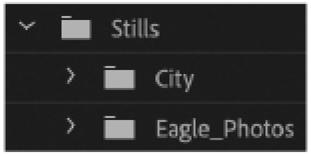
When you bring media into Premiere Pro, you don't have to select individual files. You can select a whole folder. If your files are organized into folders and subfolders on your storage drive, when you import them, Premiere Pro will re-create the folders as bins.

This method is not suitable for importing fragmented camera media, with video and audio files stored in different folders. You'll want to use Import mode or the Media Browser for those file types.

For self-contained media file types like QuickTime movies or MP4 files, regular importing works perfectly.

Try this now.

1. Choose File > Import, or press Command+I (macOS) or Ctrl+I (Windows).
2. Navigate to Lessons/Assets, and select the Stills folder. Don’t browse inside the folder; just select it.
3. Click the Import (macOS) or Import Folder (Windows) button. Premiere Pro imports the folder and its contents, including two subfolders containing photos. In the Project panel, you’ll find bins were created to match the folders. In List view, you can click the disclosure triangle next to any bin to toggle the display of its contents.



Note

You can import folders and subfolders this way using the Media Browser too. Select a folder on the right side of the Media Browser, and import it to achieve the same result. Importing folders this way while in Import mode will always merge the contents of the subfolders into a single collection in the Project panel.

Working with VR (360) video

What is often referred to as *VR video* is really 360° video that is best viewed using a VR headset as it captures an image in all 360 degrees. When wearing a VR headset to view this kind of video, you can turn your head to look in different directions. Premiere Pro has excellent built-in support and dedicated visual effects for 360° video and the 180° video standard, with a dedicated viewing mode, native support for VR headsets, and special effects designed for the particular needs of video footage that surrounds the viewer.

There is no special import process for 360° video. You can use the regular Import option, or you can use the Media Browser and import as you would any other video file.

Premiere Pro supports prestitched equirectangular media, so you will have to use another application to prepare your 360° media in this way prior to import.

360° video workflows are beyond the scope of this book. Check the online help for more information.

● Note

If you import an entire folder, it’s possible some of the files will not be media supported by Premiere Pro. If so, a message will inform you that some files could not be imported.

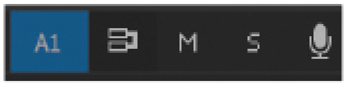
Recording a voice-over

You may be working on a video project that includes a narration track. It’s likely you will have the narration recorded by professionals (or at least recorded in a location quieter than your desk), but with the right hardware, you can record high-quality audio right into Premiere Pro.

This can be helpful because it will give you a sense of timing for your edits.

Try recording a scratch audio track.

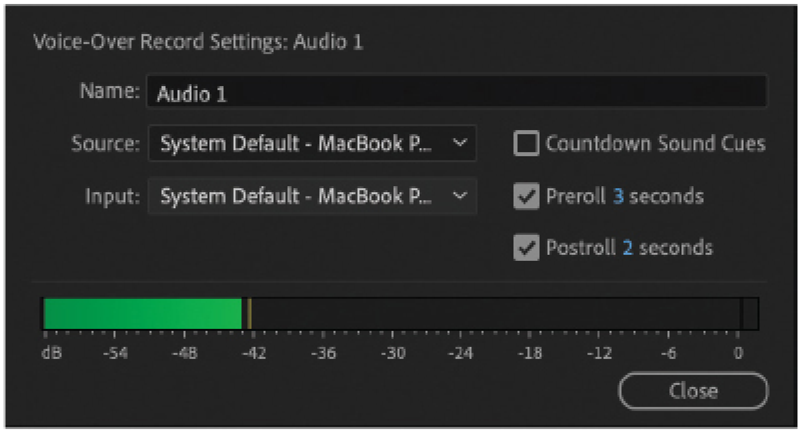
1. If you’re not using a built-in microphone, make sure your external microphone or audio mixer is properly connected to your computer. You may need to consult the documentation for your computer or sound card.
2. In the Timeline panel, make sure the Theft_Unexpected_Layered sequence is displayed by clicking its name in the Timeline panel. If you have closed the sequence, re-open it by double-clicking the sequence icon in the Project panel.
3. Every audio track has a set of buttons and options on the far left. This area is called the *track header*. There’s a Voice-Over Record button 🎙 for each audio track.

   Right-click the microphone Voice-Over Record button, and choose Voice-Over Record Settings to choose your microphone. Use the Source menu to choose the audio hardware you will use, and use the Input menu to choose the particular input for that hardware.

   Tip

   The dialog box that appears when recording a voice-over also allows you to name the new audio file.

   Voice-Over Record Settings: Audio 1

   Name: Audio 1

   Source: System Default - MacBook P...

   Input: System Default - MacBook P...

   ☐ Countdown Sound Cues

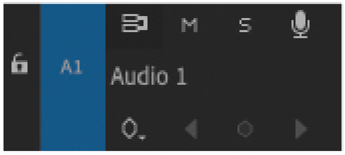
   ☑ Preroll 3 seconds

   ☑ Postroll 2 seconds

   Then click the Close button.
4. Turn down your computer speakers, or use headphones to prevent feedback or echo.

5. To see the result more clearly, increase the height of the A1 track.

   To increase the height of an audio track, double-click an empty space on the right side of the track header (next to the Voice-Over Record button), drag down on the horizontal dividing line between two audio track headers (including the Mix track), or hover the pointer over the track header, while holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows), and scroll.

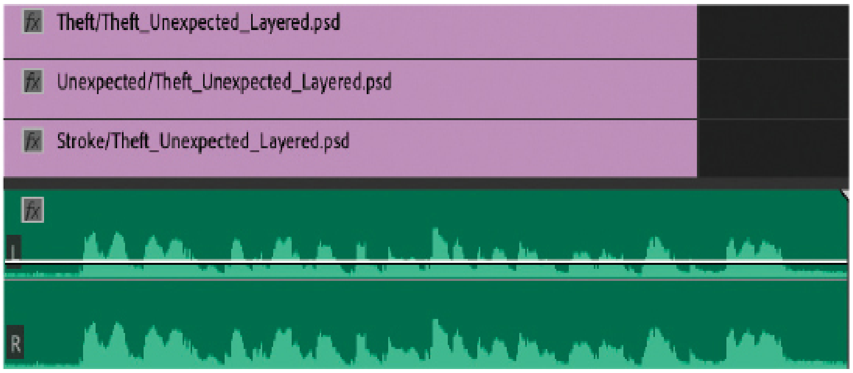
   
   M
S
A1
Audio 1

6. In the Timeline panel, time moves from left to right, just as it does with any online video. At the top of the Timeline panel, where the time ruler is displayed, a playhead indicates the current frame displayed in the Program Monitor. You can click at any point in the time ruler, and the playhead will move to show that frame. You can also drag on the time ruler itself to view the contents of the current sequence. This is called *scrubbing* (like scrubbing a floor).

   Position the Timeline playhead at the beginning of the sequence, as far left as it will go, and click the Voice-Over Record button for track A1 to begin recording.

7. After a brief countdown in the Program Monitor, recording will begin. Say a few words, and press the spacebar to stop recording.

   Premiere Pro creates a new audio clip and adds it to the Project panel and the current sequence.

   
   Theft/Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd
Unexpected/Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd
Stroke/Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd
L
R

The newly recorded audio file is added to the location specified in the project Scratch Disks settings. By default, this is the same as the location of the project file. In this example, you will have created a new audio file in a subfolder that is automatically created called Adobe Premiere Pro Captured Audio.

8. Choose File > Save to save the project. You can close the project or keep it open, ready for the next lesson.

Customizing the media cache

When you import files in certain video and audio formats, Premiere Pro may need to process and cache (temporarily store) a version of the file or additional files to make clip playback or waveform display smoother. This is particularly true for highly compressed formats, and the process is called *conforming*.

If necessary, imported audio files are automatically conformed to a new CFA file (conformed audio file). Most MPEG files are *indexed*, resulting in an extra MPGINDEX file that makes it easier to read the file (it’s a little like creating a map of the file to make playback easier).

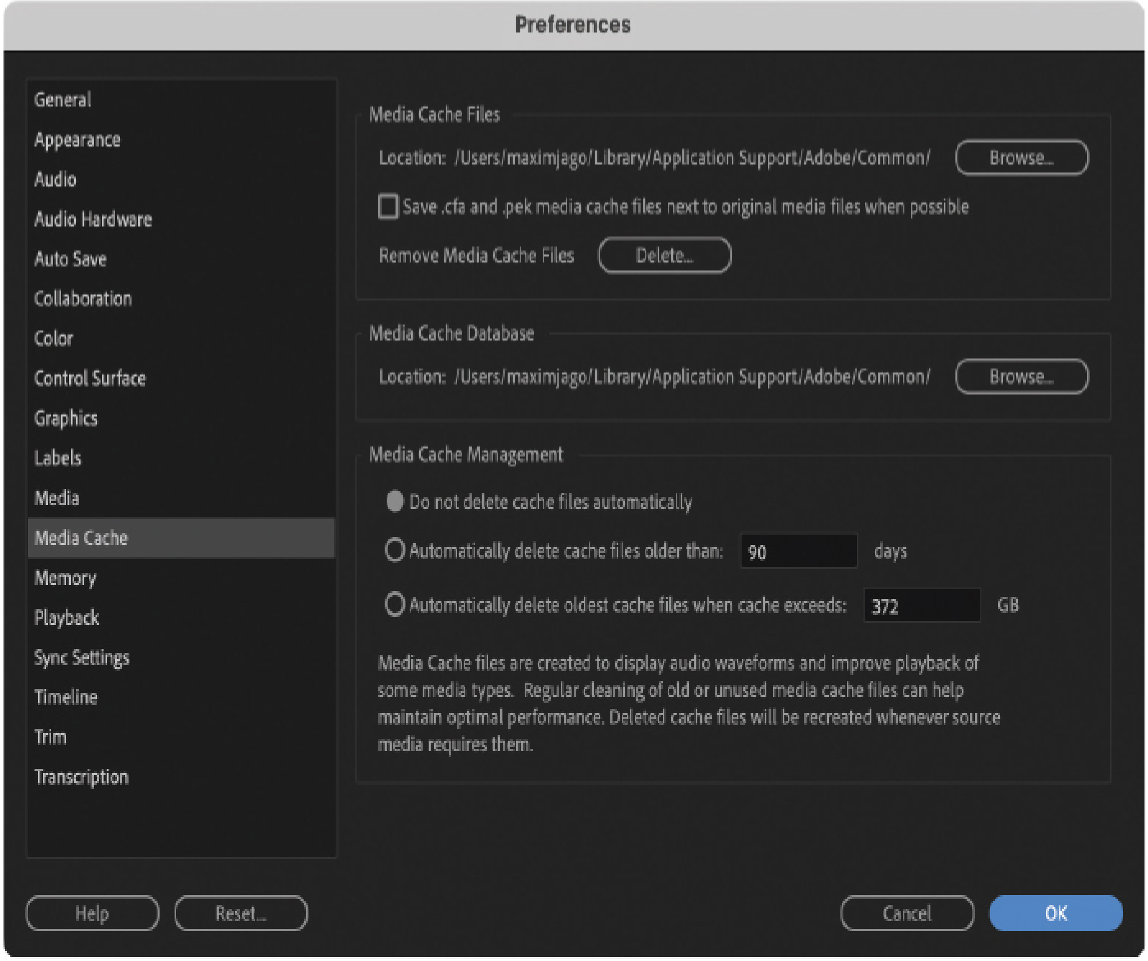
● Note

The word *conform* is used to describe both the way clip playback is adjusted to match sequence settings and the way certain formats are processed when imported to Premiere Pro. That’s because the principle is the same: The original material is adapted to improve performance.

You’ll know that the cache is being built if you see a small progress indicator in the lower-right corner of the screen when importing media.

The media cache improves preview playback performance by making it easier for your editing system to decode and play media. You can customize the cache to further improve performance. A media cache database helps Premiere Pro manage these cache files, which are shared between multiple Creative Cloud applications.

Let’s take a look at the options. Choose Premiere Pro > Settings > Media Cache (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Media Cache (Windows).


Preferences
General
Appearance
Audio
Audio Hardware
Auto Save
Collaboration
Color
Control Surface
Graphics
Labels
Media
Media Cache
Memory
Playback
Sync Settings
Timeline
Trim
Transcription
Browse...
Delete...
Browse...
Help
Reset...
Cancel
OK

Media Cache Files

Location: /Users/maximjago/Library/Application Support/Adobe/Common/

☐ Save .cfa and .pek media cache files next to original media files when possible

Remove Media Cache Files

Media Cache Database

Location: /Users/maximjago/Library/Application Support/Adobe/Common/

Media Cache Management

● Do not delete cache files automatically

○ Automatically delete cache files older than: 90 days

○ Automatically delete oldest cache files when cache exceeds: 372 GB

Media Cache files are created to display audio waveforms and improve playback of some media types. Regular cleaning of old or unused media cache files can help maintain optimal performance. Deleted cache files will be recreated whenever source media requires them.

Here are the options:

- To move the media cache files or the media cache database to a new location, click the appropriate Browse button, select the desired location, and click Choose (macOS) or Choose Folder (Windows).
- To keep media cache files stored on the same drive as the media, select Save .cfa And .pek Media Cache Files Next To Original Media Files When Possible. This can be useful if your audio is stored on an external drive that you intend to move between editing systems as it saves you waiting for them to be automatically re-created after changing systems. If you want to keep everything in one central folder, leave this option unselected. Remember, the faster the drive for the

media cache, the better the playback performance you’re likely to experience in Premiere Pro.

- You should clean the media cache database on a regular basis to remove old conform and index files that are no longer required. To do so, click the Delete button. In the Delete Media Cache Files dialog box, click OK.

  It’s a good idea to do this after you wrap up projects because it removes unnecessary preview render files too, saving space.

- The Media Cache Management options allow you to configure a degree of automation in the management of cache files. Premiere Pro will automatically re-create these files if they are needed, so it’s safe to enable these options to save space.

- To remove *all* media cache files, including those that are in use, restart Premiere Pro while holding Option, Cmd, or Shift (macOS) or Alt, Ctrl, or Shift (Windows) and select Clear Media Cache Files. It’s a good idea to do this after updating to a new version of Premiere Pro to maintain a well-organized cache.

For now, click Cancel to close the Preferences dialog box without saving any changes.

Review questions

1 Does Premiere Pro need to convert P2, XDCAM, R3D, ARRIRAW, or AVCHD footage when it is imported?

2 What is an advantage of using Import mode or the Media Browser rather than the File > Import method to import multiple media files that are part of one clip?

3 When you’re importing a layered Photoshop file, what are the four ways to import the file?

4 Where can media cache files be stored?

5 How can you enable automatic proxy media file creation when video is imported?

Review answers

1 No. Premiere Pro can edit P2, XDCAM, R3D, ARRIRAW, and AVCHD, as well as many other formats, natively.

2 Import mode and the Media Browser automatically honor the complex folder structures for P2, XDCAM, and many other formats, automatically stitching multiple media files together into a single clip where it's needed.

3 You can merge all the visible layers in the Photoshop file into a single clip by choosing Merge All Layers from the Import As menu in the Import Layered File dialog box; or select the specific layers you want by choosing Merged Layers. If you want layers as separate clips, choose Individual Layers and select the layers to import, or choose Sequence to import the selected layers and create a new sequence from them.

4 You can store media cache files in any specified location or automatically on the same drive as the original files (when possible). The faster the storage for your cache files, the better the playback performance.

5 You can enable proxy media file creation in the Ingest Settings dialog box. You'll find these in the Project Settings dialog box. You can also enable proxy creation by selecting the box at the top of the Media Browser. There's an Ingest Settings shortcut button there too.

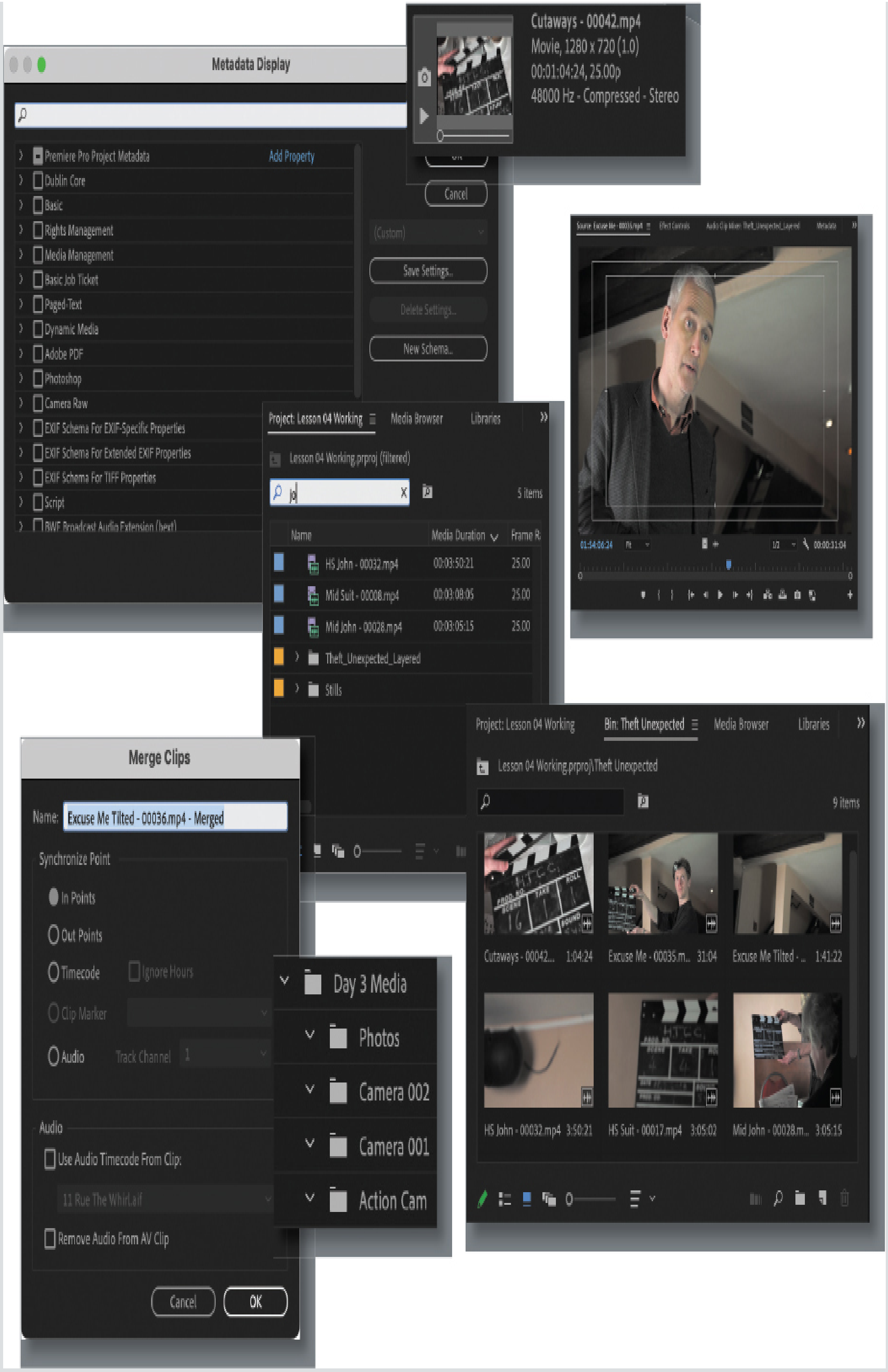
4 Organizing Media

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Navigate the Project panel.
- Organize your project with bins.
- Add clip metadata.
- Use essential playback controls.
- Configure footage interpretation.
- Make changes to your clips.

This lesson will take about 90 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Movie, 1280 x 720 (1.0)
00:01:04:24, 25.00p
48000 Hz - Compressed - Stereo
Metadata Display
Premiere Pro Project Metadata
Add Property
Dublin Core
Basic
Rights Management
Media Management
Basic Job Ticket
Paged-Text
Dynamic Media
Adobe PDF
Photoshop
Camera Raw
EXIF Schema For EXIF-Specific Properties
EXIF Schema For Extended EXIF Properties
EXIF Schema For TIFF Properties
Script
BWF Broadcast Audio Extension (bext)
Cancel
Save Settings...
Delete Settings...
New Schema...
Project: Lesson 04 Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Lesson 04 Working.prproj (Filtered)
5 items
Name
Media Duration
HS John - 00032.mp4
00:03:50:21
25.00
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4
00:03:08:05
25.00
Mid John - 00028.mp4
00:03:05:15
25.00
Theft_Unexpected_Layered
Stills
Merge Clips
Name: Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4 - Merged
Synchronize Point
In Points
Out Points
Timecode
Ignore Hours
Clip Marker
Audio
Track Channel
Audio
Use Audio Timecode From Clip:
Remove Audio From AV Clip
Cancel
OK
Day 3 Media
Photos
Camera 002
Camera 001
Action Cam
Bin: Theft Unexpected
Lesson 04 Working.prproj\Theft Unexpected
9 items
Cutaways - 00042... 1:04:24
Excuse Me - 00035.m... 31:04
Excuse Me Tilted - ... 1:41:22
HS John - 00032.mp4 3:50:21
HS Suit - 00017.mp4 3:05:02
Mid John - 00028.m... 3:05:15

Once you have some video and audio assets in your project, you’ll begin looking through your footage and adding clips to a sequence. Before you do, it’s well worth spending a little time organizing the assets you have—this can save you from spending hours hunting for things later.

Starting the lesson

When you have lots of clips in your project, especially many imported from several different media types, it can be a challenge to stay on top of everything, let alone finding that magic shot when you need it.

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to organize your clips using the Project panel. You’ll create special containers, called *bins*, to divide your clips into categories. You’ll also learn about adding important metadata and labels to your clips.

● Note

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

You’ll begin by getting to know the all-important Project panel and organizing your clips.

1. For this lesson, open the project file Lesson 04.prproj from the Lessons folder.
2. To begin, reset the workspace to the default. Choose Window > Workspaces Editing. Then choose Window > Workspaces > Reset To Saved Layout.
3. Choose File > Save As.
4. Rename the file to **Lesson 04 Working.prproj**.
5. Browse to the Lessons folder, and click Save to save the project.

   By saving a new version of the project file you can always go back to the previous version—it’s an electronic paper trail.

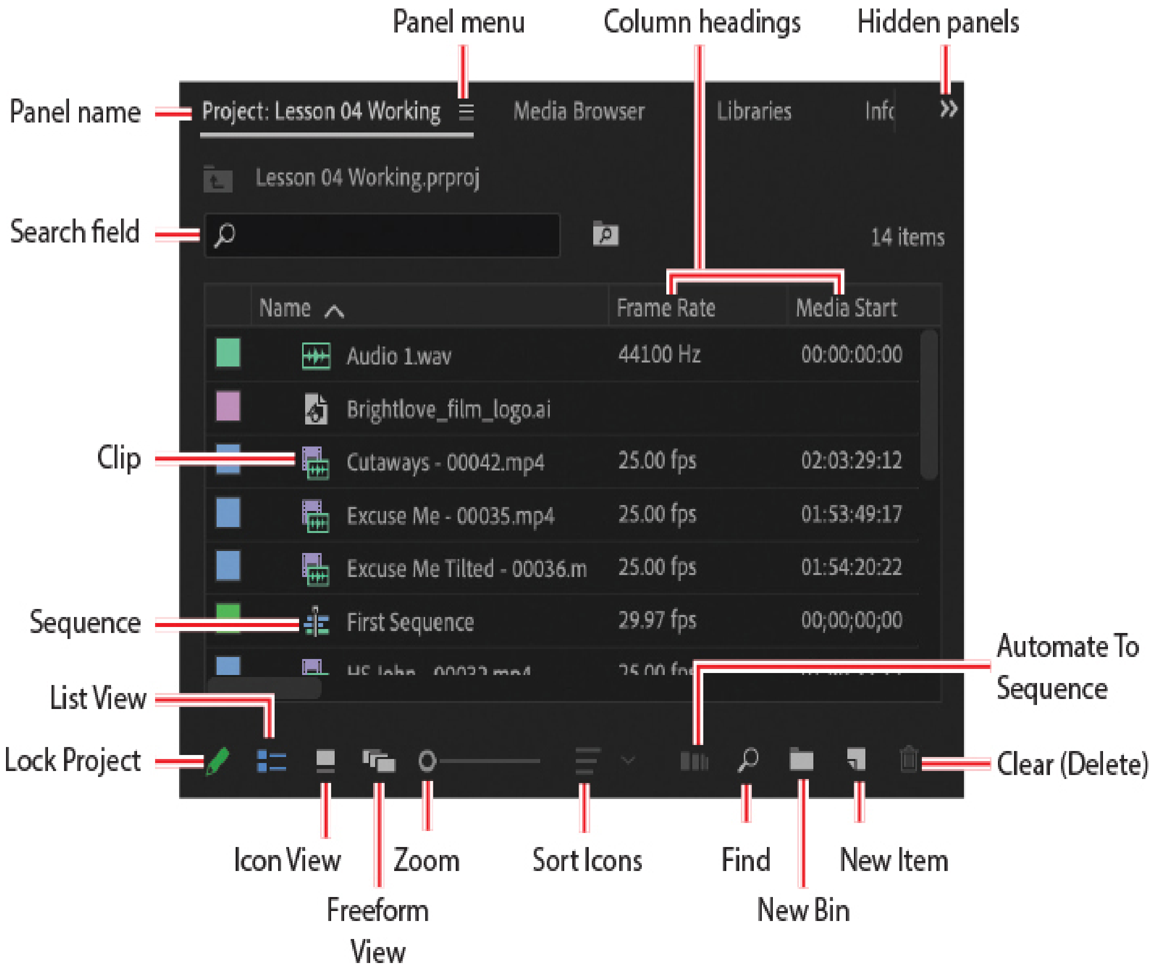
▶ **Tip**

You can choose Save As or Save A Copy from the File menu. Save As saves the current project file with a new name, leaving the previous version untouched. Save A Copy creates a new separate project file while you continue to work on your existing project file.

Using the Project panel

Everything you import into your Adobe Premiere Pro project will appear in the Project panel. The Project panel has folder-like bins that you can use to stay organized and tools for browsing your clips and working with their metadata.

In addition to acting as the repository for all your clips, the Project panel gives access to important options for interpreting media. All your footage will have a frame rate (frames per second, or fps), a pixel aspect ratio (pixel shape), and a color space, usually set by the camera. You may want to change these interpretation settings for creative or technical reasons.


Panel menu
Column headings
Hidden panels
Panel name
Project: Lesson 04 Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Infc
Lesson 04 Working.prproj
Search field
14 items
Clip
Sequence
List View
Lock Project
Automate To Sequence
Clear (Delete)
Icon View
Zoom
Sort Icons
Find
New Item
Freeform View
New Bin

Name	Frame Rate	Media Start
Audio 1.wav	44100 Hz	00:00:00:00
Brightlove_film_logo.ai		
Cutaways - 00042.mp4	25.00 fps	02:03:29:12
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4	25.00 fps	01:53:49:17
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.m	25.00 fps	01:54:20:22
First Sequence	29.97 fps	00;00;00;00

For example, if a video file is tagged with the wrong playback frame rate, you could change the clip interpretation to correct it. You might also receive a video file that has the wrong pixel aspect ratio setting and want to correct it.

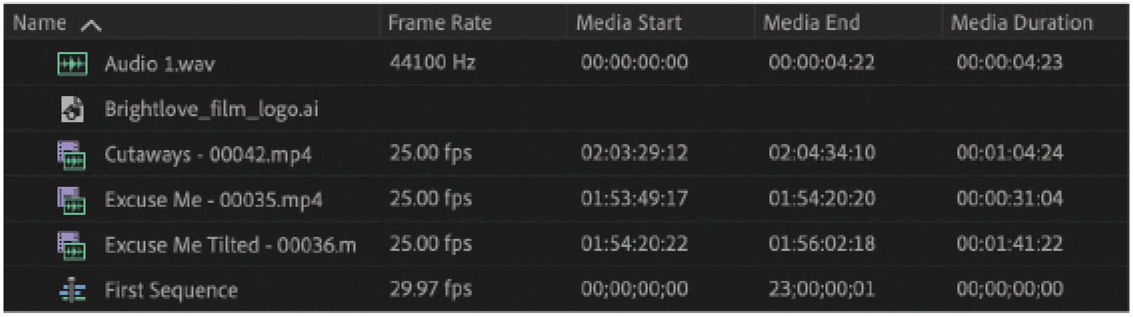
Premiere Pro uses metadata associated with footage to know how to play it back and can display and edit additional metadata (such as location log notes) in the Project panel or the dedicated Metadata panel. If you want to change the clip metadata, you can also do so in the Project panel.

Customizing the Project panel

It’s likely that you’ll want to resize the Project panel from time to time. You’ll also alternate between looking at your clips as a list or as thumbnail icons. Sometimes it’s quicker to resize the panel than to scroll to see more information.

Tip

You can access a lot of clip information by scrolling the List view or by hovering your pointer over a clip name.



Name	Frame Rate	Media Start	Media End	Media Duration
Audio 1.wav	44100 Hz	00:00:00:00	00:00:04:22	00:00:04:23
Brightlove_film_logo.ai				
Cutaways - 00042.mp4	25.00 fps	02:03:29:12	02:04:34:10	00:01:04:24
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4	25.00 fps	01:53:49:17	01:54:20:20	00:00:31:04
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.m	25.00 fps	01:54:20:22	01:56:02:18	00:01:41:22
First Sequence	29.97 fps	00;00;00;00	23;00;00;01	00;00;00;00

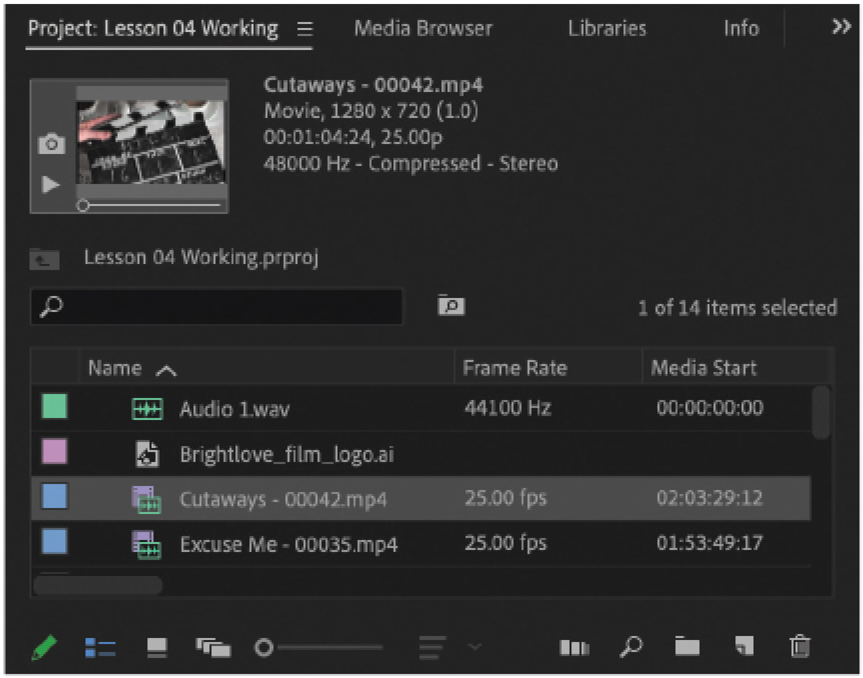
The default Editing workspace is designed to keep the interface as clean as possible so you can focus on your creative work. Part of the Project panel that’s hidden from view by default, called the Preview Area, gives additional information about your clips.

Let’s take a look.

1. While still working in the default Editing workspace, open the Project panel menu ☰.
2. Choose Preview Area.

Tip

There’s a quick way to toggle between seeing the Project panel in a frame and seeing it full-screen: Hover your pointer over the panel, and press the ` (accent grave) key. You can do this with any panel. If your keyboard does not have a ` (accent grave) key, you can double-click the panel name.


Project: Lesson 04 Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Info

Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Movie, 1280 x 720 (1.0)
00:01:04:24, 25.00p
48000 Hz - Compressed - Stereo

Lesson 04 Working.prproj

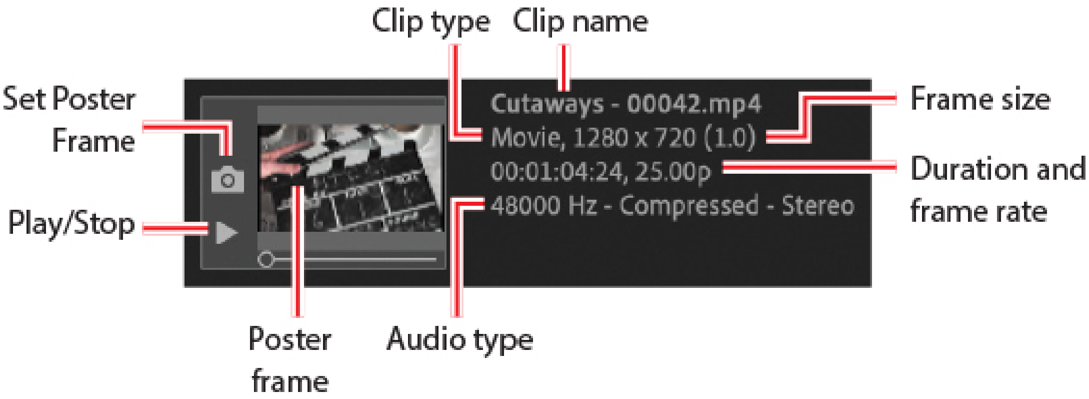
1 of 14 items selected

	Name	Frame Rate	Media Start
🟩	Audio 1.wav	44100 Hz	00:00:00:00
🟪	Brightlove_film_logo.ai		
🟦	Cutaways - 00042.mp4	25.00 fps	02:03:29:12
🟦	Excuse Me - 00035.mp4	25.00 fps	01:53:49:17

When you select a clip, the Preview Area shows you several kinds of useful information, including the frame size, pixel aspect ratio, and duration.

Tip

Click the Set Poster Frame button to select the clip thumbnail displayed in the Project panel.


Clip type
Clip name
Set Poster Frame
Play/Stop
Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Movie, 1280 x 720 (1.0)
00:01:04:24, 25.00p
48000 Hz - Compressed - Stereo
Frame size
Duration and frame rate
Poster frame
Audio type

3. If it’s not already selected, click the List View button at the bottom left of the Project panel. In this view, you’ll find a lot of information about each clip listed in the Project panel organized in columns, but you need to scroll horizontally to see it.

Tip

You can scroll the Project panel view up and down using the scroll wheel on your mouse or a gesture on your touchpad.

4. Choose Preview Area from the Project panel menu again to hide it.

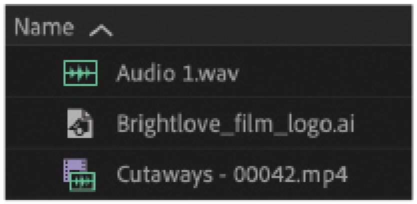
There is also a Freeform view in the Project panel, which can be used to organize clips or even begin to build sequences.

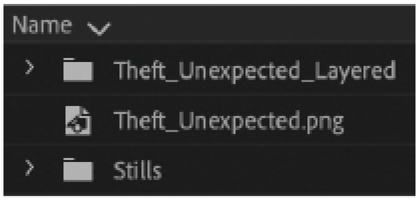
Finding assets in the Project panel

Working with clips is a little like working with pieces of paper at your desk. If you have just one or two clips, it’s easy. But when you have 100 to 200, you need an organizational system.

One way you can help make things smoother throughout the edit is to invest a little time in organizing your clips right at the beginning. If you rename your clips after importing them, you can more easily locate content later (see “Changing names” in this lesson). It also helps to know how to sort items in the Project panel.

1. Click the Name column heading at the top of the Project panel. Each time you click the Name heading, items in the Project panel are displayed in alphabetical order or reverse alphabetical order. A direction indicator next to the heading shows the current sort order.





Note

You may need to drag a heading divider to expand the width of a column before you can see its sort order indicator or all of the information available in the column.

If you’re searching for several clips with particular features—such as a duration or a frame size—it can be helpful to change the order in which the headings are displayed, from left to right.

2. Scroll to the right until you can see the Media Duration heading in the Project panel. This shows the total duration of each clip’s media file. You may find it helpful to resize the Project panel to see more columns.

   ● **Note**

   When you scroll to the right in the Project panel, Premiere Pro always maintains the clip names and labels on the left so you know which clips you’re seeing information about.

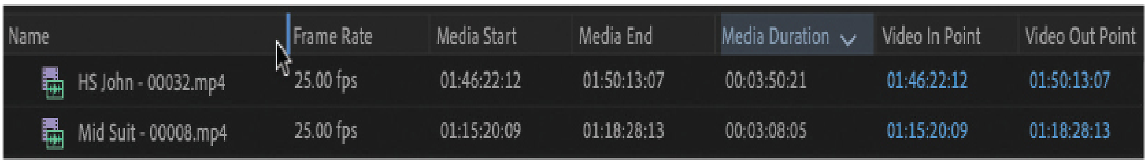
3. Click the Media Duration heading. Premiere Pro now displays the clips in order of media duration. Notice the direction arrow is now on the Media Duration heading.

   Each time you click the heading, the direction arrow toggles between showing clips in order of increasing duration and decreasing duration.

   ▶ **Tip**

   The Project panel display configuration is saved with workspaces, so if you want to always have access to a particular setup, save it as part of a custom workspace.

4. Drag the Media Duration heading to the left until you see a blue divider between the Frame Rate heading and the Name heading. When you release the heading, it will be repositioned right next to the Name heading.



Name	Frame Rate	Media Start	Media End	Media Duration	Video In Point	Video Out Point
HS John - 00032.mp4	25.00 fps	01:46:22:12	01:50:13:07	00:03:50:21	01:46:22:12	01:50:13:07
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4	25.00 fps	01:15:20:09	01:18:28:13	00:03:08:05	01:15:20:09	01:18:28:13

● Note

Graphic and photo files such as Adobe Photoshop PSD, JPEG, and Adobe Illustrator AI files import with a default frame rate (timebase) and duration. You can choose a new default frame rate in the Media Preferences, using the Indeterminate Media Timebase menu. You can choose a new default duration in the Timeline Preferences, using the Still Image Default Duration menu.

Filtering bin content

Premiere Pro has search tools to help you find your media. Even if you’re using the nondescriptive original clip names assigned in-camera, you can search for clips based on a number of factors, such as frame size or file type.

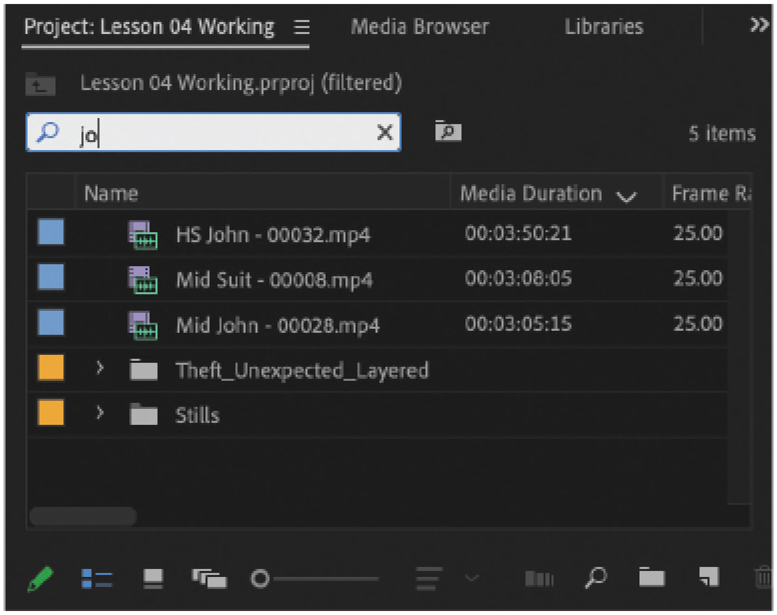
At the top of the Project panel, you can type in the Search (or Filter Bin Content) field to display only clips with names or metadata matching the text you enter. This is a quick way to locate a clip if you remember its name (or even part of its name). Clips that don’t match the text you enter are hidden, and clips that do match are revealed, even if they are inside a closed bin.

Try this now.

1. Click in the Filter Bin Content box, and type **jo**.

   ● Note

   The name *bin* comes from film editing. The Project panel is also effectively a bin; it can contain clips and functions like any other bin.


Project: Lesson 04 Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Lesson 04 Working.prproj (filtered)
jo
5 items

Name	Media Duration	Frame R
HS John - 00032.mp4	00:03:50:21	25.00
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4	00:03:08:05	25.00
Mid John - 00028.mp4	00:03:05:15	25.00
Theft_Unexpected_Layered		
Stills		

Premiere Pro displays only the clips with the letters *jo* in the name or in the metadata, expanding bins if necessary. Notice that the name of the project is displayed above the text-entry box, along with *(filtered)*. This, along with the letters you typed, is the only indication that some of the clips in the Project panel may be hidden.

▶ **Tip**

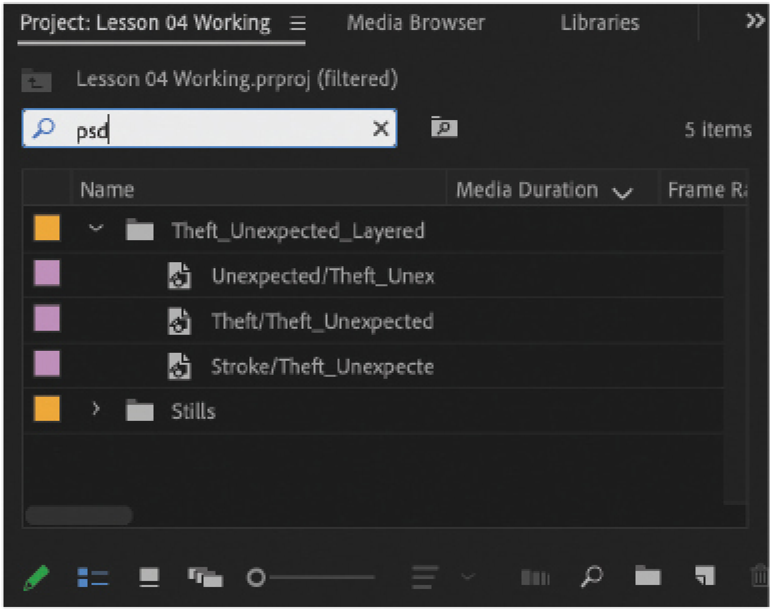
Look out for *(filtered)* in the search box. It's easy to press Spacebar while the Filter Bin Content box is active, which adds an otherwise invisible filter—the space you typed!

2. Click the X on the right of the Search field to clear your search.
3. Type **psd** in the box.

Premiere Pro displays only clips that have the letters *psd* in their name or metadata, along with all project bins.

● **Note**

When filtering bin contents, all bins remain visible, even if they don't contain the letters you are filtering with.


Project: Lesson 04 Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Lesson 04 Working.prproj (filtered)
psd
5 items
Name
Media Duration
Frame R
Theft_Unexpected_Layered
Unexpected/Theft_Unex
Theft/Theft_Unexpected
Stroke/Theft_Unexpecte
Stills

Using the Filter Bin Content box in this way, you can search for particular types of files. Notice that the clips are inside a closed bin, which opens automatically to display clips that meet your search criteria.

Some types of metadata can be edited directly in the Project panel. For example, you can add notes to the Description field, and these notes will immediately be searchable.

● Note

> In this context, *field* means a box or space into which you can enter text or numerical information. For clips in the Project panel, many fields are already filled, but there are several you can use freely to help organize your project.

Be sure to click the X on the right of the Search field to clear your filter when you have found the clips you want. Do this now to reveal all the clips in the project.

Using advanced Find

Premiere Pro also has an advanced Find feature. To learn about it, let’s import some more clips.

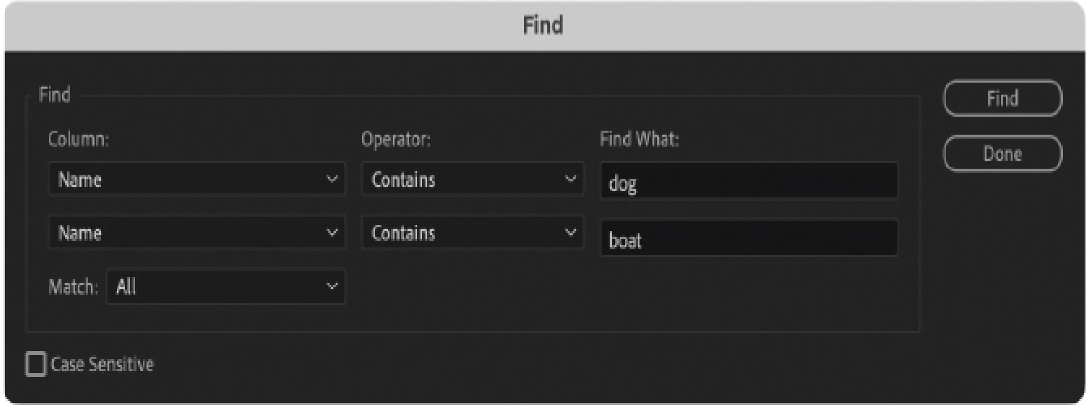
Using any of the methods described in Lesson 3, “Importing Media,” import these items:

- Seattle_Skyline.mov from the Assets/Video and Audio Files/General Views folder
- Under Basket.mov from the Assets/Video and Audio Files/Basketball folder

At the bottom of the Project panel, click the Find button 🔍. Premiere Pro displays the Find dialog box, which has more advanced options for locating your clip.

You can perform two searches at once with the advanced Find dialog box. You can choose to display clips that match *all* search criteria or *any* search criteria. For example, depending on the setting you choose from the Match menu, you could do either of the following:

- Search for a clip with the words *dog* **and** *boat* in its name.



Find

Column:	Operator:	Find What:
Name	Contains	dog
Name	Contains	boat

Match: All

☐ Case Sensitive

- Search for a clip with the word *dog* **or** *boat* in its name.

You can refine your search by choosing items from the following menus:

- **Column:** This menu lists the columns in the Project panel. When you click Find, Premiere Pro will search only within the column you choose.
- **Operator:** This menu contains a set of standard search options. You can choose to have the search return clips that contain your search term, match it exactly, begin with it, end with it, or lack it entirely.
- **Match:** Choose All to find a clip with both your first *and* your second search text. Choose Any to find a clip with *either* your first or your second search term.

▶ **Tip**

You can find clips in sequences too. With a sequence open and the Timeline panel active, choose Edit > Find.

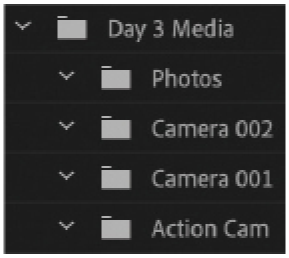
- **Case Sensitive:** Select this option to return only results that exactly match the uppercase and lowercase letters you enter.
- **Find What:** Type your search text here.

When you click Find, Premiere Pro highlights a clip that matches your search criteria. Click Find again, and Premiere Pro highlights the next clip that matches your search criteria.

Click Done now to exit the Find dialog box.

Working with bins

Bins allow you to organize clips, sequences, graphics, and so on, by dividing them into named groups.



Just as with folders on your hard drive, you can have multiple bins inside other bins, creating an organizational system as complex as your project requires.

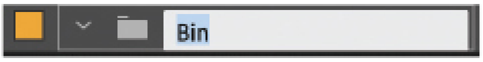
There’s an important difference between bins and the folders on your storage drive, however: Bins exist only in your Premiere Pro project file. You won’t find individual folders representing project bins on your storage drive.

Creating bins

Let’s create a bin.

1. Click the New Bin button at the bottom of the Project panel.

   Premiere Pro creates a new bin and automatically highlights the name, ready for you to rename it. It’s a good habit to name bins as soon as you create them.

   Bin

   ▶ Tip

   If you accidentally create a new bin inside an existing bin, drag the new bin out of the selected bin or choose Edit > Undo to remove the new bin and create it again after deselecting.

2. You have already imported some clips from a short film, so let’s give them a bin. Name the new bin **Theft Unexpected**, and press Return (macOS) or Enter (Windows). But wait—what happened?

   If your new bin is at the end of the list of items in the Project panel, pressing Return/Enter applies the new name and highlights the first item on the list. However, if the new bin is anywhere else on the list, pressing this key applies the new name and then automatically highlights the next item name on the list, so you can easily rename it too.

   ▶ Tip

   If your keyboard has a Function (fn) key, you may find that you can hold the key to switch the way the Return/Enter key works. Try this now to apply the next new bin name.

   This useful shortcut allows you to quickly rename several items in your project. If you want to apply a new name without highlighting the next item, just click elsewhere and continue your work. If you have a numerical keyboard, you can also press that Enter key to apply a new entry without highlighting the next item.

3. You can also create a bin using the File menu. Let’s do this now: Make sure the Project panel is active, and deselect the bin you just created. (If a bin is selected when you create a new bin, Premiere Pro places the new bin inside the selected bin.) Choose File > New > Bin.

4. Name the new bin **Graphics**.
5. You can also make a new bin by right-clicking a blank area in the Project panel and choosing New Bin. Try this now.

   ● **Note**

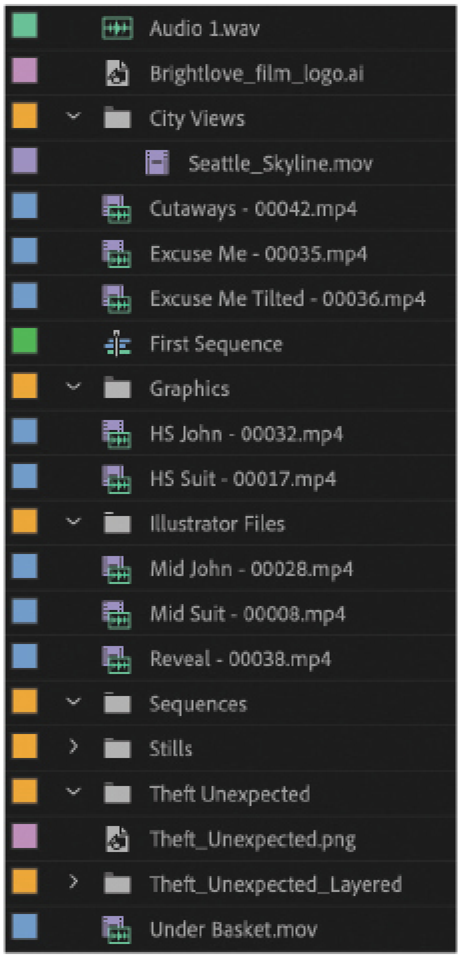
   It can be difficult to find a blank part of the Project panel to click when it’s full of clips. Try clicking just to the left of the icons, inside the panel, or choose Edit > Deselect All.

6. Name the new bin **Illustrator Files**.
7. Drag the clip Seattle_Skyline.mov onto the New Bin button 📁 at the bottom of the Project panel and release it.

   The clip is moved into a new bin. This is one of the quickest and easiest ways to create a new bin for selected clips you have already imported into your project.

8. Name the newly created bin **City Views**.
9. Make sure the Project panel is active but no existing bins are selected. Press the keyboard shortcut Command+B (macOS) or Ctrl+B (Windows) to make another bin.
10. Name the bin **Sequences**.

If your Project panel is set to List view, with the Name heading selected for sorting at the top of the panel, bins appear in alphabetical order among the clips. Newly created bins in List view are automatically expanded, with their disclosure triangles set open. You may need to click the Name heading to reset the sorting order after creating the new bins. Click the heading twice to sort in ascending order again.


Audio 1.wav
Brightlove_film_logo.ai
City Views
  Seattle_Skyline.mov
Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4
First Sequence
Graphics
HS John - 00032.mp4
HS Suit - 00017.mp4
Illustrator Files
Mid John - 00028.mp4
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4
Reveal - 00038.mp4
Sequences
Stills
Theft Unexpected
Theft_Unexpected.png
Theft_Unexpected_Layered
Under Basket.mov

● Note

To rename a bin, you can right-click it and choose Rename. Type the new name, and click away from the text to apply it.

Managing media in bins

Even for this small example project, the Project panel already contains quite a lot of items, including bins. Suppose you were working on a larger project with 200 or even 2,000 clips—it's not hard to imagine how useful bins would be!

Now that you have some bins, let's put them to use. As you move clips into bins, use the disclosure triangles to hide their contents and tidy up the view.

1. Drag the clip Brightlove_film_logo.ai onto the Illustrator Files bin icon. This will move the clip into the bin.

2. Drag Theft_Unexpected.png into the Graphics bin.
3. Drag the whole bin called Theft_Unexpected_Layered (created automatically when you imported the layered PSD file as individual layers) into the Graphics bin.

Note

When you import a Photoshop file with multiple layers and choose to import it as a sequence, Premiere Pro automatically creates a bin for the layers and their sequence. For more information on this workflow, see "Importing layered Adobe Photoshop files" in Lesson 3.

4. Drag the clip Under Basket.mov into the City Views bin. You may need to resize the panel or switch it to full-screen to see both the clip and the bin.
5. Drag the sequence called First Sequence into the Sequences bin.
6. Drag all the remaining clips into the Theft Unexpected bin.

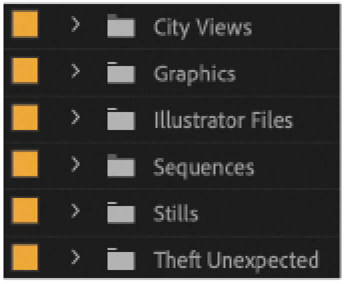
Tip

You can Shift-click, as well as Command-click (macOS) or Ctrl-click (Windows), to make selections in the Project panel, just like you can with files on your hard drive.

You should now have a nicely organized Project panel, with each kind of clip in its own bin.

Tip

To expand or collapse all disclosure triangles, hold Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while you click any disclosure triangle.



7. Click the disclosure triangle for the Graphics bin to display the contents.

   You can copy and paste clips to make extra copies if this helps you stay organized. In the Graphics bin, you have a PNG file that might be useful for the Theft Unexpected content. Let’s make an extra copy.

8. Right-click the Theft_Unexpected.png clip and choose Copy.
9. Click the disclosure triangle for the Theft Unexpected bin to display the contents.
10. Right-click the Theft Unexpected bin and choose Paste to add a copy of the clip to the Theft Unexpected bin.

    When you make copies of clips, you are not making duplicate copies of the media files they are linked to. You can make as many copies as you like of a clip in your Premiere Pro project. Those copies will all link to the same original media file.

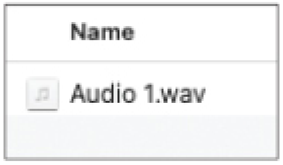
Finding your media files

If you would like to know where a media file is on your hard drive, you can right-click the clip in the Project panel and choose Reveal In Finder (macOS) or Reveal In Explorer (Windows).

The folder in your storage drive that contains the media file will open. This can be useful if you are working with media files stored on multiple hard drives or if you renamed your clips in Premiere Pro.

If you moved all the remaining clips into the Theft Unexpected bin, you should have an Audio 1.wav clip in that bin now, which is the voice-over you recorded in an earlier exercise (in this instance, it’s a version provided with the project file). If you tried recording that voice-over multiple times, you may have more than one audio clip, each with a different number. Let’s remove the clip but keep the audio:

1. Right-click that voice-over clip and choose Reveal In Finder (macOS) or Explorer (Windows).

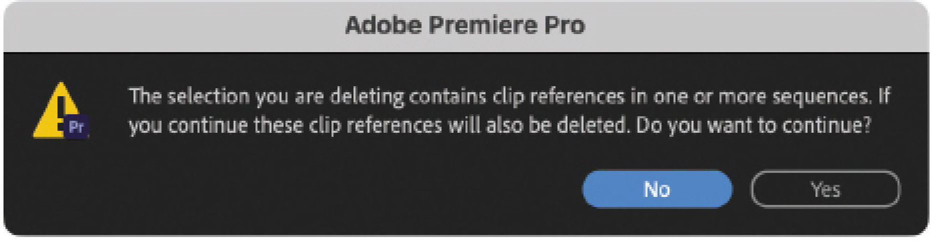


2. Switch back to Premiere Pro. Click the icon for the Audio 1.wav clip to select it, and press Delete (macOS) or Backspace (Windows) to remove it.

   Premiere Pro displays a warning message to remind you that the clip is currently used in a sequence.

   ▶ **Tip**

   Notice that the No option in this dialog box is highlighted in blue. If you press Return/Enter, this is the option that you are selecting.

   The selection you are deleting contains clip references in one or more sequences. If you continue these clip references will also be deleted. Do you want to continue?

   Clicking Yes will remove the clip from the Project panel *and* any sequence that contains the clip.

   Click Yes to remove the clip.

3. Switch back to the folder containing the file in your storage. The audio file is still there!

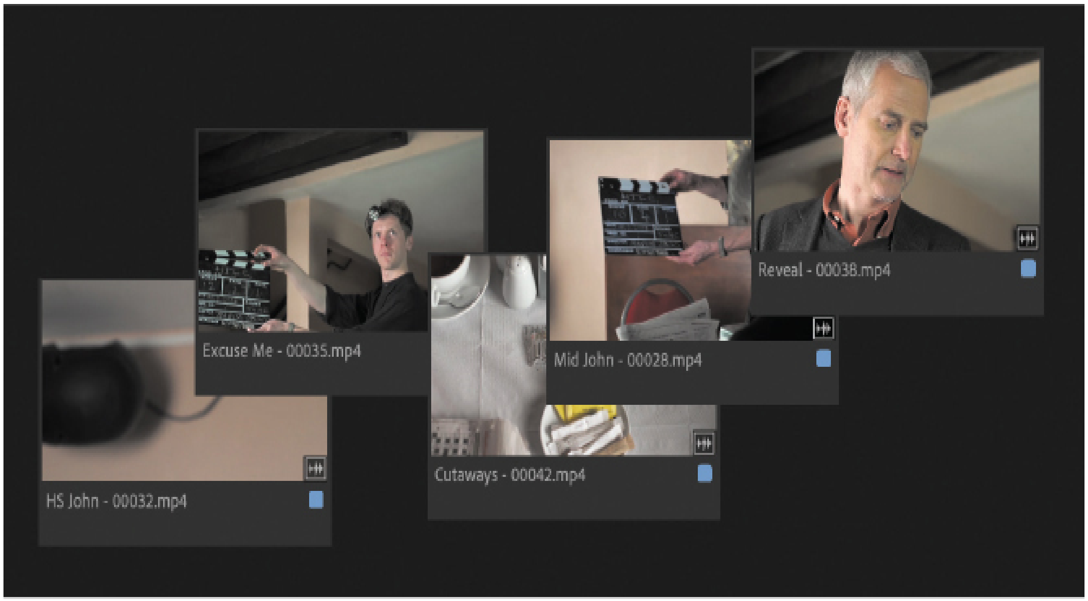
   Removing a clip in Premiere Pro does not remove the linked media file from your storage. Also, making changes to a clip in Premiere Pro does not make changes to the linked media file.

Changing bin views

Although there is a distinction between the Project panel and the bins inside it, they have the same controls and viewing options. For all intents and purposes, you can treat the Project panel as a bin; many Premiere Pro editors use the terms *bin* and *Project panel* interchangeably.

Bins have three views. You choose between them by clicking the buttons at the lower left of the Project panel.

- **List view**: By default, this view displays your clips and bins as a list, with a significant amount of metadata displayed. You can scroll through the metadata and use it to sort clips by clicking column headers.
- **Icon view**: This view displays your clips and bins as thumbnails you can rearrange and use to preview clip contents.
- **Freeform view**: This view displays clips and bins as thumbnails that you can assign different sizes, group together, and place freely in a large area.



The Project panel has a Zoom control, next to the List View, Icon View, and Freeform View buttons, which changes the size of the clip icons or thumbnails.

Note

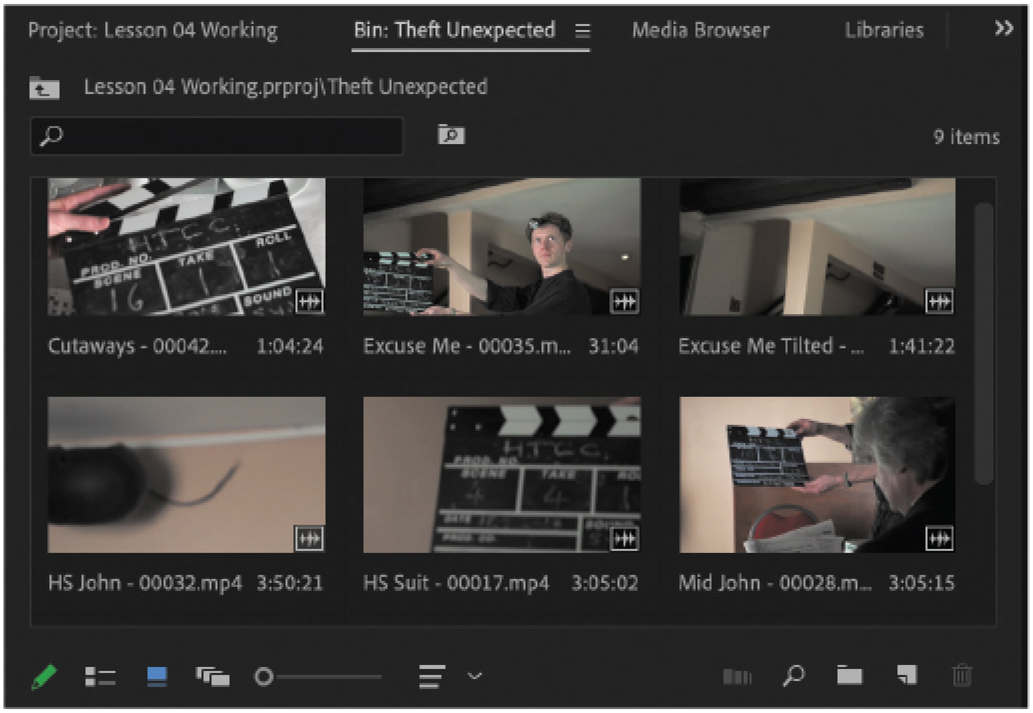
You can change the List view font size in the Project panel or a bin by clicking the panel menu and choosing Font Size. This is particularly useful if you are working on a high-resolution screen.

1. Double-click the Theft Unexpected bin. The bin opens in a new panel in the same group as the Project panel. You can keep as many bin panels open as you like and place them anywhere in the interface to help you stay organized.

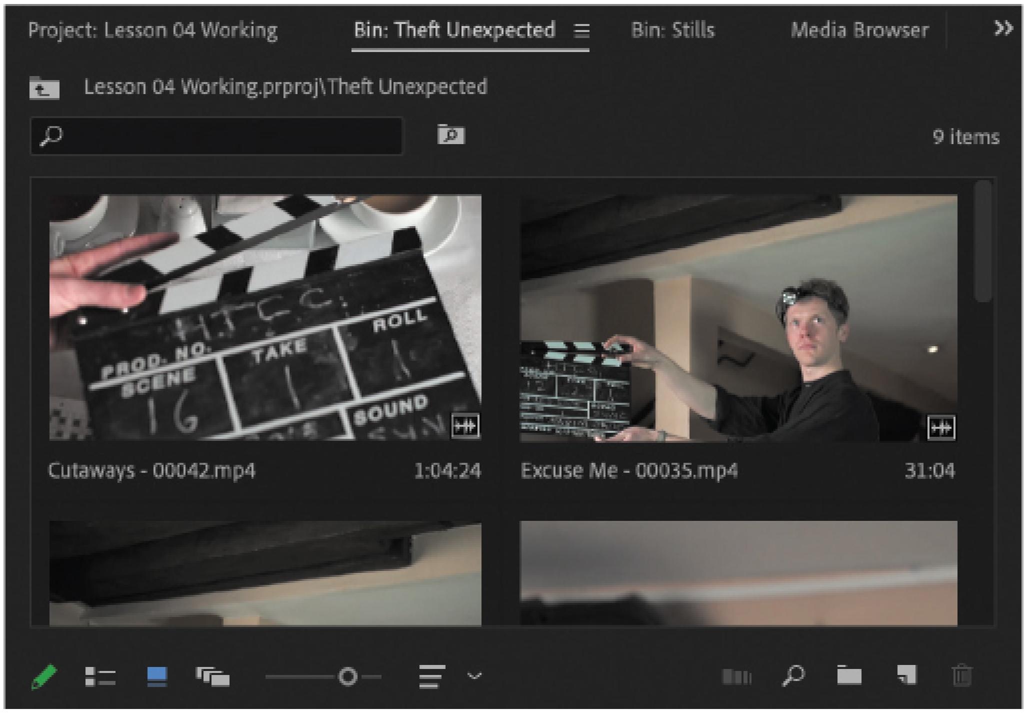
   ▶ Tip

   The option to open bins in a new panel when double-clicking, rather than the same panel, can be changed in the General preferences.

2. Click the Icon View button on the Theft Unexpected bin to display thumbnails for the clips. You may want to resize the Project panel to view more thumbnails.


Project: Lesson 04 Working
Bin: Theft Unexpected
Media Browser
Libraries
Lesson 04 Working.prproj\Theft Unexpected
9 items
Cutaways - 00042.... 1:04:24
Excuse Me - 00035.m... 31:04
Excuse Me Tilted - ... 1:41:22
HS John - 00032.mp4 3:50:21
HS Suit - 00017.mp4 3:05:02
Mid John - 00028.m... 3:05:15

3. Try adjusting the Zoom control.


Project: Lesson 04 Working
Bin: Theft Unexpected
Bin: Stills
Media Browser
Lesson 04 Working.prproj\Theft Unexpected
9 items
Cutaways - 00042.mp4
1:04:24
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4
31:04

Premiere Pro can display large thumbnails to make browsing and selecting your clips easier.

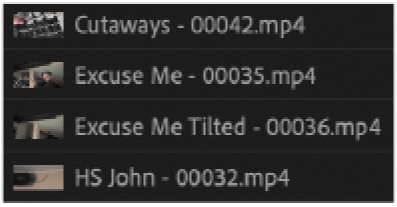
You can also apply various kinds of sorting to clip thumbnails in Icon view by clicking the Sort Icons menu .

4. Switch to List view .

   When you’re in List view, it doesn’t help that much to zoom, unless you turn on the display of thumbnails in this view.

5. Open the panel menu next to the Theft Unexpected bin name at the top of the panel, and choose Thumbnails.

   Premiere Pro now displays thumbnails in List view, as well as in Icon view.

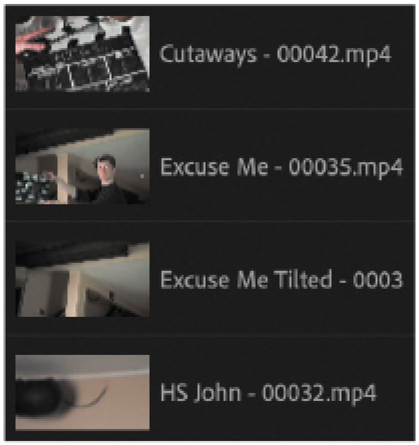


Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4
HS John - 00032.mp4

6. Drag the Zoom control to the right to increase the size of thumbnails.

Notice the numbers in the clip names. These are the original media filenames that were retained when you added descriptive names. For these lessons, we'll only refer to the descriptive clip names and omit the numbers taken from the original media.

By default, the clip thumbnails show the first frame of the media. In some clips, the first frame will not be particularly useful. Look at the clip Cutaways, for example. The thumbnail shows the clapperboard, but it would be useful to see the content.



7. Switch to Icon view.

   In this view, you can hover the pointer over clip thumbnails to preview clips.

   Note

   While in Icon view or Freeform view, selecting a clip by clicking its thumbnail reveals a small timeline control under it. Drag this timeline to view the contents of the clip.

8. Hover your pointer over the Cutaways clip. Without clicking, move the pointer until you find a frame that better represents the shot.
9. While the frame you have chosen is displayed, press Command+P (macOS) or Shift+P (Windows).

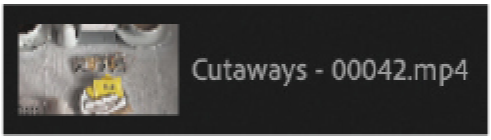
   This keyboard shortcut sets the poster frame for the clip.

Tip

You can also change the poster frame by pressing the I key, which is the keyboard shortcut for Mark In, a command that sets the beginning of a selection when choosing part of a clip that you intend to add to a sequence. This shortcut will only update the poster frame if you haven’t already set one.

10. Switch back to List view.

    Premiere Pro shows your newly selected frame as the thumbnail for this clip.

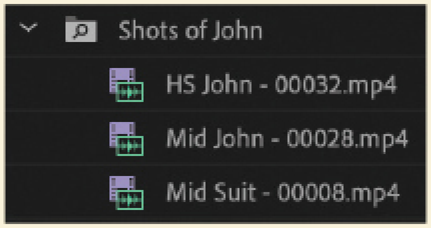
11. Choose Thumbnails from the panel menu to turn off thumbnails in List view.
12. Drag the Zoom control to the left to restore the default size for the clip icons.

Creating Search Bins

When using the Search field to display specific clips, you have the option to create a special kind of virtual bin, called a Search Bin.

After typing in the Search field, click the Create New Search Bin From Query button .

A new Search Bin appears in the Project panel. Search Bins display the results of a search performed when using the Search field. You can rename Search Bins and place them in other bins.



Shots of John

HS John - 00032.mp4

Mid John - 00028.mp4

Mid Suit - 00008.mp4

The contents of Search Bins update dynamically, so if you add new clips to a project that meet the search criteria, they'll appear in matching Search Bins automatically. This can be a fantastic time-saver when working with documentary material that might change over time as you obtain new footage.

Assigning labels

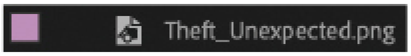
Every item in the Project panel has a label color. In List view, the Label column shows the label color for every clip. When you add clips to a sequence, they are displayed in the Timeline panel with this label color.

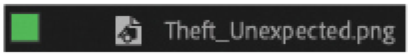
▶ Tip

> Once your clips have the right label colors, you can right-click a clip at any time and choose Label > Select Label Group to select and highlight all visible items with the same label.

Let's change the label color for a title clip.

1. In the Theft Unexpected bin, right-click Theft_Unexpected.png and choose Label > Forest.

   You can change label colors for multiple clips in a single step by selecting them and then right-clicking them to choose another label color.

2. Press Command+Z (macOS) or Ctrl+Z (Windows) to change the Theft_Unexpected.png label color back to Lavender.

   When you add a clip to a sequence, Premiere Pro creates a new *instance*, or copy, of that clip—you'll have one copy in the Project panel and one copy in the sequence. Both link to the same media file.

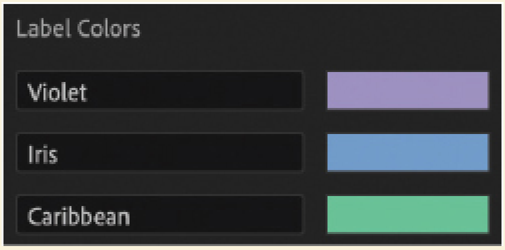
   When you change the label color for a clip in the Project panel or rename a clip, it may or may not update copies of the clip in sequences.

   If a sequence is open in the Timeline panel, you can toggle this setting by opening the Timeline Display Settings menu 🔧 and choosing Show Source Clip Name And Label.

Changing the available label colors

You can assign up to 16 colors as labels to items in your project. Premiere Pro can automatically assign label colors to eight types of items (video, audio, still, etc.), which means you have eight spare label colors.

If you choose Premiere Pro > Settings > Labels (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Labels (Windows), you'll see the list of colors, each with a color swatch. You can click the color swatch to change the color, and you can click the name to rename it.



You can use the Label Defaults options to choose different default labels for each kind of item in your project.

Changing names

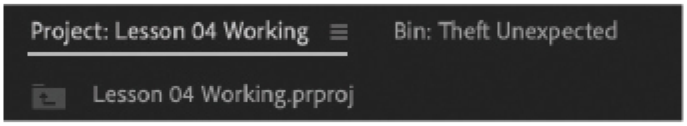
Because clips in your project are separate from the media files they link to, you can rename items in Premiere Pro without affecting the names of your original media files on the hard drive. This makes it safe to rename clips, which can be helpful when organizing a complex project.

If you opened the Theft Unexpected bin by double-clicking it, it will have opened as a new panel in the same group as the Project panel. Let's begin by navigating between these bins.

At the top left of the Theft Unexpected bin, notice the button to navigate up. This button appears whenever you are viewing the contents of a bin by opening it. Just as Finder (macOS) and Explorer (Windows) have navigation buttons, you can use this button to browse "up" to the container of the current bin. In this case, it's the Project panel, but it could just as easily be another bin.

1. Click to navigate up to the Project panel.

   The Project panel comes to the front and becomes the active panel, with an underline for the panel name. The Theft Unexpected bin is still open.

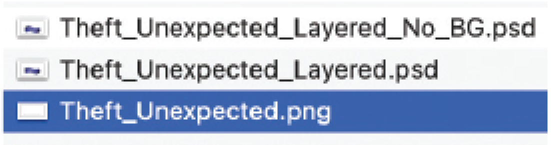
   Whenever you navigate between bins that are already open, Premiere Pro brings the existing open instance to the front. This way, you won't have multiple instances of the same bin taking up screen space.

2. Open the Graphics bin by double-clicking it.
3. Right-click the clip Theft_Unexpected.png and choose Rename.
4. Change the name to **TU Title BW** (that is, Theft Unexpected Title Black and White). After typing the new name, click the background of the Project panel to apply it.

5. Right-click the newly renamed clip, TU Title BW, and choose Reveal In Finder (macOS) or Reveal In Explorer (Windows).

> ▶ Tip
>
> To rename an item in the Project panel, you can also click the item name, wait a moment, and click again, or you can select the item and press Return (macOS) or Enter (Windows). Be sure to use the Return or Enter key on the right edge of the main alphanumeric keyboard rather than the Enter key on the numeric keyboard, if you have one.

The original media file is displayed in its current location. Notice that the original filename has not changed.



Theft_Unexpected_Layered_No_BG.psd
Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd
Theft_Unexpected.png

Earlier you deleted a clip in this project and the original media file remained untouched—in a sense this is similar to renaming a clip in a project. Changing the clip in Premiere Pro does not change the media file.

● **Note**

> When you change the name of a clip in Premiere Pro, the new name is stored in the project file. Different Premiere Pro project files may use different names for the same clip. In fact, you could have two copies of a clip in the same project with different names.

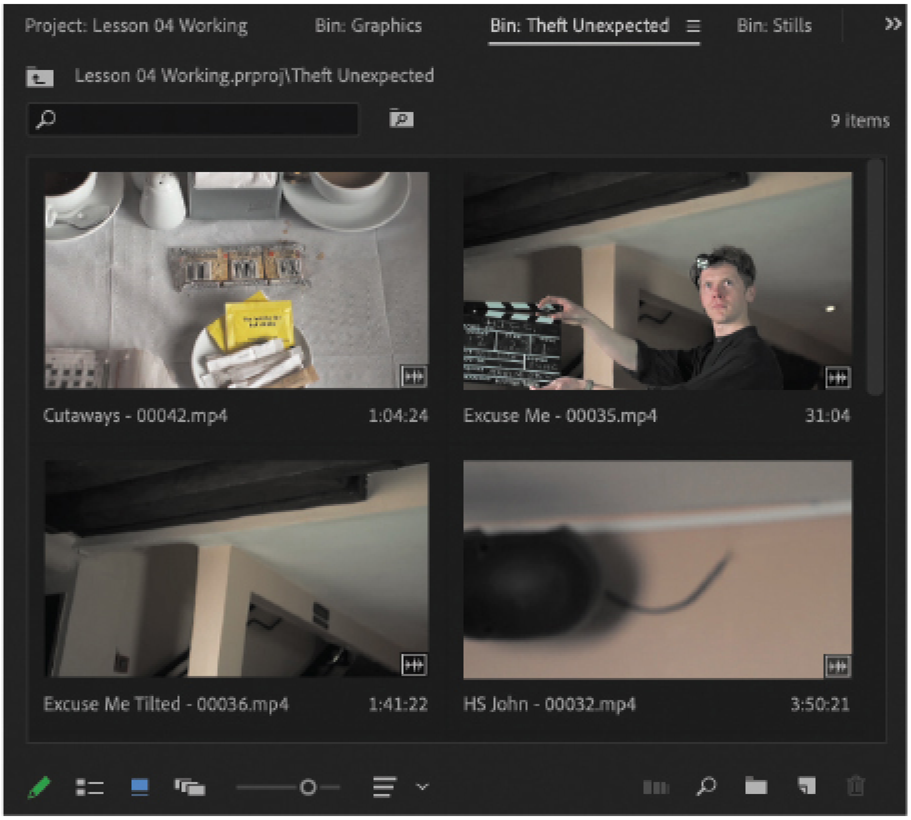
It's helpful to be clear about the relationship between your original media files and the clips inside the Premiere Pro project because it explains much of the way the application works.

Reviewing footage

The greater part of video editing is spent reviewing clips and making creative choices about them.

In Premiere Pro, you can perform common tasks, such as playing video clips, in multiple ways. You can use the keyboard, click buttons with your pointer, or use an external device such as a jog/shuttle controller.

1. Navigate to the Theft Unexpected bin.
2. Click the Icon View button at the lower-left corner of the bin, and use the Zoom control to set the thumbnails to a size you are happy with.


Project: Lesson 04 Working
Bin: Graphics
Bin: Theft Unexpected
Bin: Stills
Lesson 04 Working.prproj\Theft Unexpected
9 items
Cutaways - 00042.mp4
1:04:24
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4
31:04
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4
1:41:22
HS John - 00032.mp4
3:50:21

3. Hover your pointer over any of the thumbnails in the bin.

   Premiere Pro displays the contents of the clip as you move your pointer, which is called *hover scrubbing*. The left edge of the thumbnail represents the beginning of the clip, and the right edge represents the end. In this way, the width of the thumbnail represents the whole clip. While you’re hover scrubbing, a tiny navigator appears at the bottom of the thumbnail.

4. Select a clip by clicking it once (be careful not to double-click, which will open the clip in the Source Monitor).

   When you select the clip and hover your pointer over it, the navigator at the bottom of the thumbnail grows larger, and a small gray playhead appears. Try dragging through the clip using this playhead. When you do so, the clip audio will also play.

Reveal - 00038.mp4
51:24

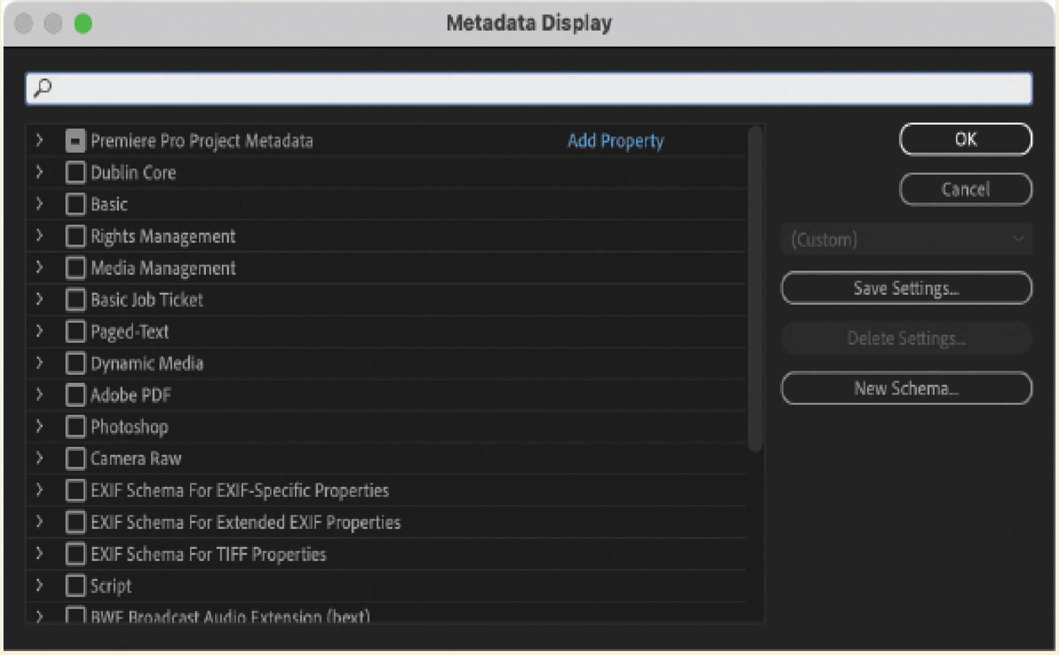
When a clip is selected, you also can use the J, K, and L keys on your keyboard to perform playback.

- J: Play backward
- K: Pause
- L: Play forward

Customizing bins

When set to List view, the Project panel displays a number of columns of information about each clip. Depending on the clips you have and the types of metadata you are working with, you might want to change the columns that are displayed.

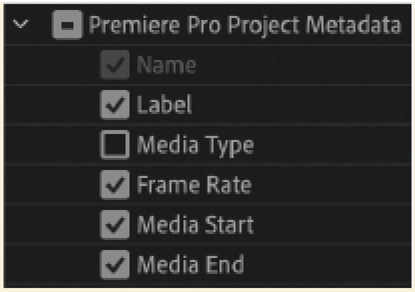
To accomplish this, open the Project panel menu ☰ and choose Metadata Display.


Metadata Display
Premiere Pro Project Metadata
Add Property
Dublin Core
Basic
Rights Management
Media Management
Basic Job Ticket
Paged-Text
Dynamic Media
Adobe PDF
Photoshop
Camera Raw
EXIF Schema For EXIF-Specific Properties
EXIF Schema For Extended EXIF Properties
EXIF Schema For TIFF Properties
Script
BWF Broadcast Audio Extension (bext)
OK
Cancel
(Custom)
Save Settings...
Delete Settings...
New Schema...

The Metadata Display dialog box allows you to select the kinds of metadata to display in the List view of the Project panel (and any bins). The dialog box lists the types of data in groups; click the disclosure triangle for a group to display the properties in that group.

Select a single property to add it as a column heading in the Project panel or bin. Select a group to add all the properties in that group.

Keep in mind that metadata display settings for individual bins are saved in the project file, while metadata display settings for the Project panel are saved with the workspace.



Premiere Pro Project Metadata

☑ Name
☑ Label
☐ Media Type
☑ Frame Rate
☑ Media Start
☑ Media End

Any bins that you have not yet opened will inherit the settings from the Project panel, so make changes in that panel if you want them to be applied to every bin.

● **Note**

Notice there’s a Search box at the top of the Metadata Display dialog box. Enter the name of an item here to locate it if you’re not sure which category to browse in.

● **Note**

Several useful bin columns are displayed by default, including the Good checkbox. Select this box for clips you prefer, and then click the column heading to sort selected shots from unwanted content.

5. Select a clip, and use the J, K, and L keys to play the video in the thumbnail. You can also use the spacebar to play and stop.

▶ **Tip**

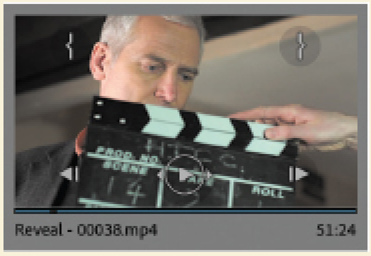
If you press the J or L key multiple times, the video will play at multiple speeds. Pressing Shift+J or Shift+L reduces or increases playback speed in 10% increments.

When you double-click a clip, Premiere Pro displays the clip in the Source Monitor and also adds it to a list of recent clips.

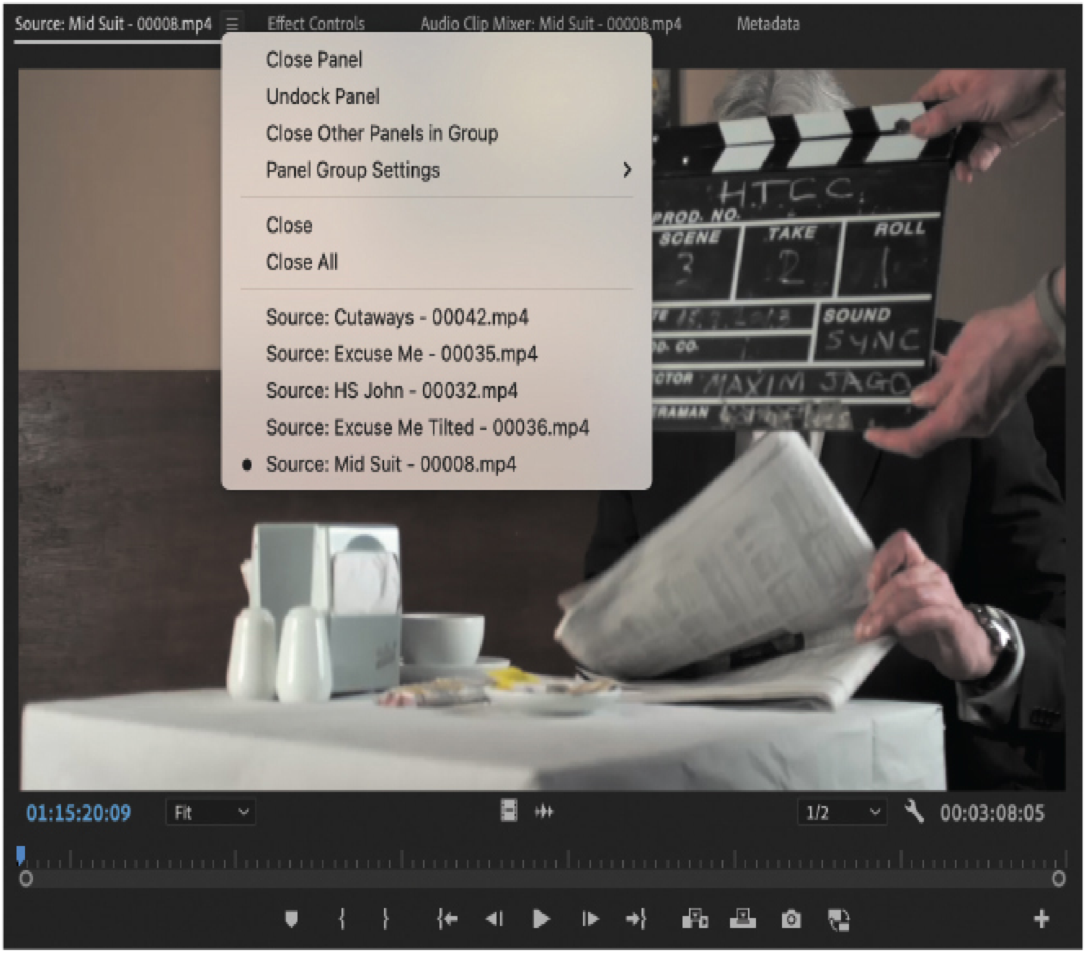
Touchscreen editing

If you are working on a touchscreen computer, you may see additional controls on thumbnails in the Project panel.

These allow you to perform editing tasks without a mouse or trackpad. To see these controls on a nontouchscreen computer, click the panel menu and choose Thumbnail Controls For All Pointing Devices.



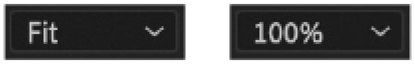
6. Double-click four or five clips from the Theft Unexpected bin to open them in the Source Monitor.
7. Open the Source Monitor panel menu to browse your recent clips.


Source: Mid Suit - 00008.mp4
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Mid Suit - 00008.mp4
Metadata
Close Panel
Undock Panel
Close Other Panels in Group
Panel Group Settings
Close
Close All
Source: Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Source: Excuse Me - 00035.mp4
Source: HS John - 00032.mp4
Source: Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4
● Source: Mid Suit - 00008.mp4
01:15:20:09
Fit
1/2
00:03:08:05

Tip

Notice that you have the option to close a single clip or close all clips, clearing the menu and the monitor. Some editors like to clear the menu and then open several clips that are part of a scene by selecting them in the bin and dragging them into the Source Monitor together. You can then use the Recent Items menu to browse only the clips from that selection. You can also quickly cycle through clips on this recent list by pressing Shift+2 with the Source Monitor active.

8. Open the Zoom Level menu at the bottom left of the Source Monitor.

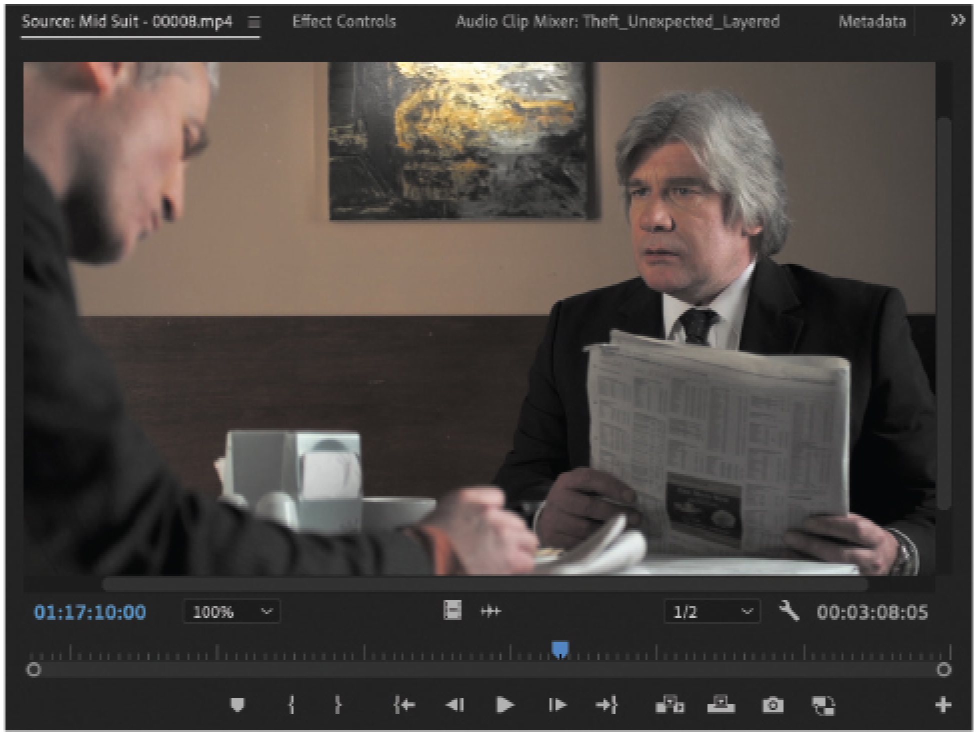


By default, this is set to Fit, which means Premiere Pro will display the whole frame, regardless of the original size. The resolution of your clips will often be higher than that of your Source Monitor. Change the setting to 100%.

It’s likely scroll bars have appeared at the bottom and on the right of your Source Monitor so you can view different parts of the image. However, if you are working on a very high-resolution screen, it’s possible the image got smaller.

Tip

Premiere Pro has multiple tools for different purposes. You can use the Hand tool (with the keyboard shortcut H) to drag the view around in the Source Monitor and Program Monitor. Be sure to switch back to the Selection tool when you are finished.


Source: Mid Suit - 00008.mp4
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Theft_Unexpected_Layered
Metadata
01:17:10:00
100%
1/2
00:03:08:05

The benefit of viewing with Zoom set to 100% is that you see every pixel of the original video, which is useful for checking the quality.

9. Now choose Fit from the Zoom Level menu.

Using essential playback controls

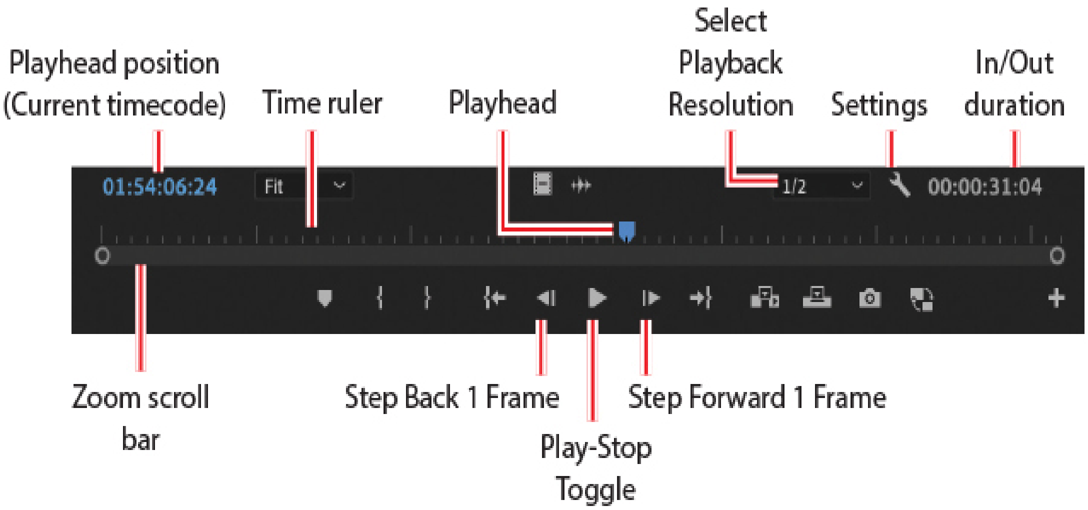
Let’s look at the Source Monitor playback controls.

1. Double-click the shot Excuse Me (not Excuse Me Tilted) in the Theft Unexpected bin to open it in the Source Monitor.

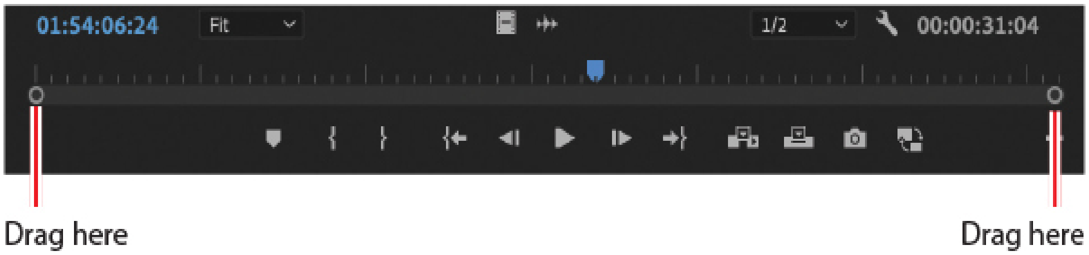
   ▶ **Tip**

   Hover the pointer over each button to see the name and keyboard shortcut (in parentheses).

2. At the bottom of the Source Monitor, you’ll find a blue playhead marker. Drag it along the bottom of the panel to view various parts of the clip. You can also click wherever you want the playhead to go, and it will jump to that spot.


Playhead position (Current timecode)
Time ruler
Playhead
Select Playback Resolution
Settings
In/Out duration
01:54:06:24
Fit
1/2
00:00:31:04
Zoom scroll bar
Step Back 1 Frame
Play-Stop Toggle
Step Forward 1 Frame

3. Below the time ruler and its playhead, there’s a scroll bar that doubles as a Zoom control. Drag one end of this scroll bar toward the other to zoom in on the time ruler. This will make it easier to navigate longer clips precisely.


01:54:06:24
Fit
1/2
00:00:31:04
Drag here
Drag here

4. Click the Play-Stop Toggle button to play the clip. Click it again to stop playback. You can also use the spacebar to start and stop playback.

5. Click the Step Back 1 Frame ◀| and Step Forward 1 Frame |▶ buttons to move through the clip one frame at a time. You can also use the Left Arrow and Right Arrow keys on your keyboard.
6. Try using the J, K, and L keys to play your clip.
7. Try holding K while you press and release the J or L key. The playhead will move one frame and play the associated audio, making it useful when seeking a precise moment in dialogue.

> ● **Note**
>
> Panel selection is important when using keyboard shortcuts (and menus). If you find the J, K, and L keys don’t work, double-check that the Source Monitor is selected (it will be outlined in blue).

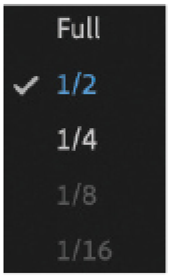
Lowering the playback resolution

If you have an older or slower computer processor or are working with large frame sizes, such as Ultra High-Definition (UHD, 4K, 8K, or above), your computer may struggle to play all the frames of your video clips. Clips will play with the correct timing (10 seconds of video will still take 10 seconds), but some frames may not be displayed.

To work with a wide variety of computer hardware configurations, from powerful desktop workstations to lightweight portable laptops, Premiere Pro can lower the playback resolution to help make playback smoother.

There are separate menus in the Source Monitor and Program Monitor to set the playback resolution. The default resolution is 1/2.

You can change the playback resolution using the Select Playback Resolution menu on the Source Monitor and Program Monitor.



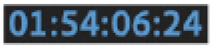
Some lower resolutions are available only when working with particular media types. This is because, for other media types, the work of converting the image to a lower resolution might be more than the work saved by not playing full resolution (not all codecs can be played back at a lower resolution efficiently). In that case, some resolutions will automatically be dimmed and unavailable.

▶ Tip

> If you are working with a particularly powerful computer, you may want to choose High Quality Playback from the monitor Settings menu 🔧. This maximizes preview playback quality, particularly for compressed media like H.264 video, graphics, and stills (potentially at the expense of playback performance).

Getting timecode information

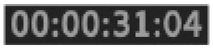
At the bottom left of the Source Monitor, a timecode display in blue shows the current position of the playhead in hours, minutes, seconds, and frames (00:00:00:00), according to the clip’s timecode. For example, 01:54:06:24 is 1 hour, 54 minutes, 6 seconds, and 24 frames.



01:54:06:24

Clip timecode may not begin at 00:00:00:00, so you should not count on this number to assess the duration of a clip.

At the bottom right of the Source Monitor, a timecode display in light gray shows the duration of your current clip selection.



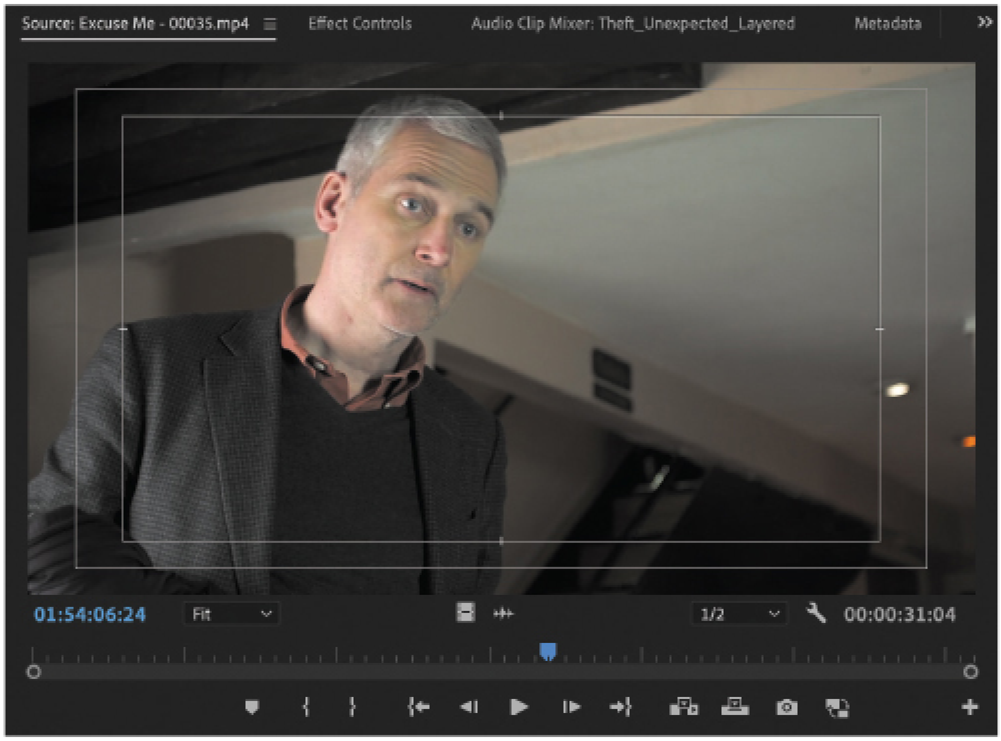
00:00:31:04

By default, this shows the whole clip duration, but later you'll add special *In point* and *Out point* marks to make a partial selection. When you do, the duration shown will update.

In and Out points are simple to use: Click the Mark In button { to set the beginning of the part of a clip you want to use, and click the Mark Out button } to set the end of the part of a clip you want. You'll learn more about this in Lesson 5, "Editing Video—the Essentials."

Displaying safe margins

Television monitors often crop the edges of the picture to achieve a clean edge. Open the Settings menu 🔧 at the bottom of the Source Monitor, and choose Safe Margins to display useful white outlines over the image.


Source: Excuse Me - 00035.mp4
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Theft_Unexpected_Layered
Metadata
01:54:06:24
Fit
1/2
00:00:31:04

The outer box is the *action-safe zone*. Aim to keep important action inside this box so that when the picture is displayed, edge cropping does not hide what's going on.

The inner box is the *title-safe zone*. Keep titles and graphics inside this box so that even on a badly adjusted display, your audience will be able to read the words.

Modern televisions crop the frame less, and online videos are not cropped at all. You’ll probably want to adjust the size of the safe zones according to your intended delivery medium.

Premiere Pro has advanced overlay options that you can configure to display useful information in the Source Monitor and Program Monitor. To enable or disable overlays, open the monitor’s Settings menu and choose Overlays.

You can access the specific settings for overlays and safe margins by clicking the monitor’s Settings menu and choosing Overlay Settings > Settings.

You can disable Safe Margins or Overlays by choosing them from the Source Monitor or Program Monitor’s Settings menu again. Do so now so you can see the image clearly.

Customizing the monitors

To customize the way a monitor displays video, open each monitor’s Settings menu 🔧.

The Source Monitor and Program Monitor have similar options. In the Source Monitor, you can view the waveform of the audio in the clip, which shows amplitude over time (useful if you are searching for a particular sound or the start of a word).

For now, make sure Composite Video is chosen from the Source Monitor Settings menu.

You can quickly switch between viewing the clip audio waveform and the video by clicking Drag Video Only or Drag Audio Only, just under the middle of the video display.

▶ **Tip**

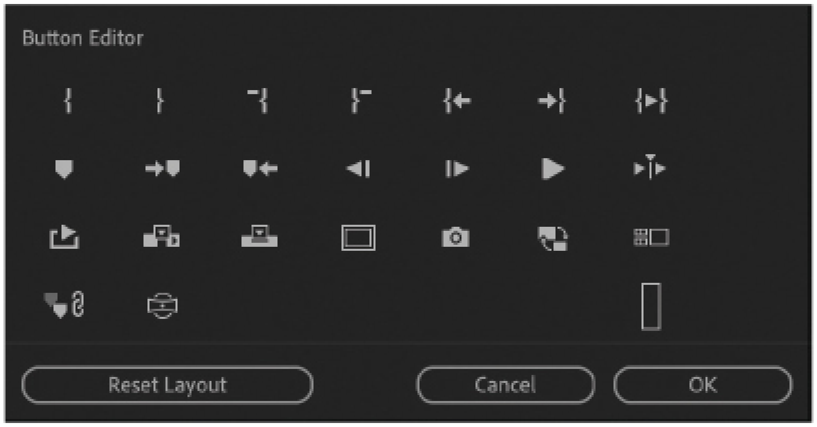
If you are working with 360° video, you can switch to a VR video viewing mode using the Source Monitor and Program Monitor Settings menus.

These icons are mainly used to drag only the video or only the audio part of a clip into a sequence, but they also provide this useful shortcut to view the audio waveform.

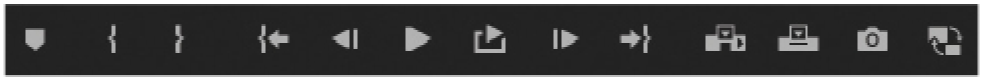
You can add, move, or remove buttons at the bottom of the Source Monitor and Program Monitor. Note that any customizations you make to the buttons on one of the monitor panels are applied only to that panel.

1. Click the Button Editor ✚ at the lower right of the Source Monitor.

   The complete set of available buttons appears on a floating panel.



2. Drag the Loop Playback button from the floating panel to a spot to the right of the Play button on the Source Monitor (the other buttons will automatically make space for it), and click OK to close the Button Editor.



3. Double-click the Excuse Me clip in the Theft Unexpected bin to open it in the Source Monitor, if it isn't open already.
4. Click the Loop Playback button you added to activate it. The button is blue when it's activated.

5. Click the Play button to play the clip. Play the video using the spacebar or the Play button on the Source Monitor. Stop the playback when you see the video start again.

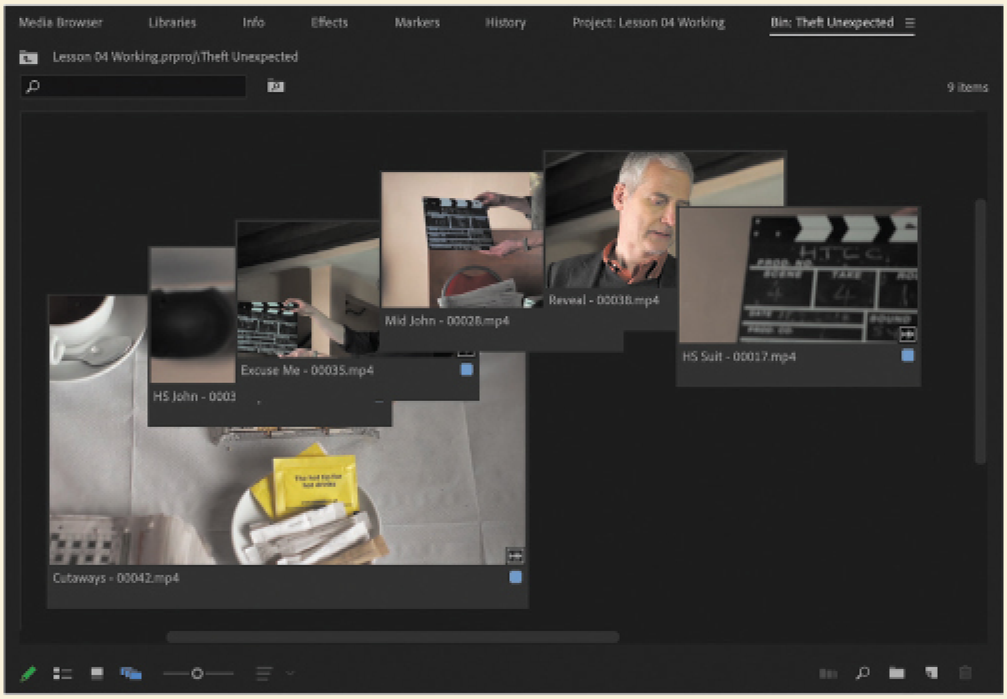
   With Loop turned on, Premiere Pro continuously repeats playback of a clip or sequence. If there are In and Out points set, playback loops between them. This is a great way to review a section of a clip.

▶ Tip

If you are comfortable using keyboard shortcuts only, you can hide all of the buttons along the lower edge of the Source Monitor or Program Monitor. To do so, choose Show Transport Controls in the Source Monitor or Program Monitor Settings menu. Select this item again to restore the buttons.

Exploring Freeform view

While bins provide a convenient way to organize your clips, as lists of items or as thumbnails, Freeform view, the Project panel’s third viewing mode, allows you to group clips *within* a bin. Freeform view looks a lot like Icon view except that now you can position clips anywhere, including beyond the edges of the panel. You also can set different thumbnail sizes for different clips and organize clips as stacks or groups. You can snap the edges of thumbnails together. By placing clips next to each other in a line, you can use hover scrubbing to quickly review multiple clips.


Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History
Project: Lesson 04 Working
Bin: Theft Unexpected
Lesson 04 Working.prproj\Theft Unexpected
9 items
Mid John - 00028.mp4
Reveal - 00038.mp4
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4
HS John - 0003
HS Suit - 00017.mp4
Cutaways - 00042.mp4

Freeform view is an open canvas for you to arrange clips into groups and experiment with possible combinations before adding them to a sequence.

Modifying clips

Premiere Pro uses metadata associated with media files to know how to play linked clips. For example, information about the playback frame rate is stored in the media file as metadata. This metadata is normally added when the media is created (by the camera, for example), but occasionally it might be missing or set wrong. Sometimes, you'll need to tell Premiere Pro how to interpret clips.

You can change the interpretation for one clip or multiple clips in a single step. All instances of selected clips (including copies already edited into a sequence) are affected by changes you make to interpretation.

▶ Tip

If you are not familiar with terms like *metadata*, check out the glossary provided for download with the rest of the book's online content at peachpit.com (see "Getting Started" earlier in the book). It offers explanations for many of the specialized terms used when describing post-production.

Choosing audio channels

Premiere Pro has advanced audio management features. You can create complex sound mixes and selectively target output audio channels with original clip audio. You can work with mono, stereo, 5.1, Ambisonics, and even 32-channel sequences and clips with precise control over the routing of audio channels.

If you're just starting out, you'll probably want to produce sequences mastered in stereo using mono or stereo source clips. In this case, the default settings are most likely all you will need.

When recording audio with a professional camera, it's common to have one microphone record onto one audio channel and a second microphone record onto another audio channel. These are the same audio channels that would be used for regular stereo audio, but they now contain completely separate sound.

● Note

Changes made to clip interpretation are applied to the clip, not the media file it is linked to. This means you could have two copies of a clip, both linked to the same media file but with different interpretation settings. The media file is not changed.

What is an audio channel?

When an audio recording is created, it’s always captured and stored as one or more audio channels. Think of a channel as a single signal—something you could hear with one ear.

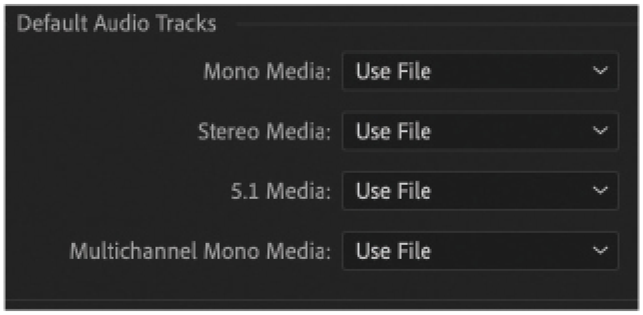
Because we have two ears, we are able to hear in stereo—sensing where a sound comes from by comparing differences in the way the sound arrives at each ear. The process happens automatically and precognitively (your conscious mind doesn’t do any analysis to sense where a sound comes from).

To capture stereo (the sound two ears can detect), you need two signals, so two channels are recorded using microphones.

One signal (let’s say the sound a microphone captures) is captured as one channel in an audio recording. For output, one channel will play through one speaker or headphone ear. The more channels you have for recording, the more sources you can capture independently (think of capturing an entire orchestra with many channels to be able to adjust the volume of each instrument separately in post-production).

To play audio with different volume levels on multiple speakers (for surround sound, for example), you need multiple playback channels. You’ll learn more about working with audio in Lesson 10, “Editing and Mixing Audio.”

Your camera adds metadata to the audio to tell Premiere Pro whether the sound is meant to be mono (separate audio channels) or stereo (channel 1 audio and channel 2 audio combined to produce the complete stereo mix).


Default Audio Tracks

Mono Media: Use File

Stereo Media: Use File

5.1 Media: Use File

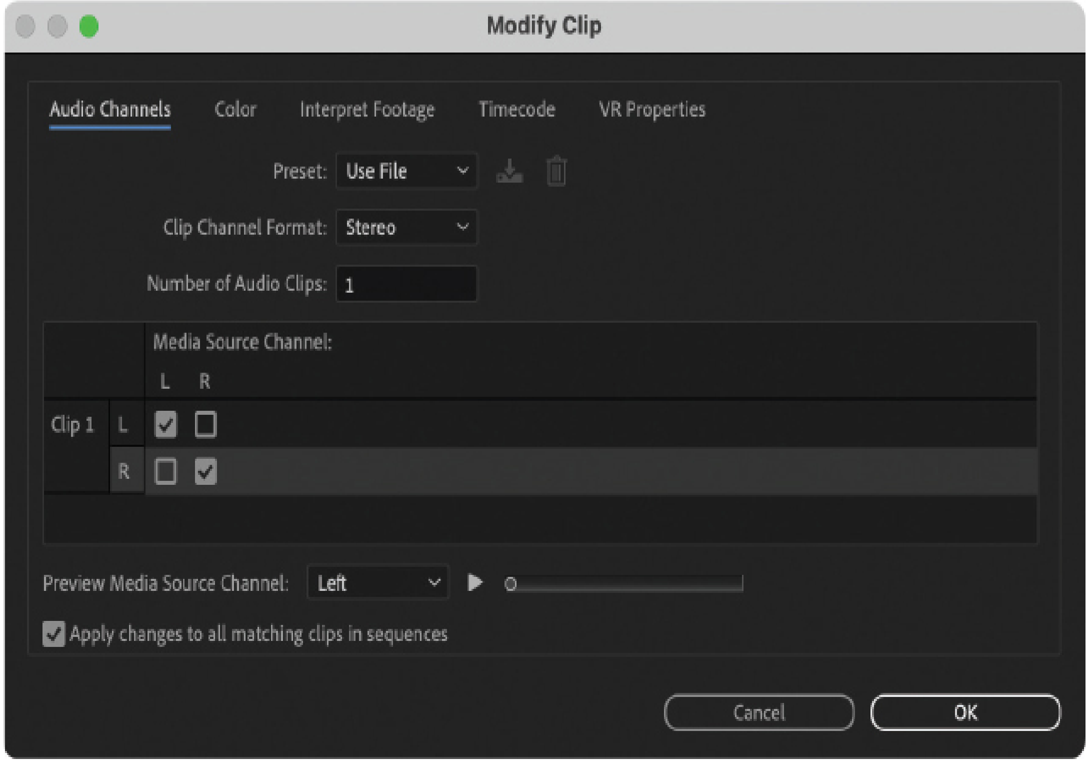
Multichannel Mono Media: Use File

You can tell Premiere Pro how to interpret audio channels when new media files are imported by choosing Premiere Pro > Settings > Timeline > Default Audio Tracks (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Timeline > Default Audio Tracks (Windows).

The Use File option means Premiere Pro will use the audio channel settings applied to the clip when it was created. You can override that option for each media type using the appropriate menu.

If the setting was wrong when you imported your clips, it’s easy to set a different way to interpret the audio channels in the Project panel.

1. Click the name of the Theft Unexpected bin to bring it to the front. If the bin is not open, double-click it to open it in the Project panel.
2. Right-click the Reveal clip in the Theft Unexpected bin and choose Modify > Audio Channels.



Preset: Use File

Clip Channel Format: Stereo

Number of Audio Clips: 1

		L	R
Clip 1	L	☑	☐
	R	☐	☑

Preview Media Source Channel: Left

☑ Apply changes to all matching clips in sequences

When the Preset menu is set to Use File, as it is here, Premiere Pro will use the file's metadata to set the channel format for the audio.

In this case, Clip Channel Format is set to stereo, and Number Of Audio Clips is set to 1—that's the number of audio clips that will be added to a sequence if you edit this clip into it.

Now look at the channel matrix below those options. The Left and Right audio channels of the source clip (described as Media Source Channel) are both assigned to a single clip (described as Clip 1).

When you add this clip to a sequence, it will appear as one video clip and one audio clip, with both audio channels in the same audio clip.

3. Open the Preset menu, and choose Mono. Be sure to use the Preset menu and not the Clip Channel Format menu.

   Premiere Pro switches the Clip Channel Format menu to Mono, so the Left and Right source channels are now linked to two separate clips.

   This means that when you add the clip to a sequence, each audio channel will go on a separate track, as separate clips, allowing you to work on them independently.

4. Click OK.

A few tips on audio clip channel interpretation

Here are some things to keep in mind when working with audio clip channel interpretation:

- In the Modify Clip dialog box, every available audio channel will be listed. If your source audio has channels you don’t need, you can deselect them, and those empty channels won’t take up space in your sequence as clips.
- If you override the original file audio channel interpretation (mono, stereo, etc.), you may need a different type of audio track when the clip is added to a sequence.
- The list of clips on the left (which may be as short as one clip) shows how many audio clips will be added to a sequence when edited in.
- Use the checkboxes to choose which source audio channels are included when the clip is edited into a sequence. This means you can combine multiple source audio channels into a single sequence clip or separate them into different clips in any way that works for your project.
- Changes made to audio clip channel interpretation will not update clip instances that are already edited into a sequence. The next time you edit a modified clip into a sequence, the new interpretation will apply. This means you could have two instances of the same clip in a sequence with different audio channels.

Merging clips

It’s common for professional video to be recorded on a camera with relatively low-quality audio, while high-quality sound is recorded on a separate device. When working this way, you’ll want to combine the high-quality audio with the video by merging them in the Project panel.

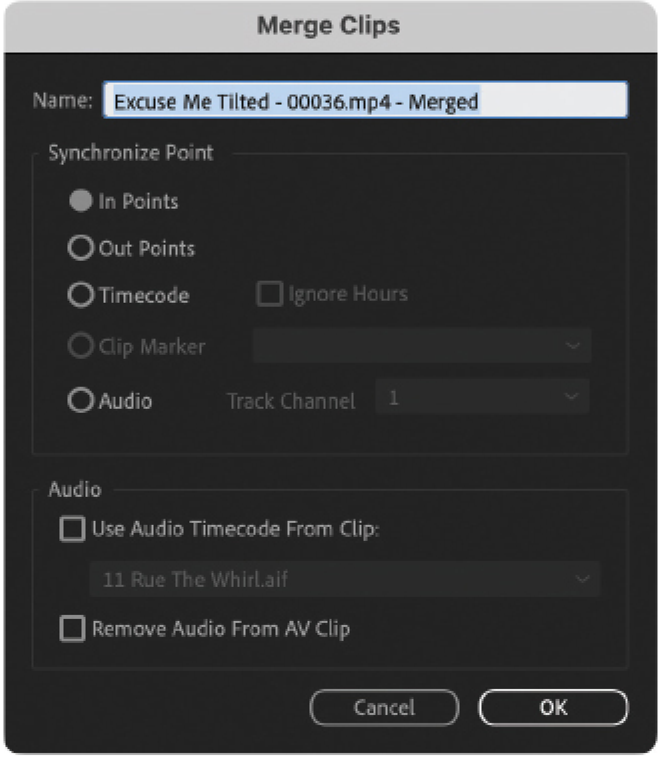
The most important factor when merging video and audio files in this way is synchronization for the audio. You will either manually define a sync point—like a clapperboard mark—or allow Premiere Pro to sync your clips automatically based on their original timecode information or by matching up their audio.

If you choose to sync clips using audio, Premiere Pro will analyze both the in-camera audio and the separately captured sound and match them up. The option to sync automatically using the audio in both clips makes it worthwhile attaching a microphone to your camera, even if you know you won’t use the audio in post-production. The following steps are described for your information only—no need to follow along.

1. If you don’t have matching audio in the clips you are merging, you can manually add a marker to each clip you want to merge on a clear sync point like a clapperboard or a visible and audible hand clap. The keyboard shortcut to add a marker is M.
2. Select the camera clip and the separate audio clip, right-click either item, and choose Merge Clips.

   There’s an option to use audio timecode (sometimes useful for older, archived tape-based media).

   There’s also an option to automatically remove the unwanted audio included with the audio-video clip. You may want to keep that audio, though, just in case there’s a momentary issue with the external microphone audio, like something bumping the microphone.


Merge Clips
Synchronize Point
Out Points
Timecode
☐ Ignore Hours
Clip Marker
Audio
Track Channel
1
Audio
☐ Use Audio Timecode From Clip:
11 Rue The Whirl.aif
☐ Remove Audio From AV Clip
Cancel
OK

Name: Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4 - Merged

● In Points

3. Under Synchronize Point, select your sync method, and click OK to create a new clip that combines the video and the “good” audio in a single item.

▶ Tip

You can also use the more advanced Multicamera Source Sequence workflow to synchronize multiple clips in a single step. For more information on this workflow, check out the Best Practices and Workflow Guide for Long Form and Episodic Post Production, available at *helpx.adobe.com*.

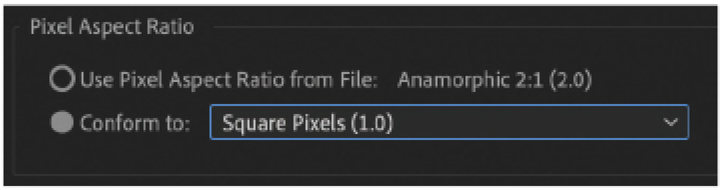
Interpreting video footage

For Premiere Pro to play a clip correctly, it needs to know the frame rate for the video, the pixel aspect ratio (the shape of the pixels), the color space, and, if your clip is interlaced, the order in which to display the fields. Premiere Pro can usually find out this information from the file’s metadata, but you can override the interpretation easily. Let’s try this now:

1. Use the Media Browser panel to import RED Video.R3D from the Assets/Video and Audio Files/RED folder. Then double-click the clip to open it in the Source Monitor. It’s full anamorphic widescreen, which is wider than regular 16×9 footage. This wider aspect ratio is achieved by using pixels that are wider.
2. Right-click the clip in the Project panel and choose Modify > Interpret Footage.

   The option to modify audio channels is unavailable because this clip has no audio.

   Right now, the clip is set to use the pixel aspect ratio setting from the file: Anamorphic 2:1. This means the pixels are twice as wide as they are tall.
3. In the Pixel Aspect Ratio section, select Conform To, choose Square Pixels (1.0), and click OK.

   Pixel Aspect Ratio

   ○ Use Pixel Aspect Ratio from File: Anamorphic 2:1 (2.0)

   ● Conform to: Square Pixels (1.0)

   Take a look at the clip in the Source Monitor. The clip looks almost square!
4. Try another aspect ratio. Right-click the clip in the Project panel and choose Modify > Interpret Footage. Choose DVCPRO HD (1.5) from the adjacent menu. Click OK, and take a look at the clip again in the Source Monitor.

From now on, Premiere Pro will interpret the clip as having pixels that are 1.5 times wider than they are tall. This reshapes the picture to make it standard 16:9 widescreen.

Changing the pixel aspect ratio is rarely a good solution when making creative decisions because it widens or compresses horizontal space in the picture—all circles will become ovals, for example. However, if all circles already appear to be ovals and all squares appear to be rectangles, it may be that you need to correct the pixel aspect ratio interpretation for technical reasons.

Review questions

1 How do you change the List view column headings displayed in the Project panel?

2 How can you quickly filter the display of clips in the Project panel to make finding a clip easier?

3 How do you create a new bin?

4 If you change the name of a clip in the Project panel, does it change the name of the media file it links to on your hard drive?

5 What keyboard shortcuts can you use to play video and sound clips?

6 How can you change the way clip audio channels are interpreted?

Review answers

1 Open the Project panel menu, and choose Metadata Display. Select the checkbox for any column heading you want to appear. You can also right-click a heading and choose Metadata Display to access these settings.

2 Click the Search field, and start typing the name of the clip you are looking for. Premiere Pro hides clips that don’t match what you typed and reveals those that do, even if they are in a closed bin. Any clips with the characters you type in their metadata will be displayed.

3 There are several ways to create a new bin: by clicking the New Bin button at the bottom of the Project panel, by choosing File >

New > Bin, by right-clicking a blank area in the Project panel and choosing New Bin, or by pressing Command+B (macOS) or Ctrl+B (Windows). You can also drag clips onto the New Bin button on the Project panel. Premiere Pro can even automatically create a new bin when importing media.

4 No. You can duplicate, rename, or delete clips in your Project panel, and nothing will happen to your original media files.

5 The spacebar starts and stops playback. You can use J, K, and L like a shuttle controller to play backward and forward, and the arrow keys can be used to move one frame backward or one frame forward. If you are using a trackpad, you may be able to position your pointer over the video in a monitor or over the Timeline panel and use gestures to scrub through the content.

6 In the Project panel, right-click the clip you want to change and choose Modify > Audio Channels or press the keyboard shortcut, Shift+G. Choose the correct option (usually by selecting a preset), and click OK.

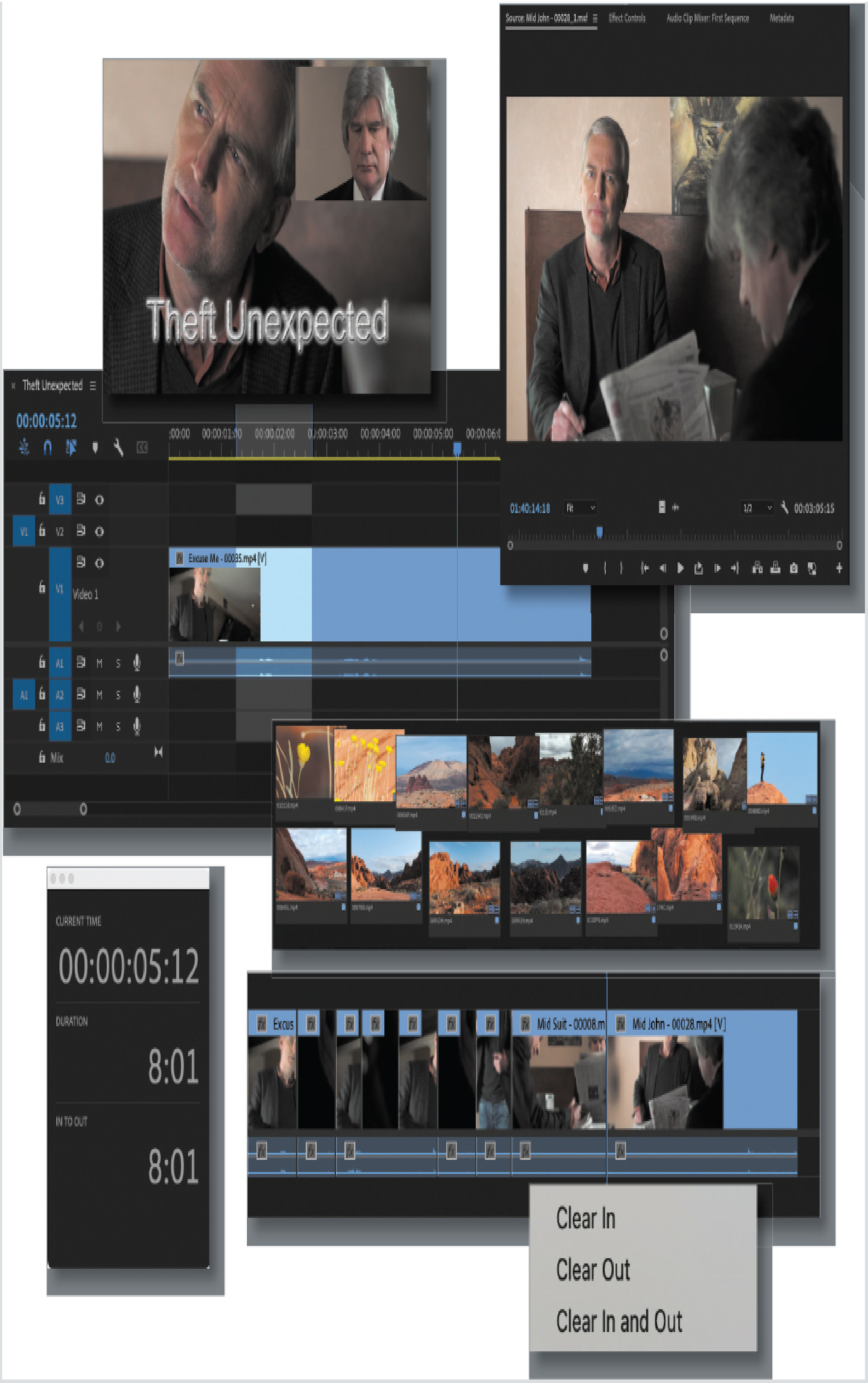
5 Editing Video—The Essentials

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Work with clips in the Source Monitor.
- Create sequences.
- Use essential editing commands.
- View timecode.
- Understand tracks.

This lesson will take about 75 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


Theft Unexpected
Theft Unexpected
00:00:05:12
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
Video 1
Source: Mid John - 00028_1.mxf
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: First Sequence
Metadata
01:40:14:18
Fit
1/2
00:03:05:15
CURRENT TIME
00:00:05:12
DURATION
8:01
IN TO OUT
8:01
Mid Suit - 00008.m
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
Clear In
Clear Out
Clear In and Out

This lesson will teach you the core editing skills you will use again and again in Adobe Premiere Pro. Editing is much more than choosing shots. You'll choose your edits precisely, place clips in sequences at exactly the right point in time and on the tracks you want (to create layered visual effects), add new clips to existing sequences, and remove unwanted content (that you can restore later if you want —this is *nonlinear* editing, after all).

Starting the lesson

There is much more to video editing than cutting and pasting footage into sequences—it’s the art and craft of visual storytelling. Many of the exercises in this book will walk you through the steps of crafting a short video narrative, making creative decisions for you, so you can focus on learning the tools and techniques.

● Note

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

For the following examples, you’ll use footage of a chance encounter between two strangers in a London café. The footage was shot from a variety of angles to allow the editor to choose the way the story will be told, from the points of view of either a participant or of a nonparticipating, hypothetical observer.

Editing helps to propel the story and maintain the viewer’s interest by switching between the viewpoints of the participants and by revealing events to the audience that neither participant is conscious of.

The start of the process is to review all the available footage and to choose the best shots. To save time, the sifting has already been done for you, and you will be guided to the shots to use and given the precise timing for the edits.

Working with clip names

Clip names are important. Having well-organized and clearly named clips can save hours of post-production time.

The clip names in this project are unusual because they incorporate new regular names to help identify the contents and the original media file numbers to help track the footage.

There are no fixed rules about naming and organizing clips, and throughout these lessons you will encounter various naming conventions. In the later sidebar "Shot types and clip names," you'll learn about common abbreviations.

Throughout these exercises, the additional numbers in the clip names will be ignored for brevity.

No matter how you approach video editing, you'll use a few simple techniques time and again. Most of the practice of video editing is carefully reviewing and making partial selections of your clips and placing them in your sequence. There are several ways of doing this in Premiere Pro.

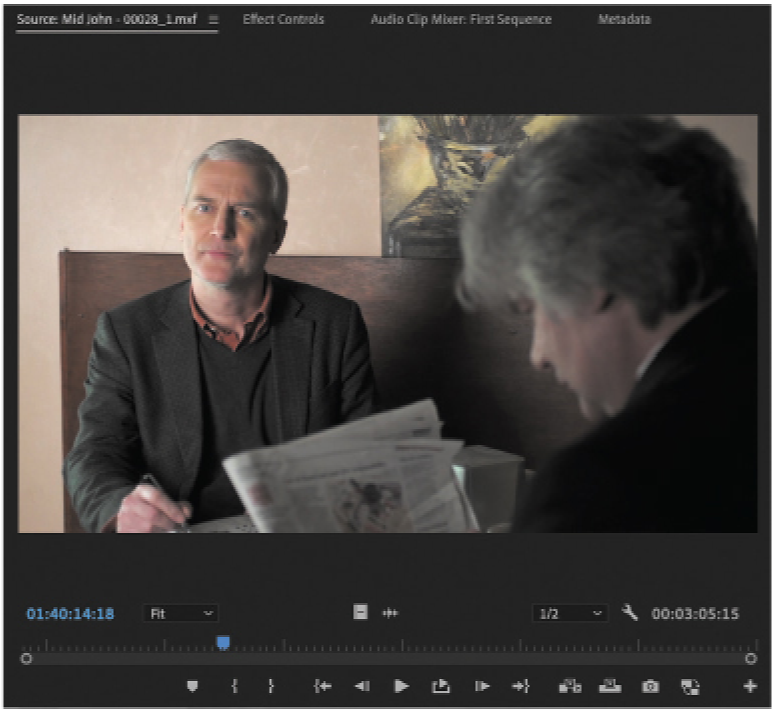
Before you begin, you'll make sure you're using the Editing workspace.

1. Open the Lesson 05.prproj project file from the Lessons folder.
2. Choose File > Save As.
3. Rename the file **Lesson 05 Working.prproj**.
4. Choose a preferred location on your hard drive, and click Save to save the project.
5. Open the Workspaces menu in the upper-right corner of the Premiere Pro interface and make sure Editing is selected. Then use the same menu to choose Reset To Saved Layout.

You'll begin by learning more about the Source Monitor and how to add In and Out points to your clips to select the parts that will be added to a sequence. Then you’ll learn about the Timeline panel, where you’ll work on your sequences.

Using the Source Monitor

The Source Monitor is the main place you’ll go when you want to review your assets before including them in a sequence.


Source: Mid John - 00028_1.mxf
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: First Sequence
Metadata
01:40:14:18
Fit
1/2
00:03:05:15

▶ Tip

Change clip interpretation by right-clicking the clip in the Project panel and choosing Modify > Interpret Footage.

When you view a video clip in the Source Monitor, you watch it in its original format. That is, it will play back with its frame rate, frame size, field order, audio sample rate, and audio bit depth exactly as when recorded, unless you changed the way the clip is interpreted. For more on how to do this, see Lesson 4, “Organizing Media.”

However, when you add a clip to a sequence, Premiere Pro conforms it to the sequence settings. For example, if the clip and the sequence don’t match, the clip frame rate and audio sample rate will be adjusted so that all the clips in the sequence play back the same way.

As well as being a viewer for multiple types of media, the Source Monitor provides important additional functions. You can add comments to a clip in the form of markers that you can refer to later or use to remind yourself about important facts relating to a clip. For example, you might include a note about part of a shot you don’t have permission to use. You can also use two special kinds of markers, called the *In point* and *Out point*, to select part of a clip for inclusion in a sequence.

Opening a clip in the Source Monitor

Opening clips in the Source Monitor is a little like opening files in the Finder (macOS) or Explorer (Windows). First, you’ll try navigating the Project panel:

1. In the Project panel, presuming your preferences have default settings, double-click the Theft Unexpected bin while holding Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows). This opens the bin in the existing panel.

   In the same way that you would double-click a folder in the Finder (macOS) or Explorer (Windows), you have navigated into the bin.

   ▶ Tip

   Notice that the currently active panel has a blue outline. It’s important to know which panel is active because menus and keyboard shortcuts sometimes give different results depending on your current selection.

   When you finish working in a bin that you opened in the current panel, you can navigate back to the Project panel contents by clicking the Navigate Up button at the top left of the bin panel. Navigate up now.

2. Double-click the RED Video.R3D video clip, or drag it into the Source Monitor. You may need to scroll down in the Project panel to find the clip.

   Premiere Pro displays the clip in the Source Monitor, ready for you to review and add In and Out points.

3. Position your pointer so that it is over the Source Monitor, and press the ` (accent grave) key. The panel fills the Premiere Pro application frame, giving you a larger view of your video clip. Press the key again to restore the Source Monitor to its original size. If your keyboard does not have a ` (accent grave) key, you can double-click the panel name to toggle the full-screen view.

Viewing video on a second monitor

If you have a second monitor connected to your computer, Premiere Pro can use it to display full-screen video.

Choose Premiere Pro > Settings > Playback (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Playback (Windows), make sure Mercury Transmit is enabled, and select the checkbox for the monitor you want to use for full-screen playback.

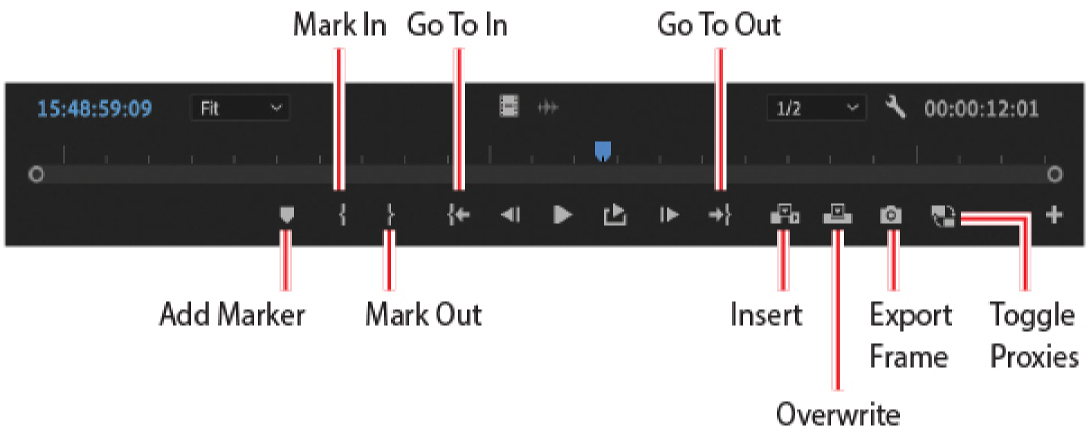
You also have the option of playing video via third-party hardware, if it is installed. It's common to use third-party hardware to make different physical connections available for monitoring purposes. Check your third-party hardware user guide for installation and setup.

Using Source Monitor controls

As well as playback controls, there are some important additional buttons in the Source Monitor.

- **Add Marker:** Adds a marker to the clip at the location of the playhead. Markers can provide a simple visual reference, can be various colors, and can store comments.
- **Mark In:** Sets the In point at the current playhead location. The In point is the beginning of the part of the clip you intend to use in a sequence. You can have only one In point per clip or sequence, so a new In point will automatically replace an existing one.

- **Mark Out:** Sets the Out point at the current playhead location. The Out point is the end of the part of the clip you intend to use in a sequence. You can have only one Out point, so the new Out point will automatically replace an existing one.
- **Go To In:** Moves the playhead to the clip In point.
- **Go To Out:** Moves the playhead to the clip Out point.
- **Insert:** Adds the clip to the active sequence displayed in the Timeline panel using the *insert edit* method (see "Using essential editing commands" later in this lesson).
- **Overwrite:** Adds the clip to the active sequence displayed in the Timeline panel using the *overwrite* edit method (see "Using essential editing commands" later in this lesson).
- **Export Frame:** Allows you to create a still image file from whatever is displayed in the monitor. See Lesson 16, "Exporting Frames, Clips, and Sequences," for more on this.
- **Toggle Proxies:** If your media has proxies attached, click to toggle between viewing the proxy media and original media.



Selecting a range in a clip

You will often want to include only a specific part of a clip in a sequence. Much of an editor's time is spent watching video clips and choosing not only which ones to use but also which *parts* to use, including only the best performances and excluding technical mistakes or fluffed lines. Let's make some partial selections:

1. In the Theft Unexpected bin, double-click the clip Excuse Me (not Excuse Me Tilted) to open it in the Source Monitor. It’s a shot of John nervously asking whether he can sit down.
2. Play the clip to get an idea of the action.

   John walks on-screen about halfway through the shot but takes a moment to speak.
3. Position the playhead around 01:54:06:00, just as John pauses briefly and speaks. Note that the timecode for this clip does not start at 00:00:00:00.
4. Click the Mark In button . You can also press the I key on your keyboard.

   Premiere Pro highlights the section of the clip that you selected. You have excluded the first part of the clip, but you can easily reclaim this part later if you need to do so—that’s the freedom of nonlinear editing!

   > ▶ **Tip**
   >
   > Most cameras will record timecode in such a way that repetition is avoided, which can result in large numbers. If you want the timecode for all clips to be displayed as starting at 00:00:00:00, you can choose this option in the Media preferences, using the Timecode menu.
5. Position the playhead just as John begins to sit down. Around 01:54:14:00 is perfect.

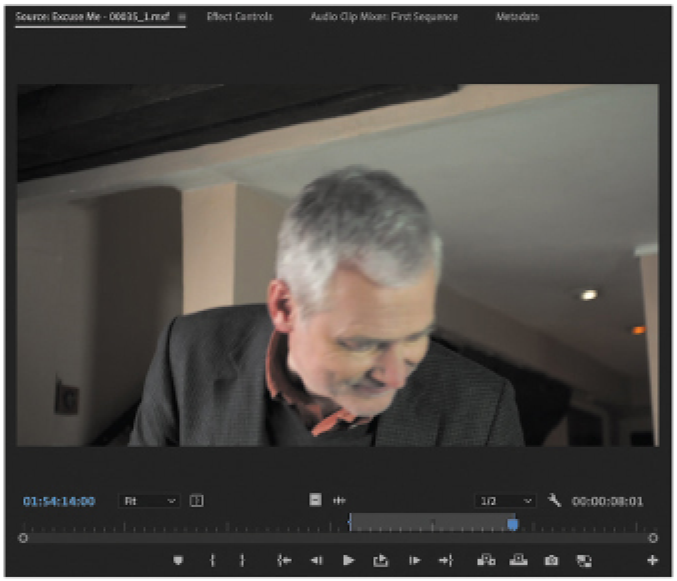
Using a numeric keypad

If your keyboard has a separate numeric keypad, you can use it to enter timecode numbers directly. For example, if you type 700 and press the Enter key when the Source Monitor is active, Premiere Pro will position the playhead at 00:00:07:00. There's no need to enter the leading zeros or number separators. Be sure to use the numeric keypad, on the right on your keyboard, and not the numbers along the top of your keyboard (these have a different use). This works in the Program Monitor and Timeline panel too.

6. Click the Mark Out button or press the O key on your keyboard to add an Out point.

● **Note**

In and Out points added to clips are persistent. That is, they will still be present if you close and reopen the clip—or even the project.


Source: Excuse Me - 00035_1.mxf
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: First Sequence
Metadata
01:54:14:00
Fit
1/2
00:00:08:01

▶ Tip

If you hover your pointer over a button, a tool tip appears displaying the name of the button followed by its keyboard shortcut in parentheses (if it has one).

Some editors prefer to go through all the available clips, adding In and Out points as required, before building a sequence. Some editors prefer to add In and Out points only as they use each clip. Your preference may depend on the kind of project you are working on.

▶ Tip

If you have added the Loop Playback button to the Source Monitor (see Lesson 4) and the option is activated (the button is blue), clips will loop between In and Out points when you play them.

Now you'll add In and Out points for two more clips. Double-click the icon for each clip in the Project panel to open it in the Source Monitor.

Our goal is to produce an edited sequence with natural-looking movement from one shot to the next and nuanced timing for dialogue.

As an editor, you would normally carefully review content to find the ideal moments to cut between shots. To save time, the precise timing has already been worked out and included in these steps.

▶ Tip

To help you find your way around your footage, Premiere Pro can display timecode on the Source Monitor and Program Monitor time rulers. Toggle this option on and off by clicking either monitor's Settings menu and choosing Time Ruler Numbers.

First, we'll get a couple of seconds of the man in the suit giving John permission to share his table; then, we'll get another clip from the opposite angle showing John taking his seat.

Editing from the Project panel

In points and Out points remain active in your project until you change them, so you can add clips to a sequence directly from the Project panel, as well as from the Source Monitor. If you have already looked at all your clips and selected the parts you want, this can be a quick way to create a rough version of a sequence. You can add In and Out points directly in the Project panel too.

Premiere Pro applies the same editing controls when you're working from the Project panel as it does when you're using the Source Monitor, so the experience is similar—and a few clicks quicker.

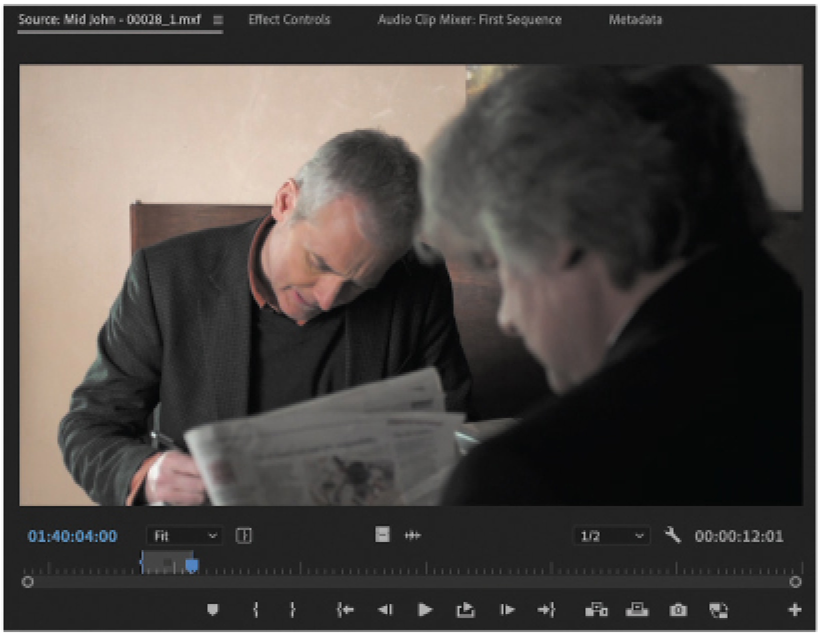
Of course, although it's faster to work this way, there's also value in having one last look at your clips in the Source Monitor before you add them to a sequence.

7. For the HS Suit clip, add an In point just after John's line of dialogue, about a quarter of the way into the shot at 01:27:00:16.
8. Add an Out point when John passes in front of the camera, blocking our view at 01:27:02:14.

▶ **Tip**

If the Source Monitor is active, you can press Tab to make the Playhead Position timecode active and selected, ready to type in new timecode. You can copy and paste new timecode in or type new numbers.

9. For the Mid John clip, add an In point just as John begins to sit down at 01:39:52:00.
10. Add an Out point after he has a sip of tea at 01:40:04:00.


Source: Mid John - 00028_1.mxf
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: First Sequence
Metadata
01:40:04:00
Fit
1/2
00:00:12:01

Shot types and clip names

Filmmakers use common names for types of shot framing, and these are often abbreviated when naming clips to make identifying footage quicker and easier.

For example, the HS Suit clip is a *head and shoulder shot* of the Suit character, while the Mid John clip is a *mid shot* of the John character.

Here are some common shot types and their abbreviations. These descriptions vary, and there are subtle differences from one cinematographer to another, but this brief list shows the broad differences in coverage between the types:

- **Extreme Close-Up (ECU):** A very close shot of a character's face—close enough to crop out their hair and/or chin.
- **Close-Up (CU):** A close shot of a character's face that usually incorporates just the character's head.
- **Head and Shoulder (HS):** A close shot that incorporates the character's head and shoulders.
- **Mid/Medium (Mid or MS):** A shot that includes the character's head to their waist.
- **Mid-Wide or Medium Wide (MWS):** A shot that includes the character's head to their knees.
- **Wide (WS or Wide):** A shot that includes the whole body of the character from their head to their toes.
- **Extreme Wide (EWS):** A shot that includes the whole body of the character and a substantial amount of space around them.
- **Two Shot (2S):** A shot that includes two characters.
- **Group Shot (GS):** A shot that includes several characters.
- **General Views (GV):** Views of the environment or exteriors, often used for story exposition to introduce the location.

- **Cutaways/B-Roll (Alt or B-Roll):** Shots that the editor can cut to during a scene, allowing cuts between takes to be disguised. Cutaways also add to the scene by offering additional visual cues to inform the audience. For example, as a character describes an object they are looking at, we might cut away to a shot of that object.

Creating subclips

If you are working with a long clip, you might want to use more than one part in your sequence. It can be useful to separate the sections so they can be organized in the Project panel prior to building your sequence.

This is exactly what subclips let you do. *Subclips* are partial copies of clips. They are commonly used when working with long clips, such as interview footage, where there are several parts of the same original clip that might be used in a sequence.

Subclips have a few notable characteristics.

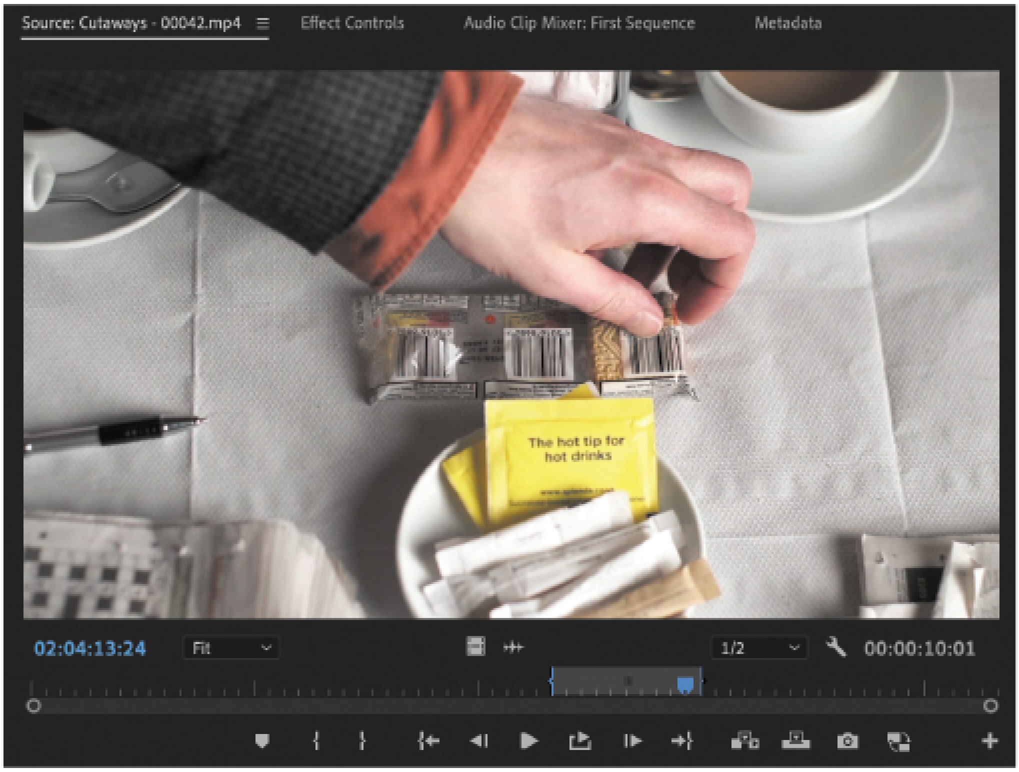
- They can be organized in bins and renamed, just like regular clips, although they have a different icon in the Project panel.
- They have a limited duration based on the In and Out points used to create them, which makes viewing their contents easier when compared with viewing potentially much longer original clips.
- They share the same media as the original clip they are based on, so if an original media file is deleted or moved to a different folder, both the original clip and any subclips will go “offline”—with no media displayed.
- They can be edited to change their contents and even converted into a copy of the original full-length clip.

The short film *Theft Unexpected* depicts a comic moment between two characters at a railway café. Our protagonist, John, believes a stranger at his table is shamelessly stealing his cookies. At the last moment, it’s revealed that John’s cookies were safe under his newspaper the whole time; John has been stealing the other man’s cookies accidentally.

Let’s make a subclip to make it easier to find a critical moment with the packet of cookies.

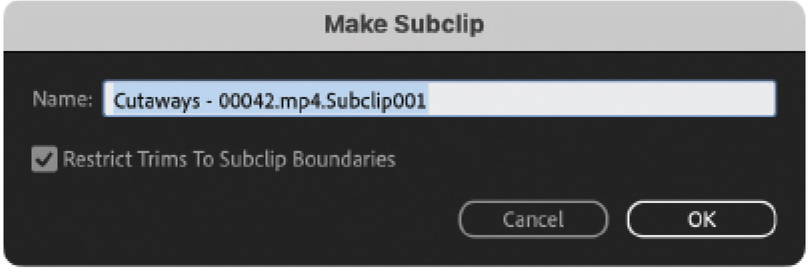
1. In the Theft Unexpected bin, double-click the Cutaways clip to view it in the Source Monitor.
2. While viewing the contents of the Theft Unexpected bin, click the New Bin button at the bottom of the panel to create a new bin. The new bin will appear inside the existing Theft Unexpected bin.
3. Name the bin **Subclips**, and hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) while double-clicking the new Subclips bin to open it in the same frame, rather than in a new panel.
4. Choose a section of the clip to turn into a subclip by marking the clip with an In point and an Out point. Around 02:04:05:00, before the second time the packet is removed, would make a good In point. Around 02:04:15:00, after the packet is placed back on the table, would make a good Out point.

   As with many workflows in Premiere Pro, there are several ways to create subclips, and the outcome is always the same.


Source: Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: First Sequence
Metadata
02:04:13:24
Fit
1/2
00:00:10:01

5. Try one of the following:

- Right-click in the picture display of the Source Monitor and choose Make Subclip.
- With the Source Monitor active, choose Clip > Make Subclip.
- With the Source Monitor active, press Command+U (macOS) or Ctrl+U (Windows).
- While holding Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows), drag the picture from the middle of the Source Monitor into the Project panel bin.


Make Subclip

Name: Cutaways - 00042.mp4.Subclip001

☑ Restrict Trims To Subclip Boundaries

6. Name the new subclip **Packet Moved**, and click OK.

Packet Moved

Note

If Restrict Trims To Subclip Boundaries is selected, you won’t be able to access the parts of your clip that are outside your selection when viewing the subclip. This might be exactly what you want to help you stay organized (and you can change this setting by right-clicking the subclip in the bin and choosing Edit Subclip).

Premiere Pro adds the new subclip to the Subclips bin, with the duration you specified with your In and Out points.

Scene Edit Detection

If your original footage contains multiple different shots as part of a continuous clip, you may find it helpful to separate the parts. This is common when working with archive footage, for example. Each time a new shot begins, it’s considered to be a scene change.

In the Timeline panel, Premiere Pro can detect scene changes in a clip and separate the clip into multiple clips automatically.

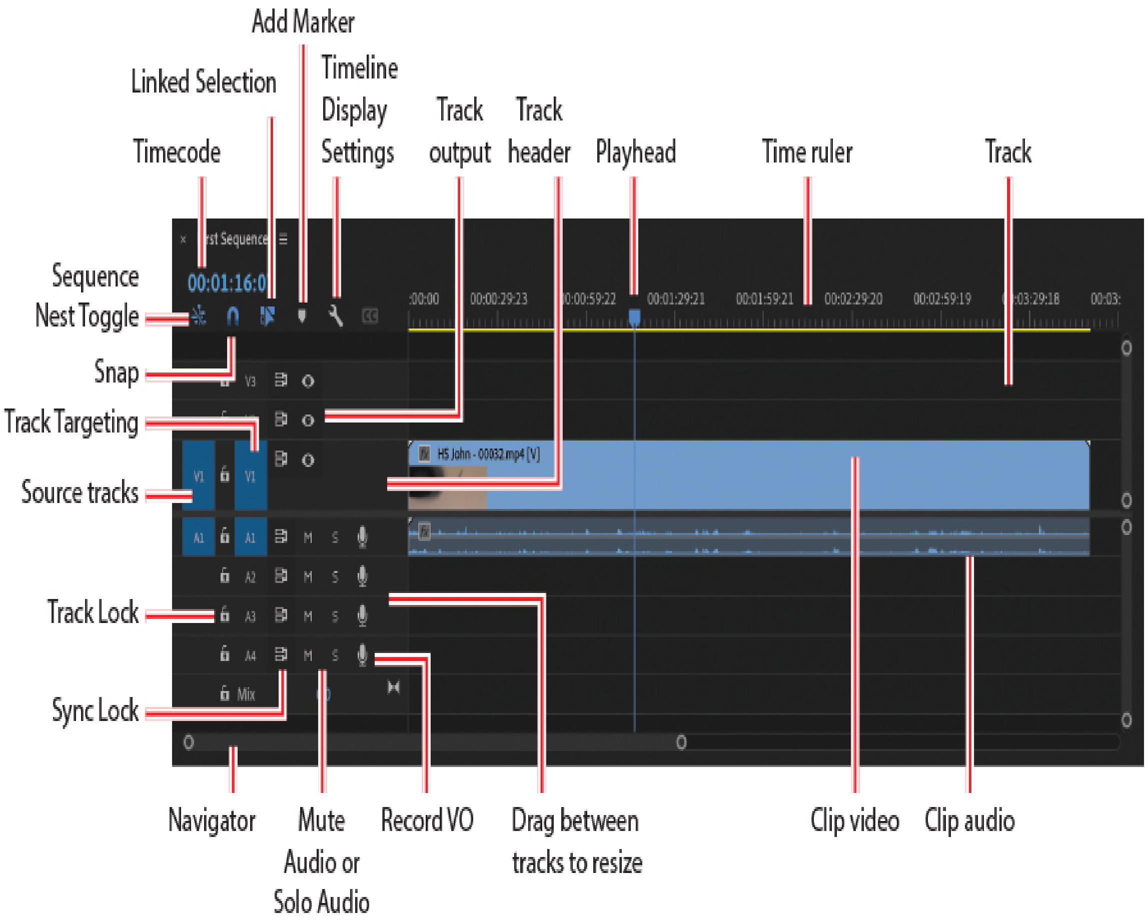
To do so, select a clip in a sequence and choose Clip > Scene Edit Detection.

Choose the result you would like (adding cuts, subclips, or markers), and click Analyze.

Editing in the Timeline panel

The Timeline panel is your creative canvas. In this panel, you’ll add clips to your sequences, make editorial changes to them, add visual and audio special effects, mix soundtracks, and add titles and graphics.

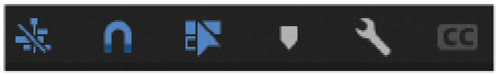
Here are a few facts about the Timeline panel. Refer to this list as you make progress through these lessons to make sure you are comfortable with all the features of the Timeline panel.


Add Marker
Linked Selection
Timeline Display Settings
Timecode
Track output
Track header
Playhead
Time ruler
Track
Sequence Nest Toggle
Snap
Track Targeting
Source tracks
Track Lock
Sync Lock
Navigator
Mute Audio or Solo Audio
Record VO
Drag between tracks to resize
Clip video
Clip audio

- You view and edit clips in sequences in the Timeline panel.
- The Program Monitor shows the contents of the currently displayed sequence, at the position of the playhead.
- You can open multiple sequences at the same time, with each displayed in its own Timeline panel.
- The terms *sequence* and *timeline* are often used interchangeably by editors, as in “the clip is in the sequence” or “the clip is on the timeline.” Sometimes *timeline* (lowercase) is used when speaking of a sequence of clips in the abstract, without reference to a specific panel.
- If you add clips to a completely empty Timeline panel, a new sequence is created automatically with settings that match the clip you selected first.
- You can add any number of video tracks. Preview playback is limited only by your system’s hardware resources.

- Upper video tracks appear “in front” of lower ones, so foreground graphic clips should be placed on tracks above background video clips.
- You can add any number of audio tracks, and they all play at the same time to create an audio mix. Audio tracks can support mono clips (1 channel), stereo clips (2 channels), 5.1 clips (6 channels), or adaptive audio—with up to 32 channels.
- You can change the height of tracks in the Timeline panel to gain access to additional controls and thumbnails on your video clips.
- Each track has a set of controls, shown on a track header on the far left, to change the way it functions.
- Time moves from left to right in the Timeline panel, so when you play a sequence, the playhead will move in that direction.
- You can zoom in and out of the sequence using the = (equals) and – (minus) keys (at the top of your keyboard). Use the \ (backslash) key, if your keyboard has one, to toggle the zoom level between your current setting and to show your whole sequence. You can also double-click the navigator at the bottom of the Timeline panel to view the whole sequence.

  If your keyboard doesn’t have dedicated = (equals) and – (minus) keys, it’s straightforward to assign alternative keyboard shortcuts. See Lesson 1, “Touring Adobe Premiere Pro,” for more information about setting keyboard shortcuts.
- The series of buttons at the top left of the Timeline panel gives you access to alternative modes, markers, and settings. You will learn about most of these buttons later. For now, unless described otherwise, if the Timeline panel seems to be acting strangely, check to make sure these modes are set as shown here.



Note

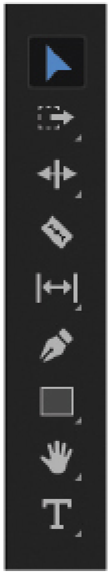
The modes, markers, and settings buttons at the top left of the Timeline panel are available only when a sequence is open.

Selecting a tool

Premiere Pro makes use of tools that change the way the pointer works. In this way, it’s similar to Adobe Photoshop.

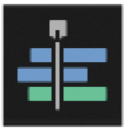
For most operations in the Timeline panel and some operations in the Program Monitor, you will use the standard Selection tool, which you will find at the top of the Tools panel. Make a tool active by clicking its icon in the Tools panel; an active tool has a blue icon.

There are several other tools that serve different purposes, and each tool has a keyboard shortcut. If in doubt, press the V key—the keyboard shortcut for the Selection tool.



What is a sequence?

A *sequence* is a series of clips that play one after another—sometimes with multiple blended layers and often with special effects, titles, and audio—making a complete film.



You can have as many sequences as you like in a project. Sequences are stored in the Project panel, just like clips, and have their own icon.

Tip

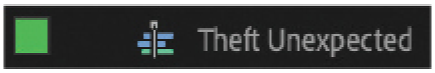
As with clips, you can edit sequences into other sequences, in a process called *nesting*. This creates a dynamically connected set of sequences for advanced editing workflows.

Let’s make a new sequence for the Theft Unexpected project.

1. In the Project panel, if you are still browsing inside the Subclips bin you created, click the Navigate Up button in the upper-left corner to view the contents of the Theft Unexpected bin.
2. In the Theft Unexpected bin, drag the clip Excuse Me (not Excuse Me Tilted) onto the New Item menu ◪ at the bottom of the panel. You may need to resize the Project panel to see the button.

   This is a shortcut to make a sequence with playback settings that perfectly match your media.

   The newly created sequence has the same name as the clip you used to create it. If you already have a sequence open when you create a new sequence, the new sequence opens in a new panel in the same Timeline panel group.
3. The sequence is highlighted in the bin, and it would be a good idea to rename it right away. Right-click the sequence in the bin and choose Rename. Name the sequence **Theft Unexpected**. Notice that the icon used for sequences in List view (shown here) and in Icon view is different from that used for clips.

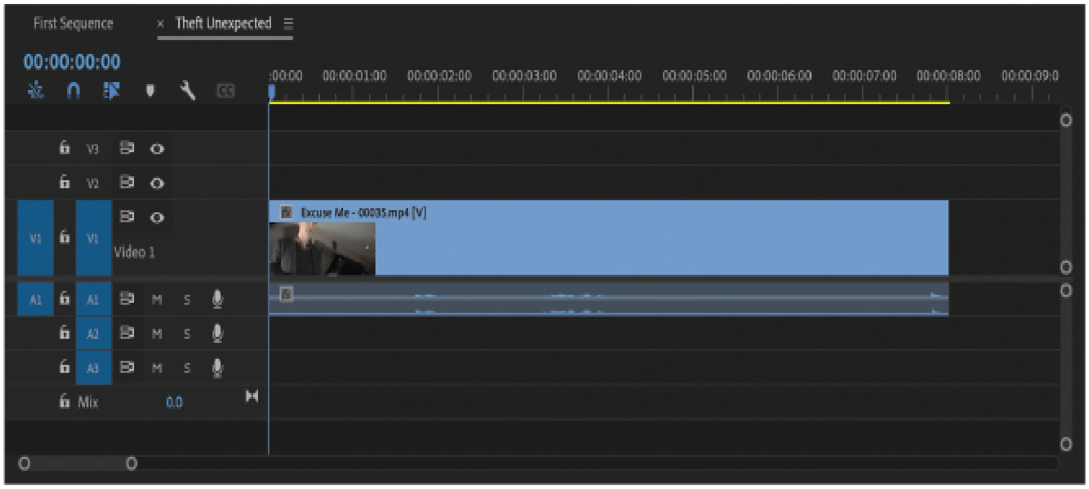
   Theft Unexpected

   The sequence is automatically opened in the Timeline panel, and it contains the clip you used to create it. This works for our purposes, but if you had used a random clip to perform this shortcut (just to make sure you had the right sequence settings), you could select that clip in the sequence now and delete it by pressing Delete (macOS) or Backspace (Windows).

You can zoom into the sequence, with its single clip, using the navigator at the bottom of the Timeline panel. To see a thumbnail on the clip, increase the height of the V1 track by dragging the dividing line between the V1 and V2 tracks in the track header area (where the track controls are located).

Tip

You can use the Timeline Display Settings menu 🔧 to choose Minimize All Tracks or Expand All Tracks to change the height of all tracks in a single step.


First Sequence
Theft Unexpected
00:00:00:00
:00:00
00:00:01:00
00:00:02:00
00:00:03:00
00:00:04:00
00:00:05:00
00:00:06:00
00:00:07:00
00:00:08:00
00:00:09:0
V3
V2
V1
Video 1
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
A1
A2
A3
M
S
Mix
0.0

Opening a sequence in the Timeline panel

To open an existing sequence in the Timeline panel, do one of the following:

- Double-click the icon for the sequence in a bin.
- Right-click the sequence in a bin and choose Open In Timeline.

You can also drag a sequence into the Source Monitor to use it as if it were a clip. Be careful not to drag a sequence into the Timeline panel to open it because this will add it to your current sequence or create a new sequence from it instead.

Conforming

Sequences have a frame rate, a frame size, and an audio mastering format (mono or stereo, for example). They *conform*, or adjust, any clips you add to match these settings.

You can choose whether clips should be scaled to match your sequence frame size. For example, for a sequence with a frame size of 1920x1080 (high-definition HD) and a video clip that is 3840x2160 (ultra-high-definition UHD), you might decide to automatically scale the high-resolution clip down to match your sequence resolution or leave it as it is, viewing only part of the picture through the reduced "window" of the sequence.

When clips are scaled, the vertical and horizontal sizes are scaled equally to keep the original aspect ratio. If a clip has a different aspect ratio from your sequence, it may not completely fill the frame of your sequence when it is scaled. For example, if your clip has a 4:3 aspect ratio and you add it, scaled, to a 16:9 sequence, you'll see gaps at the sides.

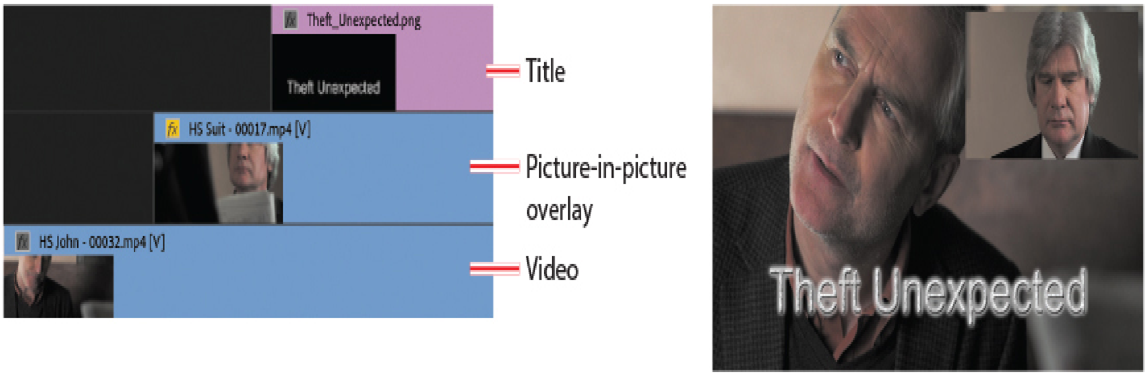
Using the Motion controls in the Effect Controls panel (see Lesson 9, "Putting Clips in Motion"), you can adjust which part of the picture you see or even create a dynamic pan-and-scan effect inside the picture.

Understanding tracks

Much as railway tracks keep trains in line, sequences have video and audio tracks that constrain the positions of the clips you add to them. The simplest form of sequence would have just one video track and perhaps one audio track. You add clips to tracks, one after another, from left to right, and they play in the order you place them.

Sequences can have multiple video and audio tracks. They become layers of video and additional audio channels in the complete sound mix. Higher video tracks appear in front of lower ones, so you can place clips on different tracks to produce layered compositions.

For example, you might use an upper video track to add titles to a sequence or to blend multiple layers of video using visual effects to create a complex composition.



You might use multiple audio tracks to create a complete audio composition for your sequence, with original source dialogue, music, spot audio effects such as gunshots or fireworks, atmospheric sound, and voice-over.

You can scroll through clips and sequences in multiple ways, depending on the location of your pointer.

- If you hover your pointer over the Source Monitor or Program Monitor, you can navigate earlier or later using the scroll wheel; trackpad gestures work too.
- You can navigate sequences in the Timeline panel this way if you choose Horizontal Timeline Mouse Scrolling in the Timeline preferences.
- If you hold Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while scrolling with your pointer, the Timeline view will zoom in or out horizontally.

▶ **Tip**

If you're scrolling to change track height while holding Option/Alt or while holding Shift, you can also hold Command or Ctrl for finer control.

- If you hover your pointer over a track header and scroll while holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows), you'll increase or decrease the height of the track.

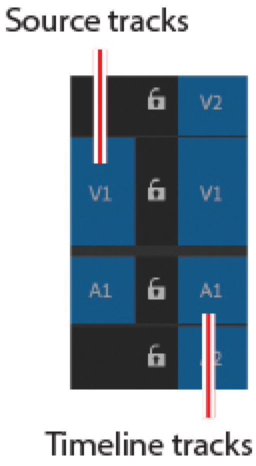
- If you double-click a blank space in a track header, you’ll toggle the header between being tall or flattened.
- If you hover your pointer over a video or audio track header and scroll while holding the Shift key, you’ll increase or decrease the height of all tracks of that type (video or audio tracks).

Targeting tracks

The portion of each Timeline track header to the right of its Track Lock button is for selecting, or *targeting*, tracks in a sequence.

At the far-left end of the track headers are the source track indicators. These represent the tracks available in the clip currently displayed in the Source Monitor or selected in the Project panel. They are numbered just like the Timeline tracks. This helps keep things clear when performing more advanced edits.

When you use a keyboard shortcut or the buttons on the Source Monitor to add a clip to a sequence, source track indicators are important. The position of a source track indicator relative to a Timeline track header sets the track to which the new clip will be added. A source track indicator also needs to be selected, in blue, for the contents of that track to be added to the sequence.

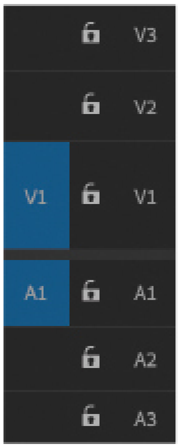


In the example shown, the position of the source track indicators means a clip with one video track and one audio track would be added to the Video 1

(V1) and Audio 1 (A1) tracks in the Timeline panel when using buttons or a keyboard shortcut to add a clip to the current sequence.

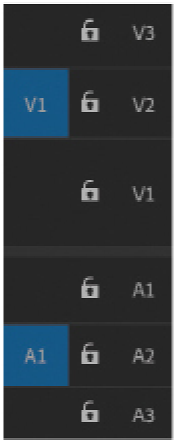
● Note

Remember, enabling or disabling Timeline track targeting buttons will not impact the video or audio added to a sequence when you apply an edit; only the source track indicators do.



In the example at left, the source track indicators have been moved to new positions relative to the Timeline panel track headers. In this example, the clip would be added to the Video 2 (V2) and Audio 2 (A2) tracks on the Timeline when using buttons or a keyboard shortcut to add a clip to the current sequence.

Click a source track indicator to enable it or disable it. A blue highlight indicates a track is enabled.

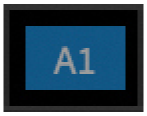


When performing edits in this way, enabling or disabling timeline tracks won’t affect results. The source track indicator and sequence track selection controls look very similar, but they have different functions.

If you drag a clip into a sequence, Premiere Pro adds content from enabled (highlighted in blue) source tracks but ignores the position of the source track indicators, adding the content to the tracks you drag them to.

Note

If you accidentally click a source track indicator while holding Alt (Windows) or Option (macOS), it will have a black border. This indicates that blank space will be added to the sequence when you perform the edit—an option that is sometimes used to maintain sync or leave space for alternative content. To remove the black border, click the source track indicator while holding Alt/Option again.



Using In and Out points in the Timeline panel

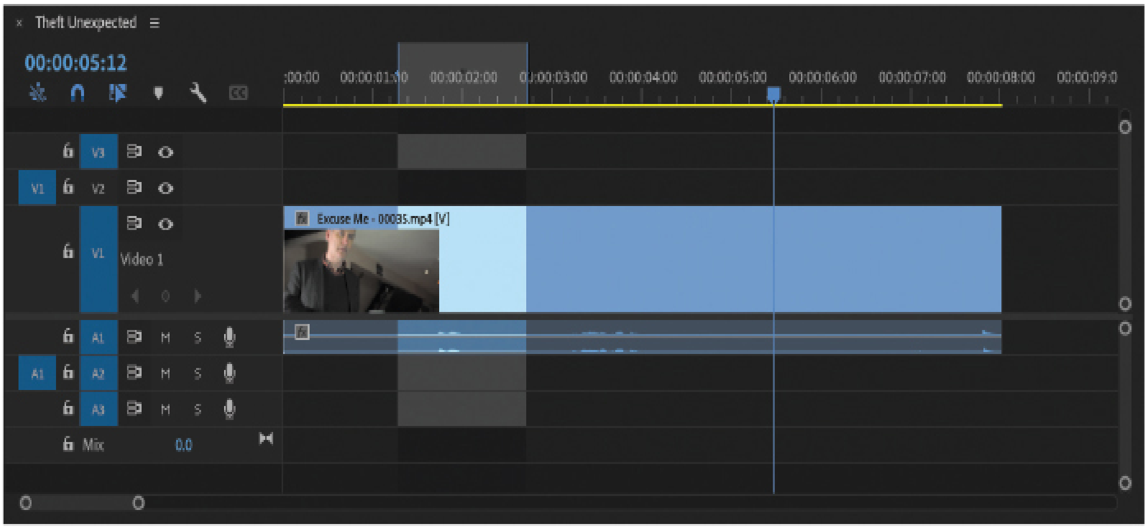
The In and Out points set in the Source Monitor define the part of a clip you will add to a sequence.

The In and Out points you use in the Timeline panel have two primary purposes.

- To tell Premiere Pro where, in time, a new clip should be positioned when it is added to a sequence.
- To select parts of a sequence you want to remove. You can make precise selections to remove whole clips, or parts of clips, from specific tracks by using In and Out points in combination with the track selection buttons.

Selected parts of a sequence, defined by In and Out points, are highlighted in the Timeline panel. The highlighting (and selection) doesn’t extend to tracks that are not targeted.

In the following example, all the timeline tracks are targeted except V2, so there’s a gap in the highlight where In and Out points define a selection. Notice the Source track V1 is enabled, but this does not impact sequence track selection.


Theft Unexpected
00:00:05:12
:00:00
00:00:01:00
00:00:02:00
00:00:03:00
00:00:04:00
00:00:05:00
00:00:06:00
00:00:07:00
00:00:08:00
00:00:09:0
V3
V1
V2
V1
Video 1
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
A1
A1
A2
A3
M
S
Mix
0.0

Setting In and Out points

Adding In and Out points in the Timeline panel or in the Program Monitor is almost the same as adding them in the Source Monitor.

One key difference is that unlike the controls in the Source Monitor, the Mark In and Mark Out buttons on the Program Monitor also apply changes to the currently displayed sequence.

To add an In point to a sequence at the current position of the playhead, make sure either the Timeline panel or the Program Monitor is active and then press the I key or click the Mark In button on the Program Monitor.

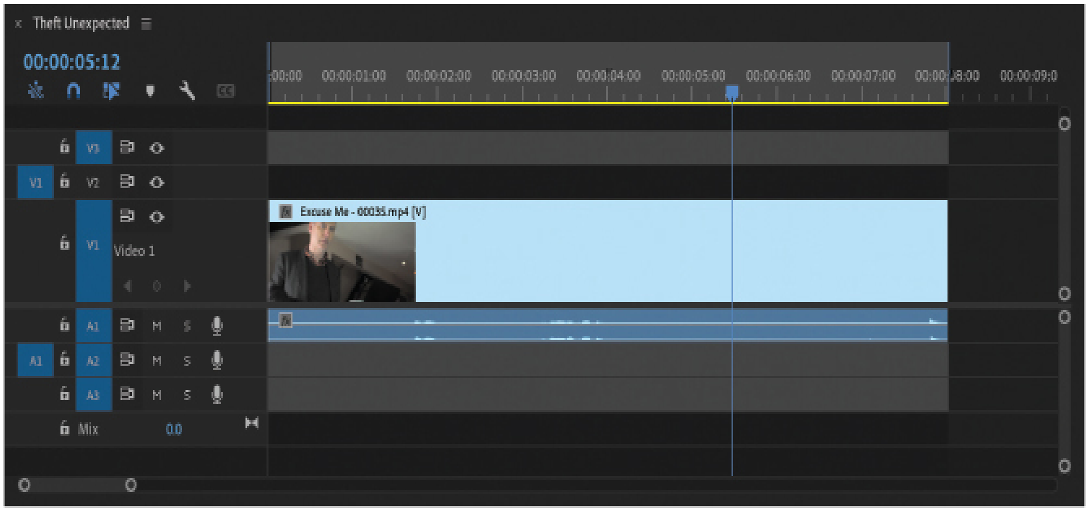
To add an Out point to a sequence at the current position of the playhead, make sure either the Timeline panel or the Program Monitor is active and then press the O key or click the Mark Out button on the Program Monitor.

Clearing In and Out points

If you open a clip that already has In and Out points, you can change them by adding new ones; your new In and Out points will replace the existing ones.

You can also simply remove existing In and Out points from a clip or from a sequence. It's the same technique to remove In and Out points on the Timeline, in the Program Monitor, and in the Source Monitor.

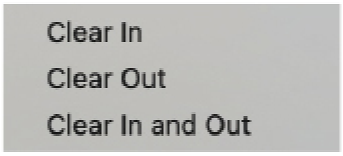
1. In the Timeline panel, position the playhead over the Excuse Me clip.
2. Press the X key. This adds an In point to the Timeline at the start of the clip (on the left) and an Out point at the end of the clip (on the right). Both appear on the time ruler at the top of the Timeline panel.


Theft Unexpected
00:00:05:12
:00:00
00:00:01:00
00:00:02:00
00:00:03:00
00:00:04:00
00:00:05:00
00:00:06:00
00:00:07:00
00:00:08:00
00:00:09:0
V3
V1
V2
V1
Video 1
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
A1
M
S
A1
A2
A3
Mix
0.0

3. Right-click the time ruler at the top of the Timeline panel, and take a look at the menu commands.

   Choose the command you need from this menu, or use one of the following keyboard shortcuts:

- **Clear In:** Removes the In point (Option+I, macOS; Ctrl+Shift+I, Windows)
- **Clear Out:** Removes the Out point (Option+O, macOS; Ctrl+Shift+O, Windows)
- **Clear In And Out:** Removes both the In point and Out point (Option+X, macOS; Ctrl+Shift+X, Windows)



4. That last option is particularly useful. It’s easy to remember and quickly removes both In and Out points. Try it now to remove the In point and Out point you just added.

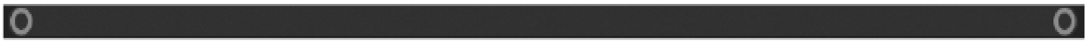
Using time rulers

The time rulers at the bottom of the Source Monitor and Program Monitor, as well as at the top of the Timeline panel, all serve the same purpose: They help you navigate through your clips or sequences in time.

Time goes from left to right in Premiere Pro, and the location of the playhead gives you a visual reference in relation to your clips.

- Drag left and right in the Timeline panel time ruler now. The playhead moves to follow your pointer. As you drag across the Excuse Me clip, you see the contents of the clip in the Program Monitor. Dragging through your content in this way is called *scrubbing*.

  Notice that the Source Monitor, Program Monitor, and Timeline panel all have navigation bars at the bottom.

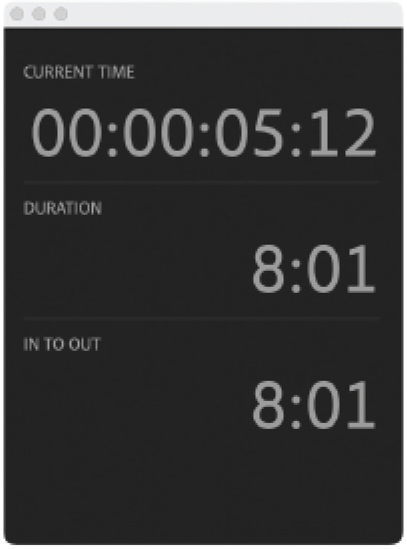
- You can zoom the time ruler by hovering over the navigation bar and using your mouse wheel to scroll (trackpad gestures work too).
- Once you have zoomed in, move through the time ruler by dragging the navigator.
- Adjust the zoom level of the time ruler by dragging the ends of the navigator.

Using the Timecode panel

There is a dedicated Timecode panel that, like other panels, can float in its own window or be added to a panel group. To open it, choose Window > Timecode.

The Timecode panel offers multiple lines of timecode information. Each line can be configured to show a particular type of time information. Because the panel can be set to a large size, it's particularly useful when you want to sit back and review your footage—and read the numbers from a distance.

The default configuration shows the current time, the total duration, and the duration set by In and Out points for the active panel—Source Monitor, Program Monitor, or Timeline panel.



The current time matches the timecode displayed at the bottom left of the Source Monitor or the Program Monitor and the top left of the Timeline panel.

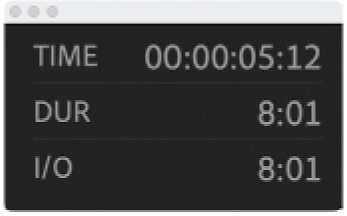
You can add or remove lines of timecode information to make it easier to monitor your clips and sequences by right-clicking the Timecode panel and choosing Add Line or Remove Line.

To configure the type of information displayed in a line, right-click the line and choose the option you would like.

Right-click any line and choose Save Preset to store a configuration you would like to use again. The preset you create will appear in the menu when you right-click the Timecode panel.

You can also right-click and choose Manage Presets to assign a keyboard shortcut to presets or delete presets.

There’s a compact mode for the Timecode panel that shows the same information in a smaller panel. To switch modes, right-click the panel to choose between Compact and Full Size.



TIME 00:00:05:12
DUR 8:01
I/O 8:01

The Timecode panel has no active controls—that is, you won’t use it to add In or Out points or make edits—but it provides useful additional information to guide your decisions. Seeing the difference between total duration and selected duration, for example, can help you gauge your total available media for multiple edits.

▶ **Tip**

> If a panel is active/selected, you can press Command+W (macOS) or Ctrl+W (Windows) to close it.

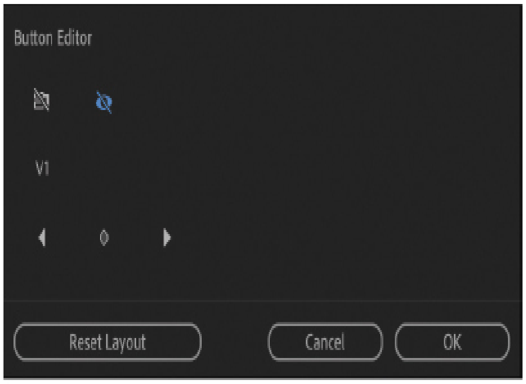
Close the Timecode panel now.

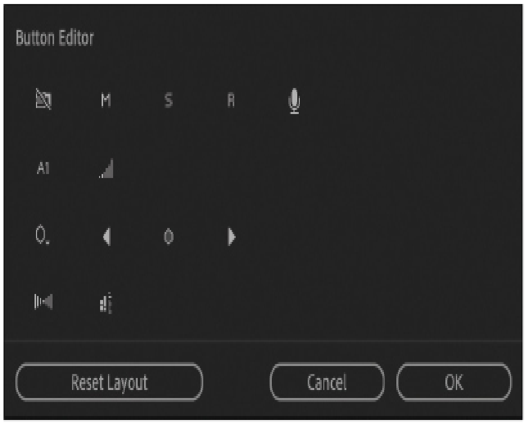
Customizing track headers

Just as you can customize the Source Monitor and Program Monitor controls, you can change several options on the Timeline track headers.

1. To access the options, right-click a video or audio track header and choose Customize, or click the Timeline Display Settings menu 🔧 and choose Customize Video Header or Customize Audio Header from the menu.

   There are no additional video track header buttons, but opening the editor allows you to move, remove, and restore buttons by clicking Reset Layout. Additional audio track header buttons allow you to extend the functionality of the track headers.





2. Hover your pointer over buttons in the Button Editor to see the tool tip. Some of these will be familiar to you already; others will be explained in later lessons.
3. Add a button to a track header by dragging it from the Button Editor onto a track header. You can remove a button from a track header by dragging it away while the Button Editor is open.

   Note that all audio or video track headers update to match the one you adjust.
4. Experiment with this feature a little more. You can always click the Reset Layout button on the Button Editor to return the track header to the default options.
5. When you have finished, click Cancel to leave the Button Editor.

Using essential editing commands

No matter how you add a clip to a sequence—by dragging, clicking a button on the Source Monitor, or using a keyboard shortcut—you'll choose one of two kinds of edits: an insert edit or an overwrite edit.

When a sequence has existing clips at the location where you want to add a new clip, these two choices—insert and overwrite—will produce markedly different results.

Performing one or other of these two types of edit is at the absolute heart of nonlinear editing. Of all the skills you will learn in this book, this is the one you will perform most often. Fundamentally, this *is* nonlinear editing, so take a little extra time to be sure you are comfortable with this workflow before you continue.

Performing an overwrite edit

Continue working on the Theft Unexpected sequence. So far, you have just one clip, in which John asks if a seat is free.

▶ Tip

Professional editors use the terms *shot* and *clip* interchangeably.

First, let's use an overwrite edit to add a reaction shot to John's request for a chair.

1. Open the shot HS Suit in the Source Monitor. We've already added In and Out points to this clip.

   ▶ Tip

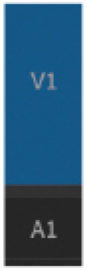
   You can copy and paste timecode into the current time indicator at the bottom left of the Source Monitor or Program Monitor. Click to select the timecode, paste the new timecode, and press Return or Enter to move the playhead to that time. This is a useful feature when working with camera logs that allow you to quickly locate a particular part of a clip.

   You'll next need to set up the Timeline panel carefully. This may seem like a slow process at first, but after practice, you'll find editing is fast and easy. Also, it's common to perform several edits with the same settings before you need to change them.

2. Position the Timeline playhead (rather than the Source Monitor playhead) just after John makes his request. Around 00:00:04:00 is perfect.

   Unless an In point or Out point has been added to the Timeline, the playhead is used to position new clips when editing with the keyboard or on-screen buttons (it becomes the In point). When you drag a clip into a sequence, the location of the playhead and existing In or Out points are ignored.

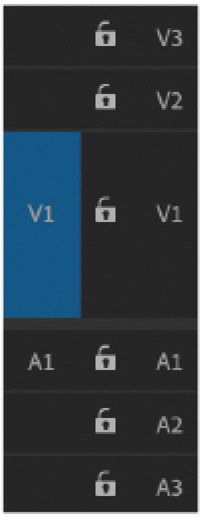
3. Though the new clip has an audio track, you don’t need it. You’ll keep the audio that is already in the timeline. Click the source track selection indicator A1 to turn it off. The button should be gray rather than blue.



4. Check that your track headers look like the example shown, with only the Source Track Indicator for V1 enabled, and positioned next to the sequence track V1.

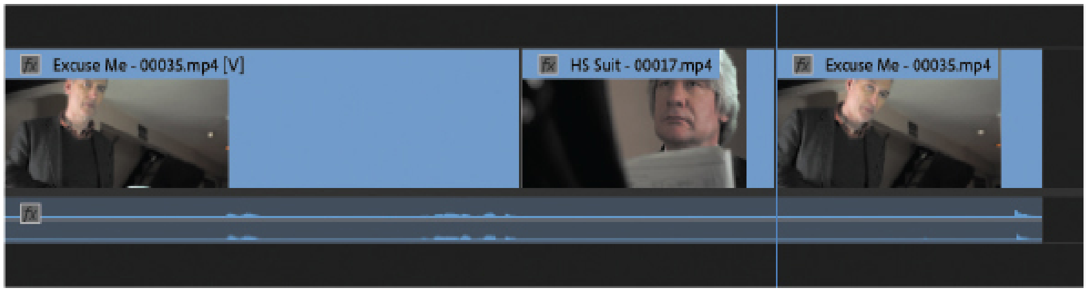
Note

When editing clips into a sequence, the track targeting buttons have no effect.



5. Click the Overwrite button in the Source Monitor.

   Premiere Pro adds the clip to the sequence on the Video 1 track, replacing part of the existing clip. When you perform an overwrite edit, existing sequence clips do not move to make room for the incoming clip.



Congratulations! You have completed an overwrite edit.

By default, when you drag a clip into a sequence, rather than using an on-screen button or keyboard shortcut, you'll perform an overwrite edit. You can perform an insert edit instead by holding down Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) while you drag.

● **Note**

Editors often use the words *sequence* and *edit* interchangeably. In this case, the word *edit* means any change made to one or more clips in a sequence.

6. Now position the playhead at the beginning (far-left end) of either the Timeline panel or the Program Monitor, and click the Play button ▶ on the Program Monitor (or press the spacebar) to play the result of your edit.

The timing might not be perfect, but you're now editing dialogue!

Performing an insert edit

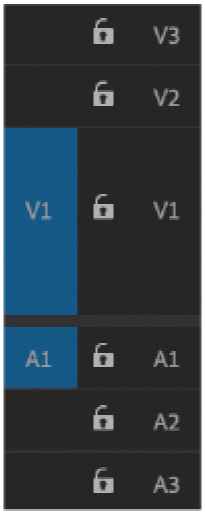
Now try an insert edit.

1. In the Timeline panel, position the playhead over the Excuse Me clip, just after John says, "Excuse me," at around 00:00:02:16. Make sure there is no In point or Out point in the sequence.
2. From the Theft Unexpected bin, open the clip Mid Suit in the Source Monitor, add an In point at 01:15:46:00, and add an Out point at 01:15:48:00. This is actually from a different part of the action, but the audience won't know, and it works well enough as a reaction shot—we'll adjust the timing later.

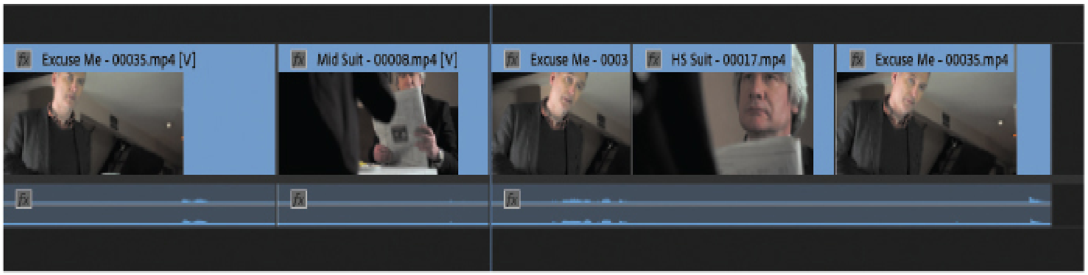
3. In the Timeline panel, adjust the Source Track Indicators as necessary to match the example at left.
4. Click the Insert button in the Source Monitor.

▶ Tip

As your sequence gets longer, you may find yourself often zooming in and out to get a better view of your clips. It can speed things up to use the keyboard shortcuts. At the top of the keyboard (not on the numeric keypad), the = key zooms in, while the – key zooms out.


V3
V2
V1
V1
A1
A1
A2
A3

The clip Excuse Me, already in the sequence, splits, with the part after the playhead moved later to make space for the new clip. This is the major difference between insert edits and overwrite edits: When you apply an insert edit, it makes your sequence longer. The clips already on the selected tracks, located to the right of the new clip, will move later (to the right) in the sequence to make room for the new clip.


Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4 [V]
Excuse Me - 0003
HS Suit - 00017.mp4
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4

5. Position the playhead at the beginning of the sequence and play through your edit again. If your keyboard has a Home key, you can use

it to jump to the beginning, you can drag the playhead with your pointer to move forward or back, or you can press the Up Arrow key to jump the playhead to earlier edits (the Down Arrow key jumps to later edits).

▶ Tip

If your Mac keyboard has no Home key, press Fn+Left Arrow.

There is more work to be done, and there’s a continuity issue near the start as John moves his jacket from one arm to the other, but this is beginning to look like a story unfolding.

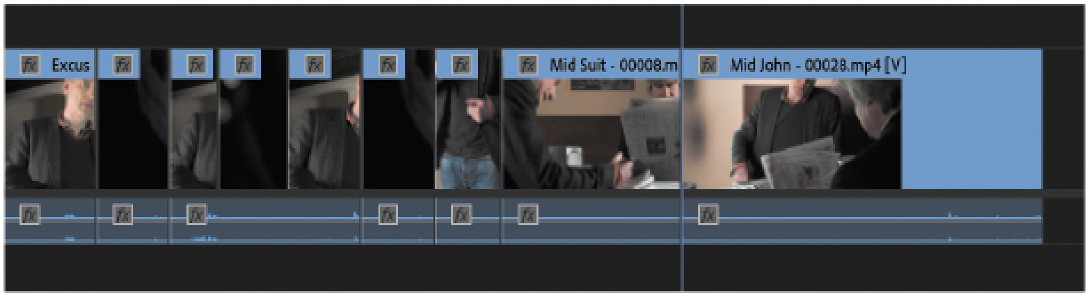
6. Now open the Mid John (not the Mid Suit) clip in the Source Monitor. We’ve already added In and Out points to this clip.
7. Position the Timeline playhead at the end of the sequence—on the frame after the Excuse Me clip. When dragging the playhead, you can hold the Shift key to have the playhead snap to the ends of clips.
8. Click either the Insert or Overwrite button in the Source Monitor. Because the Timeline playhead is at the end of the sequence, there are no clips in the way, and it makes no difference which kind of edit you perform.

   Now you’ll insert one more clip.
9. Position the Timeline playhead just before John takes a sip of tea, around 00:00:14:00 in the sequence.
10. Open the clip Mid Suit in the Source Monitor, and use In and Out points to choose a part you think would go well between John sitting down and his first sip of tea. An In point around 01:15:55:00 and an Out point around 01:16:00:00 might work well.

    Notice that the existing In and Out points are replaced when you add new ones.
11. Edit the clip into the sequence using an insert edit.

● Note

You can also edit clips into a sequence by dragging them from the Project panel or Source Monitor into the Program Monitor.



The timing of the edit may not be perfect, but that’s okay; you can change your mind about the timing later—that’s the beauty of nonlinear editing. The important thing, to begin with, is to get the order of the clips right.

Performing a three-point edit

When adding clips to a sequence by dragging, the duration of the part of the clip that will be added is set by In and Out points on the clip. The timing in the sequence is set by the location you drop the clip in the sequence.

When adding a clip to a sequence using a keyboard shortcut or button, Premiere Pro needs to know where and when and it should be placed.

This means there should be two In points and two Out points:

- An In point for the clip
- An Out point for the clip
- An In point for the sequence setting the beginning of the clip once it has been added
- An Out point for the sequence setting the end of the clip once it has been added

In fact, you need to specify only three of these points; Premiere Pro calculates the fourth automatically based on the selected duration.

Here’s an example: If you choose four seconds of a clip in the Source Monitor, Premiere Pro automatically knows it will take four seconds of time in your sequence. Once you have set the location for the clip to be placed, you’re ready to perform the edit.

Using just three points to perform edits in this way is called *three-point editing*.

When you performed your last edit, Premiere Pro aligned the In point from the clip (the start of the clip) with the In point in the sequence (the playhead is used as the In point if no In point has been added).

Even though you didn’t manually add an In point to the sequence, you’re still performing a three-point edit, with the duration calculated from the selection you made in the Source Monitor.

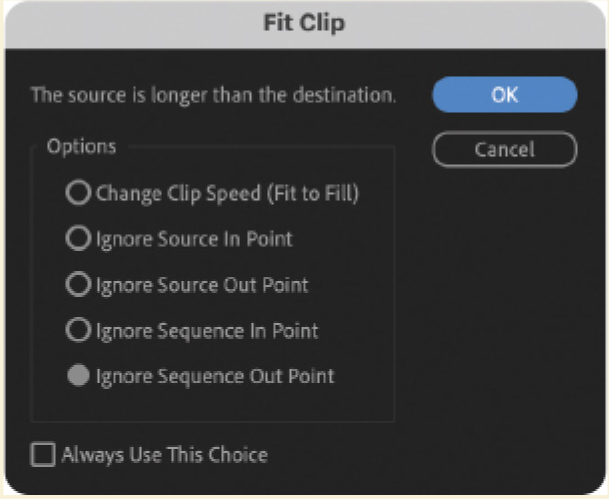
You can achieve a similar result by adding an Out point to the sequence instead of an In point. In this case, Premiere Pro will align the Out point of the clip in the Source Monitor with the Out point in the sequence when you perform the edit.

You might choose to do this, for example, if you have a piece of timed action, like a door closing at the end of a clip in the sequence, and your new clip needs to line up in time with it.

What happens if you use four points?

You can use four points to make an edit: both In and Out points in the Source Monitor and In and Out points on the Timeline. If the clip duration you select matches the sequence duration, the edit will take place as usual. If they’re different, Premiere Pro will invite you to choose what you want to happen.

You can selectively ignore one of your In or Out points or stretch or compress the playback speed of the new clip to fit the selected duration on the Timeline.



The source is longer than the destination.

○ Change Clip Speed (Fit to Fill)
○ Ignore Source In Point
○ Ignore Source Out Point
○ Ignore Sequence In Point
● Ignore Sequence Out Point

☐ Always Use This Choice

Performing storyboard-style editing

The term *storyboard* usually describes a series of drawings that show the intended camera angles and action for a film. Storyboards are often quite similar to comic strips, although they usually include additional technical information, such as intended camera moves, lines of dialogue, and sound effects.

You can use clip thumbnails in Icon view and Freeform view in a bin as storyboard images.

Drag the thumbnails to arrange them in the order you want the clips to appear in your sequence, from left to right and from top to bottom; select them; and then drag them all into your sequence. The order the clips are selected is the order they will be added to the sequence.

Using a storyboard to build an assembly edit

An assembly edit is a sequence in which the order of the clips is correct but the timing of the edits has yet to be worked out. It’s common to build sequences as an assembly edit first, just to make sure the structure works, and then adjust the timing later.

You can use storyboard editing to quickly get your clips in the right order.

1. Save your current project. This is good practice when you reach any major milestone in the development of your project.
2. Open Lesson 05 Desert Sequence.prproj in the Lessons folder.
3. Make sure the Project panel is the active panel, and choose File > Save As. Save the project as **Lesson 05 Desert Sequence Working.prproj**.
4. Double-click the Desert Montage sequence to open it in the Timeline panel.

> ● **Note**
>
> You now have two project files open at the same time. You can switch between them by choosing one of them from Window > Projects, and you can close all projects by choosing File > Close All Projects.

This sequence has music but no visuals. You’ll add some shots using a storyboard edit.

The audio track A1 has been locked (click the track padlock 🔓 to lock and unlock a track). This means you can make adjustments to the sequence without risking making changes to the music track.

Arranging your storyboard

It’s not necessary to pre-arrange clips in the Project panel prior to adding them to a sequence. However, it’s a helpful step to quickly give you a sense of the sequence structure.

▶ Tip

Project filenames can become quite long. It’s fine to include useful information to help you identify a project, but avoid making the name so long it’s hard to manage the file.

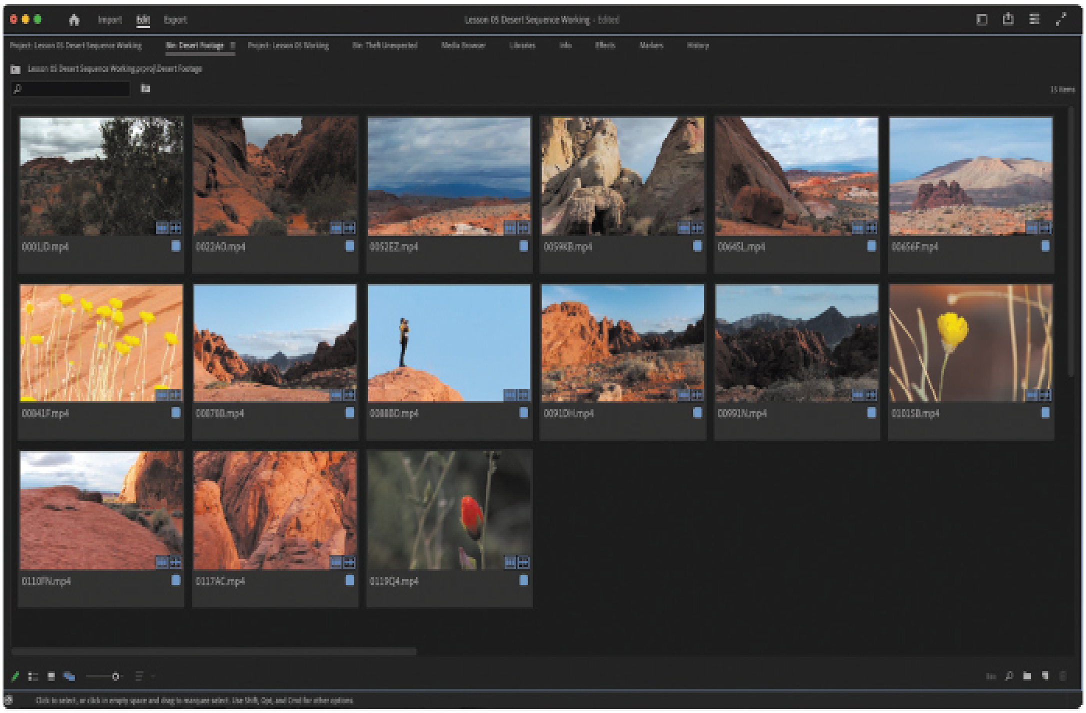
1. Double-click the Desert Footage bin to open it in a new panel.
2. Click the Freeform View button at the lower-left corner of the bin to see thumbnails for the clips.

   You can set the Project panel to Icon view to arrange clips as a storyboard, but Freeform view gives you more…freedom! It’s a more flexible way to display clip thumbnails.
3. Double-click the Desert Footage bin name to toggle it to full screen. Then, right-click the background of the bin and choose Reset To Grid > Name.

   This neatly arranges the clips, sorted by name.

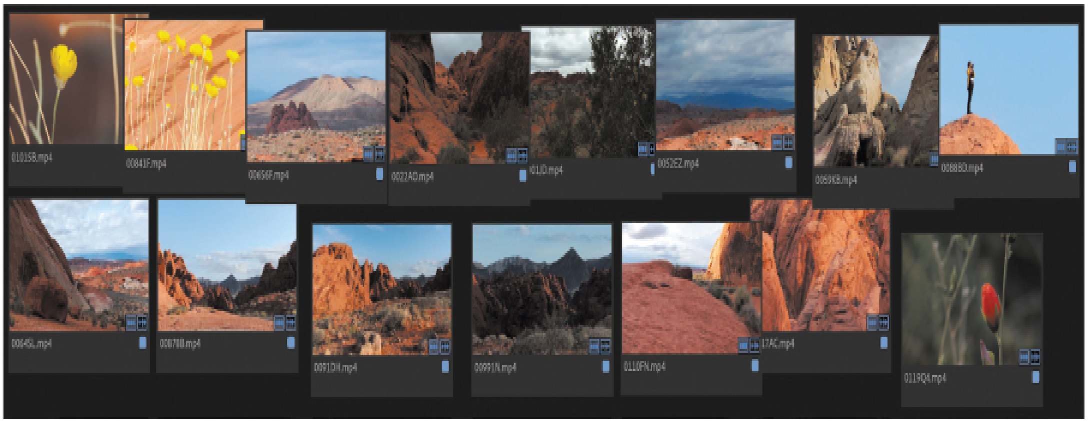
   ▶ Tip

   You can use the Zoom control at the bottom of the bin window to resize the clip thumbnails.


Import
Edit
Export
Lesson 05 Desert Sequence Working - Edited
0001JD.mp4
0022AO.mp4
0052EZ.mp4
0059KB.mp4
0064SL.mp4
0065GF.mp4
0084IF.mp4
0087BB.mp4
0088BD.mp4
0091DH.mp4
0099IN.mp4
0101SB.mp4
0110FN.mp4
0117AC.mp4
0119Q4.mp4

Click to select, or click in empty space and drag to marquee select. Use Shift, Opt, and Cmd for other options.

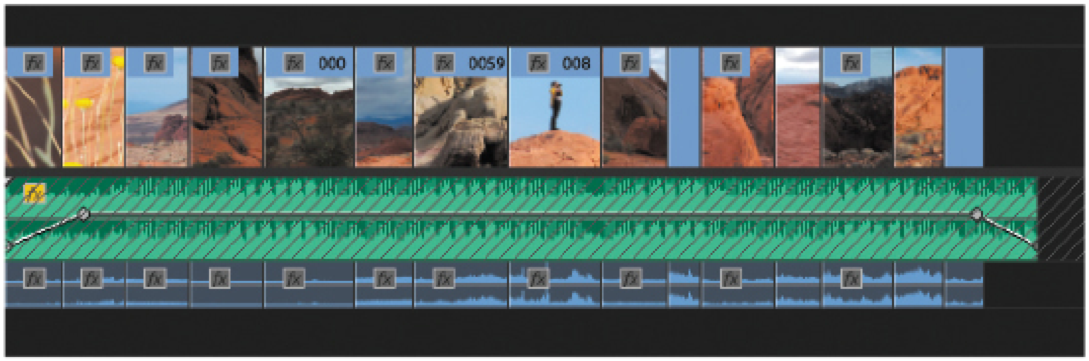
4. Drag the thumbnails in the bin to position them in the order in which you want them to appear in the sequence, from left to right and from top to bottom—just like a comic strip or storyboard. This will make it easier to select them in the correct order in the next step. In Freeform view, thumbnails can overlap and be arranged loosely. The order in which clips will be selected in the next step is the order that Premiere Pro will add them to a sequence.


0101SB.mp4
0084IF.mp4
0065GF.mp4
0022AO.mp4
01JD.mp4
0052EZ.mp4
0059KB.mp4
0088BD.mp4
0064SL.mp4
0087BB.mp4
0091DH.mp4
0099IN.mp4
0110FN.mp4
17AC.mp4
0119Q4.mp4

5. Drag around the clips to select them in the order you'd like them to appear in the sequence, or select them in the correct order while holding Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows).

6. Double-click the Desert Footage bin name to toggle it back to its original position. Drag the clips into the sequence, positioning them on the Video 1 track right at the beginning of the timeline, above the music clip.

   The clips are added to the sequence in the order you selected them in the Project panel.



Freeform view gives great flexibility when reviewing and arranging clips, ready to add them to a sequence, but Icon view offers an even faster workflow:

1. Press Command+Z (macOS) or Ctrl+Z (Windows) to undo the last step.
2. Double-click the Desert Footage bin name to toggle it to full screen, and click the Icon View button to switch to that view.
3. Drag the clip thumbnails into the order you'd like them to appear in the sequence. In this view, the thumbnails always stay in an ordered grid.
4. Double-click the Desert Footage bin name to toggle it back to its original position.
5. Make sure the Desert Footage bin is selected (with a blue outline), but click the background of the bin to deselect any clips. Now press Command+A (macOS) or Ctrl+A (Windows) to select all the clips based on their position in the bin.

   Tip

   You may need to scroll to see the clips after toggling the bin panel back to its original size.

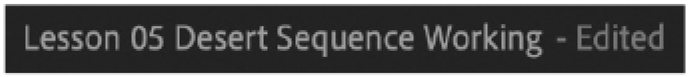
6. Drag the clips into the sequence, positioning them on the Video 1 track right at the beginning of the Timeline, above the music clip.

   Premiere Pro adds the clips to the sequence in the order you originally selected them in the Project panel. Because you selected the clips in one step by selecting them all, the selection order is based on the thumbnail placement in the bin.

7. Position the Timeline panel playhead at the beginning of the sequence. Play your sequence to see the result.

   Although you chose an order for the clips to play in the bin, remember that you are always free to change the order, or the timing, of the clips in the sequence.

   Now that you have two projects open at the same time, it may not be clear which project you are working on. If in doubt, look at the project file location, displayed at the top of the Premiere Pro interface. The word *Edited* after a project name indicates changes have been made to that project since it was last saved.

   Lesson 05 Desert Sequence Working - Edited

8. Close each project by choosing File > Close Project twice or by choosing File > Close All Projects. If you are asked if you would like to save, do so.

Setting the duration for still images

These video clips already had In and Out points, which were used automatically when you added them to the sequence.

Graphics and photos can have any duration in a sequence. However, they have default In and Out points that are applied as you import them.

To change the default duration, choose Premiere Pro > Settings > Timeline (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Timeline (Windows) and enter a new number in the Still Image Default Duration field. This setting applies to clips when you import them, so it won’t affect clips that have already been imported.

Still images and still image sequences (a series of images intended to play one after another, as animation) have no timebase—that is, the number of frames that should play per second (fps or frame rate). You can set the default timebase for still images by choosing Media in the Preferences dialog box and setting an option for Indeterminate Media Timebase.

Review questions

1 What do In and Out points do?

2 Is the Video 2 track in front of the Video 1 track or behind it?

3 How do subclips help you stay organized?

4 How would you select a time range in a sequence to work with in the Timeline panel?

5 What is the difference between an overwrite edit and an insert edit?

6 How much of your source clip will be added to a sequence if the source clip has no In or Out points and there are no In or Out points in the sequence?

Review answers

1 In the Source Monitor and in the Project panel, In and Out points define the part of a clip you would like to use in a sequence. On the Timeline, In and Out points are used to define parts of your sequence you want to remove, edit, render effects, or export as a file.

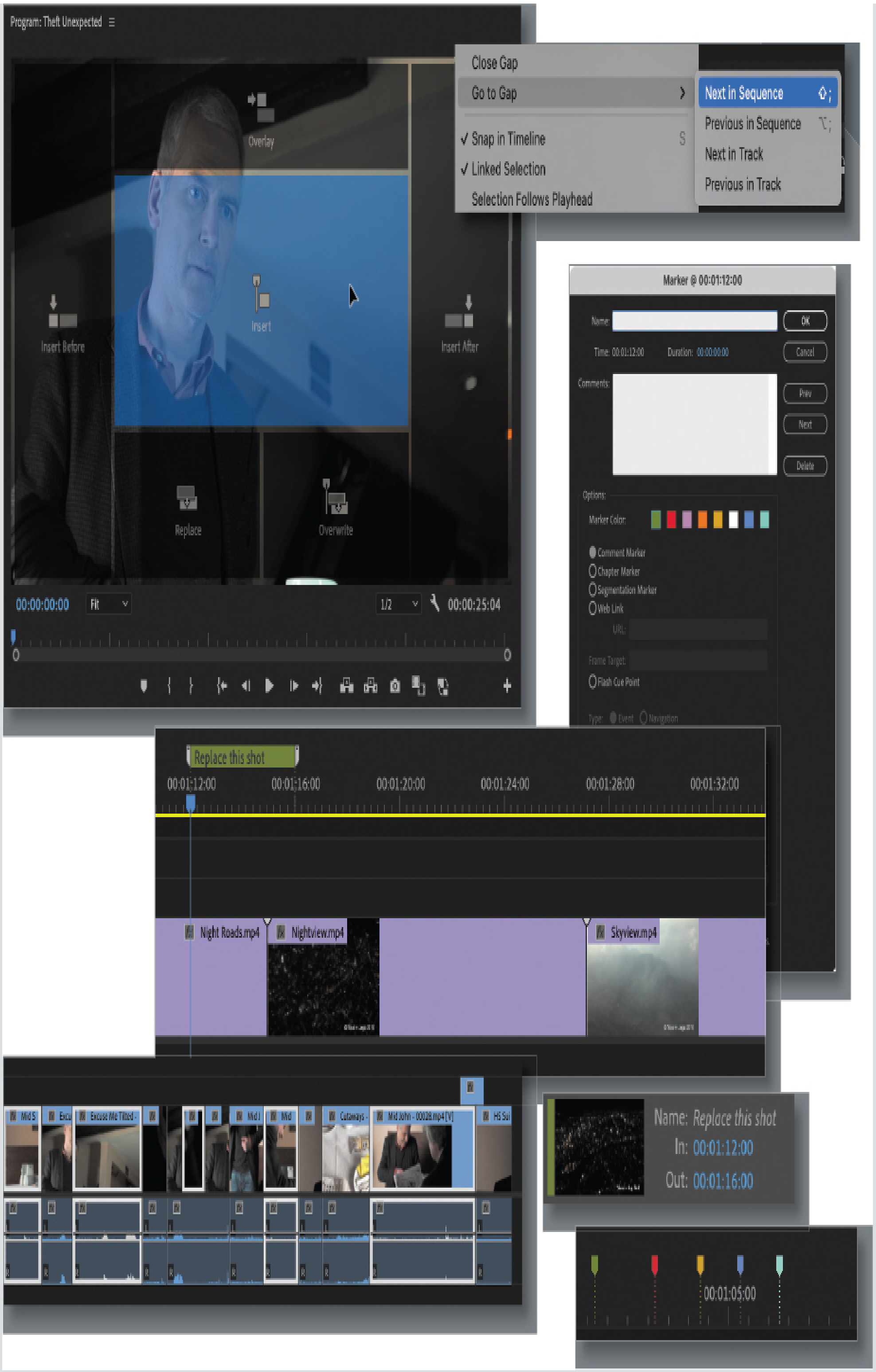
2 Upper video tracks are always in front of lower ones, so the Video 2 track is in front of the Video 1 track.

3 Although subclips make no difference to the way Premiere Pro plays back video and sound, they make it easier for you to divide your footage into different bins. For larger projects with lots of longer clips, it can make a big difference to be able to organize content this way.

4 You'll use In and Out points to define parts of your sequence you want to work with. For example, you might render when working with effects or export parts of your sequence as a file.

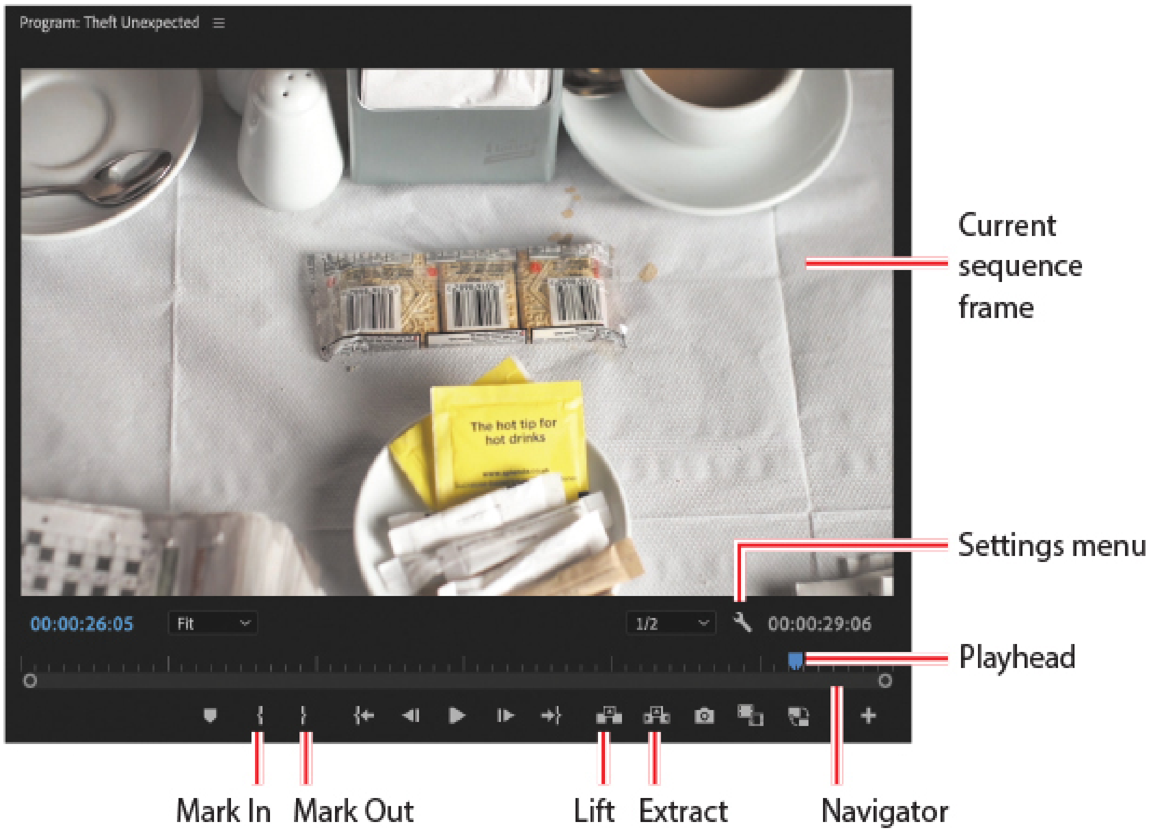
5 Clips added to a sequence using an overwrite edit replace any content already in the sequence where they are placed. Clips added to a sequence using an insert edit displace existing clips, pushing them later (to the right) and making the sequence longer.

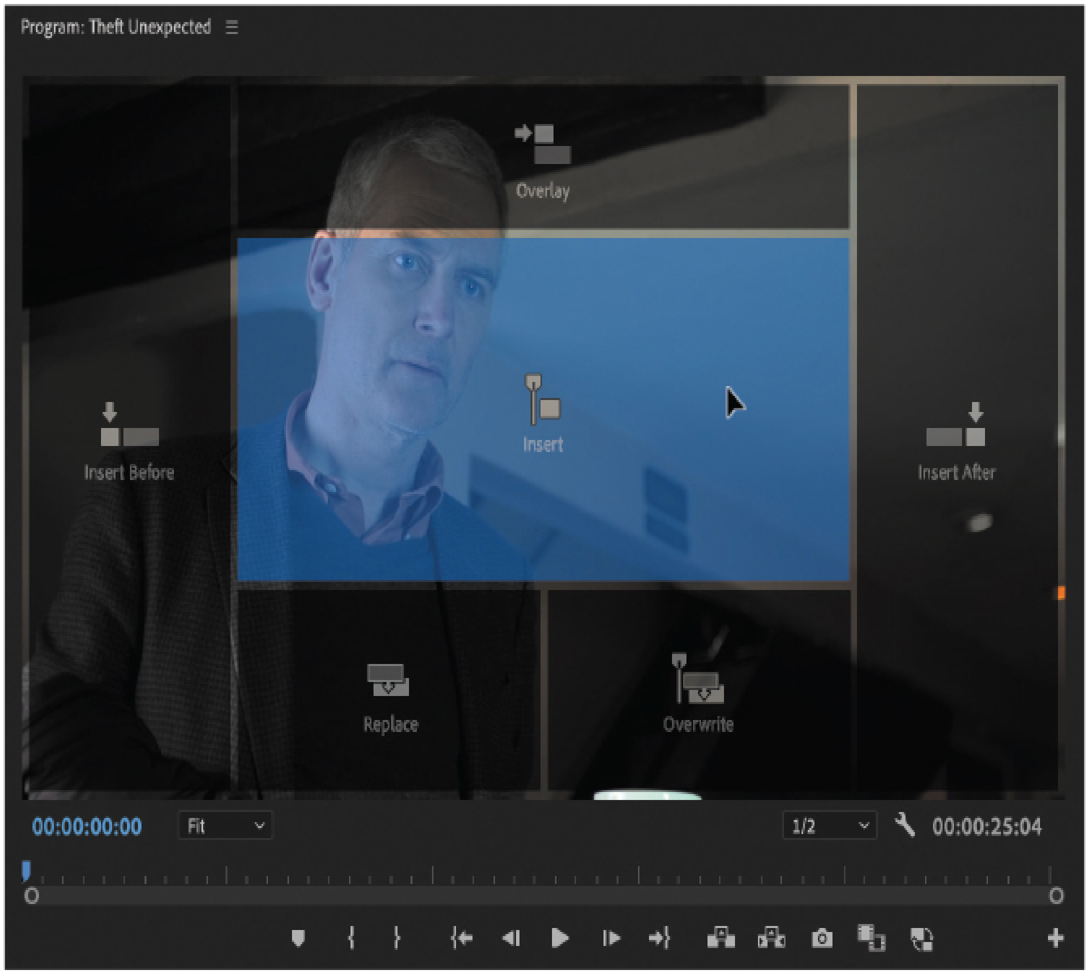
6 If you don't add In or Out points to your source clip, the entire clip will be added to the sequence. Setting an In point, an Out point, or both will limit the portion of the source clip used in the edit.

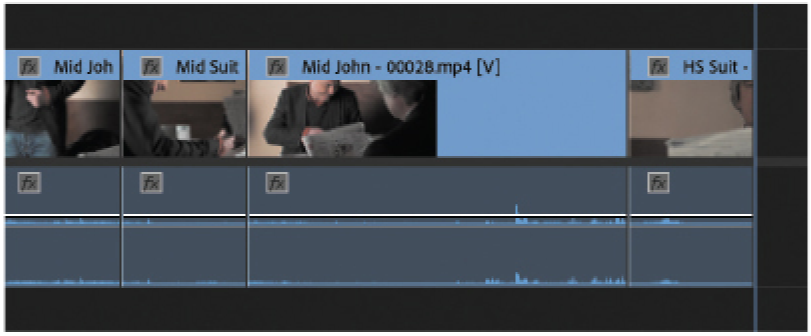

Program: Theft Unexpected
Overlay
Insert Before
Insert
Insert After
Replace
Overwrite
00:00:00:00
Fit
1/2
00:00:25:04
Close Gap
Go to Gap
✓ Snap in Timeline S
✓ Linked Selection
Selection Follows Playhead
Next in Sequence
Previous in Sequence
Next in Track
Previous in Track
Marker @ 00:01:12:00
Name:
OK
Cancel
Comments:
Prev
Next
Delete
Options:
Marker Color:
Comment Marker
Chapter Marker
Segmentation Marker
Web Link
URL:
Frame Target:
Flash Cue Point
Type: Event Navigation
Replace this shot
00:01:12:00
00:01:16:00
00:01:20:00
00:01:24:00
00:01:28:00
00:01:32:00
Night Roads.mp4
Nightview.mp4
Skyview.mp4
Excuse Me Tilted
Cutaways
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
00:01:05:00

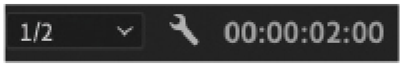
Time: 00:01:12:00 Duration: 00:00:00:00

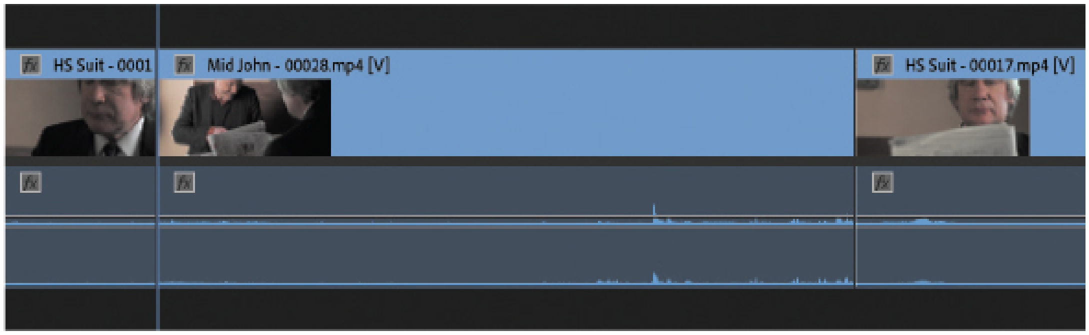
Name: Replace this shot
In: 00:01:12:00
Out: 00:01:16:00

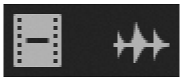

Program: Theft Unexpected
00:00:26:05
Fit
1/2
00:00:29:06
Current sequence frame
Settings menu
Playhead
Mark In
Mark Out
Lift
Extract
Navigator


Program: Theft Unexpected
Overlay
Insert Before
Insert
Insert After
Replace
Overwrite
00:00:00:00
Fit
1/2
00:00:25:04

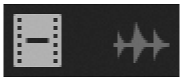

fx Mid Joh
fx Mid Suit
fx Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
fx HS Suit -

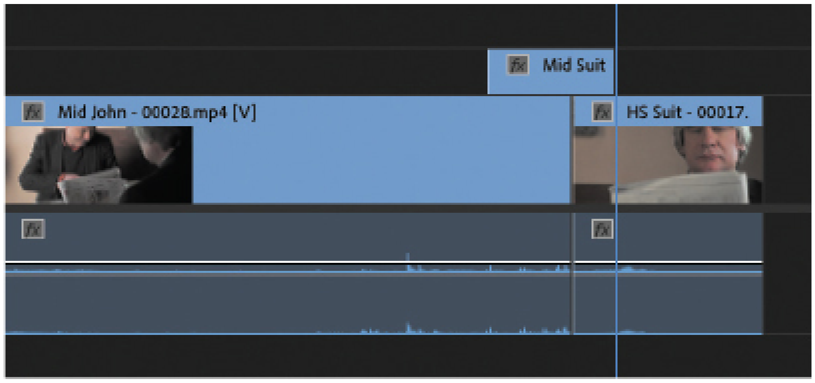

1/2
00:00:02:00


HS Suit - 0001
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
HS Suit - 00017.mp4 [V]



•



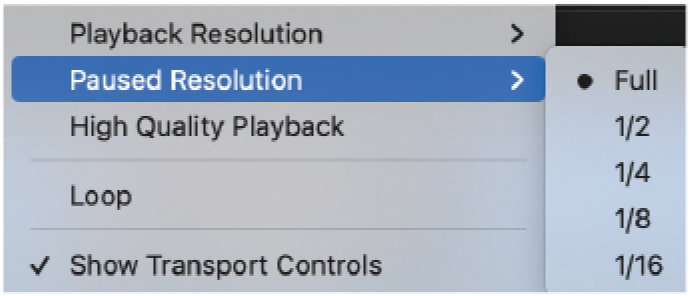

fx
Mid Suit
fx
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
fx
HS Suit - 00017.
fx
fx

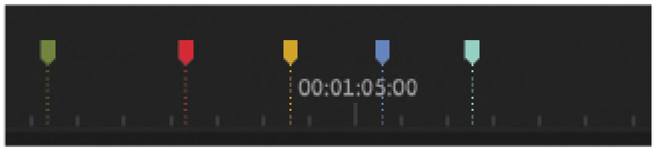
1/2

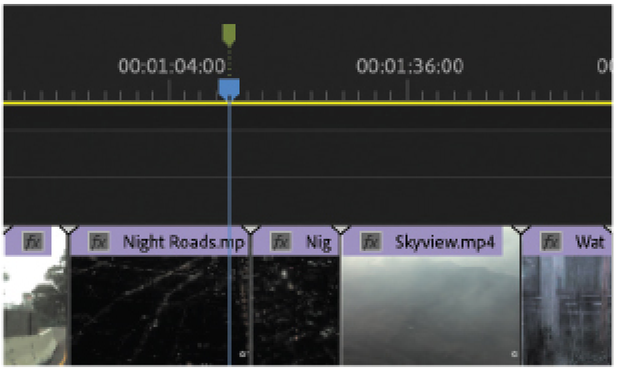
© Maxim Jago 2016

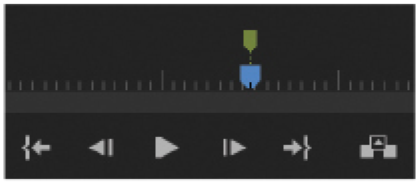
© Maxim Jago 2016

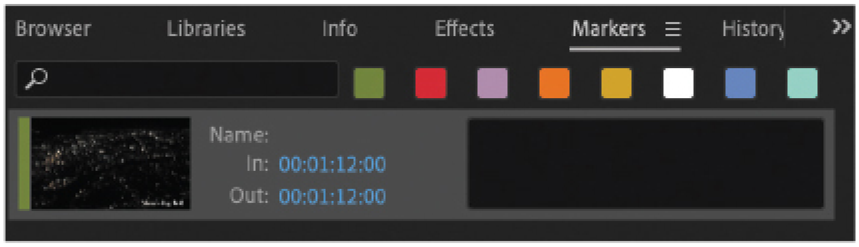
© Maxim Lago 2016


Playback Resolution >
Paused Resolution >
High Quality Playback
Loop
✓ Show Transport Controls
● Full
1/2
1/4
1/8
1/16

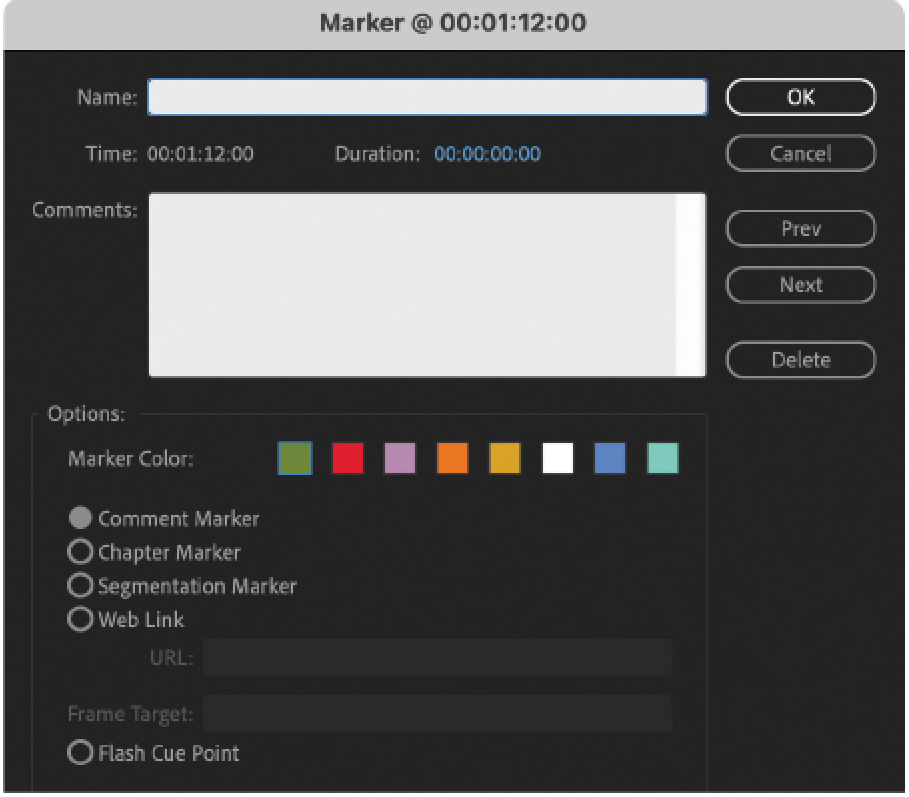

00:01:05:00


00:01:04:00
00:01:36:00
Night Roads.mp
Nig
Skyview.mp4
Wat




Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History

Name:
In: 00:01:12:00
Out: 00:01:12:00



Marker @ 00:01:12:00

Name:

Time: 00:01:12:00

Duration: 00:00:00:00

Comments:

Options:

Marker Color: 🟩 🟥 🟪 🟧 🟨 ⬜ 🟦 🟩

● Comment Marker

○ Chapter Marker

○ Segmentation Marker

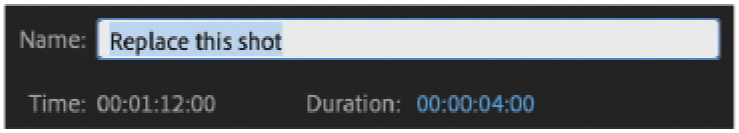
○ Web Link

URL:

Frame Target:

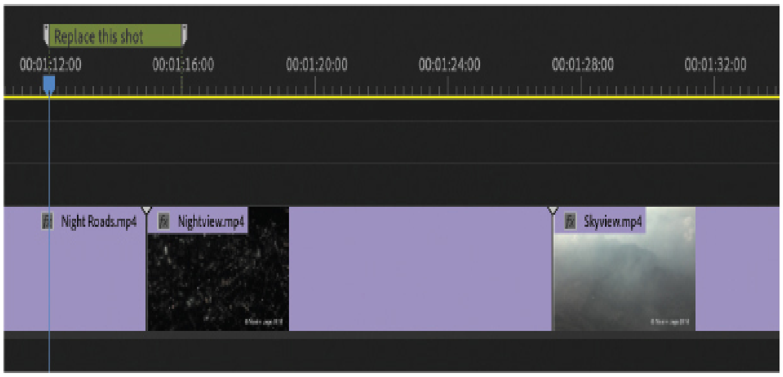
○ Flash Cue Point

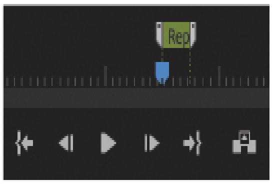
OK
Cancel
Prev
Next
Delete

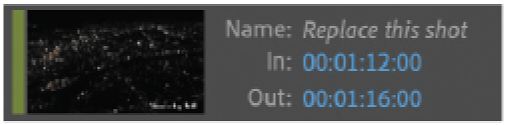


Name: Replace this shot

Time: 00:01:12:00 Duration: 00:00:04:00


Replace this shot
00:01:12:00
00:01:16:00
00:01:20:00
00:01:24:00
00:01:28:00
00:01:32:00
Night Roads.mp4
Nightview.mp4
Skyview.mp4

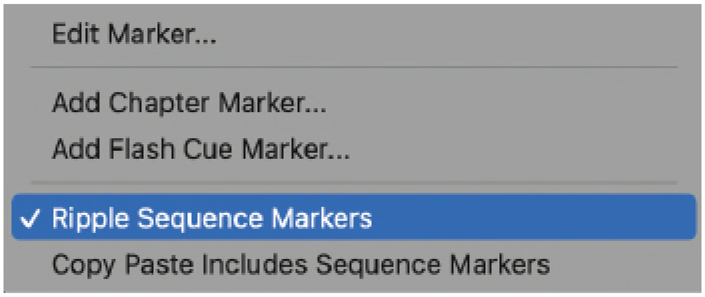


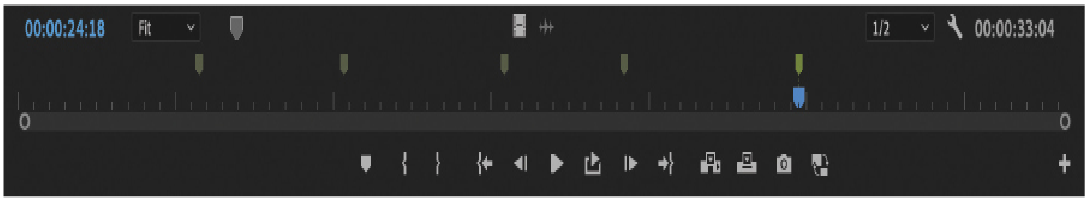


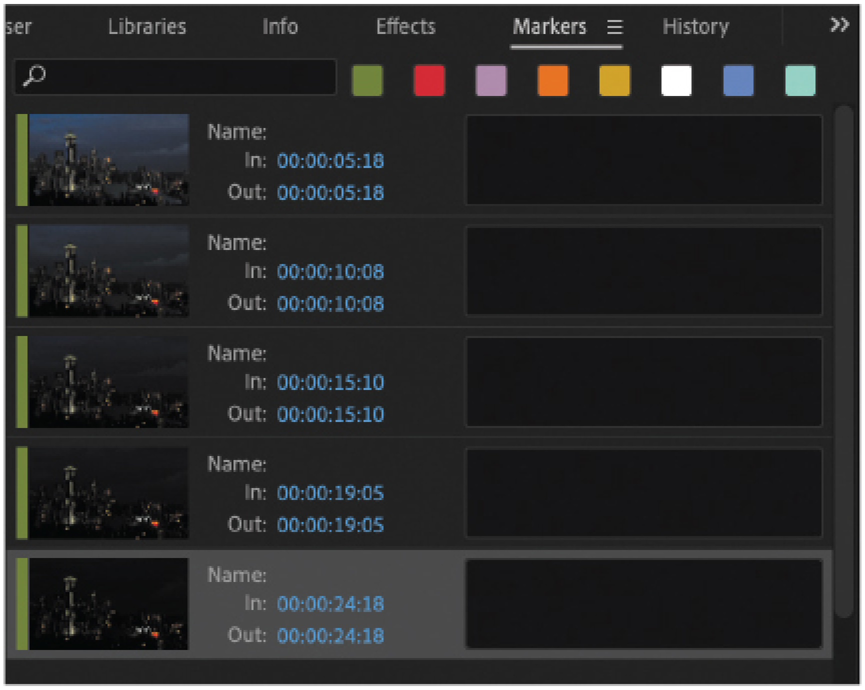
Name: *Replace this shot*

In: 00:01:12:00

Out: 00:01:16:00


Edit Marker...
Add Chapter Marker...
Add Flash Cue Marker...
✓ Ripple Sequence Markers
Copy Paste Includes Sequence Markers


00:00:24:18
Fit
1/2
00:00:33:04


ser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History

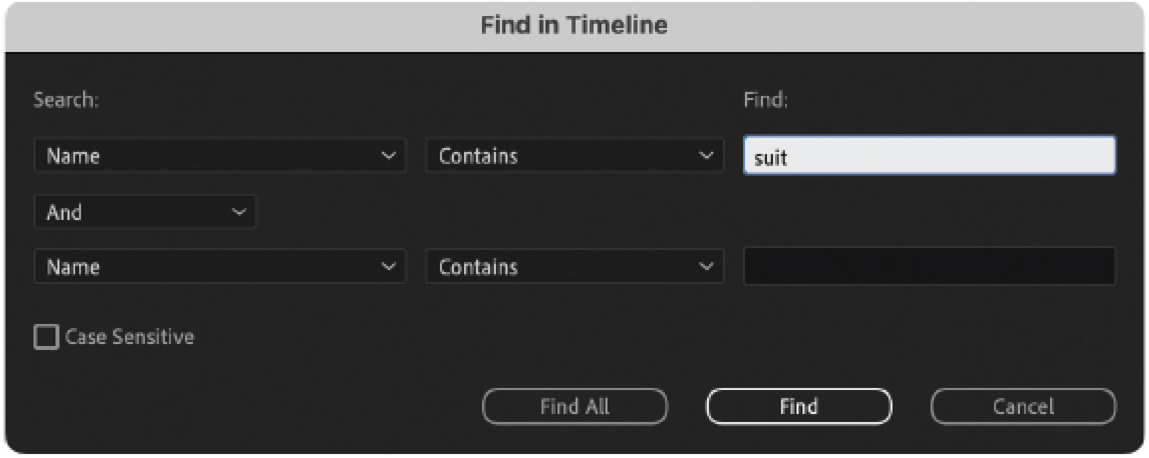
Name:
In: 00:00:05:18
Out: 00:00:05:18

Name:
In: 00:00:10:08
Out: 00:00:10:08

Name:
In: 00:00:15:10
Out: 00:00:15:10

Name:
In: 00:00:19:05
Out: 00:00:19:05

Name:
In: 00:00:24:18
Out: 00:00:24:18


Find in Timeline

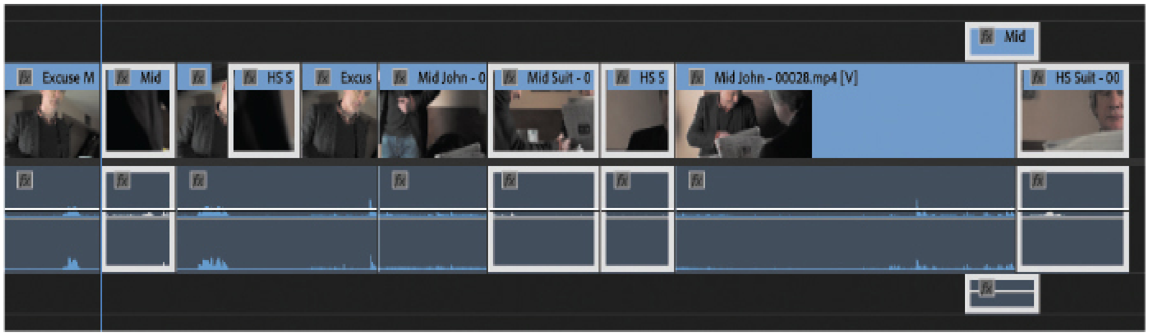
Search: Name Contains Find: suit

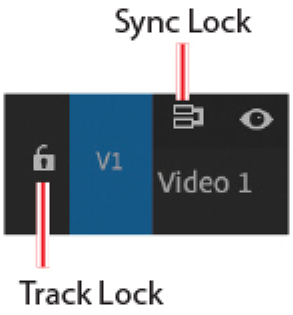
And

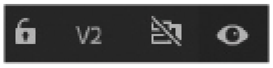
Name Contains

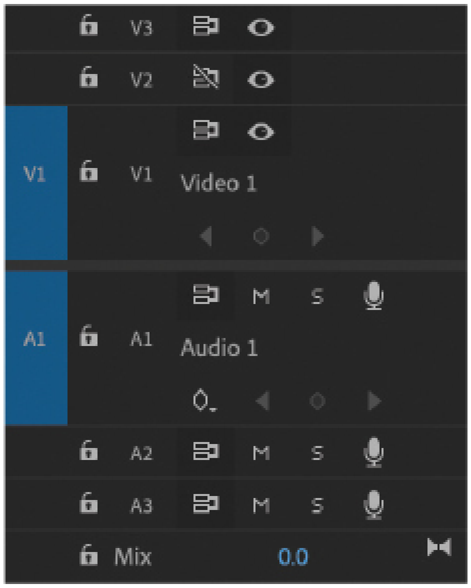
☐ Case Sensitive

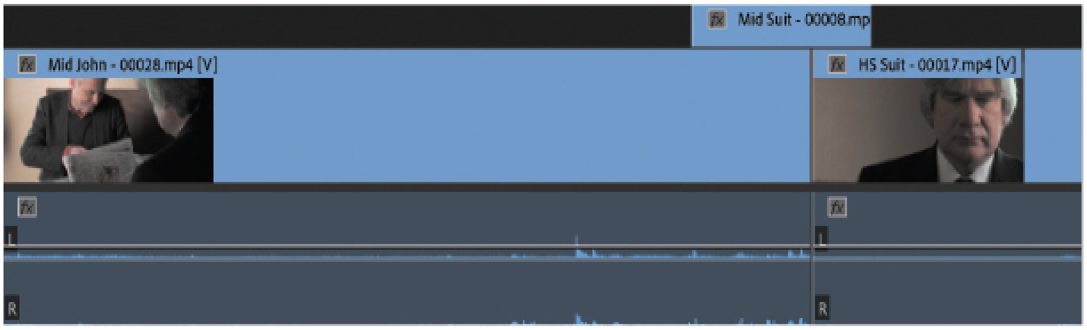
Find All
Find
Cancel

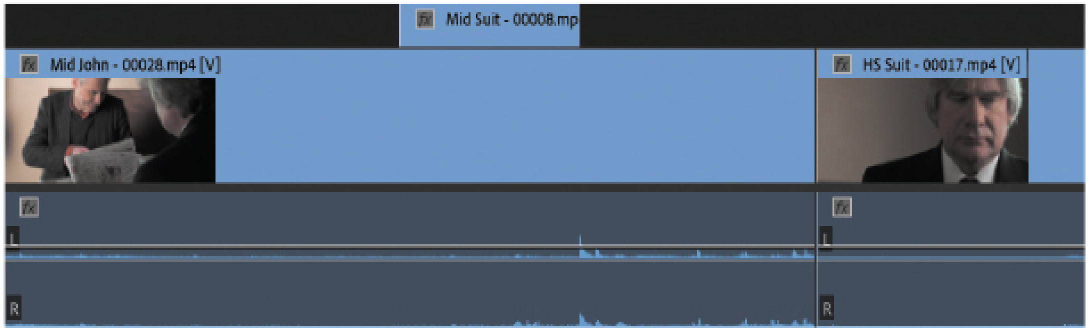

Mid
Excuse M
Mid
HS S
Excus
Mid John - 0
Mid Suit - 0
HS S
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
HS Suit - 00

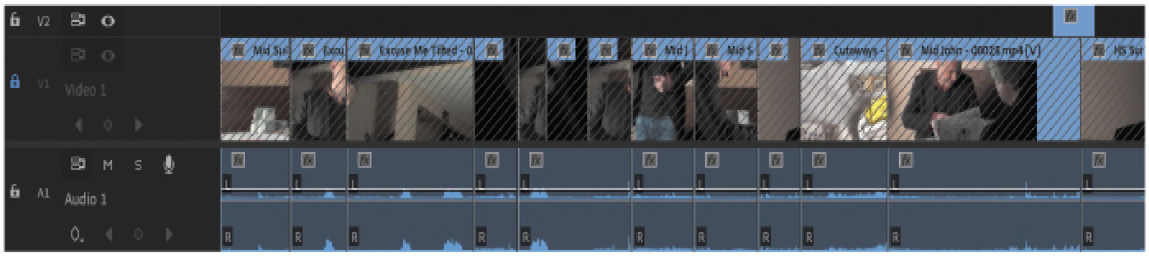

Sync Lock
V1
Video 1
Track Lock

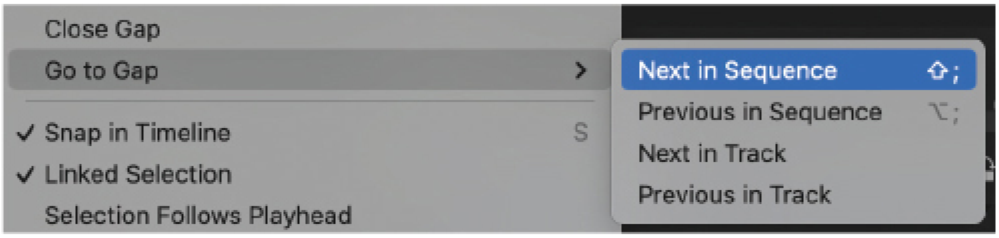

V2

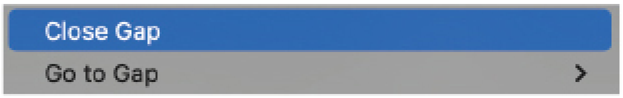

V3
V2
V1
V1
Video 1
A1
M
S
A1
Audio 1
A2
M
S
A3
M
S
Mix
0.0

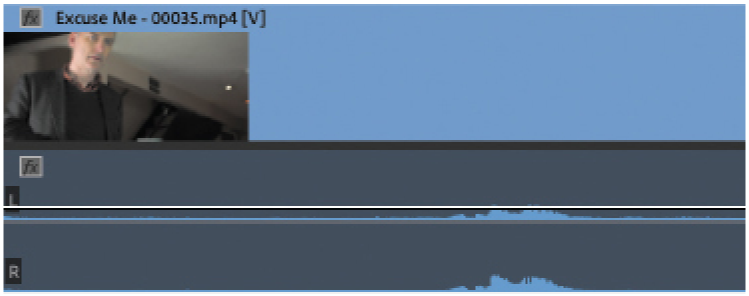

Mid Suit - 00008.mp
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
HS Suit - 00017.mp4 [V]
L
R
L
R

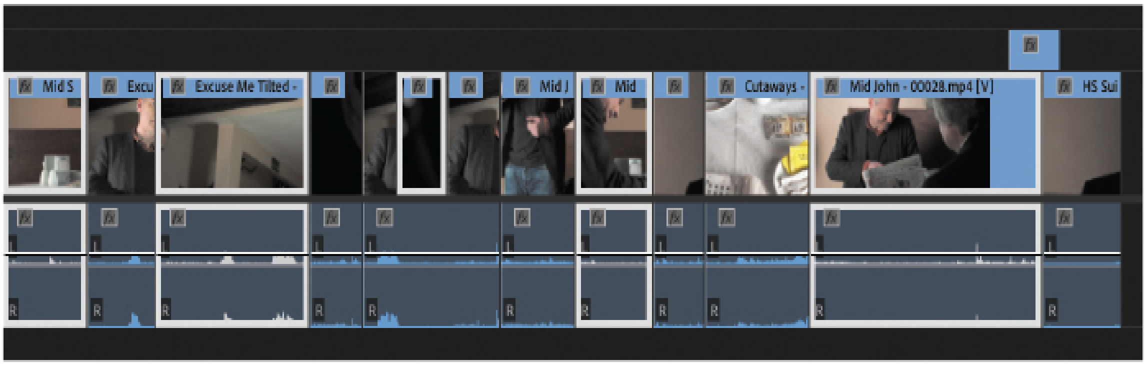

Mid Suit - 00008.mp
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
HS Suit - 00017.mp4 [V]
L
R
L
R

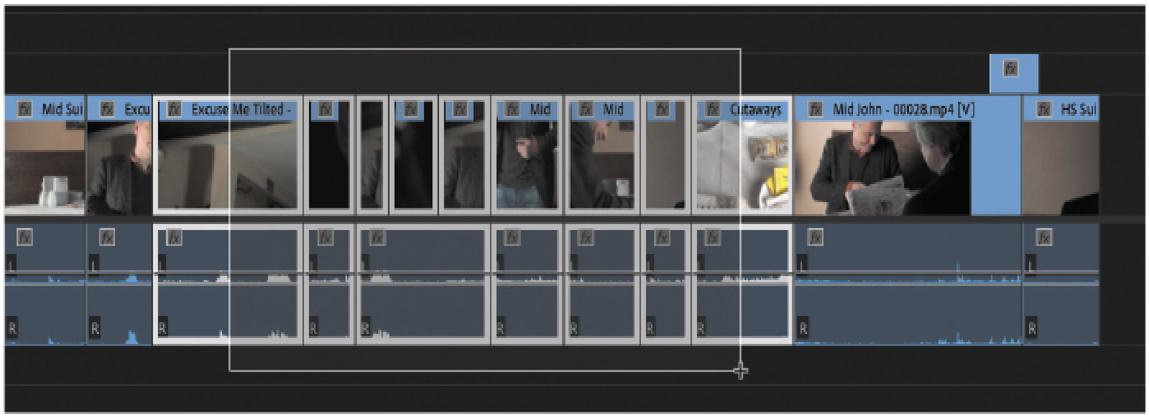

V2
V1
Video 1
A1
Audio 1
M
S
Mid Su
Excu
Excuse Me Titled - 0
Mid J
Mid S
Cutaways -
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
HS Su

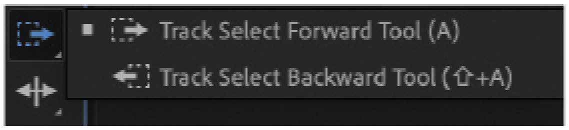

Close Gap
Go to Gap
Snap in Timeline S
Linked Selection
Selection Follows Playhead
Next in Sequence ⇧;
Previous in Sequence ⌥;
Next in Track
Previous in Track

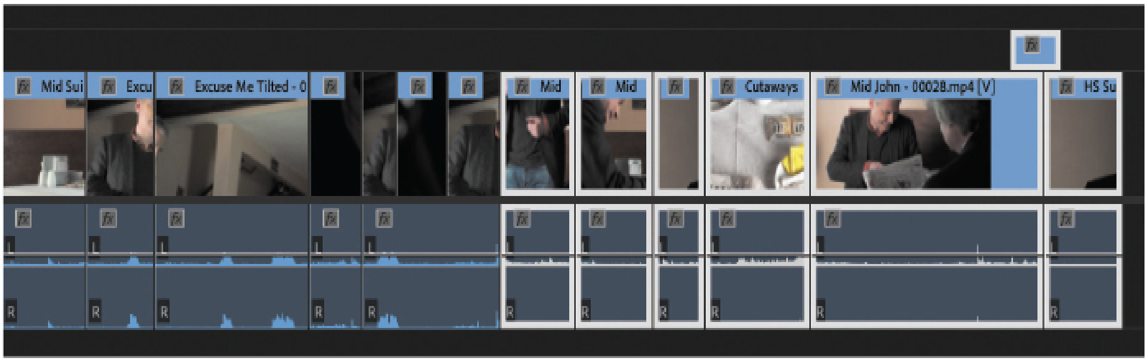

Close Gap
Go to Gap


Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
L
R


Mid S
Excu
Excuse Me Tilted -
Mid J
Mid
Cutaways -
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
HS Sui


Mid Sui
Excu
Excuse Me Tilted -
Mid
Mid
Cutaways
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
HS Sui


Track Select Forward Tool (A)
Track Select Backward Tool (⇧+A)

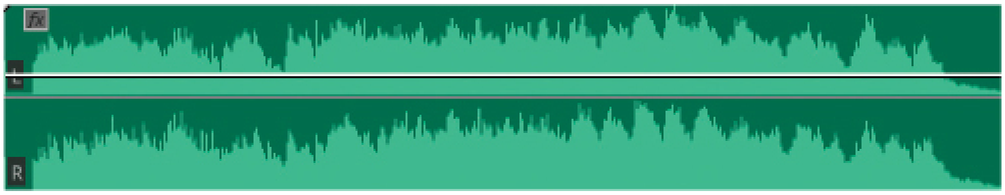

Mid Sui
Excu
Excuse Me Tilted - 0
Mid
Mid
Cutaways
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
HS Su

OHVVRQ \RXåOO OHDUQ VRPH DXGLR PL[LQJ IXQG
SURYLGHG E\ $GREH 3UHPLHUH 3UR

6WDUWLQJ WKH OHVVRQ

&RQVLGHU WKH HIIHFW PDNHV LI \RX ZKLOH WKH ZURQ
KRUURU PRYLH ZLWKRXW DQ RPLQRXV VRXQGWU
PRPHQW DJR FDQ VHHP OLNH FRPHG\

0XVLF ZRUNV DURXQG PDQ\ RI RXU FULW
RXU IHHOLQJV ZLOO UHDFW WR VRXQ
)RU H[DPSOH IRU \RXU KHDUW UDW
WKH PXVLF \RXåUH OLVWHQLQJ WR)DVW
VORZ PXVLF WHQGV WR ORZHU \RXU KHD



,WåV UDUH WR UHFRUG SHUIHFW VRXQG IRU \RXU
DQ\ DGMXVWPHQWV EXW 3UHPLHUH 3UR
LPSURYH \RXU DXGLR PL[ )RU LQVWDQFH

- ,QWHUSUHW UHFRUGHG DXGLR FKDQQHOV
  UHFRUGHG LQ FDPHUD)RU H[DPSOH
  LQWHUSUHWHG DV VHSDUDWH PRQR W
- &OHDQ XS EDFNJURXQG QRLVH IURP WKH
  UHFRUGLQJ HTXLSPHQW RU WKH VRXQG
  3UR KDV WRROV IRU FOHDQLQJ XS \RX
- $GMXVW WKH YROXPH RI VSHFLILF IUHTXHQF
  WRQHV
- $GMXVW WKH YROXPH OHYHO RQ FOLSV
  VHJPHQWV LQ VHTXHQFHV 7KH DGMXV
  FDQ YDU\ RYHU WLPH WR FUHDWH D G\

- $GG PXVLF DQG WKHQ PL[OHYHOV EH FOLSV 7KLV FDQ EH SHUIRUPHG DXWR
- 3URGXFH D PRQR VWHUHR RU HYHQ
- $GG DXGLR HIIHFWV VXFK DV H[SORVLRQV HQYLURQPHQWDO VRXQGV
- &KDQJH WKH GXUDWLRQ RI D PXVLF FO

,Q WKLV OHVVRQ \RXåOO EHJLQ E\ OHDU 3UHPLHUH 3UR DQG WKHQ \RXåOO PDNH <RXåOO DOVR XVH WKH $XGLR &OLS 0L[H WKH IO\é ZKLOH \RXU VHTXHQFH SOD\V

6HWWLQJ XS WKH LQWHUIDFH WR ZRUN ZLWK DXGLR

/HWåV EHJLQ E\ VZLWFKLQJ WR WKH $XGLR

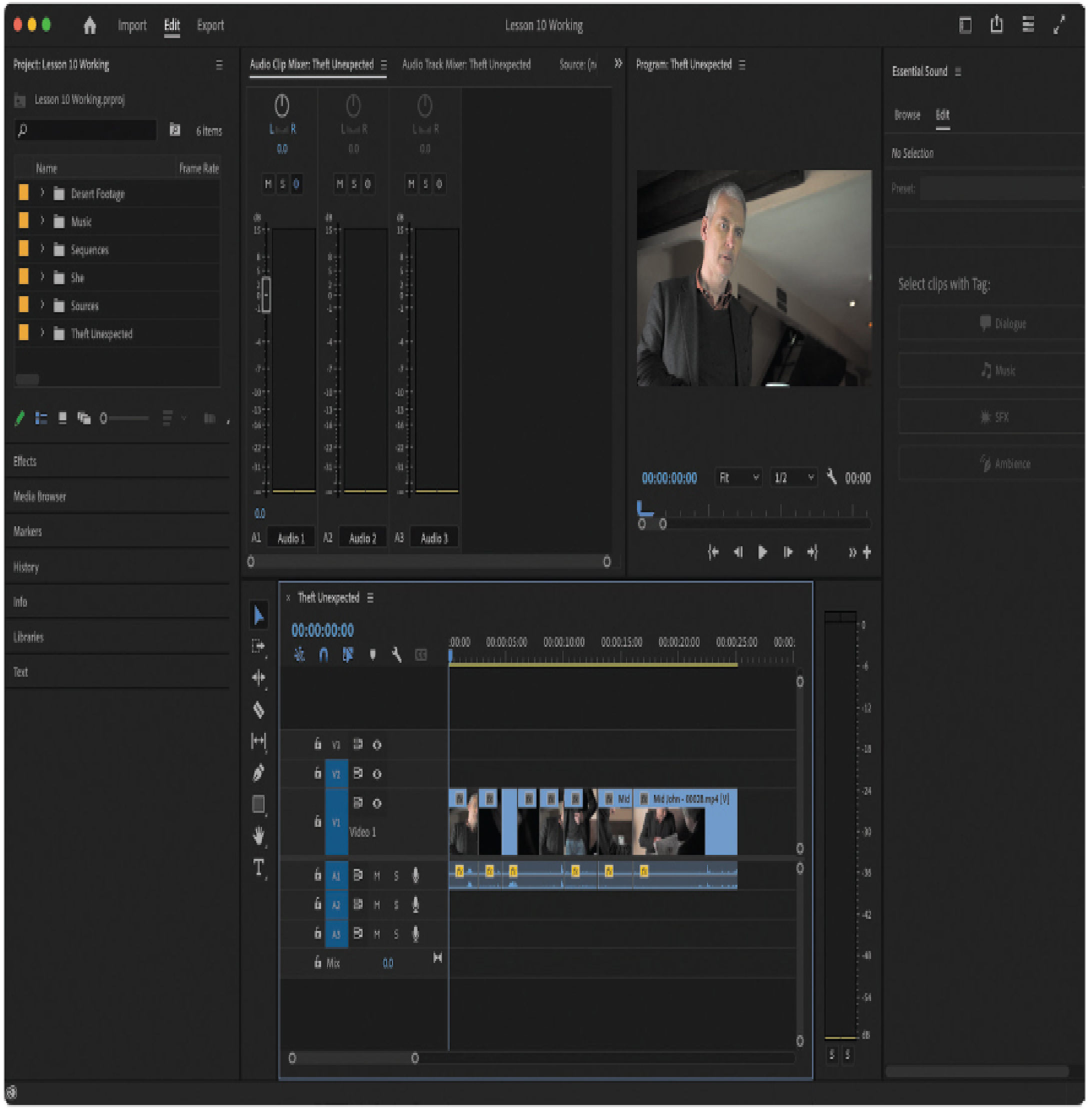
2SHQ /HVVRQ SUSURM LQ WKH /HVVR

1RWH

7R HQVXUH WKDW WKH WRROV IXQFWL GHVFULEHG LQ WKLV OHVVRQ UHVHW KROGLQJ 2SWLRQ LPPHGLDWHO\ DIWHU OD DSSOLFDWLRQ DQG WKHQ FOLFNLQJ & ER[

6DYH WKH /HVVRQ SURMHFW DV /HVVRQ SUSU

)URP WKH :RUNVSDFHV PHQX FKRRVH $XGL :RUNVSDFHV PHQX DQG FKRRVH 5HVHW WR 6DYHG /D\RXW


Import
Edit
Export
Lesson 10 Working
Project: Lesson 10 Working
Lesson 10 Working.prproj
6 items
Name
Frame Rate
Desert Footage
Music
Sequences
She
Sources
Theft Unexpected
Effects
Media Browser
Markers
History
Info
Libraries
Text
Audio Clip Mixer: Theft Unexpected
Audio Track Mixer: Theft Unexpected
Source: (n
Audio 1
Audio 2
Audio 3
Program: Theft Unexpected
00:00:00:00
Fit
1/2
00:00
Essential Sound
Browse
Edit
No Selection
Preset:
Select clips with Tag:
Dialogue
Music
SFX
Ambience
Theft Unexpected
00:00:00:00
Video 1
Mix
0.0

: RUNLQJ LQ WKH $XGLR ZRUNVSDFH

<RXåOO UHFRJQL]H PRVW RI WKH FRPSRQ
(GLWLQJ ZRUNVSDFH \RXåYH EHHQ XVLQJ. 2Q WK
&OLS 0L[HU LV GLVSOD\HG LQ SODFH RI WKH 6RXUFH P
LV VWLOO WKHUH KLGGHQå LQ D JURXS ZLWK WKH

&OLS EDVHG DQG WUDFN EDVHG DXGLR F
RXWSXW 6R LI \RX DGMXVW D FOLS YROXPH DQG WKHQ UHGXFHG 9
DXGLR OHYHO E\ ß G% \RXåOO KDYH D \

<RX FDQ DSSO\ FOLS EDVHG DXGLR RI WKH
(IIHFW &RQWURO V SDQHO ,Q IDFW DGM

0L[HU DSSHDIUHFLWQ &WRKQHW(URUV SDQHO DOF
DGMXVWPHQWV

7UDFN EDVHG DXGLR DGMXVWPHQWUDVFFDQ
RQO\ RU GLULHIFWO\QLHQ SWDKQHHO7

3UHPLHUH 3UR DSSOLHV FOLS EHDFWVHG EDHX
EDVHG DGMXVWHPHQWLQWVS åRUG DHQW WR NHHS
WKH RUGHU LQ ZKLFK DGMXVWPHQWV DU

<RX FDQ PRGLPHL\OWLKQH 7SDQHO WUDFN KHDG
IRU HDFK WUDFN DORQJ ZLWK WUDFN ED
ZKHQ PL[LQJ DXGLR DV LW KHOSV \RX OR
PLJKW ZDQW WR DGMXVW

/HW åWU\ WKLV

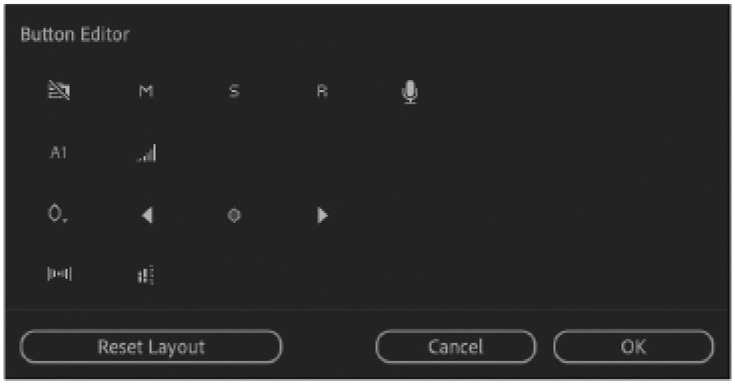
,I LVWQåRW RSHQRSHQ UHWKH\7KHIW 8QH[SH
6HTXHQFHV ELQ

- 1RWH

  <RX ZLOO KDYH QRWLFHGIHWKHQWWEKLLQ
  DQG LDVQRLJHGIHQHDQGWKHUH LV QR RQH
  RJUDQL]H \RXUU\SURIHFWSWLRQV WR IL
  ZRUNV EHVW IRU \RXU HGLWLQJ VW\O

2SHQ WKHOLQH 'LVSOD 🔧 HWQGLFKRLH(

$XGLR +H7DKGHH$UXGLR +HDGHU %XWWRQ
$XGLR WUDFN H[SDQGV WR GLVSOD\

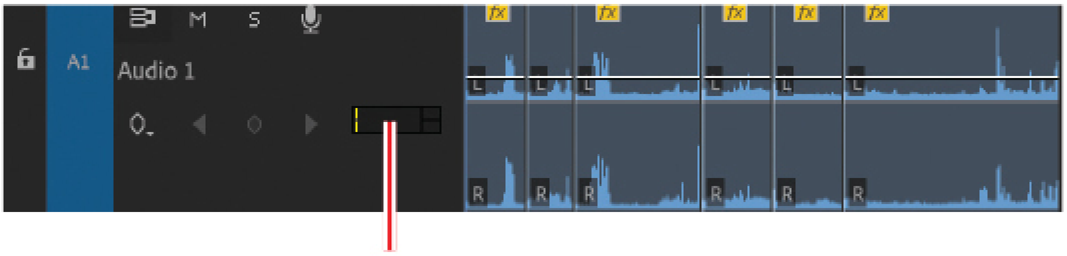


'UDJ WUKDHFN 0H HURQLWFRQWKH $XGLRDQGW
2.

1RWLFH WKDW ZKHQ \RX FOLFNHG 2. W
LWV SUHYLRXV VL]H 5HVL]H WKH $XGL
QHZ PHWHU

&KDQJHV PDGH WR DQ\ WUDFN KHDGHU
DXGLR WUDFN ZLOO KDYH D VPDOO EX
RXW ZKLFK WUDFN LV FRQWULEXWLQJ

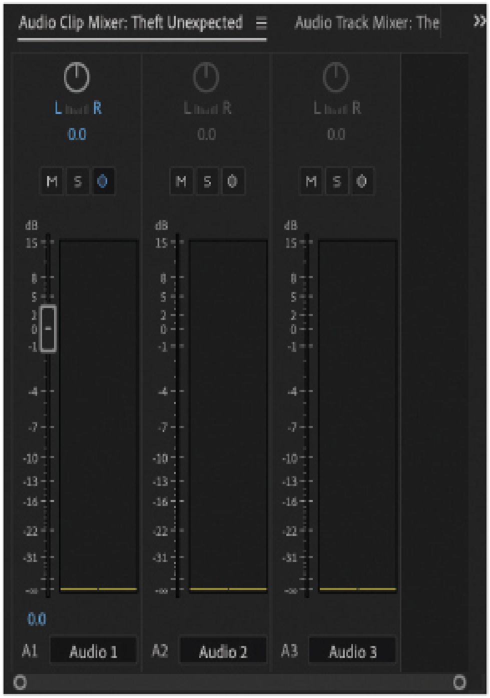
<RX FDQ UHPRYH LWHPV IURP WUDFN K
WKH KHDGHU ZKLOHRWKHKHDGHU HGLWRU FOLFN R
EXWWRQ LQ WKH $XGLR +HDGHU %XWW
KHDGHU FRQILJXUDWLRQ



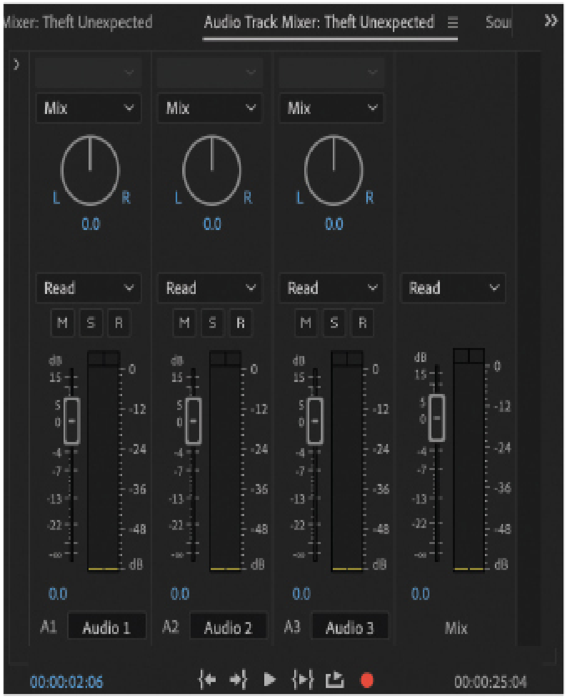
Track Audio Meter

7KHUH DUH WZR DXGLR PL[HUVSDQHOV DWO
GLIIHUHQFHV EHWZHHQ WKH WZR

- $XGLR &OLS 7KLV HUURYLGHV FRQWUROV
  SDQEDODQFH GLVWULEXWH DXGLR EHW
  VHTXHQFH DXGLR PL[RI FOLSV LQ VH
  \RX FDQ PDNH DGMXVWPHQWV DQG 3U
  FOLSV DV WKH SOD\KHDG PRYHV RYHU
- $XGLR 7UDFN 0L[HU 7KLV DGMXVWV DXGLR OHY
  WKDQ FOLSV 7KH FRQWURO WKH $XGLR 0L[HU
  PRUH DGYDQFHG PL[LQJ FRQWURO 6HQGV
  WRS RI WKH SDQHO KDV EHHQ H[SDQG
  YLHZ WKH FRQ &KDSWHU ,PSURYLQJ $XGLR IRU
  LQIRUPDWLRQ DERXW DXGLR PL[LQJ


Audio Clip Mixer: Theft Unexpected
Audio Track Mixer: The
L R
0.0
M S
dB
A1 Audio 1
A2 Audio 2
A3 Audio 3

Audio Clip Mixer


Audio Track Mixer: Theft Unexpected
Mix
L R
0.0
Read
M S R
A1 Audio 1
A2 Audio 2
A3 Audio 3
Mix
00:00:02:06
00:00:25:04

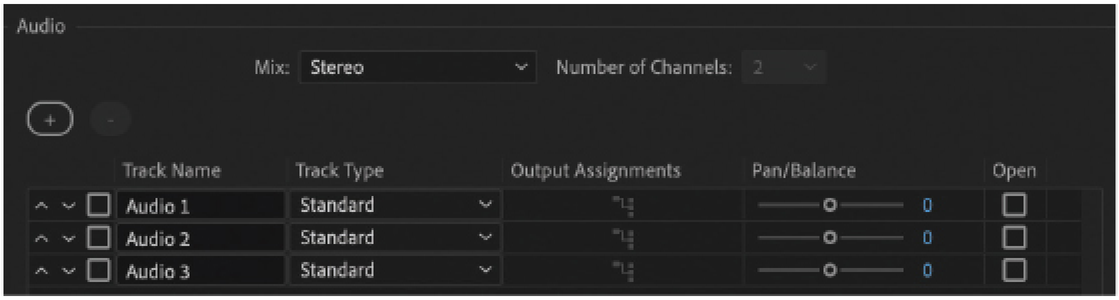
Audio Track Mixer

&RQILJXULQJ WKH DXGLR PL[

6HTXHQFHV KDYH VHWWLQJV WKDW DUH
VHTXHQFHV KDYH D IUDPH UDWH IUDPH

7KH $XGLR 0L[VHWWLQJ GHILQHV WKH Q
ZLOO RXWSXW 7KLV LV D OLWWOH OLNH
ILOH ,Q IDFW LI \RX H[SRUW WKH VHTXH
PDWFK VHTXHQFH VHWWLQJV WKH VHTXH
IRUPDW IRU WKH QHZ ILOH

:KHQ \RX FUHDWH D QHZ VHTXHQFH WKH
RI WKH 1HZ 6HTXHQFH GLDORJ ER[XQGH



Mix: Stereo
Number of Channels: 2

	Track Name	Track Type	Output Assignments	Pan/Balance	Open
☐	Audio 1	Standard		0	☐
☐	Audio 2	Standard		0	☐
☐	Audio 3	Standard		0	☐

- 6WHUHR KDV WZR DXGLR FKDQQHOV /HIW I
  FRPPRQ RSWLRQ IRU GHOLYHUHG FRQ\
- KDV VL[DXGLR FKDQQHOV 0LGG/HIW
  5HDULJKW DQG /RZ)UHTXHQF\(IIHFWV WR
  JHWV SOD\HG WKURXJK WKH VXEZRRIHU
  FDQQRW GHWHFW WKH GLUHFWLRQ VRXQG
  VXEZRRIHUV
- 0XOWLFKDQQHO EHWZHHQ DQG DXGLR
  7KLV RSWLRQ LV PRVW FRPPRQO\ XVHG
  EURDGFDVW WHOHYLVLRQ GRFXPHQW
  SDUWLFXODUO\ ZKHUH PXOWLOLQJXDO
- 0RQR KDV RQH DXGLR FKDQQHO

<RX FDQ FKDQJH PRVW VHTXHQFH VHWWL
VHWWLQJV ZLWK WKH H[FHSWLRQ RI PXOWLFKD
WKH QXPEHU RI FKDQQHOV WKDW \RXU V

<RX FDQ DGG RU UHPRYH DXGLR WUDFNV
\RXU DXGLR PL[VHWWLQJ \RX FDQ FRS\
RQH DXGLR PL[VHWWLQJ JHQHUDWH VHTXHQF

: KDWLVDQ DXGLR FKDQQHO"

,WåFRPPRQ WR WKLQN WKDW /HIW DQG
ZD\ LQWULQVLFDOO\ ,Q IDFW WKH\ DUH
FKDQQHOV GHVLJQDWHG DV /HIW RU 5LJKW
VWDQGDUG FRQILJXUDWLRQ WR KDYH $
&KDQQHO DV 5LJKW

:KDW PDNHV $XGLR &KDQQHO /HIW LV

- ,WåUHFRUGHG IURP D PLFURSKRQH S
- ,WåLQWHUSUHWHG DV /HIW LQ 3UHPL
- ,W RXWSXWV WR D VSHDNHU SRVLWL

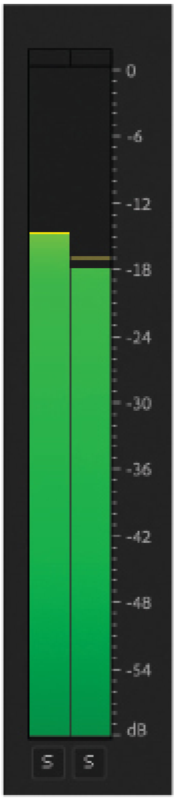
2WKHUZLVH LWåV VLPSOH PRQR DXGLR FKDQ

,I \RX DOVR SHUIRUP WKH VDPH UHFRU
ULJKW EXW ZLWK $XGLR &KDQQHO V
DUH LQ IDFW WZR VHSDUDWH PRQR D[

8VLQJ WKH DXGLR PHWHUV

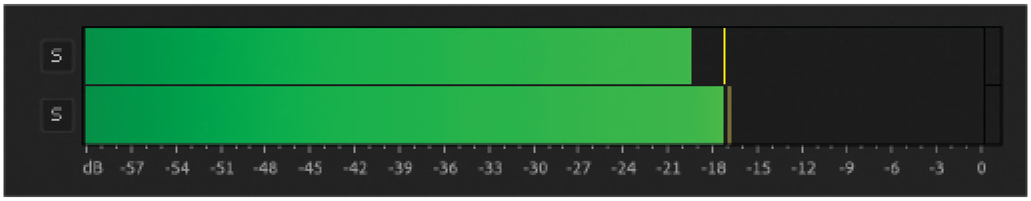
:KHQ SUHYLHZLQJ D FOLS LQ WKH 6RXUF
PHWHUV GLVSOD\ WKH OHYHO IRU HDFK

:KHQ SUHYLHZLQJ D VHTXHQFH WKH DXG
HDFK PL[FKDQQHO 5HJDUGOHVV RI WKH
VHTXHQFH WKH DXGLR PHWHUV ZLOO JL
\RXU VHTXHQFH


0
-6
-12
-18
-24
-30
-36
-42
-48
-54
dB
S
S

,I WKH DXGLR PHWHUV DUH QRW DOUHDG
: LQGRZ PHQX

,I WKH DXGLR PHWH\RX FDQ WRRLQHDWKHZ
PHWHUV ZLGH HQRXJK WKH DXGLR OHYH


S
S
dB
-57
-54
-51
-48
-45
-42
-39
-36
-33
-30
-27
-24
-21
-18
-15
-12
-9
-6
-3
0

7KHUH LV D 6ROR EXWWR7KLV UHOR K VD\RG
KHDU WKH VHOHFWHG FKDQQHO RU PXO
GLVSOD\HG DV VPDOO FLUFOHV GUDJ WK
PHWHUV ZLGHUJHQG6RGL RSEXDW WRDQV

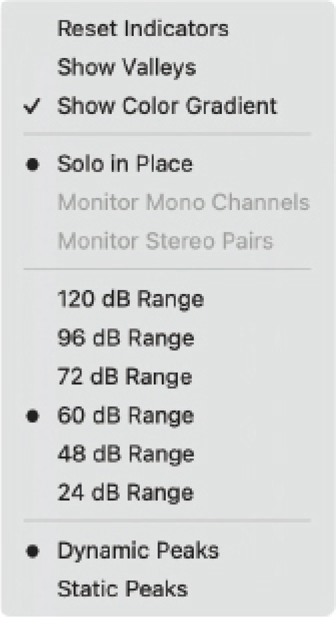
- 1RWH

  7KH 6ROR EXWWRQV GR QRW GLVSOD\ Z
  RSWLRQ

,I \RX ULJKW FOLFN WKH DXGLRIRUPHQWHUGVL
7KH GHIDXOW LV D UDQJH IURP G% WR
LQIRUPDWLRQ DERXW WKH DXGLR OHYHO

<RX FDQ DOVR FKRRVH EHWZHHQ VWDWLI
ORXG èVSLNHé LQ DXGLR OHYHOV WKDW
LV XVXDOO\ JRQH E\ WKH WLPH \RX SHRRY
PDUNHG DQG PDLQWDLQHG LQ WKH PHWH
SOD\HG

<RX FDQ FOLFN WKH DXGLR LPHWHU\QDPLF
SHDN OHYHO ZLOO FRQWLQXDOO\ XSGDW
NHHS ZDWFKLQJ WR FKHFN WKH OHYHOV


Reset Indicators
Show Valleys
✓ Show Color Gradient
● Solo in Place
Monitor Mono Channels
Monitor Stereo Pairs
120 dB Range
96 dB Range
72 dB Range
● 60 dB Range
48 dB Range
24 dB Range
● Dynamic Peaks
Static Peaks

$ERXWDXGLROHYHO

7KH VFDOH GLVSOD\HG RQ WKH DXGLR
7KH VFDOH VKRZQ LV D OLWWOH XQXVX
GHVLJQDWHG DV G% /R [illegible]
QXPEHUV XQWLO WKH\ UHDFK QHJDWLY

,I D UHFRUGHG VRXQG LV WRR TXLHW
QRLVH %DFNJURXQG QRLVH PLJKW EH
FRQGLWLRQLQJ V\VWHP PDNLQJ D KXP
VXFK DV WKH TXLHW KLVV \RX PLJKW K
SOD\LQJ

:KHQ \RX LQFUHDVH WKH RYHUDOO YRO
QRLVH JHWV ORXGHU WRR :KHQ \RX GH
EDFNJURXQG QRL [illegible]
DXGLR DW D KLJKHU OHYHO WKDQ \RX
WKDW WKH DXGLR GLVWRUWV DQG WKH
DW OHDVW UHGXFH WKH EDFNJURXQG

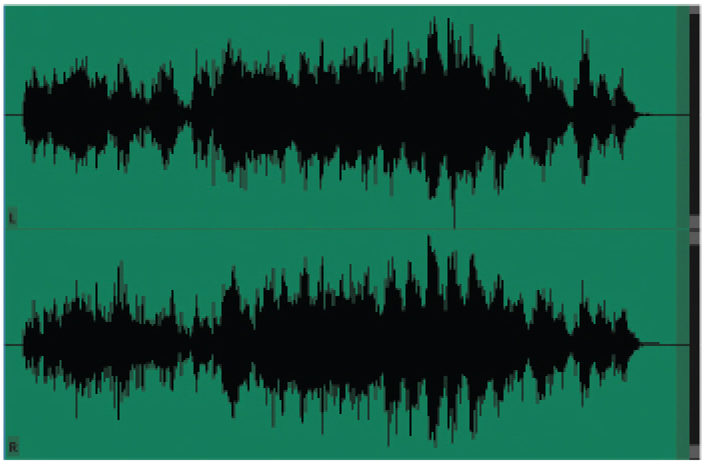
'HSHQGLQJ RQ \RXU DXGLR KDUGZDUH
VLJQDO WR QR [illegible] Q W
WR KHDU WKH VLJQDOW [illegible]
EDFNJURXQG QRLVH 6LJQDO WR QRLV
DQG LV DOVR PHDVXUHG LQ G%

9LHZLQJVDPSOHV

7K [illegible] XPEHU RI WLPHV S
VRXQG VRXUFHVL [illegible] ,Q [illegible] IHVVLR
D VDPSOH WLPHV SHU VHFRQG

/H [illegible] ORRN DW DQ LQGLYLGXDO DXGLR VD

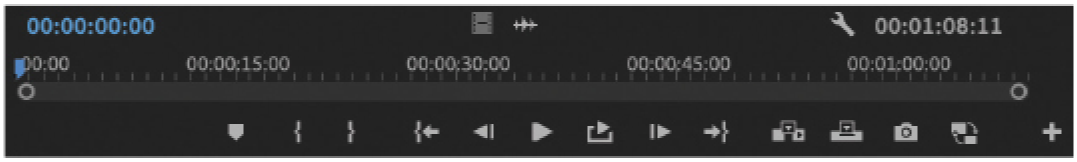
,Q WKH 3URMHFW SDQHO RSHQ WKH 0
*UDFH [illegible] 3DWULFN &DQQHOO PS
0RQLWRU



%HFDXVH WKLV FOLS KDV QR YLGHR 3
ZDYHIRUPV IRU WKH WZR DXGLR FKDQ

$W WKH ERWWRP RI WKH 6ZLWFK 0RQLWRU
UHSUHVHQWV WKH WRWDO GXUDWLRQ

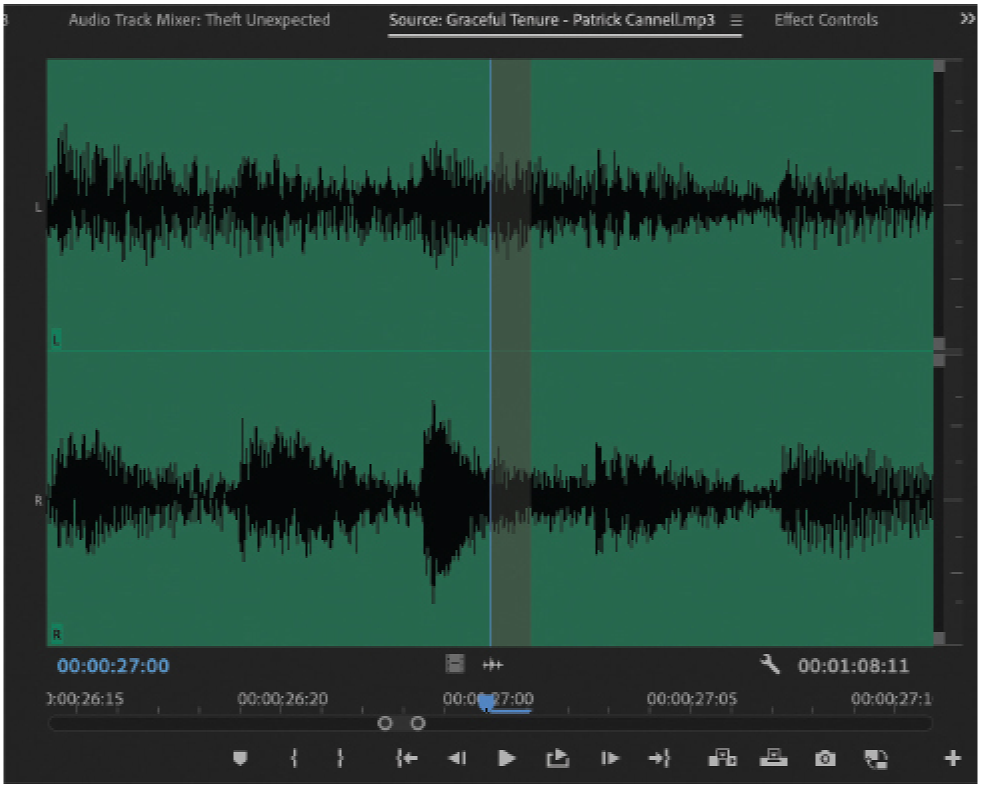
2SHQ WKH 6RXUFH 0R WRU 6HWWLQJV
1XPEHUV 7KH WLPH UXOHU QRZ VKRZV


00:00:00:00
00:01:08:11
00:00
00:00:15:00
00:00:30:00
00:00:45:00
00:01:00:00

- 1RWH

  <RX PD\ KDYH QRWLFHG WKDW VRPHW
  WKH QXPEHUV ZLWK FRORQV DQG DW
  6HPLFRORQV LQGLFDWH 176& YLGHR
  YLGHR

7U\ ]RRPLQJ LQ WR WKH WLPH UXOHU
WLPH UXOHU GUDJ WKH KDQGOHV DOO
VKRZV \RX DQ LQGLYLGXDO IUDPHàLOO
SOD\KHDG


Audio Track Mixer: Theft Unexpected
Source: Graceful Tenure - Patrick Cannell.mp3
Effect Controls
L
R
00:00:27:00
00:01:08:11
):00:26:15
00:00:26:20
00:00:27:00
00:00:27:05
00:00:27:1

2SHQ WKH 6RXUFH 0RQLWRU 6HWWLQJ
$XGLR 7LPH 8QLWV

7KLV WLPH \RX·OO VHH LQGLYLGXDO
UXOHU \RX FDQ]RRP LQ WR DQ LQGLYLGXD
WK RI D VHFRQG WKH VDPSOH UD

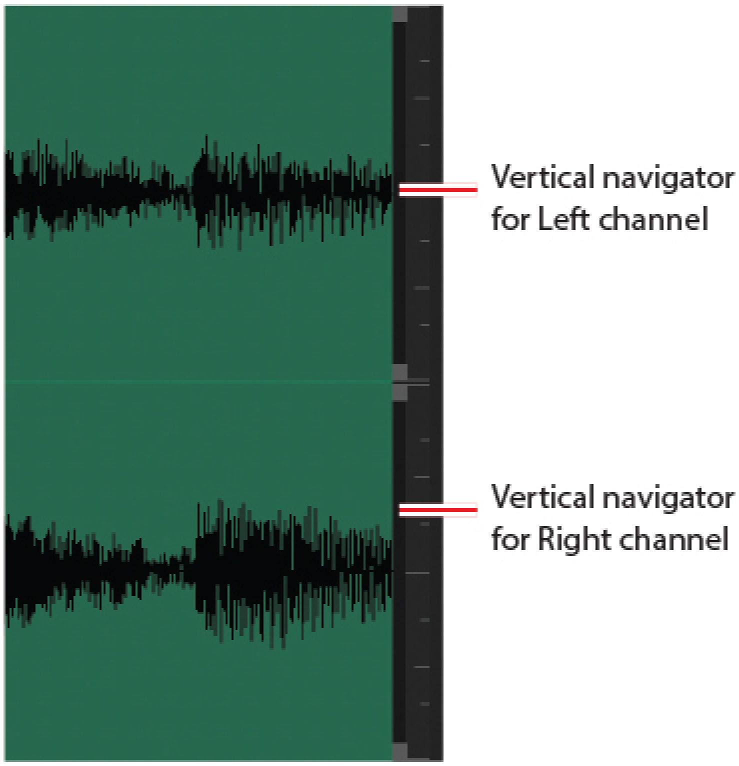
7KH 7LPHOLQH SDQHO KDV WKH VDPH RS
SDQHO PHQX UDWKHU WKDQ WKH 6HWWLQJV PH

)RU QRZ VHW WKH 6RXUFH 0RQLWRU 6HWW
7LPH 5XOHU 1XPEHUV DQG 6KRZ $XGLR

6KRZLQJ DXGLR ZDYHIRUPV

:KHQ \RX YLHZ D ZDYHIRUP LQ \RXU 6HTXHQ
QDYLJDWRU]RRP FRQWURO IRU HDFK FK
7KHVH FRQWUROV ZRUN LQ D ZD\ WKDW·V
WKH ERWWRP RI WKH SDQHO XVH WKH YHUWL
ZDYHIRUPV RU VKRZ PRUH GHWDLO SDUWLFXODUO
TXLHW DXGLR

<RX FDQ FKRRVH WR GLVSOD\ DXGLR ZDY
FKRRVLQJ $XGLR: IURP WKH 6RXUFH 0R


Vertical navigator for Left channel
Vertical navigator for Right channel

,I D FOLS KDV YLGHR DV ZHOO DV DXGLR
6RXUFH 0RQLWRU RX EF DQ HTX D OO\<VZLWFK
ZDYHIRUP E\ FOLFNLQJ WKH UDJ $XGLR

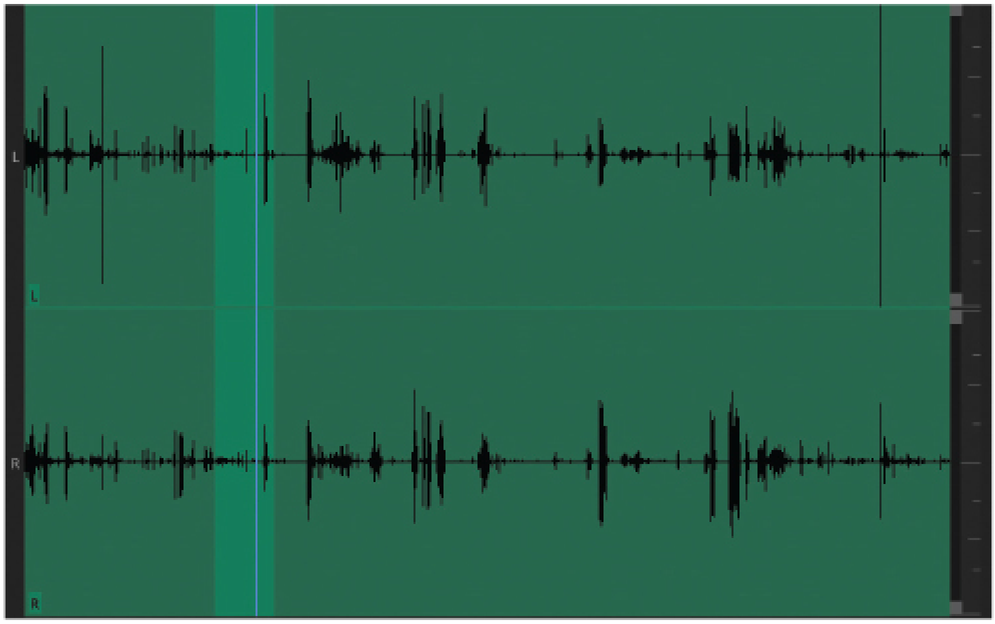
/HW¶V ORRN DW VRPH ZDYHIRUPV

,Q WKH 7KHIW 8QH[SHFWHG ELQ GRXE
LQ WKH 6RXUFH 0RQLWRU

- **1RWH**

  9LHZLQJ DQ DXGLR ZDYHIRUP LV KHO
  VSHFLILF GLDORJXH DQG \RX DUH QR
  SRUWLRQ RI WKH IRRWDJH

2SHQ WKH 6RXUFH 0RQLWRU 6HWWLQJV



<RX FDQ HDVLO\ VHH ZKHUH WKH GLDO
FOLS,Q DQG 2XW SRLQWV DUH VKRZQ D
ZDYHIRUP

1RWLFH DOVR \RX FDQ FOLFN WKH ZD
SOD\KHDG

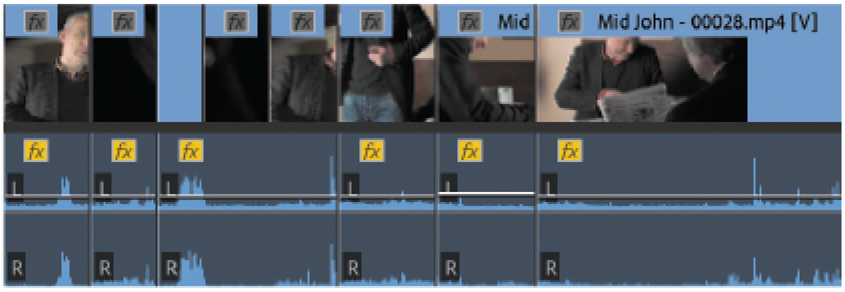
6ZLWFK EDFN WR YLHZLQJ WKH FRPSRV
6HWWLQJV PHQX

<RX FDQ DOVR WXUQ RII WKH GLVSOD\ RI Z
VHJPHQWV LQ WKH 7

7KH VHTXHQFH 7KHIW 8QH[SHFWHG VK
7LPHOLQH SDQHO ,I QRW RSHQ LW IU

2SHQ WKH 7LPHOLQH 'LVSOD\ 6HWWLQJV PH
$XGLR :DYHIRUP RSWLRQ LV HQDEOHG

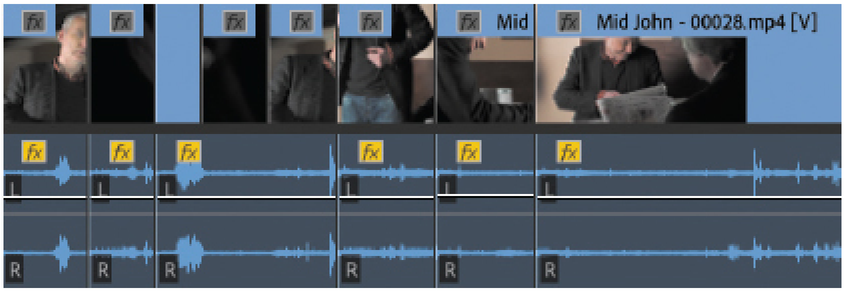
,I QHFHVVDU\ UHVL]H WKH $XGLR WUDFN W
IXOO\ YLVLEOH 1RWLFH WKDW WZR DX
DXGLR FOLS LQ WKLV VHTXHQFH 7KH



7KH DXGLR ZDYHIRUPV RQ WKH OHIW FOLS ZDYHIRUPV LQ WKH 6RXUFH 0RQLWRU 7LPHOLQH SDQHO GLVSOD\ ZDYHIRUPV W D KLJKO\ GHWDLOHG EDU JUDSK 7KLV VHH ORZHU YROXPH DXGLR OLNH WKH GLDO

2SHQ WKH 7LPHOLQH SDQHO PHQX ☰ 6HWWLQJ 5HFWLILHG $XGLR :DYHIRUPV WR GHVHOHFW LW

7KLV VZLWFKHV WKH 7LPHOLQH SDQHO ZDYHIRUPV 6RXUFH 0RQLWRU



7KH UHJXODU ZDYHIRUP GLVSOD\ ZRUN WKH TXLHWHU SDUWV RI WKH VRXQG HFKR

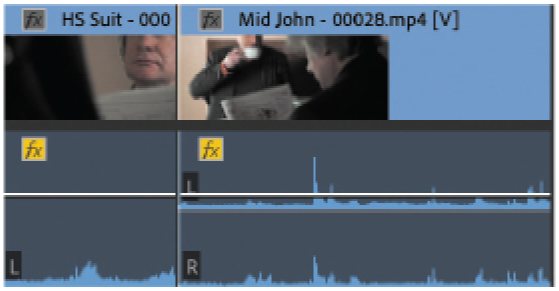
2SHQ WKH 7LPHOLQH SDQHO PHQX DQG UHV :DYHIRUPV RSWLRQ

: RUNLQJ ZLWK VWDQGDUG DXGLR WUDFNV

,Q D VHTXHQFH WKH VWDQGDUG DXGLR DXGLR FOLSV DQG VWHUHR DXGLR FOLSV FRQWDLQ WKH $XGLR &OLS 0L[HU DQG WKH $XGLR 7UDFN 0L[HU ZRUN ZL PHGLD

,I \RXåUH ZRUNLQJ ZLWK D FRPELQDWLR
LW PRUH FRQYHQLHQW WR XVH WKH VWD

6WDQGDUG WUDFNV VXSSRUW ERWK PRQ
GLVSOD\LQJ RQH RU WZR ZDYHIRUPV GH



0 RQLWRULQJ DXGLR

<RX FDQ FKRRVH ZKLFK VHTXHQFH DXGL

/HWåWU\ WKLV ZLWK D VHTXHQFH

2SHQ WKH 'HVHUW 0RQWDJH VHTXHQF

3OD\ WKH VHTXHQFH DQG ZKLOH \RX
EXWWRQV DW WKH ERWWRP RI WKH DX
7LPHOLQH SDQHO

:KHQ \RX VHOHFW D 6ROR EXWWRQ \RXå
FDQ VROR PXOWLSOH FKDQQHOV WR KHD
H[DPSOH LW ZRXOG PXåFK DV \RX KDYH RQ
EHWZHHQ

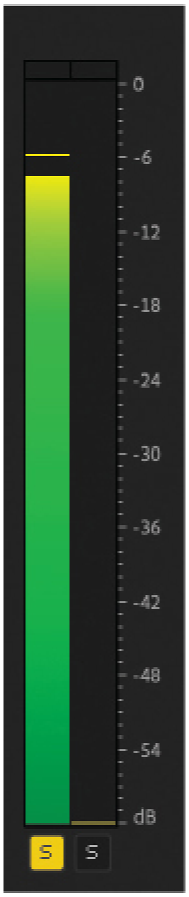
6ROLQJ LV XVHIXO LI \RXåUH ZRUNLQJ
GLIIHUHQW PLFURSKRQHVHULHV RI DXGLR FR
FRPPRQ ZLWK SURIHVVLRQDOO\ UHFRUGH

1RWH

7KH DXGLR PHWHUV LQGLFDWH OHYHOV
LQ WKH 6RXUFH 0RQLWRU RU PL[FKDQ
7LPHOLQHRSWLRQHOO7HYHOV IRU LQGLYLGX
$XGLR &OLS 0L[HUDFRU0$XGLR 7

7KH QXPEHU RI FKDQQHOV DQG DVVRFLD
SUHYLHZLQJ D VHTXHQFH GHSHQGV RQ \
VHWWLQJ

<RX FDQ DOVR XVH WKH VPD M ORU W 6RFN S KE
IRU VSHFLILF DXGLLPRH OWLUQDH FNSV D QLHQ OWKH 7



([DPLQLQJ DXGLR FKDUDFWHULVWLFV

:KHQ \RX RSHQ D FOLS LQ WKH 6RXUFH 0
\RXåUH VHHLQJ HDFK FKDQQHO GLVSOD\
WKH DXGLR IRU WKDW FKDQQHO ZLOO EH
VKRZLQJ WKH VWUHQJWK RI WKH DLU SU

7KUHH IDFWRUV DIIHFW WKH ZD\ DXGLR VRXQGV WR
WHUPV RI D WHOHYLVLRQ VSHDNHU

-)UHTXHQF\ 7KLV UHIHUV WR KRZ IDVW WKH DQG RXW WR FUHDWH KLJK DQG ORZ D WKH VXUIDFH RI WKH VSHDNHU EHDWV IUHTXHQF\ PHDVXUHG DV +HUW] +] +XPDQ DSSUR[LPDWHO\ +] WR +] .+] DJH DIIHFW WKH IUHTXHQF\ UDQJH 7KH KLJKHU WKH WKH KLJKHU WKH SHUFHLYHG SLWFK R
- $PSOLWXGH 7KLV LV KRZ IDU WKH VSHDNHU PRYHPHQW WKH ORXGHU WKH VRXQG . DLU SUHVVXUH ZDYHJ\ FWDRU UURLXQJHPDRUMVH
- 3KDVH 7KLV LV WKH SUHFLVH WLPLQJ ZL PRYHV RXW DQG LQ ,I WZR VSHDNHUV WKH\ DUH FRQVLGHUHG èLQ SKDVH é , èRXW RI SKDVH é DQG WKLV FDQ SURG UHSURGXFWLRQ 2QH VSHDNHU FDQ UH PRPHQW WKH RWKHU VSHDNHU LV DWW \RX PD\ QRW KHDU SDUWV RI WKH VRX

:KDW DUH DXGLR FKDUDFWHULVWLFV"

:KHQ WKH VXUIDFH RI D VSHDNHU PRYH
SUHVVXUH ZDYH WKDW PRYHV WKURXJK
PXFK WKH ZD\ WKDW VXUIDFH ULSSOHV

$V WKH SUHVVXUH ZDYH KLWV \RXU HD
GUXPV PRYH DQG WKDW PRYHPHQW LV
SDVVHG WR \RXU EUDLQ DQG LQWHUSUH
H[WUDRUGLQDU\ SUHFLVLRQ DQG EHFD
GRHV DQ LPSUHVVLYH MRE RI EDODQFL
WR SURGXFH DQ RYHUDOO VHQVH RI ZK

0XFK RI WKH ZD\ \RX KHDU LV DFWLYH
FRQVWDQWO\ ILOWHULQJ RXW VRXQGV
SDWWHUQV VR \RX FDQ IRFXV \RXU DWW
DV VSHHFK)RU H[DPSOH \RX KDYH SU
EHLQJ DW D SDUW\ ZKHUH WKH JHQHUD
D ZDOO RI QRLVH XQWLO VRPHRQH DFU
<RX SHUKDSV UHDOL]Hå \RXU EUDLQ ZDV F
WKH ZKROH WLPH EHFDXVH \RX ZHUH F
SHUVRQ VWDQGLQJ QH[W WR \RX

7KHUHåV D ERG\ RI UHVHDUFK RQ WKLV VXE
WLWOHG SV\FKRDFRXVWLFV)RU H[HUFLVHV ZH
PHFKDQLFV RI VRXQG PRUH WKDQ JRLQJ LQWR WK
IDVFLQDWLQJ VXEMHFW ZRUWK\ RI IXUV

5HFRUGLQJ HTXLSPHQW PDNHV QR VXFK
SDUW RI WKHLU MRE ,WåV LPSRUWDQW WR OLV
KHDGSKRQHV ZKHQ \RXåUH UHFRUGLQJ
FDSWXUH WKH EHVW VRXQG SRVVLEOH
ORFDWLRQ VRXQG ZLWK QR EDFNJURXQ
VRXQG LV DGGHG VHSDUDWHO\ LQ SRV
OHYHO WR DGG DWPRVSKHUH WR WKH V
GLDORJXH

7KH PRYHPHQW RI WKH VXUIDFH RI D VS
VLPSOH H[DPSOH RI WKH ZD\ VRXQG LV J
UXOHV DSSO\ WR DOO VRXQG VRXUFHV I

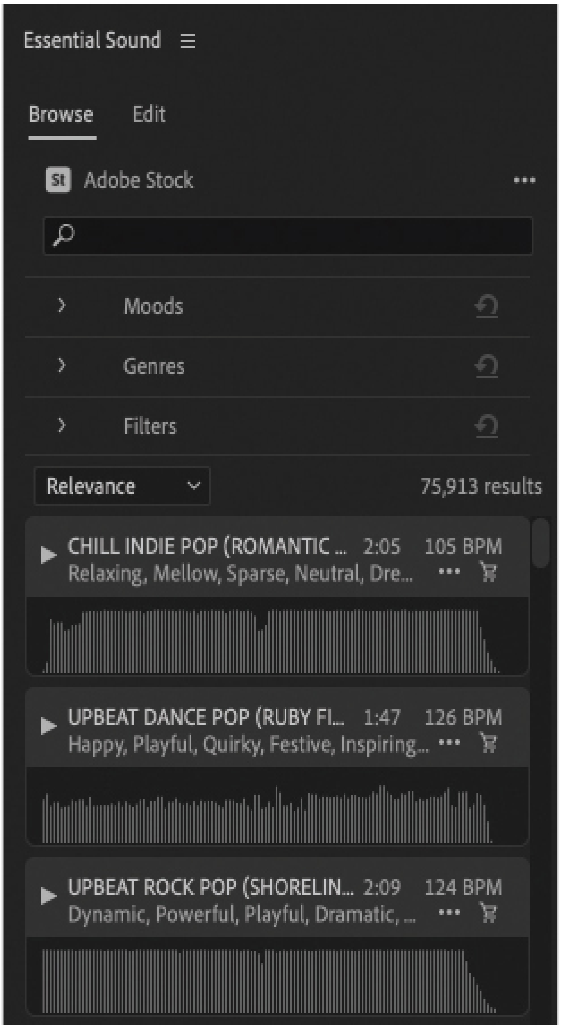
$GGLQJ $GREH 6WRFN $XGLR

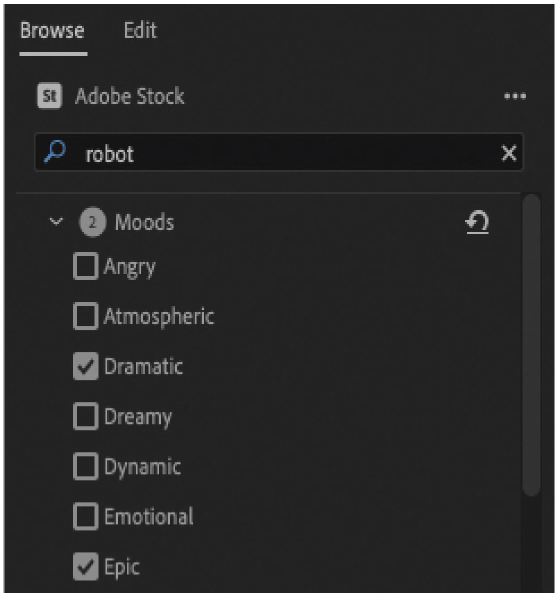
$V ZHOO DV LPSRUWLQJ PXVLF ILOHV WR EURZVH DQG LPSRUW PXVLF IURP $GREH 6RXQG SDQHO

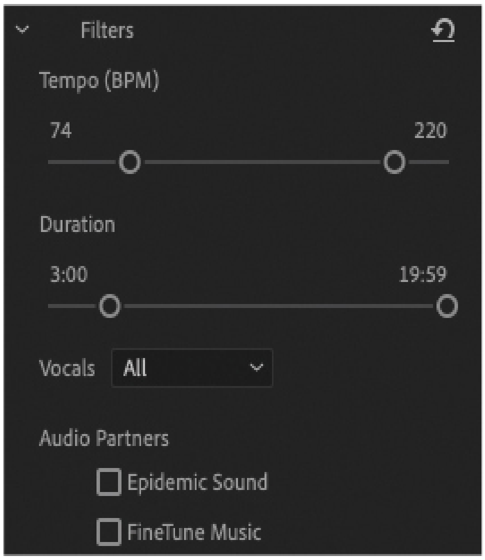
7KH %URZVH WDE RI WKH (VVHQWLDO 6R FOLSV UHDG\ WR VHDUFK EURZVH DQG

7KH 6HDUFK ER[DW WKH WRS DOORZV \R RU PHWDGDWD WR OLPLW VHDUFK UHVXOWV \R XQGHU WKH 0RRGV *HQUHV DQG)LOWHU

7KH)LOWHUV KHDGLQJ HYHQ DOORZV \R GXUDWLRQV 7KHUH DUH DGGLWLRQDO S


Essential Sound
Browse
Edit
Adobe Stock
Moods
Genres
Filters
Relevance
75,913 results
CHILL INDIE POP (ROMANTIC ... 2:05 105 BPM
Relaxing, Mellow, Sparse, Neutral, Dre...
UPBEAT DANCE POP (RUBY FI... 1:47 126 BPM
Happy, Playful, Quirky, Festive, Inspiring...
UPBEAT ROCK POP (SHORELIN... 2:09 124 BPM
Dynamic, Powerful, Playful, Dramatic, ...


Browse
Edit
Adobe Stock
robot
2 Moods
☐ Angry
☐ Atmospheric
☑ Dramatic
☐ Dreamy
☐ Dynamic
☐ Emotional
☑ Epic


Filters
Tempo (BPM)
74
220
Duration
3:00
19:59
Vocals
All
Audio Partners
☐ Epidemic Sound
☐ FineTune Music

/HWVå DGG D SUHYLHZ RI D VWRFN DXGLR F

2SHQ WKH 'URQH)OLJKW VHTXHQFH LQ
VHTXHQFH ZLWK 3RVLWLRQ WKH SOD\KH
WKH VHTXHQFH

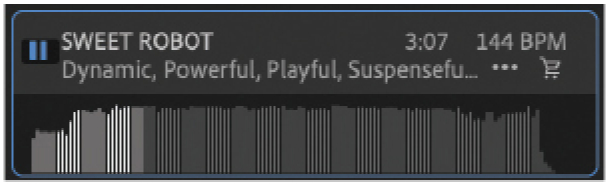
,I WKH (VVHQWLDO 6RXQG SDQHO LV G
FOLFN %URZVH DW WKH WRS RI WKH S

$W WKH ERWWRP RI WKH (VVHQWLDO 6
6\QF RSWLRQ LV VHOHFWHG

Timeline sync

: LWK 7LPHOLQH 6\QF HQDEOHG \RXU VHT
ZKHQ \RX SOD\ D VWRFN DXGLR FOLS L
PXVLF ZLOO EH FRPELQHG ZLWK \RXU
\RX FDQ SUHYLHZ PXOWLSOH PXVLF RS
VHTXHQFH

,Q WKH (VVHQWLDO 6RXQG SDQHO FOL
FOLS WR SUHYLHZ LW IRU \RXU VHTXH
RWKHU VWRFN DXGLR RSWLRQV


SWEET ROBOT 3:07 144 BPM
Dynamic, Powerful, Playful, Suspensefu...

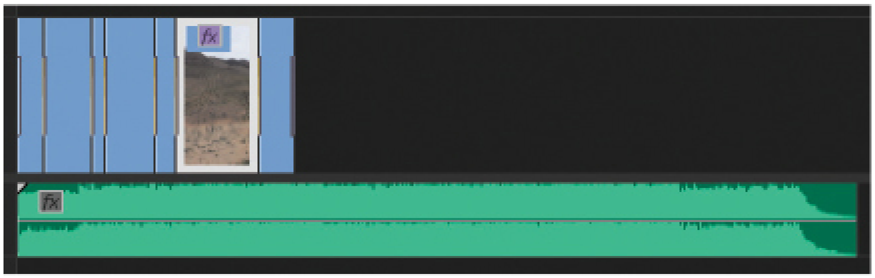
7LS

<RX FDQ FOLFN DQ\ZKHUH ZLWKLQ D
SUHYLHZ WR MXPS WR DQRWKHU 7LPHOLQH
HQDEOHG \RXU SOD\KHDG ZLOO DOVR

,I \RX DGG DQ ,Q SRLQW WR \RXU VHTX
SUHYLHZ SOD\EDFN ZLOO EHJLQ DW WKDW
DOWHUQDWLYH VWRFN DXGLR FOLS S

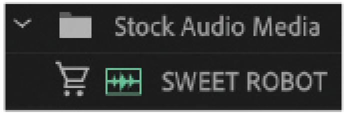
7KLV PDNHV LW HDVLHU WR FRPSDUH RSWLRQV

'UDJ RQH RI WKH VWRFN DXGLR FOLSV
WKH VHTXHQFH 3ODFH WKH FOLS DW \
FDUHIXO WR GUDJ XVLQJ WKH QDPH RI



7KH FOLS DOVR DXWRPDWLFDOO\ DSSH
WKH 3URMHFW SDQHO

3UHYLHZ \RXU VHTXHQFH



7KH DXGLR FOLSV \RX DGG WR VHTXHQ
DUH SUHYLHZ TXDROXLWFDOE\OGLHFHDQXVHWIX<O
FOLFNLQJ WKH FLHQWKHEX(WWRQWLDO
WR WKH FOLS LQ WKH 3URMHFW SDQH(

$GREH 6WRFNIHU $XGLR RI[WHQVLYH FDWDOR
PRUH LQIRUPDWLRQ DERXW VWRFNHDGREH

$GMXVWLQJ DXGLR YROXPH

7KHUH DUH VHYHUDO ZD\V WR DGMXVW W
QRQGHVWUXFWLYH &WKDQJHV \RX PDNH
\RX FDQ H[SHULPHQW IUHHO\ DQG DOZD\

$GMXVWLQJ DXGLR LQ WKH (IIHFW &RQWUROV SDQHO

(DUOLHU \RX XVHG WKH (IIHFW &RQWUROV SDQHO WR
DQG SRVLWLRQ RI FOLSV FDQ DOVR XVH WKH &RQWURO
SDQHO WR DGMXVW YROXPH

2SHQ WKH ([FXVH 0H VHTXHQFH IURP W

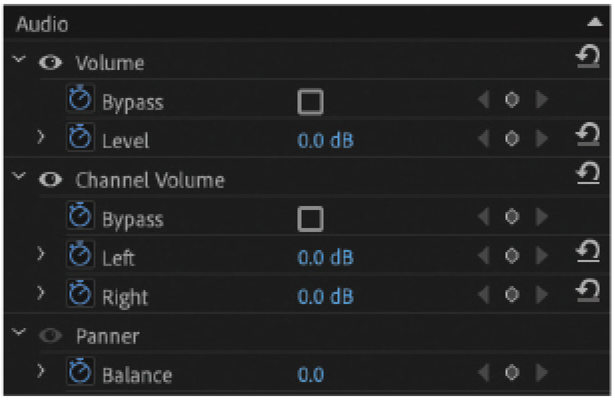
7KLV LV D VLPSOH VHTXHQFH ZLWK WZ
YLVLEOH VFUROOLQJ WKH SDQHO LQ V
LW WKH VDPH FOLS DGGHG WR WKH VH
LQWHUSUHWHG DV VWHUHR DQG WKH
VHSDUDWH PRQR FKDQQHOV)RU /HVVR
è2UJDQL]LQJ 0HGLD

&OLFN WKH ILUVW FOLS WR VHOHFW LW LQ WKH (IIHFW &RQWUROV

,Q WKH (IIHFW &RQWUROV SDQHO H[SDQG WKH
3DQQHU FRQWUROV

(DFK FRQWURO JLYHV DSSURSULDWH R
VHOHFWHG

- 9ROXPH DGMXVWV WKH FRPELQHG YROXP
  VHOHFWHG FOLS
- &KDQQHO 9ROXPH DOORZV \RX WR DGMXVW WK
  FKDQQHOV LQ WKH VHOHFWHG FOLS
- 3DQQHU JLYHV \RX RYHUDOO VWHUHR OH
  WKH VHOHFWHG FOLS


Audio
Volume
Bypass
Level
0.0 dB
Channel Volume
Bypass
Left
0.0 dB
Right
0.0 dB
Panner
Balance
0.0

7KH NH\IUDPH WRJJOH VWRSZDWFK LFR
IRU DOO WKH DXGLR FRQWURO V VR HY

+RZHYHU \RX DGG MXVW RQH NH\IUDPH
DQ DGMXVWPHQW WKH DGMXVWPHQW

3RVLWLRQ WKH 7 SOD\KHDG VRPHZKHU
\RX ZRXOG OLNH WR DGG D NH\IUDPH
ZKHUH \RX FKRRVH LI \RX LQWHQG WR

&OLFN LQ WKH 7LPHOLQH 'LVSOD 🔧 HWWLQJV PDNH V

$XGLR .H\IUDPHV LV VHOHFWHG

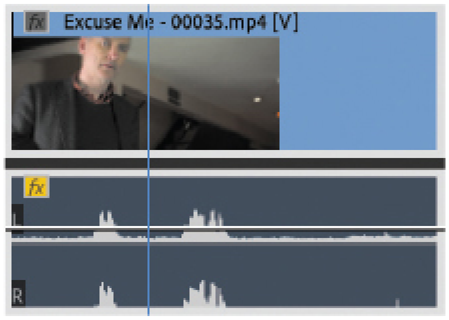
,QFUHDVH WKH KHLJKW RI WKH $XGLR D
VR \RX FDQ VHH WKH FOLS DXGLR ZDY
IRU DGGLQJ NH\IUDPHV UXEEHU EDQGHU

● 1RWH

7KH UXEEHU EDQG XVHV WKH HQWLU
WKH YROXPH

In the Effect Controls panel, scrub l

that sets the volume


Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
fx
L
R

Set it to around – dB.

▶ **Tip**

For fine control when scrubbing

Command (macOS [illegible] Ctrl (W

Premiere Pro adds a visible keyframe to the

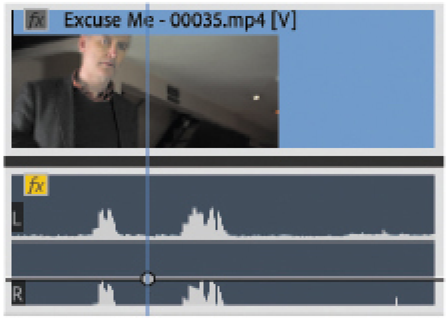
panel timeline and on the [illegible]

The rubber band [illegible]

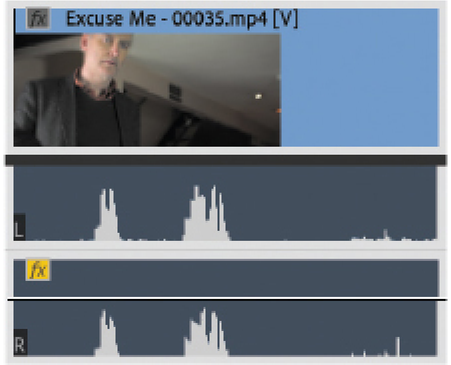
indicating the reduced volume [illegible]

become more familiar with the Pre

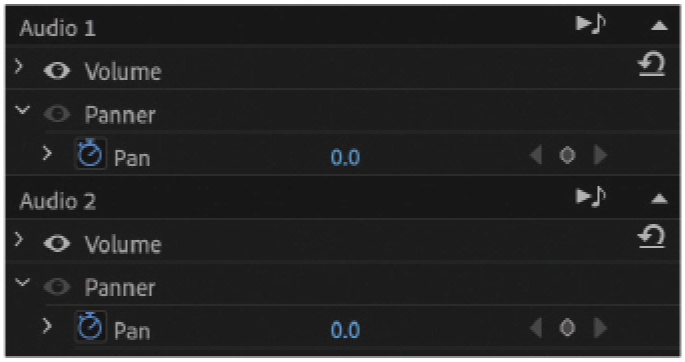
more clearly.


Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
fx
L
R

Now select the second version of



<RXåOO QRWLFH WKHUH DUH VLPEOD&UR
SDQHO EXW QRZ WKRHOUXHPHLVRSQWRL&RKQD Q7QK
HDFK DXGLR FKDQQHO LV LWRYXRPZH FROQ
HDFK FKDQQHO LV DOUHDG\ DQ LQGLY


Audio 1
Volume
Panner
Pan 0.0
Audio 2
Volume
Panner
Pan 0.0

7KH %DODQFH FRQWURO KDV QRZ EHFR
SXUSRVH EXW LV VXLWHG WR PRQR DX
EDODQFH ZLWK RWKHU DXGLR FKDQQH

([SHULPHQW ZLWK DGMXVWLQJ WKH YR
DQG OLVWHQ WR WKH UHVXOWV

7KH GLIIHUHQFH EHWZHHQ 3DQ DQG %DODQFH

0RQR DQG VWHUHR DXGLR FOLSV KDYH OHYHO IRU HDFK RXWSXW ZKHQ SURGXI VHTXHQFH

- 0RQR DXGLR FOLSV KDYH D 3DQ FRQV DOORZV \RX WR GLVWULEXWH WKH VL RU ULJKW VLGH RI WKH PL[
- 6WHUHR DXGLR FOLSV KDYH D %DODQ UHODWLYH OHYHOV RI WKH OHIW DQ

7KH FRQWUROV GLVSOD\HG YDU\ GHSHQ VHWWLQJ DQG WKH DXGLR FRQILJXUDW

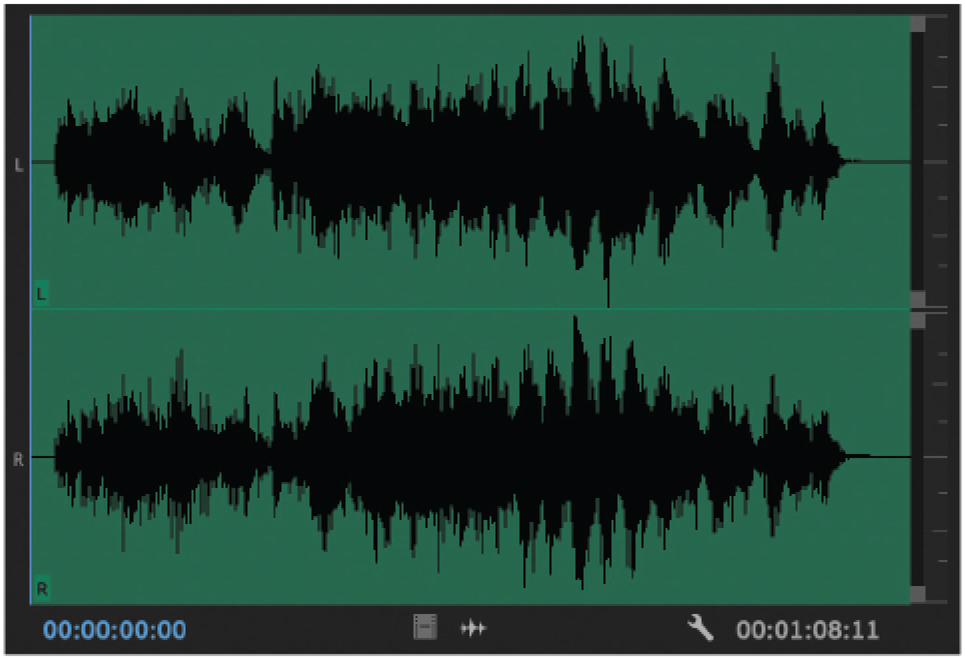
$GMXVWLQJ DXGLR JDLQ

0RVW PXVLF LV XVXDOO\ FUHDWHG ZLWK PD[LPL]H WKH GLIIHUHQFH EHWZHHQ WKH VLJQDO LV JHQHUDOO\ PXFK WRR ORXG WR XVH L WKLV LVVXH LV WR DGG DXGLR JDLQ WKH FOLSå

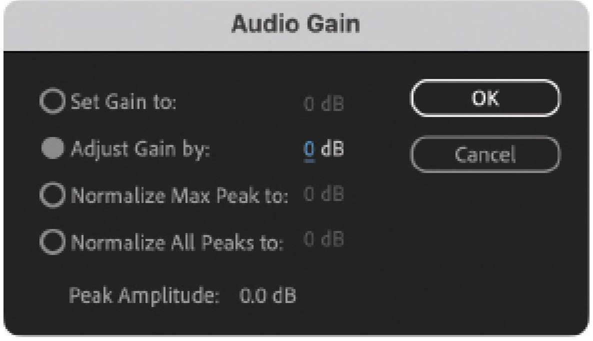
7KH IROORZLQJ PHWKRG ZRUNV LQ D VLP LQ WKH SUHYLRXV H[HUFLVH EXW LV DSS SDUWV RI WKH FOLS \RX XVH LQ DQ\ VHT DGMXVWPHQW

<RX FDQ DSSO\ DXGLR JDLQ DGMXVWPHQ LQ WKH 3URMHFW SDQHO DQG LQ WKH 7

)URP WKH 0XVLF ELQ GRXEOH FOLFN 3V &DQQHOO PS WR RSHQ LW LQ WKH 6RX WKH]RRP OHYHO RQ WKH 6RXUFH 0RQ



5LJKW FOLFN WKH FOLS LQ WKH 3URMH
VHOHFW WKH FOLS DQG SUHVV * 7KH
WZR LPSRUWDQW RSWLRQV



○ Set Gain to: 0 dB
● Adjust Gain by: 0 dB
○ Normalize Max Peak to: 0 dB
○ Normalize All Peaks to: 0 dB
Peak Amplitude: 0.0 dB

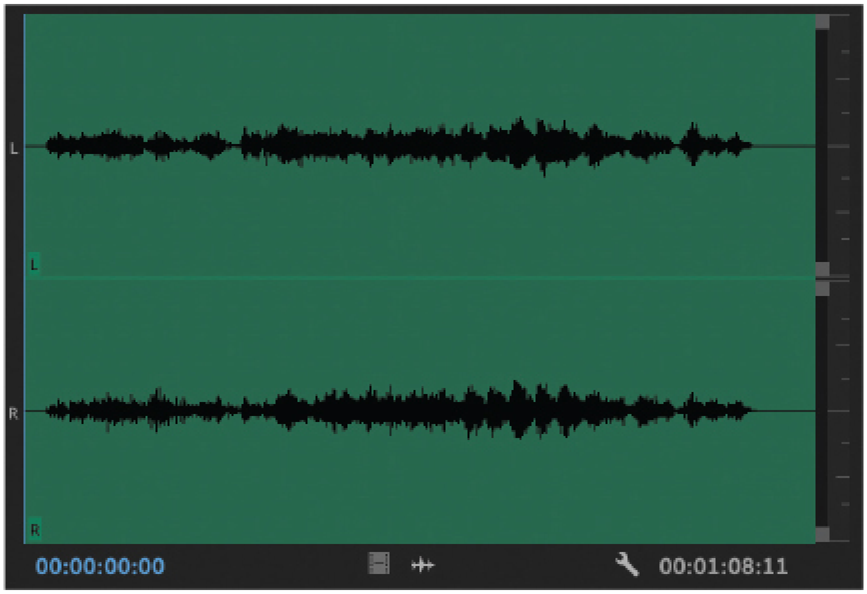
- 6HW *DLQ WR 8VH WKLV RSWLRQ WR VSHFLI \RXU FOLS
- $GMXVW *DLQ E\ 8VH WKLV RSWLRQ WR VSHF DGMXVWPHQW IRU \RXU FOLS

)RU H[DPSOH LI \RX VHW $GMXVW *DL
6HW *DLQ WR VHWWLQJ WR ß G% ZKHQ \RX F
GLDORJ ER[D VHFRQG WLPH DQG DSSH
*DLQ 7R VHWWLQJ ZLOO FKDQJH WR ß G%

- 1RWH

  1RQH RI WKH FKDQJHV \RX PDNH WR
  ZLOO FKDQJH WKH RULJLQDO PHGLD F
  RYHUDOO JDLQ KHUH LQ WKH SDQHO
  WR DQ\ FKDQJHV \RX PDNH & RQWURO
  RULJLQDO PHGLD ILOHV ZLOO UHPDL

6HOHFW WKH 6SHFWUDO ,QVSHFWRU GDQL
5LJKW DWWDFK ZDYHIRUP XSGDWHV LQ WK



&KDQJHV OLNH WKLV ZKHQ \RX DUH DGM
ZLOO QRW XSGDWH FOLSV DOUHDG\ HGLW
WKH DGMXVWHG FOLSV LI \RX DGG WKHP
FDQ ULJKW FOLFN RQH RU PRUH FOLSV L
VHOHFW FOLSV DQG SUHVV * DQG PDNH
VR ZLOO DGMXVW RQO\ WKH FOLS LQVWD
WKH ELQ

1RUPDOL]LQJ DXGLR

1RUPDOL]LQJ DXGLR LV VLPLODU WR DGM
QRUPDOL]DWLRQ LV DQ DGMXVWPHQW WR
QRUPDOL]DWLRQ LV DQ DXWRPDWLF DGM

:KHQ \RX QRUPDOL]H D FOLS 3UHPLHUH
VLQJOH KLJKHVW SHDNàLQ RWKHU ZRUG
JDLQ IRU WKH FOLS LV WKHQ DGMXVWHG
PDWFKHV D OHYHO \RX VSHFLI\

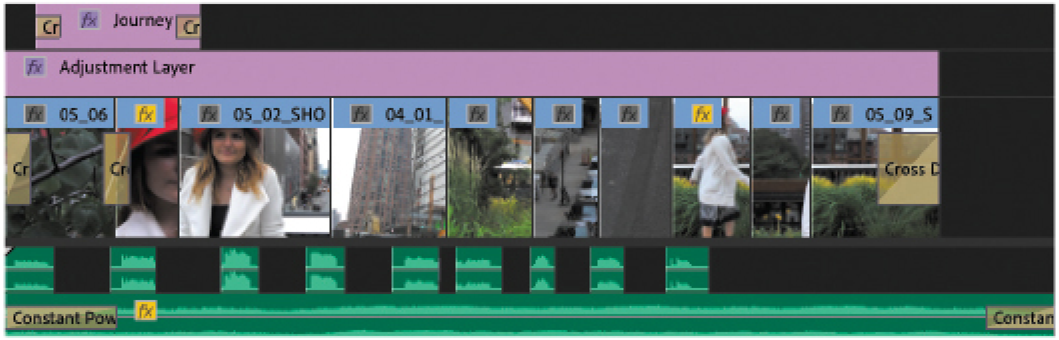
<RX FDQ DGMXVW WKH YROXPH IRU PXOW
DQ\ SHDN YROXPH \RX OLNH

,PDJLQH ZRUNLQJ ZLWK PXOWLSOH FOLSV
GD\V 3HUKDSV IHDWXULQJ GLIIHUHQW
RU GLIIHUHQW YRLFHV VHYHUDO FOLSV

<RX FDQ VHOHFW DOO WKH FOLSV DQG L
DXWRPDWLFDOO\ VHW WKHLU YROXPHV W
PLJKW KDYH VSHQW PDQXDOO\ JRLQJ WK
DGMXVWPHQWV

/HWåQRUPDOL]H VRPH FOLSV

2SHQ WKH -RXUQH\ VHTXHQFH IURP WK


Cr
Journey
Cr
Adjustment Layer
05_06
05_02_SHO
04_01_
05_09_S
Cr
Cr
Cross D
Constant Pow
Constan

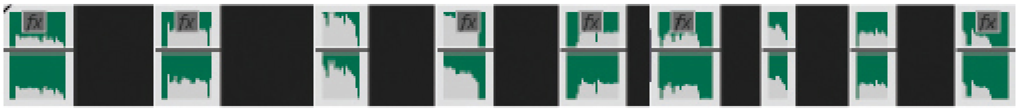
- 1RWH

  <RX PD\ QHHG WR DGMXVW WKH WUDF
  'R WKLV E\ GUDJJLQJ WKH GLYLGHU E

3OD\ WKH VHTXHQFH OLVWHQ DQG ZD

7KH YRLFH OHYHO YDULHV TXLWH D OR
WKDQ WKH WKLUG DQG IRXUWK FOLSV

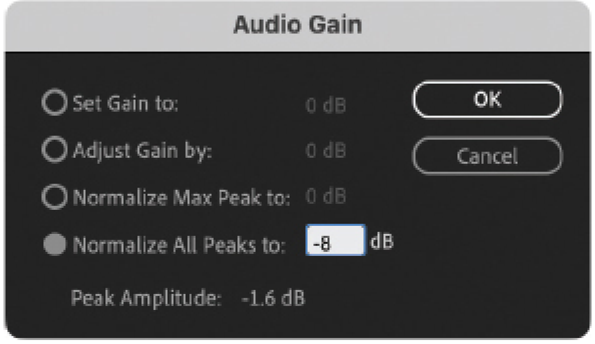
6HOHFW DOO WKH YRLFH RYHU FOLSV
\RX FDQ ODVVR WKHP RU PDNH DQ LWH



5LJKW FOLFN DQ\ RI WKH VHOHFWHG F
WKH * NH\

<RXåOO QRUPDOO\ FKRRVH D SHDN OH
LQWHQGHG PL[ )RU WKHVH FOLSV HQW
G%DQG FOLFN 2.

ß G% LV FORVH WR G% IXOO YROXP
'HOLYHU\ VWDQGDUGV IRU DOO D
GHFLGLQJ RQ WKH OHYHOV \RX ZLOO V



○ Set Gain to: 0 dB
○ Adjust Gain by: 0 dB
○ Normalize Max Peak to: 0 dB
● Normalize All Peaks to: -8 dB

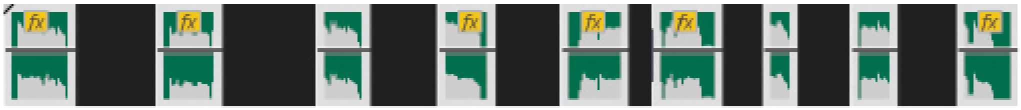
Peak Amplitude: -1.6 dB

/LVWHQ DJDLQ 7KH PXVLF DGGV WR W
PHWHUV PDNLQJ LW WR DVVHVV WKH YR

7R FKHFN WKH OHYHO IRU WKH
IRU WKH $XGLR WUDFN WR HQDEOH

/LVWHQ DJDLQ (YHU\ VHOHFWHG FOLS
DUH DW ß G%

1RWLFH WKDW WKH SHDNV RI WKH FOL
WKH VDPH OHYHO



,Q WKH $XGLR *DLQ GLDORJ ER[LI \R
7R RSWLRQ UDWKHU WKDQ RQ WKH 1RUPD
DGMXVWPHQWV DUH PDGH EDVHG RQ W
FRPELQHG DV LI WKH\ ZHUH DOO RQH

ZLOO EH DSSOLHG WR HYHU\ FOLS PD
FOLSV

&OLFN WKH 6ROR RSWLRQ IRU WKH $X

6HQGLQJ DXGLR WR $GREH $XGLWLRQ

:KLOH 3UHPLHUH 3UR KDV DGYDQFHG W
DXGLR HGLWLQJ FRPSHWH LW ZLWK $GREH
GHGLFDWHG DXGLR SRVW SURGXFWLRQ

$ FRPSRQHQW RI $GREH &UHDWLYH &O
LQWR \RXU ZRUNIORZ ZKHQ HGLWLQJ \RX
FRPSOHWH VHTXHQFH WR $GREH $XGLW
YLGHR ILOH EDVHG RQ \RXU VHTXHQFH
IROORZV DORQJ ZLWK WKH YLGHR $XG
35352- SURMHFW ILOH QDWLYHO\ DQG F
VHVVLRQV IRU DGYDQFHG DXGLR ILQLV

,I \RX KDYH $XGLWLRQ LQVWDOOHG \R
IROORZLQJ WKHVH VWHSV

2SHQ WKH VHTXHQFH \RX ZDQW WR V

&KRRVH (GLW ! (GLW ,Q $GREH $XGLW

3UHPLHUH 3UR ZLOO FUHDWH QHZ FR
IRU \RX WR HGLW LQ $GREH $XGLWLR
VDIH &KRRVH D QDPH IRU WKH FRSL
VWRUH WKHP &KRRVH WKH UHPDLQLQ
ILQDOO\ FOLFN 2.

,Q WKH 9LGHR PHQX \RX FDQ FKRRVH 6HQ
WR YLHZ WKH YLGHR SDUW RI \RXU 3
$XGLWLRQ GLUHFWO\ IURP WKH 3UHP

$GREH $XGLWLRQ KDV IDQWDVWLF WRRO
VSHFLDO VSHFWUDO GLVSOD\ WKDW KH
QRLVHV D KLJK SHUIRUPDQFH DXGLR
HIIHFWV DQG FRQWUROV

7R VHQG \RXU FRPSOHWHG PL[IURP $X
0XOWLWUDFN $(GLW 3UHPLHUH 3UR &K
PL[GRZQ RSWLRQV XVXDOO\ 6WHUHR
QHZ PHGLD ILOH DQG FOLFN ([SRUW

<RX FDQ DOVR VHQG DQ LQGLYLGXHDFOWF
DQG DGMXVWPRHQWVQIGHDWQXDUHGLR7 FOLS V
WKH FOLS LQ \RXU 3UHPLHUH 3UR VHTX
$XGLWLRQ

3UHPLHUH 3UR GXSOLFDWHV WKH DXGL
VHTXHQFH ZLWK WKH GXSOLFDWH DQG
UHDG\ WR ZRUN RQ LW

)URP QRZ RQ HYHU\ WLPH \RX VDYH FK
LQ $XGLWLRQ WKH\åOO DXWRPDWLFDOO

)RU PRUH LQIRUPDWLRQ DERXW $GREH
SHDFKSLWH FRGPRVEWRDXGLRWLRQFD EORDWV
DQG FK$GREHHX$XGLWLRQ &L&Q &
%RRN

$XWRGXFNLQJ WKH PXVLF OHYHO

2QH RI WKH PRVW FRPPRQ WDVNV ZKHQ
WKH PXVLF OHYHO GXULQJ VHFWLRQV RI
H[DPSOH \RX PD\ ZDQW WKH PXVLF WR J
VKDUHG DQG WKHQ TXLFNO\ EHFRPH WKH
7KLV LV WKH ZD\ UDGLR '-V VSHDN RYHU
JHWWLQJ TXLHWHU ZKHQ WKH '-GXFNLQJ

<RX FDQ PDQXDOO\ DGG DXGLR NH\IUDPH
H[SORUH WKLV WHFKQLTXH DXWRPDWHG GXFN
WKH (VVHQWLDO 6RXQG SDQHO

<RXåOO OHDUQ DERXW WKH (VVHQWLDO 6
è,PSURYLQJ $XGLR é WKLV LV D TXLFN DQ
ZKHQ FUHDWLQJ \RXU PL[OHDGLQJ ULJ

&RQWLQXH ZRUNLQJ LQ WKH VHTXHQFH \
WKH YRLFH RYHU FOLSV RQ WKH $XGL

,Q WKH (VVHQWLDO 6RXQG SDQHO ZKL
EHFDXVH \RX VHOHFWHG WKH $XGLR Z
YLHZ RSWLRQV WKDW UHODWH WR WKH

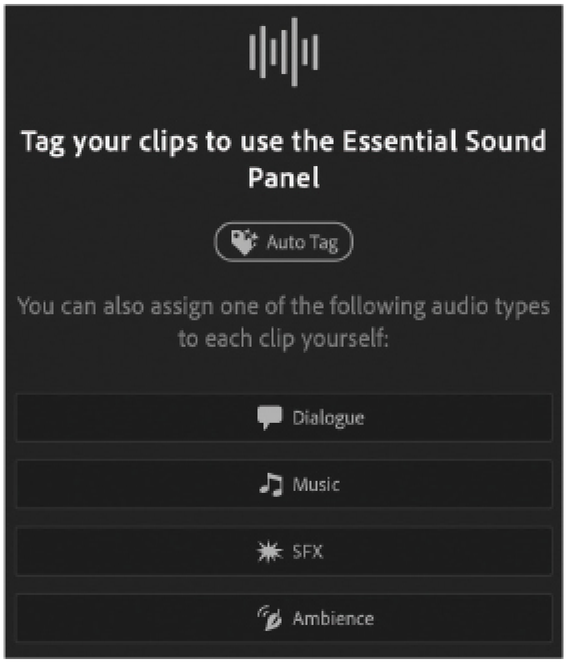
%\ DVVLJQLQJ DQ DXGLR W\SH \RXåOO
DUH UHOHYDQW WR WKDW W\SH RI DXG

3UHPLHUH 3UR FDQ DXWRPDWLFDOO\ G
DVVLJQ WKH FRUUHFW WDJV RSWLRQHQ

+RZHYHU LW PD\ QRW EH SRVVLEOH WR DI
IRU VKRUW FOLSV OLNH WKHVH

&OLFN WKH 'LDORJXH EXWWRQ WR DVV
VHOHFWHG FOLSV

$VVLJQLQJ WKH 'LDORJ WDJ PHDQV 3U
GLDORJXH IRU WKH SXUSRVHV RI SHUI



Tag your clips to use the Essential Sound Panel

You can also assign one of the following audio types to each clip yourself:

5HVL]H WKH $XGLR WUDFN VR DXGLR
ZDYHIRUP 6HOHFW\ WKH FOLS DQG LQ
VHOHFW WKH 0XVLF DXGLR W\SH

,Q WKH (VVHQWLDO 6RXQG SDQHO VH
WDNH D ORRN DW WKH RSWLRQV

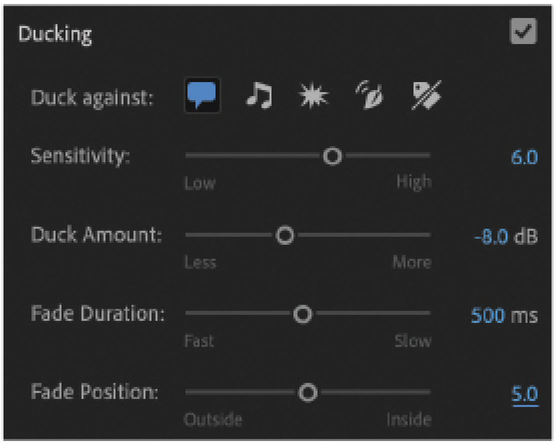
,I WKH VHWWLQJV DUH QRW VKRZLQJ D
UHVWRUH WKH GHIDXOWV

- 'XFN $JDL7KHVH DUH PXOWLSROXHFDWQSHN ZKHWKHU RQH VHYHUDO RU DOO W\S GXFNLHQJUH GXFNLQJ DJDLQVW GLDOR E\ GHIDXOW
- 6HQVLW7LYHL KLJKHU WKWHKHHQRZLHUL YLKW QHFHVVDU\ WR WULJJHU GXFNLQJ
- 'XFN $PRX7KLWV LV WKH DPRXQW WKH P E\ PHDVXUHG LQ G%
-)DGH 'XUD7WKLRQORZHU WKH IDGH VHW\ IRU WKH PXVLF WR JHW TXLHWHU DQG
-)DGH 3RV$LGWMLXRVQWV WKH WLPLQJ IRU W SURGXFLQJ HDUOLHU RU ODWHU NH\IU GLHUHQW VHTXHQFHV
- *HQHUDWH .H&OULFNHWKLV EXWWRQ WR NH\IUDPHV WR WKH PXVLF FOLS

&KRRVLQJ WKH ULJKW VHWWLQJV IRU DQG WKH W\SH RI DXGLR \RX DUH ZRUN \RX PDNH ([SHULPHQWDWLRQ LV WKH

)RU WKLV DXGLR WU\ WKHVH VHWWLQ

- 'XFN $JDL'LQDDORJXH &OLSV VKRXOG WDK GHIDXOW
- 6HQVLWLYLW\
- 'XFN $PRX8QW G%
-)DGHV PV
-)DGH 3RVLWLRQ


Ducking ☑

Duck against:

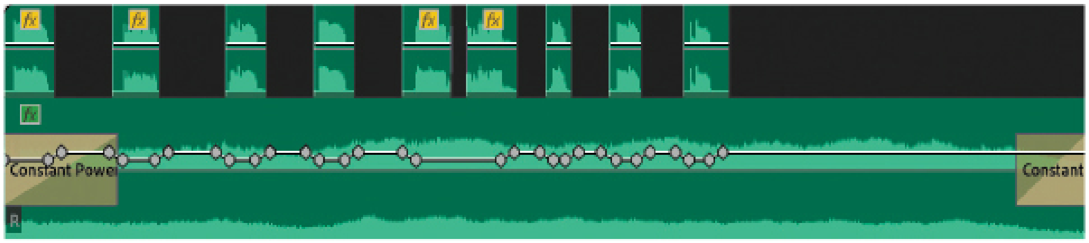
Sensitivity: 6.0
Low
High

Duck Amount: -8.0 dB
Less
More

Fade Duration: 500 ms
Fast
Slow

Fade Position: 5.0
Outside
Inside

&OLFN *HQHUDWH .H\IUDPHV


fx
Constant Power
Constant
R

.H\IUDPHV DUH DGGH[illegible]
DXWRPDWLFDOO\ DSSOLH[illegible]
DSSHDU [illegible]

3OD\ WKH VHTXHQFH [illegible]
WR D ILQLVKHG PL[

<RX FDQ DGMXVW WKH DXWRPDWLF GXFN
.H\IUDPHV EXWWRQ UHSHDWHGO\ WR UHF
PDNLQJ LW VDIH DQG HDV\ WR H[SHULPH

<RX FDQ DOVR PDQXDOO\ DGMXVW W[illegible]
UHPRYH PRYH DQG DGG NH\IUDPHV DW

5HWLPLQJ PXVLF ZLWK 5HPL[

0XVLF FDQ KDYH DQ HQRUPRXV LPSDFW
PRYLH PLJKW IHHO WDPH ZLWKRXW D VW
GLDORJXH FDQ EH EURXJKW WR OLIH ZLV
PDQ\ ZD\V WKH PXVLF WHOOV WKH DXGL
ULJKW LV FUXFLDO

<RX PD\ GLVFRYHU H[DFWO\ WKH SLHFH F
ULJKWV WR XVH LW LQ \RXU SURMHFW R
\RXU YLVXDOV :KDW WR GR"

)RU PDQ\ \HDUV WKH VROXWLRQ ZDV WR
DQG UHMRLQLQJ SLHFHV RI D PXVLF WUD
VKRUWHQLQJ LWàRIWHQ EHFDXVH EHFDXVH
DYRLG MDUULQJ MRLQV

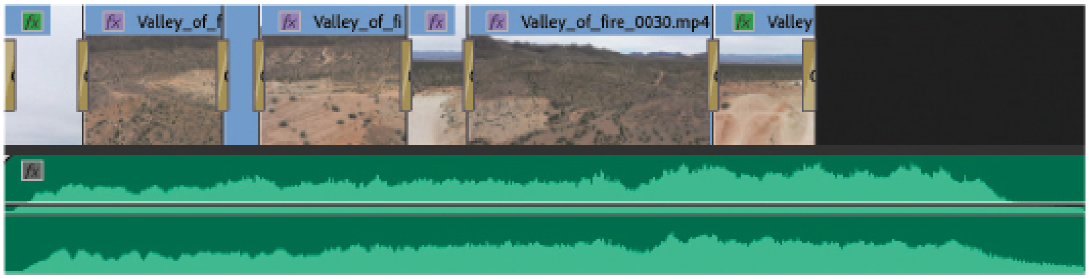
7KDQNI XOO HPLHUH 3UR KDV DQ H[WUDRUG
DXWRPDWHG LQWHOOLJHQW WHFKQRORJ
WKH ULJKW HGLWV WR DFKLHYH WKH GXU

7KH EHVW ZD\ WR OHDUQ DERXW 5HPL[L

,Q WKH 7LPHOLQH SDQHO FOLFN WKH QDPH
VHOHFW LW

6HOHFW WKH $GREH 6WRFN PXVLF FOL

)URP WKH 0XVLF ELQ GUDJ WKH FOLS
RQWR WKH EHJLQQLQJ RI WKH $XGLR



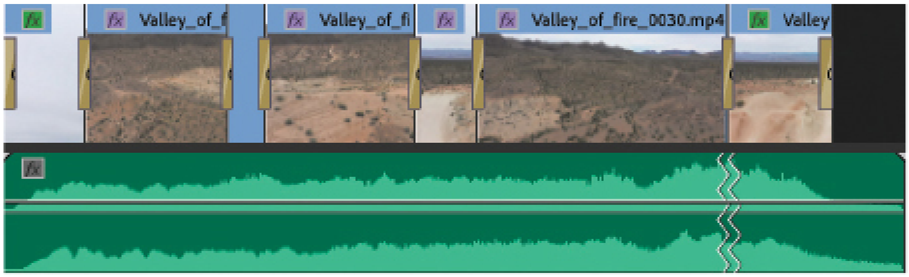
7KLV PXVLF WUDFN LV WRR ORQJ IRU WKH 5
DGMXVW LW

&OLFN DQG KROG WKH 5LSSOH (GLW WRRO

RSWLRQV DQG VH FW WKH 5HPL[WRRO

&KHFN WKDW 6QDSSLQJ LQ WKH 7LPHOLQH
XVH WKH 5HPL[WRRO WR WULP WKH H
VQDSV WR WKH HQG RI WKH YLGHR FO

$ SURJUHVV EDU VKRZV WKH SURJUHV
GXUDWLRQ LV XSGDWHG


Valley_of_f
Valley_of_fi
Valley_of_fire_0030.mp4
Valley

7KH ZKLWH MDJJHG OLQHV LQGLFDWH
HGLWHG SOD\LQJ DFURVV WKH HGLWV
WKH PDJLF RI 5HPL[

1RWLFH WKDW WKH PXVLF FOLS GRHV
FKRVH 5HPL[PDNHV DQ LQWHOOLJHQW
QHZ GXUDWLRQ WKDW ZLOO EHVW DOO

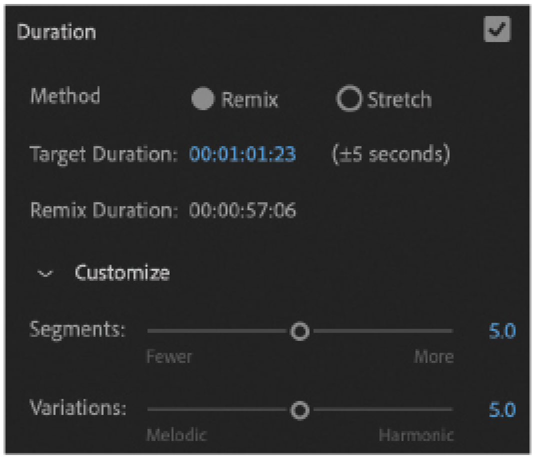
5HPL[ZRUNV IRU PDNLQJ FOLSV ORQJ
3DWULFN &DQQHOO FOLS

)URP WKH 0XVLF ELQ GUDJ WKH *KRV
EHJLQQLQJ RI WKH $XGLR WUDFN

8VH WKH 5HPL[WRRO WR WULP WKH F
YLGHR FOLSV 5HYLHZ WKH UHVXOW

,I \RX ILQG 5HPL[SURGXFHV D SRRU U
GHWDLOHG VHWWLQJV LQ WKH 'XUDWL

)RU QRZ VHOHFW WKH 6HOHFWLRQ WRRO


Duration ☑

Method ● Remix ○ Stretch

Target Duration: 00:01:01:23 (±5 seconds)

Remix Duration: 00:00:57:06

Customize

Segments: 5.0

Variations: 5.0

Fewer
More
Melodic
Harmonic

&UHDWLQJ D VSOLW HGLW

$VSOLW VHGLW LPSOH FODVVLF HGLW WLQJ HV
IRU DXGLR DQG YLGHR 7KH DXGLR IURP
DQRWKHU FDUU\LQJ WKH IHHOLQJ RI RQH VFH

$GGLQJ D - FXW

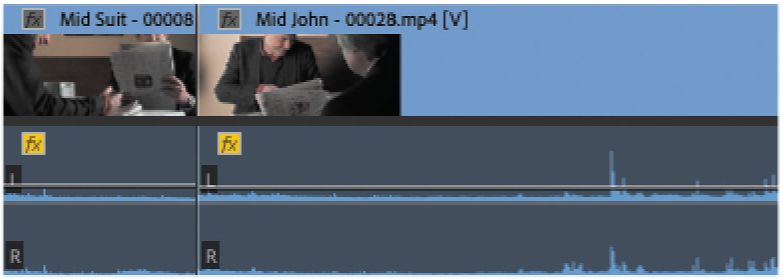
7KH - FXW JHWV LWV QDPH IURP WKH VKD-SH RI
DQ HGLW 7KH ORZHU SDUW WKH DXGLR
YLGHR FXW

2SHQ WKH 7KHIW 8QH[SHFWHG VHTXHQ

3OD\ WKH ODVW FXW LQ WKH VHTXHQF
WZR FOLSV LV RX WKH QH[W ... <RX UQ
YROXPH WR KHDU WKHP ... WKLQJV
RI WKH DXGLR FXW

▶ 7LS

: LWK WKH GHIDXOW 3UHPLHUH 3UR S
6HOHFWLRQ WRRO WR DSSO\ D UROOL
PDF26 RU &WUO :


Mid Suit - 00008
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
fx
L
R

6HOHFW WKH 5ROODQFHGLVWEWRRO FOL

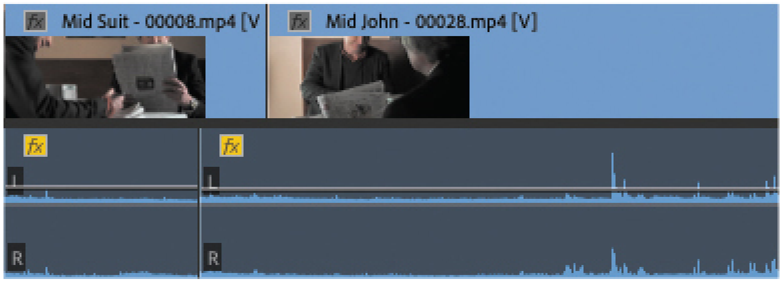
WKH 5HPL[RE\LGFRQDXOW \RXåG FOL

(GLW WRRO LFRQ

3UHVV DQG KROG 2SWLRQGRZDFà6KRUV V
RYHUULGHV OLQNHG VHOHFWLRQVàDQ
WKH ODVW WZR FOLSV QRW WKH YLGH
&RQJUDWXODWLRQVà\RXåYH FUHDWHG D - FXW

▶ 7LS

)RU PRUH LQIRUPDWLRQ RQ NH\ERDU
VHWWLQJ NH\ERDUG VKRUWFXWVé LQ


Mid Suit - 00008.mp4 [V
Mid John - 00028.mp4 [V]
fx
L
R

3OD\ WKURXJK WKH HGLW

<RX PLJKW ZDQW WR H[SHULPHQW ZLW
PRUH QDWXUDO EXW IRU SUDFWLFH
VPRRWK LW RYHU DQG LPSURYH LW IX

6ZLWFK EDFN WR WKH 6HOHFWLRQ WRI

$GGLQJ DQ / FXW

$Q/ FXW ZRUNV LQ WKH VDPH ZD\ DV D - FXW
EXW GUDJ WKH DXGLR VHJPHQW HGLW D
PDF26 RU $OW LQGRZV. 3OD\ WKURXJK WKH H
\RX WKLQN

7LS

:KHQ \RX KDYH ILQLVKHG ZRUNLQJ ZLWK
WR FOLFN WKH 6HOHFWLRQ WRRO. 7KLV
DGMXVWPHQWV DFFLGHQWDOO\ ZKHQ \R
VHTXHQFH.

$GMXVWLQJ DXGLR OHYHOV IRU D FOLS

$V ZHOO DV DGMXVWLQJ FOLS JDLQ, \RX
YROXPH RI FOLSV RQ D VHTXHQFH. (DFK FKDQJH W
WUDFNV. 7KHVH WKUHH YROXPH DGMXVW
RXWSXW OHYHO.

,I DQ\WKLQJ, XVLQJ UXEEHU EDQGV WR D
DGMXVWLQJ JDLQ EHFDXVH \RX FDQ PDN
ZLWK LPPHGLDWH YLVXDO IHHGEDFN.

7KH UHVXOW RI DGMXVWLQJ WKH UXEEHU
YROXPH XVLQJ WKH (IIHFW &RQWUROV SDQHO. ,Q ID
XSGDWHV WKH RWKHU.

$GMXVWLQJ RYHUDOO FOLS OHYHOV

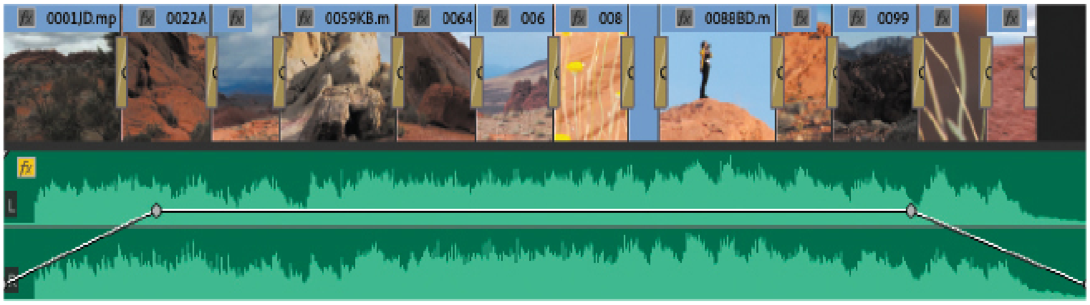
/HWåV WU\ DGMXVWLQJ FOLS OHYHOV

,I LWåV QRW DOUHDG\ RSHQ, RSHQ WKH 'H
6HTXHQFHV ELQ.

7KH PXVLF DOUHDG\ IDGHV XS DQG GR
DGMXVW WKH YROXPH EHWZHHQ WKRV

8VH WKH 6HOHFWLRQ WRRO WR GUDJ V
RU KROG 2SWLRQ PDF26 RU $OW

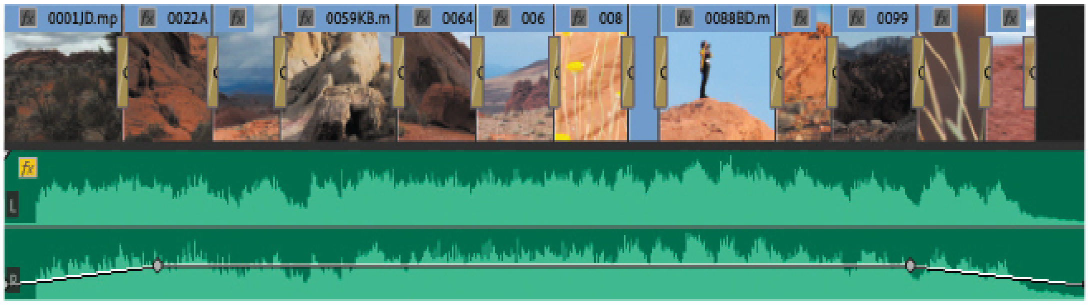
WKH WUDFN KHDGHU ZKLOH \RX7KEURZO
PDNH LW HDVLHU WR DSSO\ ILQH DGMX


0001JD.mp
0022A
0059KB.m
0064
006
008
0088BD.m
0099
L
R

7KH PLGGOH SDUW RI WKH PXVLF LV D
RI WKH UXEEHU EDQG RQ WKH FOLS GF

$V \RX GUDJ D WRRO WLS DSSHDUV G
\RX DUH PDNLQJ

(DFK WLPH \RX PDNH DQ DGMXVWPHQW
WKH UHVXOW LV UMRWSKOLDDQWKZHIDRXGLDRU
ZLWK WKH UHVXOW \RX FDQ DGMXVW


0001JD.mp
0022A
0059KB.m
0064
006
008
0088BD.m
0099
L
R

%HFDXVH \RXåUH GUDJJLQJ WKH UXEEHU
NH\IUDPH \RXåUH DFWXDOO\ DGMXVWLQ
VLGH RI WKH FXUVRU

,I WKH FOLS GLG QRW KDYH H[LVWLQJ NH
OHYHO IRU WKH HQWLUH OHQJWK RI WKH

▶ 7LS

7KHUH DUH DGGLWLRQDO NH\ERDUG VK
NH\IUDPH VHWWLQJV $VVLJQ NH\V WR
GLDORJ ER[

&KDQJLQJ FOLS YROXPH ZLWK NH\ERDUG VKRUWFXWV

,I WKH 7LPHOLQH SDQHO SOD\KHDG LV RYH
ORZHU LWV YROXPH XVLQJ NH\ERDUG V
DOWKRXJKWK\RXH ZRQåH WRRO WLS LQIRU
DGMXVWPHQW 7KHVH DUH SDUWLFXODU
SUHFLVH DXGLR OHYHO DGMXVWPHQWV

- 8VH WKH > NH\ WR GHFUHDVH FOLS Y
- 8VH WKH @ NH\ WR LQFUHDVH FOLS Y
- 8VH 6KLIW > WR GHFUHDVH FOLS YRO
- 8VH 6KLIW @ WR LQFUHDVH FOLS YRO

,I \RXU NH\ERDUG GRHV QRW KDYH VTX
3UR ! .H\ERDUG 6KRUWFXWV PDF26 RU
:LQGRZV WR VHW DOWHUQDWLYH NH\V

. H\IUDPLQJ YROXPH FKDQJHV

<RX FDQ XVH WKH 6HOHFWLRQ WRRO WR
VHTXHQFH FOLSV LQ WKH VDPH ZD\ WKD
\RX GUDJ D NH\IUDPH XS WKH DXGLR ZL
PDNH WKH DXGLR TXLHWHU

7KH 3H WRROGGV NH\IUDPHV WR UXEEHUEDQGV
DGMXVW H[LVWLQJ NH\IUDPHV RU WR OD
JURXS

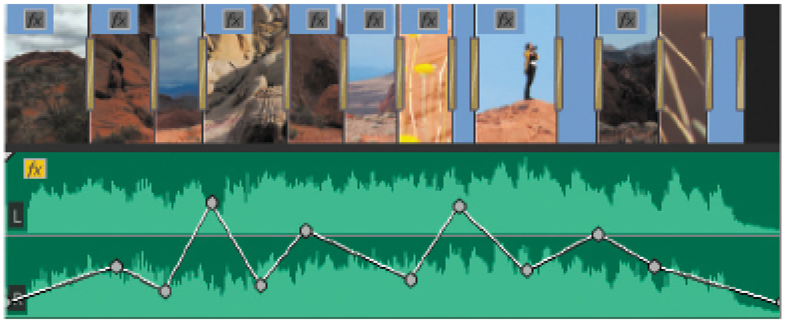
7LS

,I \RX DGMXVW WKH FOLS DXGLR JDLQ
DGMXVWPHQW ZLWK DQ\ NH\IUDPH EDVH
FDQ FKDQJH HLWKHU DW DQ\ WLPH

<RX GRQ¶W QHHG WR XVH WKH 3HQ WRRO WK
XVLQJ WKH 6HOHFWLRQ WRRO KROGLQJ GRZQ &W
\RX FOLFN WKH UXEEHU EDQG

7KH UHVXOW RI DGGLQJ DQG DGMXVWLQJ
DXGLR FOLS VHJPHQWV LV WKDW WKH UX
KLJKHU WKH UXEEHU EDQG WKH ORXGHU

$GG D IHZ NH\IUDPHV ZLWK GUDPDWLF
DQG OLVWHQ WR WKH UHVXOWV *R FUD]
REYLRXV DQG WKHQ SOD\ WKH VHTXHQFH
RQ WKH DXGLR PHWHUV



6PRRWKLQJ YROXPH EHWZHHQ NH\IUDPHV

7KH DGMXVWPHQWV \RX MXVW PDGH DUH
PLJKW ZDQW WR VPRRWK WKHVH RU RWK

7R GR VR ULJKW FOLFN DQ\ RI WKH NH\IUD
RSWLRQV LQFOXGLQJ (DVH ,Q DQG (DVH 2XW
WRRO \RX FDQ ODVVR PXOWLSOH NH\IUD
WR DSSO\ D FKDQJH WR WKHP DOO

7KH EHVW ZD\ WR OHDUQ DERXW WKHVH LV WR
HDFK NLQG PDNH VRPH DGMXVWPHQWV

8VLQJ FOLS YV WUDFN NH\IUDPHV

8QWLO QRZ \RX¶YH PDGH DOO \RXU NH\IUDPH
VHJPHQWV :KHQ ZRUNLQJ ZLWK WKH $XGL
PRPHQW DOO DGMXVWPHQWV DUH PDGH

7KHUH DUH VLPLODU FRQWUROV IRU WKH
7UDFN EDVHG NH\IUDPHV ZRUN LQ WKH V
GLIIHUHQFH LV WKDW WKH\ PRYH ZLWK WKH FOLSV

7KLV PHDQV \RX FDQ VHW XS NH\IUDPHV
FRQWUROV DQG WKHQ PRYH PXOWLSOH FOLSV. (DFK
LQWR \RXU VHTXHQFH. \RXåOO KHDU LW
\RXU WUDFN.

$V \RX GHYHORS \RXU HGLWLQJ VNLOOV
FRPSOH[DXGLR PL[HV. H[SORUH WKH FRPELQH
WUDFN NH\IUDPH DGMXVWPHQWV.

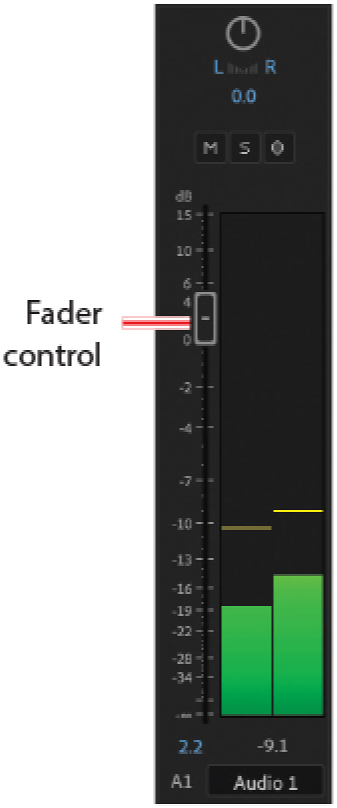
: RUNLQJ ZLWK WKH $XGLR &OLS 0L[HU

7KH $XGLR &OLS 0L[HU SURYLGHV LQWXL
YROXPH DQG SDQ NH\IUDPHV RYHU WLPH

(DFK VHTXHQFH DXGLR WUDFN LV UHSUHV
FRQWURO JDLQ IDGHU EDU WUDFN QDPHV. WKH D
DSSOLHG WR FOLSV, QRW WUDFNV.

<RX FDQ PXWH RU VROR D WUDFN DQG \RX WKH
DQ RSWLRQ WR ZULWH NH\IUDPHV WR FO
IDGHU RU DGMXVWLQJ D SDQ FRQWURO.

:KDWåV D IDGHU")DGHUV DUH LQGXVWU\ VW
DXGLR PL[LQJ. <RX PRYH WKH IDGHU XS WR L
PRYH LW GRZQ WR GHFUHDVH WKH YROX


Fader control
L R
0.0
M
S
dB
15
10
6
4
0
-2
-4
-7
-10
-13
-16
-19
-22
-28
-34
2.2
-9.1
A1
Audio 1

Let's try this

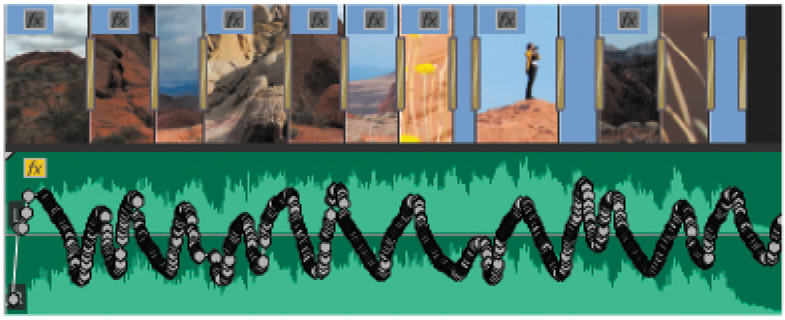
Continue working with the Desert
Timeline Display Settings menu to
to show audio keyframes and incr
to be able to see the keyframes f

Open the Audio Clip Mixer Monitor th
sequence from the beginning

Because you already added keyfra
Mixer fader moves up and down dur
currently set level

Position the Timeline panel playhead at
again. In the Audio Clip Mixer the Mixer ra ⬡ e
near the top of the Audio cont

Play the sequence and while it p
adjustments to Keyframes Audio appear
playback



,I \RX UHSHDW WKH SURFHVV \RXåOO IROORZV H[LVWLQJ NH\IUDPHV XQWLO

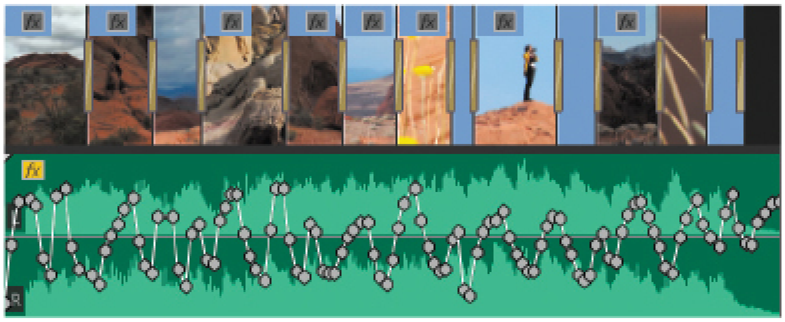
:KHQ \RX XVH WKH IDGHU FRQWURO NH\IU DUH DGGHG DOVR H[LVWLQJ NH\IUDP 3UR DGGV D NH\IUDPH ZLWK HYHU\ FDQG PLQLPXP WLPH JDS IRU NH\IUDPHV WR

&KRRVH 3UHPLHUH 3UR ! 6HWWLQJV ! $ 3UHIHUHQFHVLQ $XGLR 6HOHFW 0LQLPX 7KLQQLQJ DQG VHW D PLQLPXP WLPH LV UHODWLYHEXW LW SURYLGHV D EDODQ DQG NH\IUDPH RYHUORDG &OLFN 2.

▶ 7LS

<RX FDQ DGMXVW DXGLR SDQ LQ WKH YROXPH XVLQJ WKH $XGLR &OLS 0L[H VHTXHQFH DQG PDNH DGMXVWPHQWV FRQWURO

6HW WKH SOD\KHDG WR WKH EHJLQQLQ WKH $XGLR &OLS 0L[HU WR DGG OHYHO



7KH UHVXOW LV D PXFK PRUH RUGHUO DGMXVWPHQWV WKH VPDOOHU QXPEHU

PDQDJHDEOH

<RX FDQ DGMXVW NH\IUDPHV \RX FUHDWH
NH\IUDPHV WKDW \RX FUHDWHG XVLQJ W

7KH IXQGDPHQWDO EXLOGLQJ EORFN NH\IUDPH
DXGLR LV WKH NH\IUDPH 5RZ +H[SORUHG VH
DGMXVW NH\IUDPHV LQ 3UHPLHUH 3UR RU 7
ZLWK NH\IUDPHV LQWHUSRODWLRQ âå\ D PDWWHU RI SHU
D SDUWLFXODU SURMHFW

([SHULPHQW DQG SUDFWLFH WR PDNH VX
FRQFHSW DQG DSSOLFDWLRQ RI NH\IUDP
XQGHUVWDQGLQJ RI SRVW SURGXFWLRQ

5HYLHZ TXHVWLRQV

+RZ FDQ \RX LVRODWH DQ LQGLYLGX
RQO\ WKDW FKDQQHO"

:KDW LV WKH GLIIHUHQFH EHWZHHQ PRQR DQG

+RZ FDQ \RX YLHZ WKH ZDYHIRUPV IR
6RXUFH 0RQLWRU"

:KDW LV WKH GLIIHUHQFH EHWZHHQ QRUPDOL]

:KDW LV WKH GLIIHUHQFH EHWZHHQ D - FXW D

:KLFK RSWLRQ LQ WKH $XGLR &OLS 0
\RX FDQ XVH WKH IDGHU FRQWURO V W
GXULQJ SOD\EDFN"

5HYLHZ DQVZHUV

8VH WKH 6ROR EXWWRQV DW WKH ER
WUDFN KHDGHUV WR VHOHFWLYHO\ KH

6WHUHR DXGLR KDV WZR DXGLR FKDQ
WKH XQLYHUVDO VWDQGDUG WR UHFR
&KDQQHO DQG DXGLR IURP D 5LJKW
UHFRUGLQJ VWHUHR VRXQG

8VH WKH 6HWWLQJV PHQX RQ WKH 6R
:DYHIRUP <RX FDQ DOVR FOLFN WKH 'UDJ
ERWWRP RI WKH &RPSRVLWLRQ LWHP XHQI
ZDYHIRUPV LQ WKH 6SDQHO

1RUPDOL]DWLRQ DXWRPDWLFDOO\ DG
EDVHG RQ WKH RULJLQDO XVH WKH DPSO
PDNH PDQXDO DGMXVWPHQWV

$ - FXW PHDQV WKH VRXQG IRU WKH
YLVXDOV WKLV LV VRPHWLPHV GLWKHU
/ FXWV WKH VRXQG IURP WKH SUHYLR
YLVXDOV EHJLQ VRPHWLPHV GHVFULE

(QDEOH WKH .H\IUDPHV RSWLRQ IRU H
WR DGG NH\IUDPHV WR

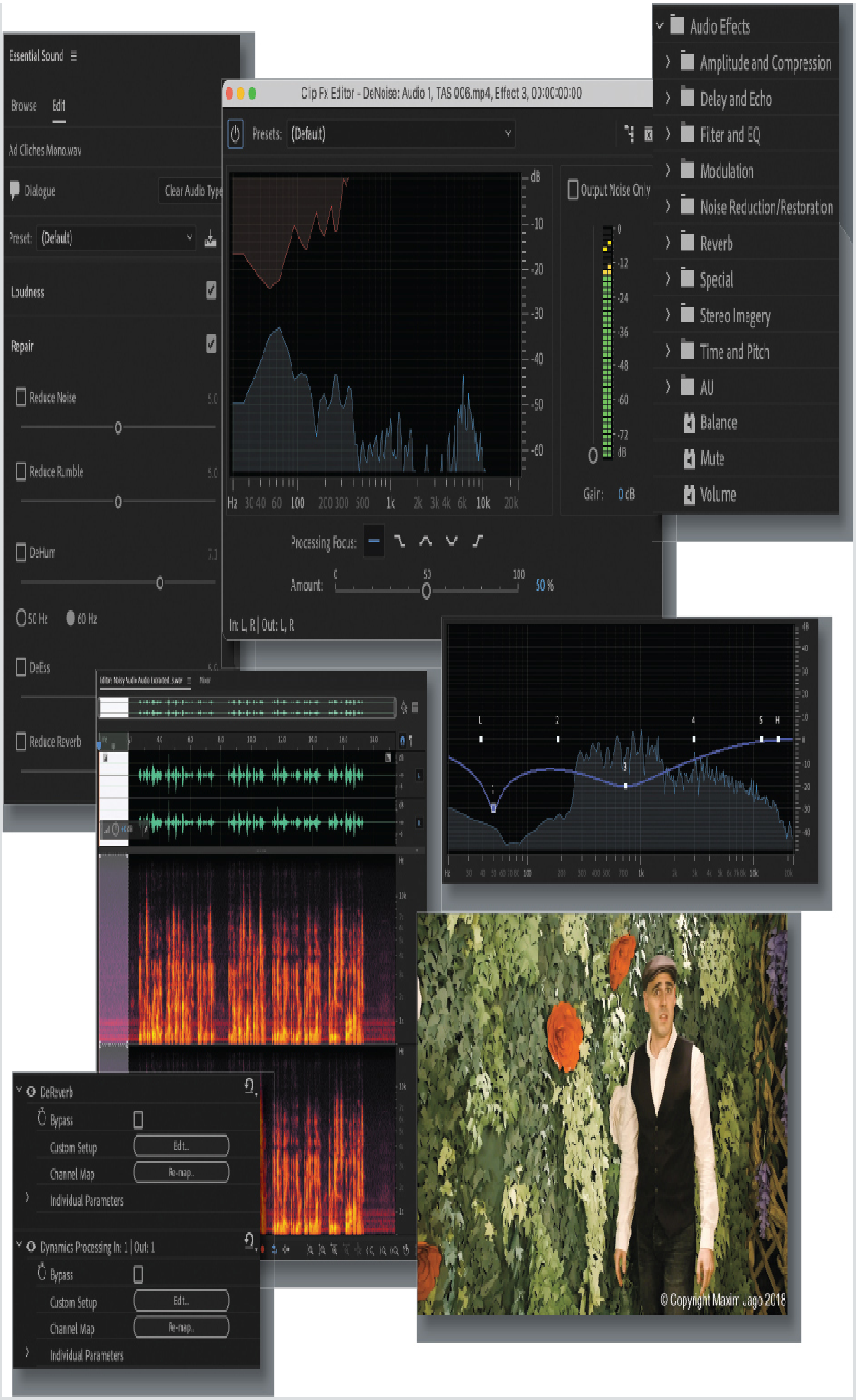
11 Improving Audio

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Work with the Essential Sound panel.
- Improve the sound of speech.
- Clean up noisy audio.

This lesson will take about 75 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


Essential Sound
Browse
Edit
Ad Cliches Mono.wav
Dialogue
Clear Audio Type
Preset: (Default)
Loudness
Repair
Reduce Noise
Reduce Rumble
DeHum
50 Hz
60 Hz
DeEss
Reduce Reverb
Clip Fx Editor - DeNoise: Audio 1, TAS 006.mp4, Effect 3, 00:00:00:00
Presets: (Default)
Output Noise Only
Gain: 0 dB
Processing Focus:
Amount: 50 %
In: L, R | Out: L, R
Audio Effects
Amplitude and Compression
Delay and Echo
Filter and EQ
Modulation
Noise Reduction/Restoration
Reverb
Special
Stereo Imagery
Time and Pitch
AU
Balance
Mute
Volume
DeReverb
Bypass
Custom Setup
Edit...
Channel Map
Re-map...
Individual Parameters
Dynamics Processing In: 1 | Out: 1
Bypass
Custom Setup
Edit...
Channel Map
Re-map...
Individual Parameters
© Copyright Maxim Jago 2018

Audio effects in Premiere Pro can dramatically change the feel of your project—and clean up audio. To take your sound mix to the next level, leverage the power of integration with Adobe Audition. In this lesson, you'll learn some quick, easy ways to improve the quality of your sound mix.

Starting the lesson

You'll find many audio effects in Adobe Premiere Pro. These effects can be used to change pitch, create an echo, add reverb, and remove tape hiss. You can set keyframes for effects and adjust their settings over time.

1. Open the project Lesson 11.prproj.
2. Save the project as Lesson 11 Working.prproj.
3. In the Workspaces menu, click Audio. Then open the Workspaces menu again and choose Reset To Saved Layout.

● **Note**

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

Improving audio with the Essential Sound panel

Video production rarely produces perfect audio. You'll probably need to use audio effects in post-production to fix a few problems and improve the quality of the sound, particularly for vocals, because audiences are acutely sensitive to issues with the sound of a human voice.

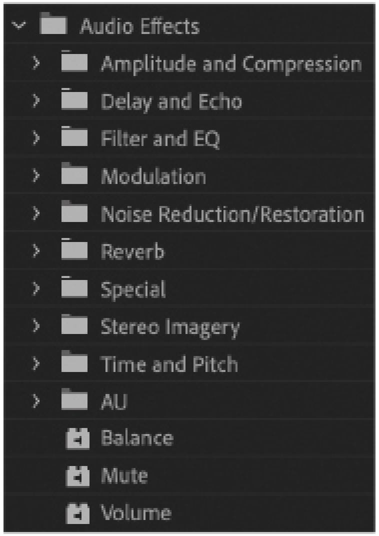
Not all audio hardware plays all audio frequencies evenly. For example, listening to deep bass notes on a laptop is never the same as listening on larger speakers.

It's important to listen to your audio using high-quality headphones or studio monitor speakers to avoid compensating for a flaw in your playback hardware as you adjust the sound. Professional audio-monitoring hardware is carefully calibrated to ensure that all frequencies play evenly—a so-called “flat” response, giving you confidence that you’ll produce a consistent sound for your listeners.

It can be helpful to listen to your audio on low-quality speakers too. This allows you to confirm that enough of the audio is clear and that low-frequency sound doesn’t cause distortion.

Premiere Pro offers a variety of helpful audio effects, including the following, all of which are available in the Effects panel:

- **Parametric Equalizer:** This allows you to make subtle and precise adjustments to the audio level at particular frequencies.
- **Studio Reverb:** This can increase the “presence” in the recording using reverb. For example, it can simulate the atmosphere of a larger room.
- **Dynamics Processing:** This effect allows you to make precise dynamic adjustments to audio to compress, expand, or limit levels.


Audio Effects
Amplitude and Compression
Delay and Echo
Filter and EQ
Modulation
Noise Reduction/Restoration
Reverb
Special
Stereo Imagery
Time and Pitch
AU
Balance
Mute
Volume

- **Bass:** This effect can adjust the low-end frequencies of a clip. It works well on narration clips, particularly for male voices.
- **Treble:** This effect adjusts the higher-range frequencies in an audio clip.

Note

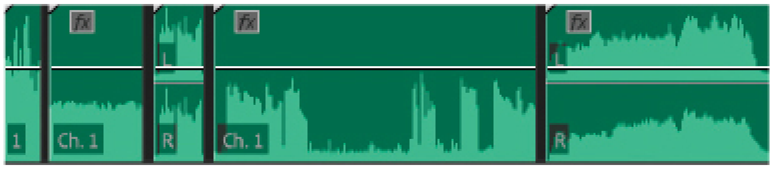
Expand your knowledge of audio effects in Premiere Pro by experimenting. Like video effects, these effects are nondestructive, which means they do not change your original audio files. You can add any number of effects to a clip, change settings, listen, and then delete them and start again.

Depending upon your operating system and the third party plugins you have installed (if any), you may also see AU, VST, VST3, or custom-named effect folders.

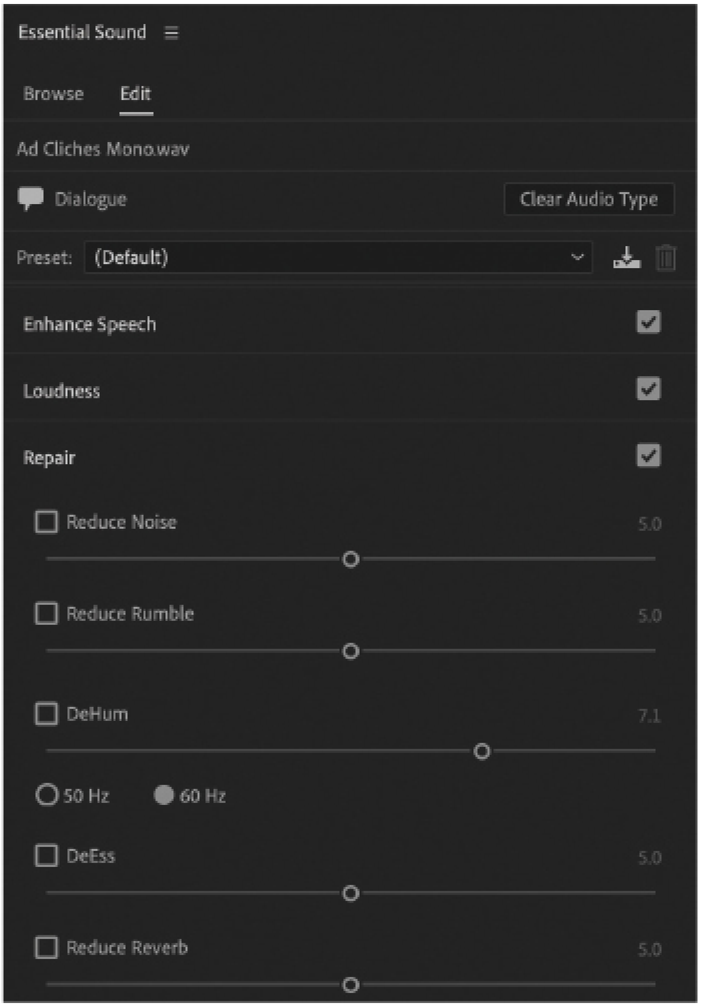
Apply effects by dragging them from the Effects panel onto clips, just as you dragged transition effects onto edits earlier. Select a clip to find its effect controls in the Effect Controls panel. There are many presets to help you get a feel for the ways you can use effects.

You can remove an effect in the Effect Controls panel by selecting it and pressing Delete.

You can use the 01 Effects sequence in this project to experiment with audio effects. The clips in this sequence have a range of audio to make it easy to hear the results of your adjustments.



This lesson focuses on the Essential Sound panel, which offers a range of easy-to-apply professional adjustments and effects that are based on common workflows for standard media types like dialogue and music.


Essential Sound
Browse
Edit
Ad Cliches Mono.wav
Dialogue
Clear Audio Type
Preset: (Default)
Enhance Speech ☑
Loudness ☑
Repair ☑
☐ Reduce Noise 5.0
☐ Reduce Rumble 5.0
☐ DeHum 7.1
○ 50 Hz ● 60 Hz
☐ DeEss 5.0
☐ Reduce Reverb 5.0

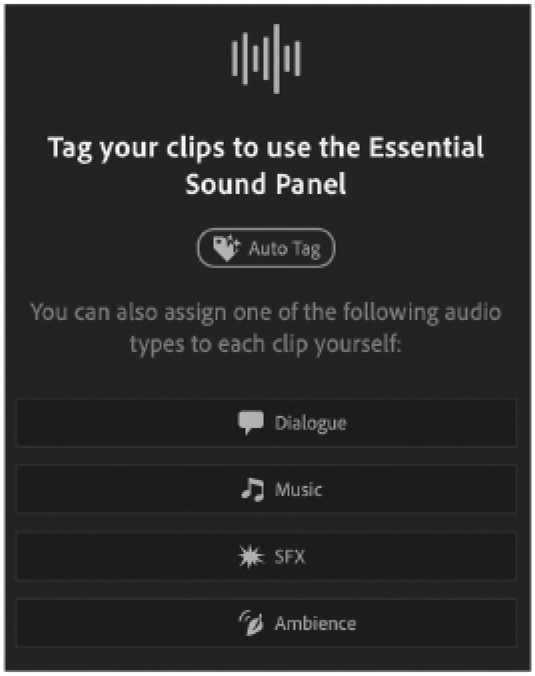
The Essential Sound panel should be your go-to set of options for audio cleanup and improvement.

Adjusting dialogue audio

The Essential Sound panel has a comprehensive list of features to help you work with dialogue audio.

To use the Essential Sound panel, select one or more clips in a sequence, and select a tag that corresponds to the type of audio in the clip.

Selecting each tag displays different tools that are suitable for that type of media. There are more options for dialogue audio than any other—and for good reason! Your dialogue sound is probably the most important, and music, prepared special effects (SFX), and ambient sound files are often already mixed and ready to use.



Tag your clips to use the Essential Sound Panel

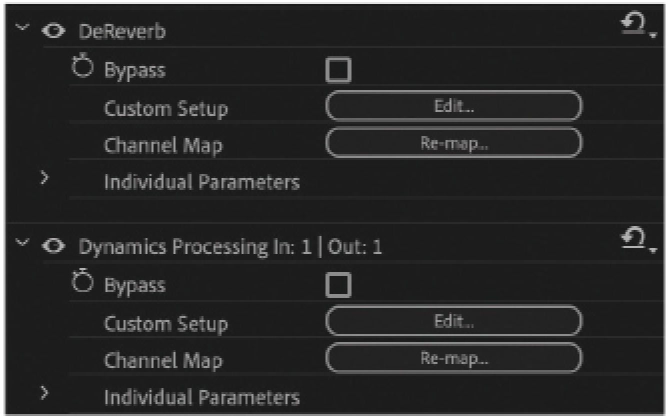
You can also assign one of the following audio types to each clip yourself:

If the wrong type of audio tag is selected, you can click Clear Audio Type at the top of the Essential Sound panel to remove it.

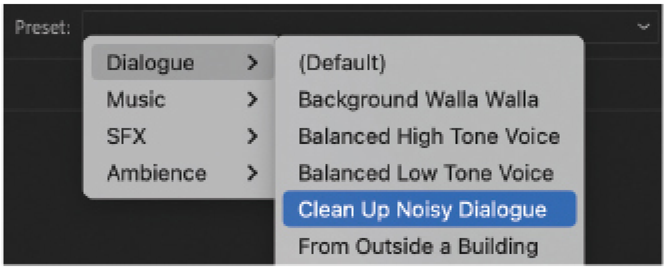
Note

Clicking Auto Tag in the Essential Sound panel will allow Premiere Pro to tag audio clips as audio types automatically. You’ll tend to obtain more accurate results with auto tagging with longer clips.

Every adjustment you apply with the Essential Sound panel actually adds one or more audio effects to your selected clips and modifies the settings for those effects. In a sense, the Essential Sound panel offers an excellent shortcut to achieving great results with simplified controls. After applying adjustments in the Essential Sound panel, you can select a clip and adjust the detailed effect settings in the Effect Controls panel.


DeReverb
Bypass ☐
Custom Setup
Edit...
Channel Map
Re-map...
Individual Parameters
Dynamics Processing In: 1 | Out: 1
Bypass ☐
Custom Setup
Edit...
Channel Map
Re-map...
Individual Parameters

In the following exercises, you'll try several of the adjustments available in the Essential Sound panel. All of the options you set can be stored as a preset, accessible at the top of the Essential Sound panel. Several presets are already available.


Preset:
Dialogue
Music
SFX
Ambience
(Default)
Background Walla Walla
Balanced High Tone Voice
Balanced Low Tone Voice
Clean Up Noisy Dialogue
From Outside a Building

Setting loudness

The Essential Sound panel makes it easy to set the audio level for multiple clips to an appropriate volume for broadcast television.

Let's try this.

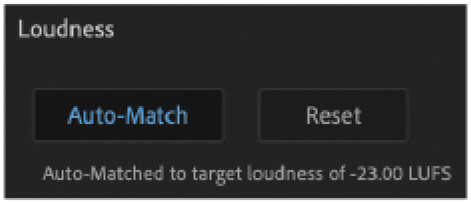
1. Open the sequence 02 Loudness.

   This is the sequence you worked with previously when learning about normalization.

Tip

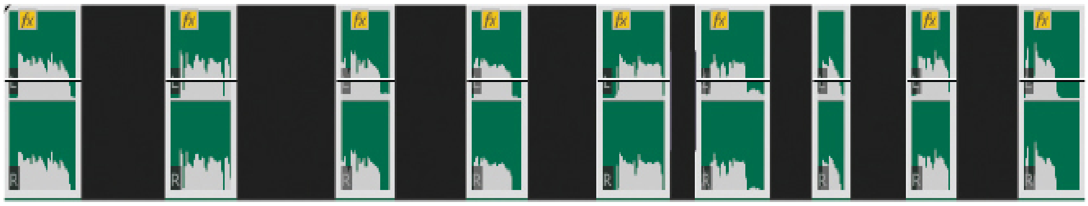
To quickly select all the clips on a single track, press A to choose the Track Select Forward tool, and then hold Shift while you click the first clip you want to select. All the other clips on the track that follow the clip you clicked will be selected. Afterward, remember to switch back to the Selection tool by pressing V.

2. Increase the height of the Audio 1 track, and zoom in a little so you can see the voice-over clips clearly.
3. Play the sequence to hear the different levels for the voice-over clips.
4. Select all the voice-over clips. The easiest way is to lasso across them, being careful not to select any of the other clips in the sequence.
5. In the Essential Sound panel, click the Dialogue button. This assigns the Dialogue audio type to these clips.
6. If necessary, click the title of the Loudness category to display the Loudness options. Clicking a category in this way is a little like clicking a disclosure triangle in the Effect Controls panel—options display or hide when you click.
7. Click Auto-Match.



Auto-Matched to target loudness of -23.00 LUFS

Premiere Pro analyzes each clip and automatically adjusts Audio Gain to achieve the –23 LUFS standard level for broadcast television dialogue. LUFS stands for Loudness Units relative to full scale.



As with normalization, which also adjusts clip gain, this adjustment updates the waveforms for the clips.

If you are producing content for distribution via the internet, there’s a good chance you will choose another audio level.

You can adjust the level for multiple selected clips, after using Auto-Match, using the Volume control at the bottom of the Essential Sound panel.

8. Play the sequence to hear the adjustment.

About the Loudness scale

Historically, audio level was described exclusively in *decibels* (dB). You’ll find the decibel scale a useful reference all throughout production and post-production as it is still commonly used.

Peak level (the loudest moment of a clip’s audio level) is often used to set limits for audio level. Although it’s a useful reference, it doesn’t account for the overall power or energy in a soundtrack, and it’s common to produce a mix that sets every part of the soundtrack louder than is natural, for dramatic effect. A whisper, for example, can sound as loud as a shout. As long as the peak level of the audio is within prescribed limits, it might be allowed for broadcast television.

This is why, in some parts of the world, so many television commercials sound as loud as they do—even the quiet sections of the soundtrack are loud.

Intended to resolve this issue, the widely adopted *Loudness scale* measures the total energy over time. When a Loudness limit is used, it’s okay for content to have loud sections, but the total amount of energy in the soundtrack per minute can’t rise above the level set.

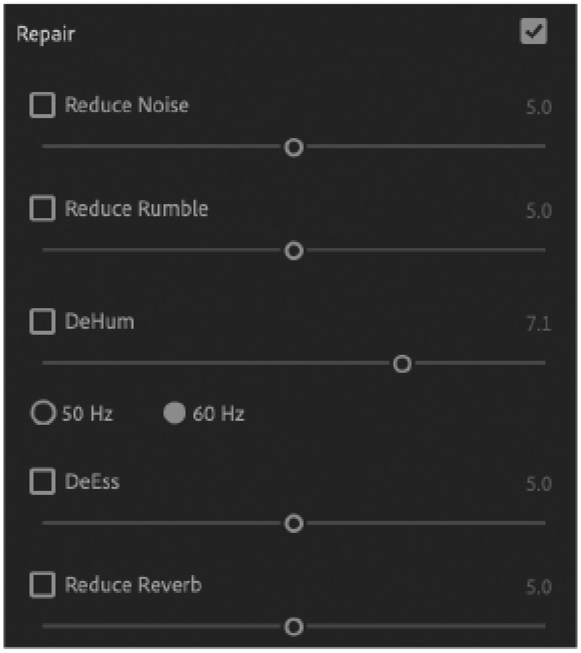
If you are producing content for broadcast television, you will almost certainly use the Loudness scale when assessing your audio mix, and this is the scale the Essential Sound panel uses.

Repairing audio

However hard you try to capture clean audio on location, it’s likely some of your footage will have unwanted background noise.

The Essential Sound panel has a number of ways to clean up dialogue clips. Take a look at the Repair category to reveal the options for repairing dialogue.

- **Reduce Noise:** Reduce the level of unwanted noises in the background, like the sound of an air-conditioning unit, rustling clothes, or background hiss.
- **Reduce Rumble:** Reduce low-frequency sounds, such as engine noise or some types of wind noise.



Repair ☑

☐ Reduce Noise 5.0

☐ Reduce Rumble 5.0

☐ DeHum 7.1

○ 50 Hz ● 60 Hz

☐ DeEss 5.0

☐ Reduce Reverb 5.0

- **DeHum:** Reduce electrical interference hum. In North and South America, this is in the 60 Hz range, while in Europe, Asia, and Africa, it’s in the 50 Hz range. If your microphone cable was lying next to a power cable, you may have this intrusive but easy-to-remove unwanted sound.
- **DeEss:** Reduce harsh, high-frequency “ess”-like sounds common in the sibilance part of voice recordings.
- **Reduce Reverb:** Reduce the effect of reflected sounds to make vocals clearer. When recording in an environment with a lot of reflective

surfaces, some of the sound may be reflected back to the microphone as reverb.

Different clips are likely to benefit from one or more of these cleanup features, and often you will use a combination.

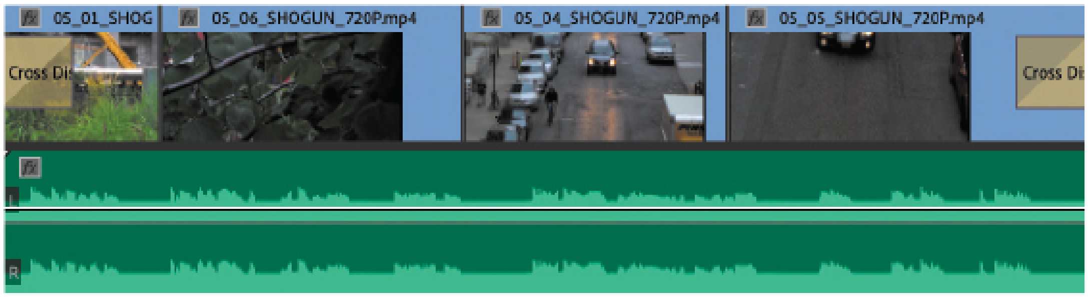
The default settings have high enough intensity to make it clear when a repair is enabled or disabled. In most cases, you will obtain the best results by starting with a setting of 0, playing the audio, and increasing the effect intensity during playback until you are happy with the result, minimizing potential distortion.

Let’s try cleaning up some power hum.

▶ **Tip**

You can turn the display of audio and video clip names on and off by choosing the appropriate options from the Timeline Display Settings menu.

1. Open the sequence 03 Noise Reduction.



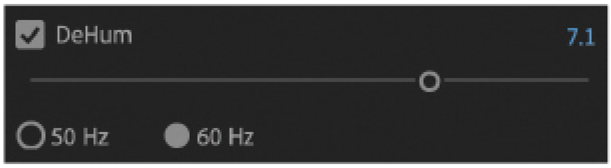
2. Play the sequence to listen to the voice-over.

   This is a simple sequence, with a voice-over accompanying some visuals. There’s a loud electrical interference power hum in the audio. If you can’t hear the hum, your speakers may not be able to reproduce audio at sufficiently low frequencies—try listening with headphones.

3. Select the voice-over clip in the sequence.

   The clip has already been designated as dialogue in the Essential Sound panel, so the dialogue audio options are displayed.

4. If it’s not already open, click the Repair heading in the Essential Sound panel to display the options. Select DeHum to turn it on.



☑ DeHum 7.1

○ 50 Hz ● 60 Hz

5. Play the sequence to hear the difference.

The impact is significant! The electrical interference hum was loud but at a specific frequency, which makes removing it relatively straightforward.

▶ **Tip**

For more challenging audio cleanup, when the repair options in Premiere Pro don’t give you a result that is clean enough, try Adobe Audition, which has advanced noise reduction features. Learn more in *Adobe Audition CC Classroom in a Book, 2nd Edition*.

If the amount of DeHum impacts the speech in the voice-over, try dragging the slider to adjust the amount.

This example clip has 60 Hz hum, so the default option of 60 Hz is suitable. If the default option doesn’t work, try switching to 50 Hz.

After adjusting the DeHum control, check the start of the clip. You may discover a tiny amount of hum remains before the repair is applied. To remove this, add a short crossfade at the beginning of the clip.

Reducing noise and reverb

In addition to specific types of background noise like hum and rumble, Premiere Pro offers advanced noise reduction and reverb reduction tools. These audio cleanup effects have simple controls in the Essential Sound panel and more advanced options when accessed via the Effect Controls panel.

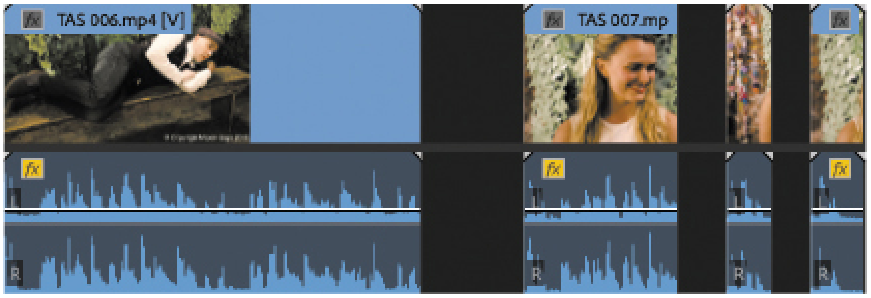
Reducing noise

Let’s try reducing noise first.

1. Open the sequence 04 Auto Noise and Reverb. This sequence has clips suffering from background noise *and* reverberation. Play the sequence to familiarize yourself with this challenging audio—lots of unwanted background noise and reverb because it was recorded at a noisy location.

© Copyright Maxim Jago 2018

The clips in this sequence have already been assigned the Dialogue audio type in the Essential Sound panel, and the Auto-Match option in the Loudness category has been applied.



2. Select the first clip in the sequence. In the Repair section of the Essential Sound panel, select Reduce Noise. The default setting for the effect intensity is 5.0.

▶ Tip

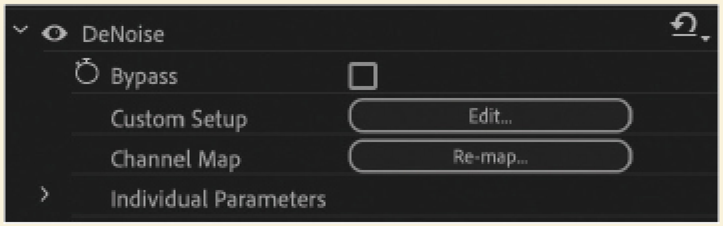
You can reset any slider in the Essential Sound panel to its default value by double-clicking the control.

3. Play the clip in the sequence to hear the difference. The loud rumble that begins at about 00:00:10:00 is immediately much quieter.
4. As with many effects, trial and error will usually yield the best results. Try adjusting the effect intensity during playback. If the effect is too strong, speech might begin to sound distorted. If the effect is not strong enough, too much of the unwanted background sound might remain. When you finish experimenting, leave the setting on 5.0.

   Part of the challenge in working with this audio is that some of the low-frequency background sound is close to some of the frequencies of the speech, making it harder to automatically remove. Let’s use more advanced settings.
5. Make sure the first clip is still selected in the Timeline panel, and open the Effect Controls panel. Click the Edit button to access the advanced controls for the DeNoise effect, which Premiere Pro applied to the clip when you enabled Reduce Noise in the Essential Sound panel.

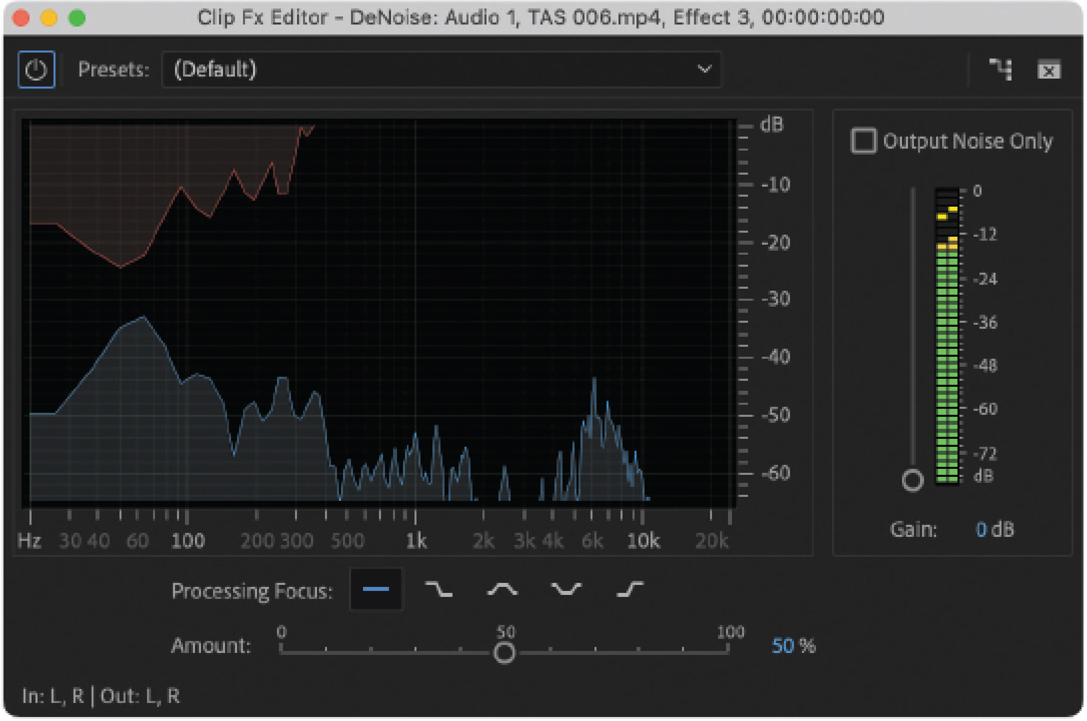
The Essential Sound panel and the Effect Controls panel

As soon as you enable Reduce Noise in the Essential Sound panel, Premiere Pro applies a DeNoise effect to the selected sequence clip, which you’ll see in the Effect Controls panel. In fact, every adjustment you make in the Essential Sound panel will result in a new effect or adjustments to existing effects accessible in the Effect Controls panel.



You can think of the Essential Sound panel as an intelligent shortcut to ideal audio effects with optimized settings that you can adjust in the Effect Controls panel. If you can’t see the Effect Controls panel, you can access it via the Window menu.

The Clip Fx Editor - DeNoise window opens. During playback, the DeNoise effect graph shows the originally detected noise (in blue at the bottom) and the cleanup adjustment applied (in red at the top). While the effect controls are open, you can still interact with the Timeline panel, placing the playhead and playing the sequence.



Clip Fx Editor - DeNoise: Audio 1, TAS 006.mp4, Effect 3, 00:00:00:00

Presets: (Default)

☐ Output Noise Only

Gain: 0 dB

Amount: 50 %

In: L, R | Out: L, R

The left end of the graph shows low frequencies, and the right end shows high frequencies.

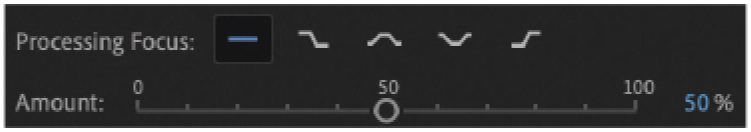
6. Play the clip again and pay particular attention to the activity in the graph when there is no speech, only rumble.

   It’s clear that the unwanted rumble is in the low frequencies.

   Take a look at the controls:

- **Presets:** You can choose Heavy or Light Noise Reduction; these two options adjust the Amount setting.
- **Amount:** Use this to adjust the intensity of the effect.
- **Output Noise Only:** Enable this option to hear only the noise that is being removed. This is helpful when assessing whether you’re removing too much of the desired audio.
- **Gain:** When reducing noise, you’ll naturally be reducing the overall level of the audio. You can adjust the overall gain here to compensate. By looking at the level meter before and after applying the effect, you can see how much gain to apply to keep the overall audio at the original level.

The Processing Focus control is a little less self-explanatory.

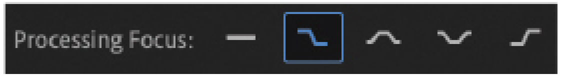


Processing Focus:

Amount: 50 %

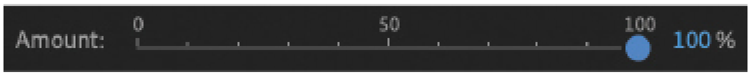
By default, Premiere Pro applies the DeNoise effect to the full frequency range of a clip—that means it applies equally to low, medium, and high tone sounds. Using the Processing Focus control, you can selectively apply the effect to particular frequencies. If you hover your pointer over an option, a tool tip describes it, but you'll probably be able to guess which is which from the shape of the button icons.

7. Click to select the Focus On Lower Frequencies option, and play the clip again. This sounds good, but let's push the effect a little harder.



Processing Focus:

8. Drag the Amount slider up to around 80%, and play the clip again. Next, try setting the slider to 100%, and play the clip.



Amount: 100 %

● Note

When you modify effect settings, related options in the Essential Sound panel are marked with ⚠ as a reminder that you customized the settings. You may need to close the effect editor before a triangle will be displayed.

With the focus on the lower frequencies, even setting the effect to full allows the speech to be audible, and the rumble is almost gone. Even with this more advanced control, you will need to experiment to get the ideal result.

9. For now, set the amount to 80%, and close the Clip Fx Editor - DeNoise window.

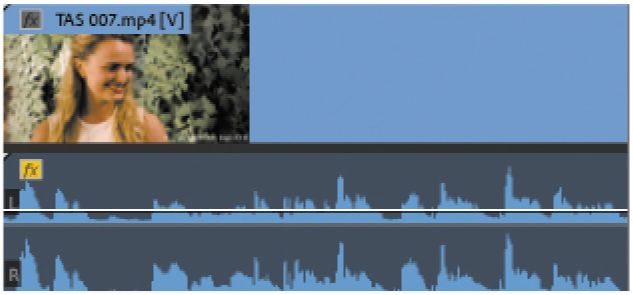
Reducing reverb

The Reduce Reverb option works in a similar way to the Reduce Noise option.

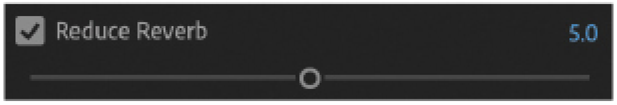
Let’s try it.

1. Listen to the second clip in the sequence. The audio has strong reverb caused by the hard surfaces at the recording location bouncing audio back to the microphone.

   The background noise is less of a challenge in this clip, but the reverb is quite intense.

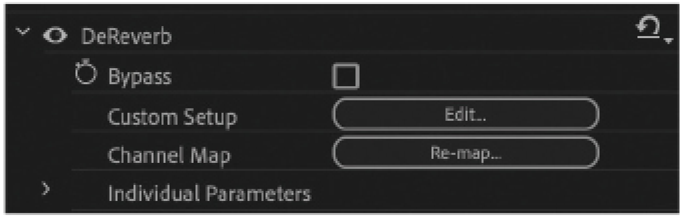
   

2. Select the clip, and select Reduce Reverb under the Repair heading in the Essential Sound panel.

   
   ☑ Reduce Reverb 5.0

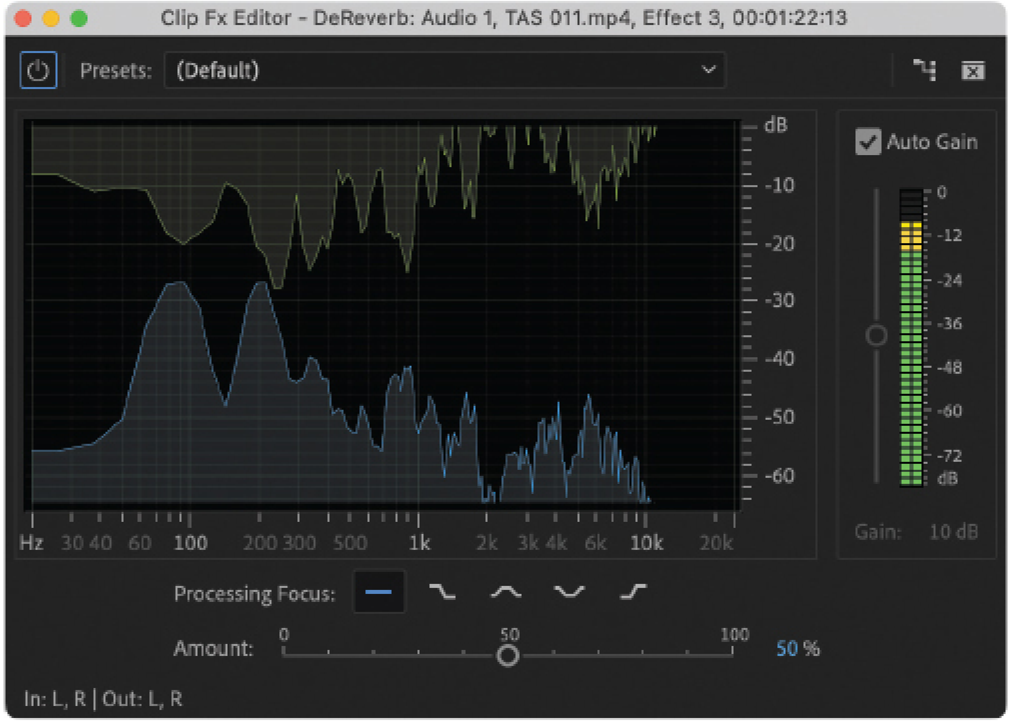
   The difference is dramatic! Just as you finessed the Reduce Noise setting, you should experiment with the Reduce Reverb setting to get the optimum balance between the effect being applied with enough intensity and the speech sounding natural.

   When you selected Reduce Reverb, Premiere Pro applied a DeReverb effect to the clip. You can access the effect controls in the Effect Controls panel.

   
   DeReverb
   Bypass ☐
   Custom Setup Edit...
   Channel Map Re-map...
   Individual Parameters

3. Click the Edit button for the effect in the Effect Controls panel, and play a little of the second clip in the Timeline panel to update the graph

in the Clip Fx Editor - DeReverb window.



Clip Fx Editor - DeReverb: Audio 1, TAS 011.mp4, Effect 3, 00:01:22:13

Presets: (Default)

☑ Auto Gain

Gain: 10 dB

Processing Focus:

Amount: 50 %

In: L, R | Out: L, R

Although the colors are a little different, the DeReverb settings are otherwise almost identical to the DeNoise settings. However, you’ll notice the Auto Gain option in the upper-right corner.

When reducing reverb, a reduced overall level is inevitable. Auto Gain automatically compensates, making this effect even easier to set up.

4. Make sure Auto Gain is selected, and play the clip to compare the result; then close the DeReverb settings window.
5. There are two more clips in this sequence for you to experiment with. Try combining the Reduce Noise and Reduce Reverb options for these clips, with lower values for subtler results.

Enhancing Speech

The Enhance Speech section of the Essential Sound panel has just two controls: an Enhance button and a Mix Amount slider, which allows you to blend the enhanced audio with the original audio to achieve a mix that works best for your media.

This remarkable audio cleanup feature uses Adobe Sensei GenAI technology to generate new, original audio that is separate from but inspired by the audio in your clip. The result is intended to be the audio you *would have wanted* to record.

There are no other controls, and the process is fully automated. The audio processing is also performed on your computer, so there is no need for an internet connection to upload or download the audio for processing on a server.

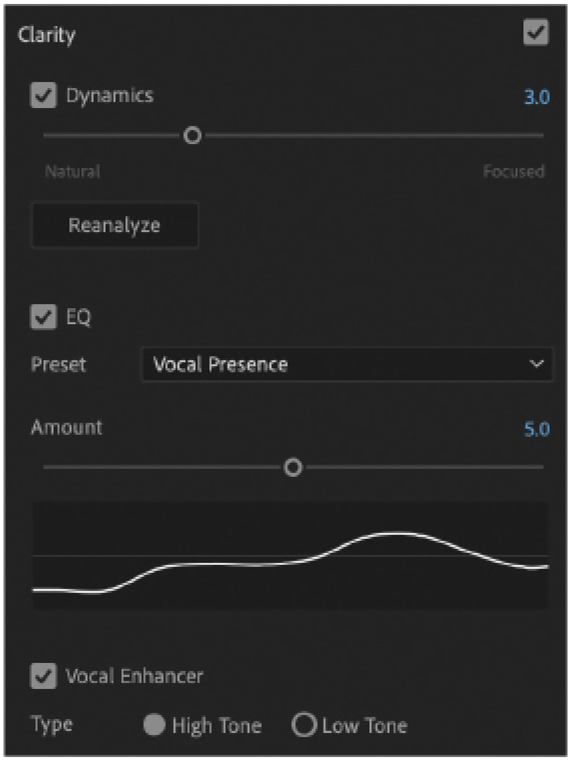
To try this feature with the first clip in the current sequence, first turn off Reduce Noise in the Repair section of the Essential Sound panel. Next, click Enhance in the Enhance Speech section and wait for the processing to complete.

To compare the results with the original clip audio, experiment with the Mix Amount slider.

Improving clarity

The Clarity category in the Essential Sound panel gives you three quick and easy ways to improve the quality of spoken audio:

- **Dynamics:** Increases or decreases the dynamic range of the audio—that is, the range of volume between the quietest and loudest parts of the recording.
- **EQ:** Applies amplitude (volume) adjustments at specific frequencies. A list of presets makes selecting useful settings easy.
- **Vocal Enhancer:** Improves clarity at specific frequencies, depending on your selection of a high-tone or low-tone voice.


Clarity ☑

☑ Dynamics 3.0

☑ EQ

Preset: Vocal Presence

Amount 5.0

☑ Vocal Enhancer

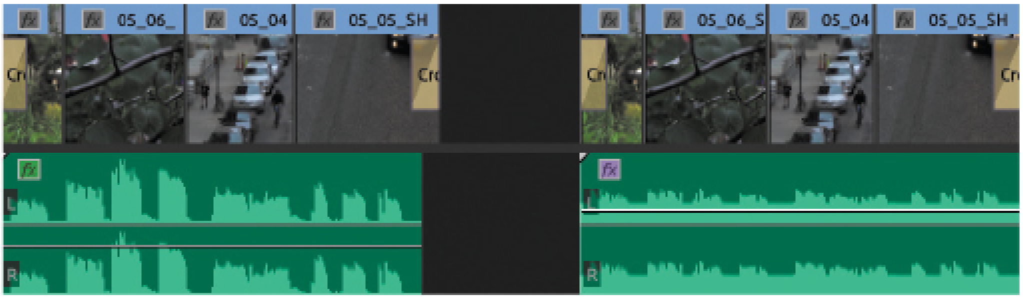
Type ● High Tone ○ Low Tone

Experiment with all three controls, as you’ll find different dialogue recordings will benefit from different combinations of settings.

Let’s try these settings.

1. Open the sequence 05 Clarity.

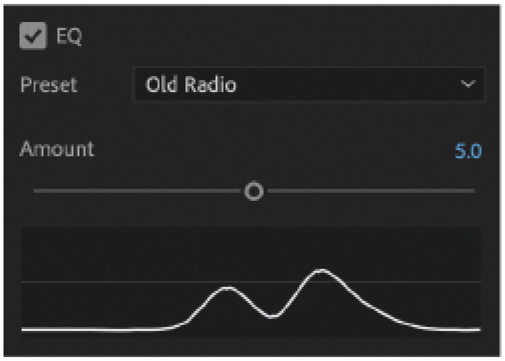
   This sequence has the same content as the 03 Noise Reduction sequence, but there are two versions of the voice-over. The first version is cleaner than the second.

2. Listen to the first voice-over clip.
3. Select the first voice-over clip, and in the Essential Sound panel, scroll down to the Clarity options. You may need to click the Clarity heading to expand the options.

4. Select Dynamics, and experiment with different levels of adjustment. You can play the sequence while making adjustments in the Essential Sound panel, and the effect will be applied “live.” Disable Dynamics when you have tried a few settings.
5. Select EQ and experiment with the Preset options. Some presets, like Old Radio, produce dramatic results!

   When you apply an EQ preset, a diagram illustrating the adjustment appears. This diagram is based on a Parametric Equalizer effect (see “Using the Parametric Equalizer effect” later in this lesson for more on this effect). You can adjust the Amount slider to add more or less of the effect.



☑ EQ

Preset: Old Radio

Amount: 5.0

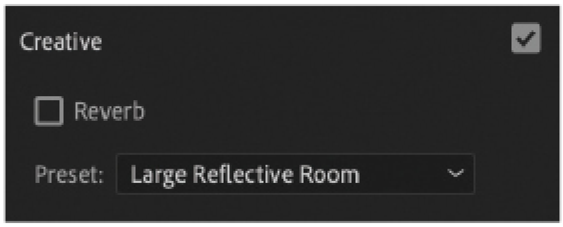
6. Play the second voice-over clip.
7. Select the second voice-over clip, and in the Clarity section of the Essential Sound panel, select Enhance Speech and make sure High Tone is selected.
8. Play the second voice-over clip. Try selecting and deselecting Enhance Speech during playback.

The difference is subtle. In fact, you may need headphones or good-quality studio monitors to clearly detect the improvement. This option clarifies speech to make it more apprehensible, and in some cases, this means reducing the power in the lower frequencies.

Making creative adjustments

Below the Clarity section of the Essential Sound panel is the Creative section.

This has just one adjustment, Reverb. The effect can be similar to recording in a large room with lots of reflective surfaces, or it can be subtler.



Experiment with this effect on the first voice-over clip in the 05 Clarity sequence.

Just a small amount of reverb can “thicken” a voice to give it more presence.

Adjusting volume

In addition to adjusting the gain for clips in the Project panel, setting the volume level for clips in a sequence, and applying an automated Loudness adjustment, you can also set clip volume using the option at the bottom of the Essential Sound panel.

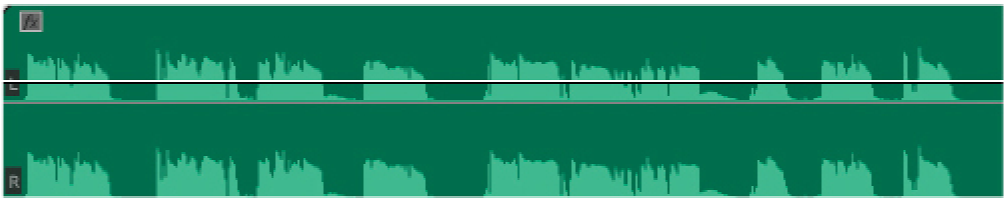
It’s curious that this additional option exists—especially considering the number of ways you can already adjust the volume of your clips.

But there’s something special about this volume control: No matter how much you change the volume of your clips using this control, the level will not distort. That is, the clips won’t *override* (become so loud that the loudest parts of the audio cannot be played).

Try this now.

1. Open the sequence 06 Level.

   This sequence contains just one clip—a reasonably loud version of the voice-over clip you have heard already.



2. Select the clip and play the sequence. While the sequence plays, use the Clip Volume Level adjustment to increase and decrease the playback level.
3. Try increasing the level to the maximum, +15 dB.

   No matter how much you adjust the audio level, it won’t override. Even if you combine a clip gain increase with a clip volume increase (using the rubber band) and then apply this adjustment, the clip will not override.
4. Reset the Clip Volume Level adjustment by double-clicking the slider.

● **Note**

It’s a good idea to reset controls in the Essential Sound panel to their default values before making adjustments. You can do this quickly by double-clicking a control.

Using additional audio effects

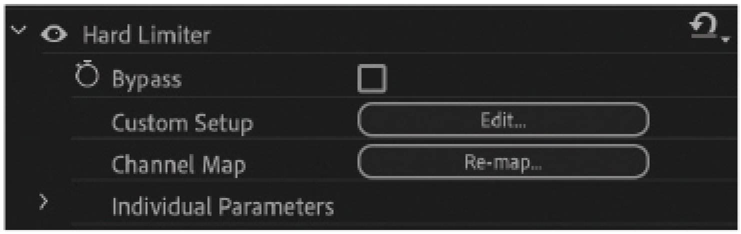
As mentioned at the beginning of this lesson, there are many audio effects available in the Effects panel.

The adjustments you have made with the Essential Sound panel have resulted in regular audio effects being added to clips automatically as you worked.

Setting up effects in this way is quicker because all of the Essential Sound panel adjustments work like presets—as soon as you have set things the way you want them in the Essential Sound panel, the effects are set up appropriately in the Effect Controls panel.

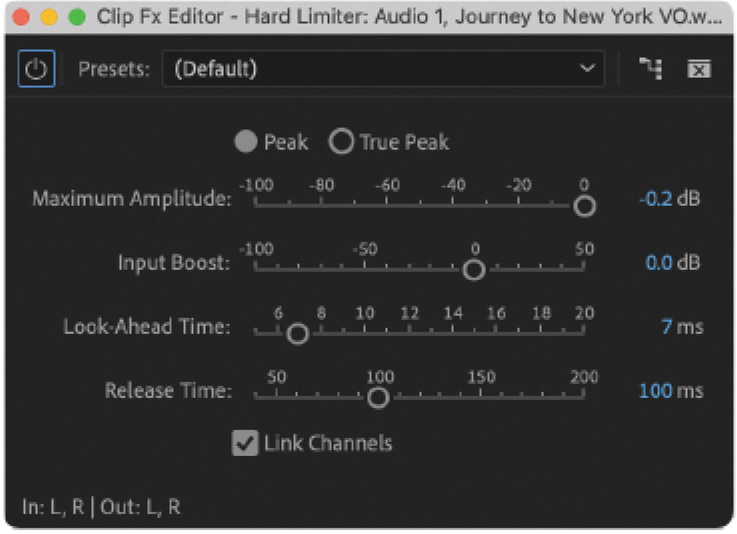
Take a look now at the Effect Controls panel, with the clip you worked on in the 06 Level sequence selected.

When you made a Clip Volume Level adjustment in the Essential Sound panel, Premiere Pro applied a Hard Limiter effect to the clip, with settings to match the adjustment you applied.


Hard Limiter
Bypass ☐
Custom Setup
Edit...
Channel Map
Re-map...
Individual Parameters

Click the Edit button for the Hard Limiter effect in the Effect Controls panel, and you’ll discover all of the settings for this advanced effect are available in case you’d like to change them. If you make changes in the Essential Sound panel, you can even watch the controls update dynamically in the Effect Controls panel.

In most cases, the settings applied by the Essential Sound panel will be suitable, but the option to make further subtle changes will always be available.


Clip Fx Editor - Hard Limiter: Audio 1, Journey to New York VO.w...

Presets: (Default)

● Peak ○ True Peak

Maximum Amplitude: -0.2 dB

Input Boost: 0.0 dB

Look-Ahead Time: 7 ms

Release Time: 100 ms

☑ Link Channels

In: L, R | Out: L, R

-100
-80
-60
-40
-20
0
-100
-50
0
50
6
8
10
12
14
16
18
20
50
100
150
200

Using Essential Sound panel presets

If you expect to use a combination of Essential Sound panel settings often, consider creating a preset. To create a preset, select an audio type, apply some settings, and click the Save Settings As A Preset button at the top of the Essential Sound panel. Once created, you can apply a preset without first assigning the audio type.

Essential Sound panel presets are not fixed—you can apply a preset, make changes to the settings, and even create a new preset based on the adjustments you have made.

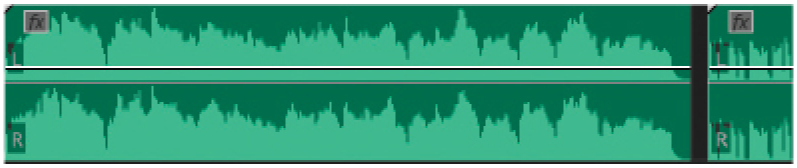
Using the Parametric Equalizer effect

The Parametric Equalizer effect offers a nuanced and intuitive interface for precise audio level adjustment at specific frequencies.

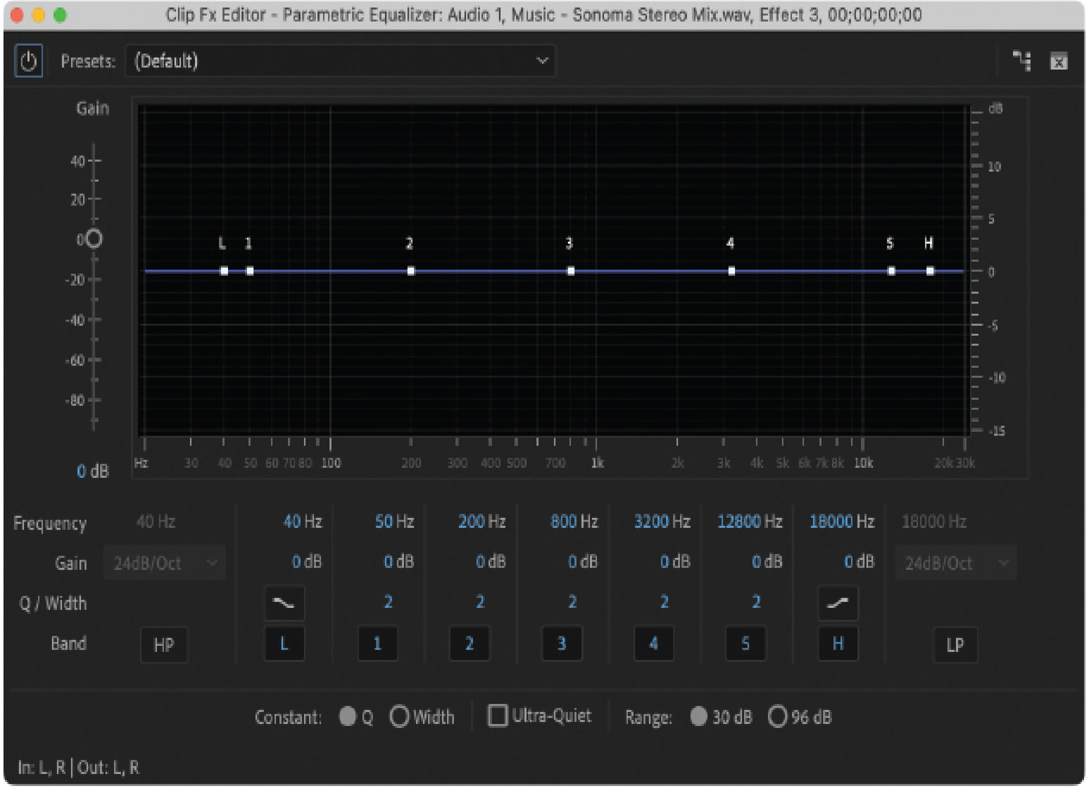
It includes a graphic interface you can use to drag level adjustment controls that are linked together to achieve nuanced, natural-sounding audio.

Let’s try this effect.

1. Open the sequence 07 Full Parametric EQ. This sequence has one musical clip and one voice-over clip.



2. Locate the Parametric Equalizer effect in the Effects panel (try using the Search box at the top of the window), and drag the effect onto the first clip.
3. Make sure the clip is selected, and in the Effect Controls panel, click the Edit button to access the Custom Setup controls for the Parametric Equalizer effect.


Clip Fx Editor - Parametric Equalizer: Audio 1, Music - Sonoma Stereo Mix.wav, Effect 3, 00;00;00;00
Gain
40
20
0
-20
-40
-60
-80
0 dB
dB
10
5
0
-5
-10
-15
L
1
2
3
4
5
H
Hz
30
40
50
60
70
80
100
200
300
400
500
700
1k
2k
3k
4k
5k
6k
7k
8k
10k
20k
30k

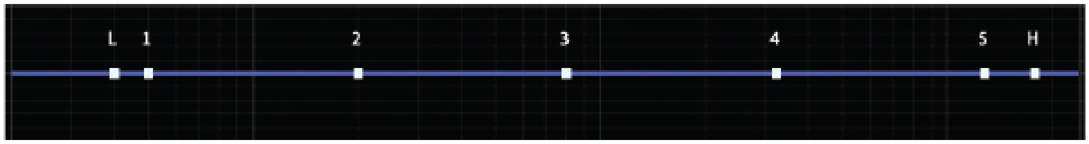
Presets: (Default)

	HP	L	1	2	3	4	5	H	LP
Frequency	40 Hz	40 Hz	50 Hz	200 Hz	800 Hz	3200 Hz	12800 Hz	18000 Hz	18000 Hz
Gain	24dB/Oct	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	0 dB	24dB/Oct
Q / Width			2	2	2	2	2		
Band	HP	L	1	2	3	4	5	H	LP

Constant: ● Q ○ Width ☐ Ultra-Quiet Range: ● 30 dB ○ 96 dB

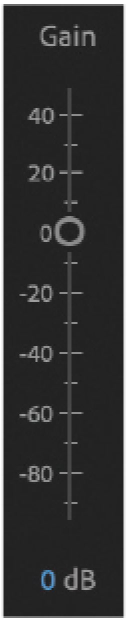
In: L, R | Out: L, R

The horizontal axis of the graphic control area indicates frequency, while the vertical axis shows amplitude. The blue line across the middle of the graph represents any adjustments you have made.



Wherever the blue line is higher or lower in the display, adjustments are made to the audio level at those frequencies. You can reshape the line by dragging any of the five main control points directly, as well as the Low Pass (labeled *L*) and High Pass (labeled *H*) controls at the ends.

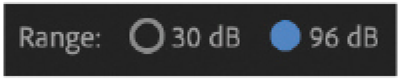
On the left is an overall Gain level adjustment, which offers a quick fix if the changes you make result in audio that is too loud or too quiet overall.


Gain
40
20
0
-20
-40
-60
-80
0 dB

4. Play the clip to get familiar with its sound. The graphic control area displays the level throughout the frequency range, just as the DeHum and DeReverb effects did.

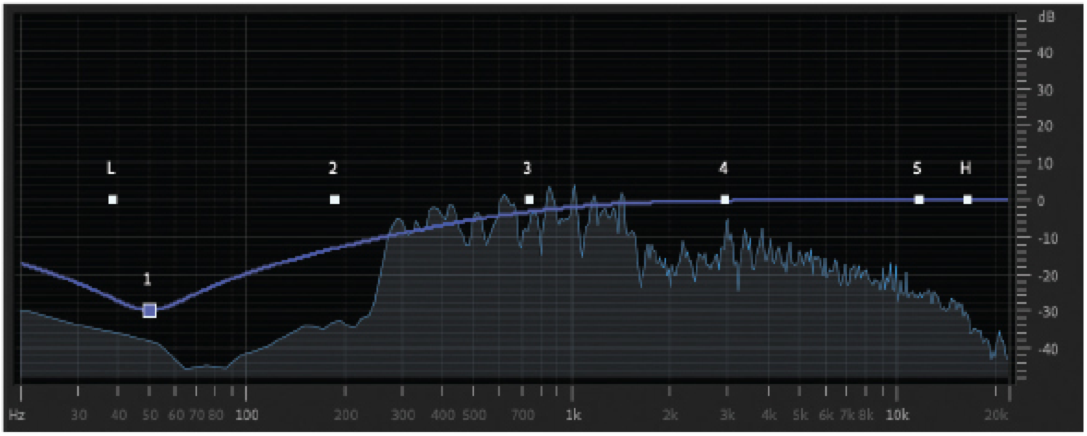
   At the bottom of the dialog box, there’s a Range option. By default, the Parametric Equalizer effect graph allows adjustments up to +/–15 dB.

   Change Range to 96 dB now, so you can make adjustments up to +/–48 dB.



Range: ○ 30 dB ● 96 dB

5. Drag Control Point 1 on the blue line quite a long way down in the graph to reduce the audio level at low frequencies. Listen to the music again.


L
1
2
3
4
5
H
dB
40
30
20
10
0
-10
-20
-30
-40
Hz
30
40
50
60
70
80
100
200
300
400
500
700
1k
2k
3k
4k
5k
6k
7k
8k
10k
20k

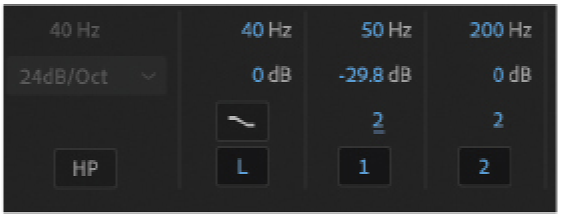
Changes you make to a specific frequency reshape the blue line, impacting surrounding frequencies and resulting in a more natural sound.

The control points you drag have a range of influence that is defined by their Q setting.

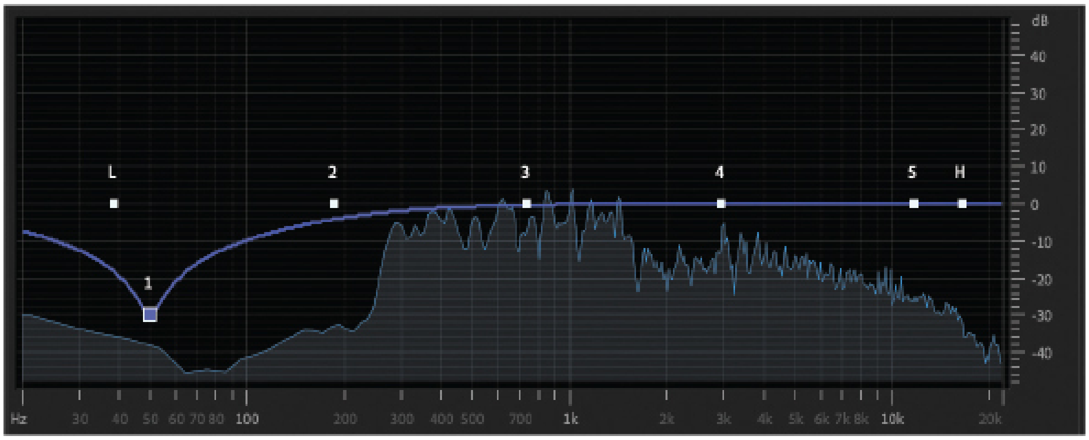
Adjustments made to the blue line update the detailed controls below. These two areas of the dialog box are connected—adjust one and the other updates automatically.

The control point numbers are at the bottom of each column of settings, and they double up as an enable/disable toggle for the control point.

In the previous example, Control Point 1 was set to 50 Hz (which is very low frequency), with a gain adjustment of –29.8 dB (which is a big gain reduction) and a Q of 2 (which is quite a wide curve for the blue line).


40 Hz
24dB/Oct
HP
40 Hz
0 dB
L
50 Hz
-29.8 dB
2
1
200 Hz
0 dB
2
2

6. Change the Q factor for Control Point 1 from 2 to 7. You can click the 2 and type in a new setting directly.


L
2
3
4
5
H
1
dB
40
30
20
10
0
-10
-20
-30
-40
Hz
30
40
50
60
70
80
100
200
300
400
500
700
1k
2k
3k
4k
5k
6k
7k
8k
10k
20k

The line has a much sharper curve, so the adjustment you are making now applies to fewer frequencies.

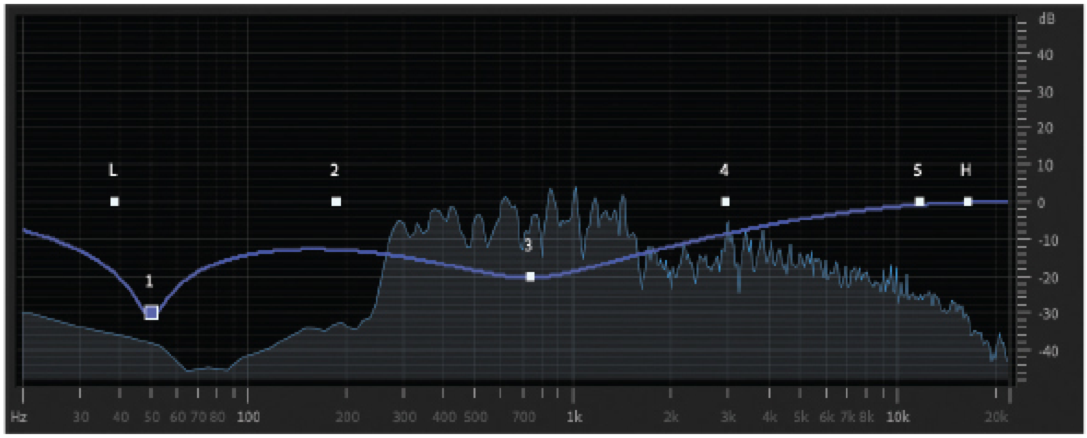
7. Play the sequence to hear the changes.

   Let’s refine the vocals.

8. Voices are mostly in the range of 100–1000 Hz. Control Point 3 is at 800 Hz by default, which is in the most prominent portion of the vocal range. Drag Control Point 3 down to about –20 dB, and set the Q factor to 1 for a very broad adjustment. You can also click the blue numbers to add these settings.

   ▶ **Tip**

   Another way to use the Parametric Equalizer effect is to target a specific frequency and either boost it or cut it. You can use this effect to cut a particular frequency, like a high-frequency noise or a low hum.

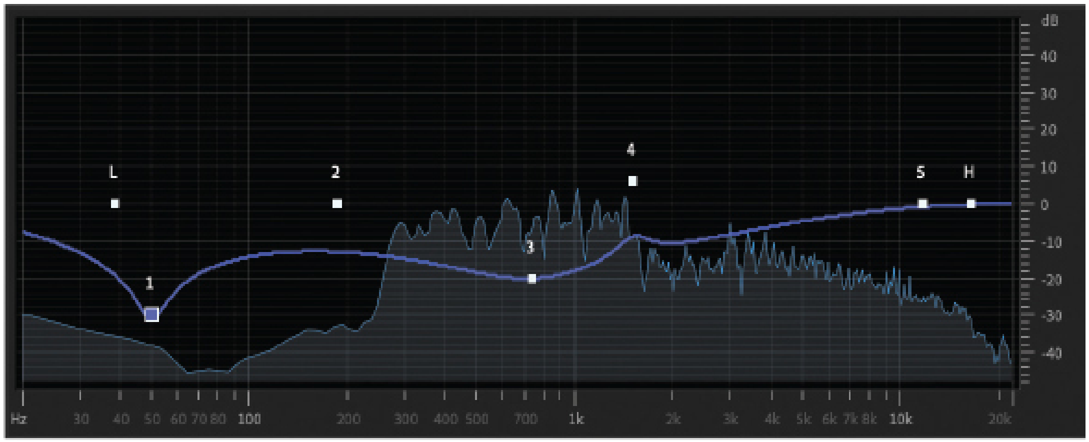


9. Play the sequence to hear the changes. The vocals are much quieter.

10. Drag Control Point 4 to around 1500 Hz, with a gain of +6.0 dB. Adjust the Q factor to **3** for more precise adjustment on the EQ adjustment.

    ● **Note**

    Avoid setting the volume too high (the Audio Meters will show some red, and the peak monitors will light up). This can lead to distortion.



11. Play the sequence to hear the changes.
12. Drag the High Pass control (the H control) down, setting its gain to around −8.0 dB to make the highest frequencies quieter.
13. Use the Gain control to adjust the overall level. You may need to see your audio meters to find out whether your mix is right.

> ▶ Tip
>
> If your audio meters are not displayed, you can access them by choosing Window > Audio Meters.

14. Close the Parametric Equalizer settings.
15. Play the sequence to hear the changes.

These are dramatic changes intended to illustrate a technique. Of course, you’ll usually make subtler adjustments.

One of the most common uses for the Parametric Equalizer effect is for improving the quality of vocals. The second clip in the sequence is a voice-over clip. Use this to experiment with the Parametric Equalizer effect. The quality of the audio is already acceptable, but you should be able to add nuance and power to the speech with subtle adjustments using this effect.

Audio adjustments and effects can be modified during playback. You might want to enable looping playback in the Program Monitor rather than clicking repeatedly to play a clip or sequence.

You can enable looping playback by choosing Loop from the Program Monitor Settings menu.

There are also useful additional buttons available in the Program Monitor Button Editor.

- Loop: This toggles looped playback on and off. If you have set In and Out points, playback will loop between them.
- Play Video In To Out: If you have set In and Out points, the sequence will play between them and stop.

Audio Plug-in Manager

It’s easy to install third-party plug-ins. Choose Premiere Pro > Settings > Audio (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Audio (Windows). Then click Manage Audio Plug-ins.

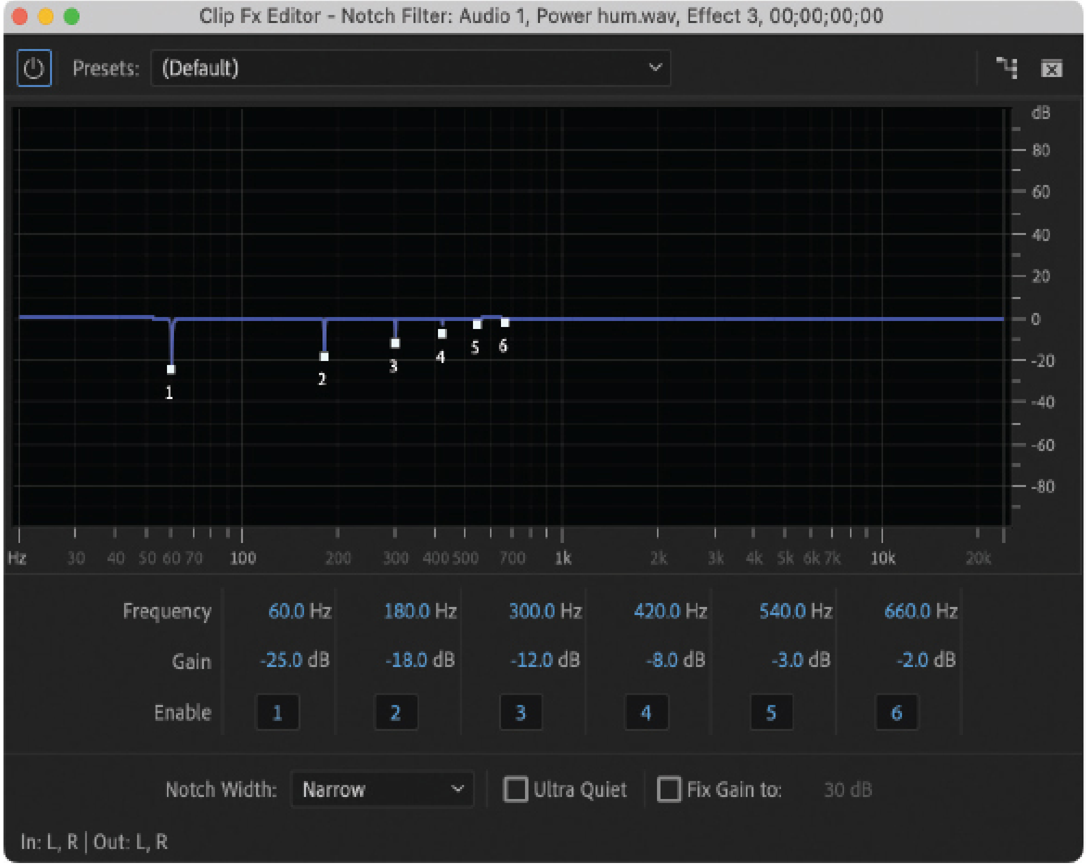
1. If you would like to add a directory that contains AU (macOS only) or VST plug-ins, click the Add button.
2. If needed, click the Scan For Plug-Ins button to find all available plug-ins.
3. Click the Enable All button to activate all of the plug-ins, or select individual plug-ins to activate them alone.
4. Click OK to apply your changes.

Using the Notch effect

The Notch effect removes frequencies near a specified value. The effect targets a frequency range and eliminates those sounds. The effect works well for removing radio interference hum and other electrical interference.

1. Open the sequence 08 Notch Filter.

2. Play the sequence and listen for the electrical hum. You can hear fluorescent light bulbs buzzing.
3. In the Effects panel, locate the Notch Filter effect (not the Simple Notch Filter effect) and apply it to the clip in the sequence. When you do, the clip is automatically selected, so the effect controls will appear in the Effect Controls panel.
4. In the Effect Controls panel, click the Edit button for the Notch Filter effect.



Clip Fx Editor - Notch Filter: Audio 1, Power hum.wav, Effect 3, 00;00;00;00

Presets: (Default)

Frequency	60.0 Hz	180.0 Hz	300.0 Hz	420.0 Hz	540.0 Hz	660.0 Hz
Gain	-25.0 dB	-18.0 dB	-12.0 dB	-8.0 dB	-3.0 dB	-2.0 dB
Enable	1	2	3	4	5	6

Notch Width: Narrow ☐ Ultra Quiet ☐ Fix Gain to: 30 dB

In: L, R | Out: L, R

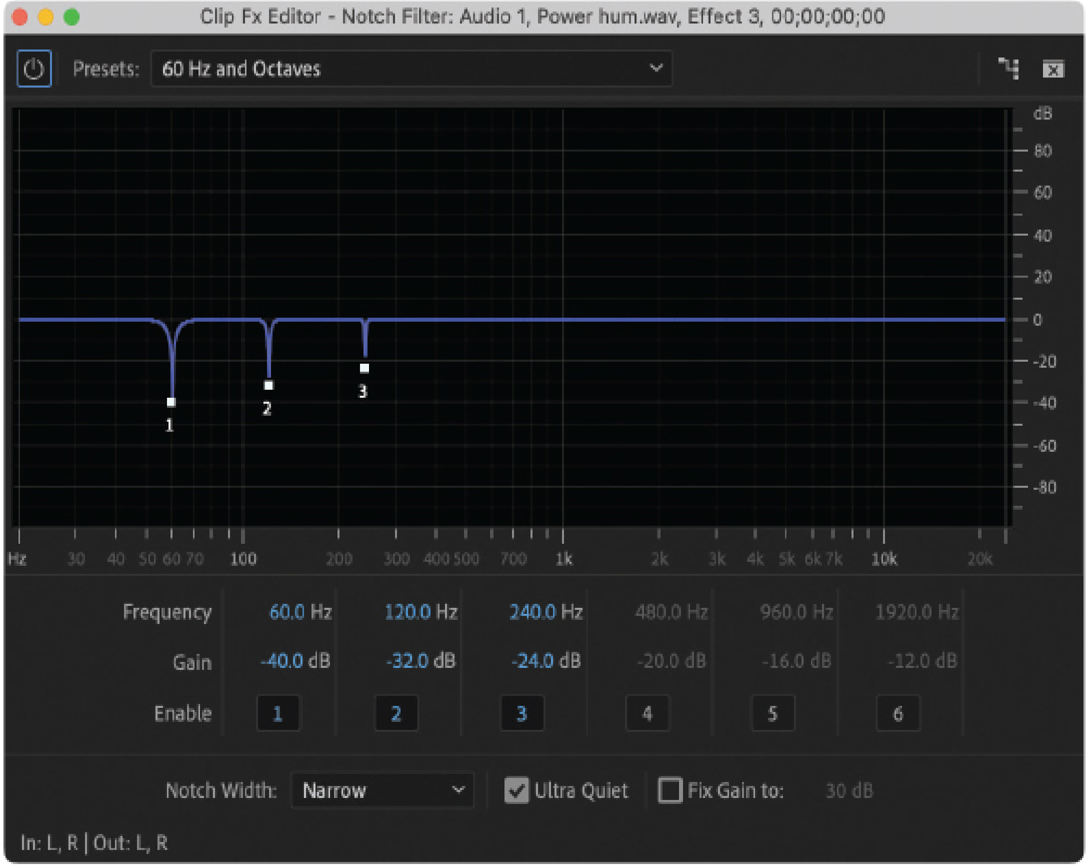
The Notch Filter effect looks a lot like the Parametric Equalizer effect and functions in a similar way. However, you will notice there's no Q control, which sets the sharpness of the curves. By default each adjustment is extremely acute, and a Notch Width menu allows you to adjust the curves.

5. While playing the sequence, experiment with presets and listen to the results.

The presets usually apply multiple adjustments. This is because signal interference is often found in multiple harmonic frequencies.

6. Choose 60 Hz And Octaves from the Presets menu and then listen to the sequence again to find out whether it’s improved.
7. Often, when working with the Notch Filter effect, you’ll listen, adjust, and listen again until you get the settings you need.

   This audio has hum at 60 Hz, 120 Hz, and 240 Hz. These and more have been targeted by the preset you chose. Click the Enable buttons for Control Points 4, 5, and 6 to turn them off.



Clip Fx Editor - Notch Filter: Audio 1, Power hum.wav, Effect 3, 00;00;00;00

Presets: 60 Hz and Octaves

Frequency	60.0 Hz	120.0 Hz	240.0 Hz	480.0 Hz	960.0 Hz	1920.0 Hz
Gain	-40.0 dB	-32.0 dB	-24.0 dB	-20.0 dB	-16.0 dB	-12.0 dB
Enable	1	2	3	4	5	6

Notch Width: Narrow

☑ Ultra Quiet

☐ Fix Gain to: 30 dB

In: L, R | Out: L, R

   Now play the sequence again to review the effect. Even though the interference was at precise frequencies, it made hearing the vocals difficult. Now it’s removed, and everything sounds clearer.

8. Close the effect settings.

When you used the Essential Sound panel to apply DeHum, a similar effect was applied to the clip—the DeHummer.

The Notch Filter effect has slightly more advanced controls, so if you don’t get the result you need using the Essential Sound panel, try this next.

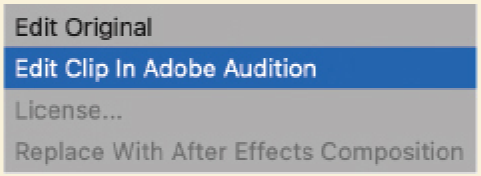
Close this project by choosing File > Close Project. If you are asked if you would like to save, do so.

Removing background noise with Adobe Audition

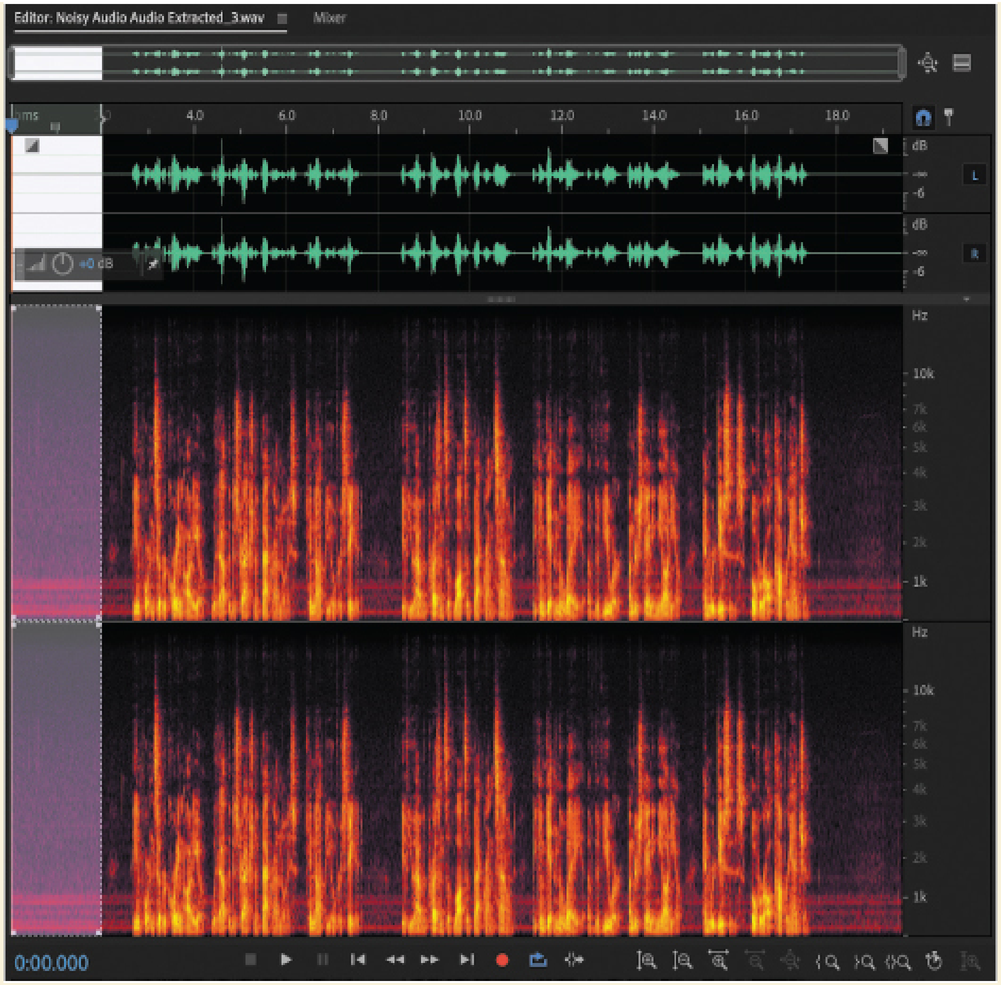
Adobe Audition offers advanced mixing and effects to improve your overall sound. You can send a whole sequence or an individual clip to Audition, directly from Premiere Pro.

If you have Audition installed, you can try the following:

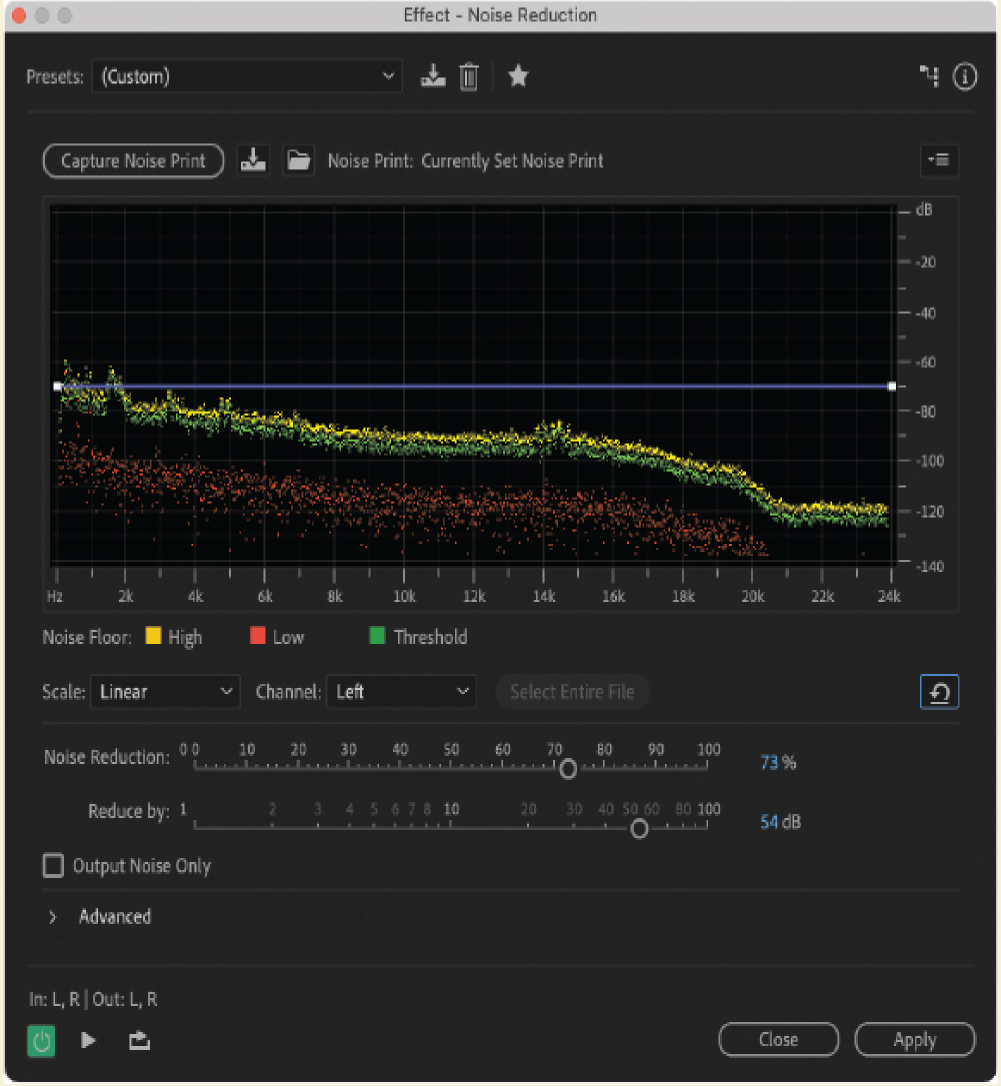
1. In Premiere Pro, re-open your Lesson 11 Working.prproj file, and open the sequence 09 Send to Audition from the Project panel.
2. Right-click the Noisy Audio.aif clip in the Timeline panel and choose Edit Clip In Adobe Audition.

   
   Edit Original
   Edit Clip In Adobe Audition
   License...
   Replace With After Effects Composition

   A new copy of the audio clip is created (with "Audio Extracted" appended to the name) and added to your project, both in the same bin as the original clip and replacing the original clip in the sequence. Audition opens, along with the new clip.
3. In Audition, the stereo clip should be visible in the Editor panel. Audition shows a large waveform for the clip. To use Audition's advanced noise reduction tools, you need to identify part of the clip that's just the noise so Audition knows what to remove.
4. If you don't see Spectral Frequency Display under the waveform, click the Show Spectral Frequency Display button at the top of the application window. Play the clip. The beginning contains a few seconds of just noise, which is perfect for making a selection.
5. Using the Time Selection tool (the I-bar tool in the toolbar), drag to select a quiet area at the beginning of the waveform to highlight a section of noise you just identified.


Editor: Noisy Audio Audio Extracted_3.wav
Mixer
hms
4.0
6.0
8.0
10.0
12.0
14.0
16.0
18.0
dB
-6
L
dB
-6
R
+0 dB
Hz
10k
7k
6k
5k
4k
3k
2k
1k
Hz
10k
7k
6k
5k
4k
3k
2k
1k
0:00.000

6. With the selection active, choose Effects > Noise Reduction/Restoration > Capture Noise Print. You can also press Shift+P. Click OK in the confirmation dialog.
7. Choose Effects > Noise Reduction/Restoration > Noise Reduction (process). You can also press Shift+Command+P (macOS) or Shift+Ctrl+P (Windows). A new panel opens so you can process the noise.
8. Click Select Entire File to select the entire clip.


Effect - Noise Reduction
Capture Noise Print
dB
-20
-40
-60
-80
-100
-120
-140
Hz
2k
4k
6k
8k
10k
12k
14k
16k
18k
20k
22k
24k
Noise Floor:
🟨 High
🟥 Low
🟩 Threshold
Select Entire File
0 0
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
90
100
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
10
20
30
40
50
60
80
100
Advanced
Close
Apply

Presets: (Custom)

Noise Print: Currently Set Noise Print

Scale: Linear

Channel: Left

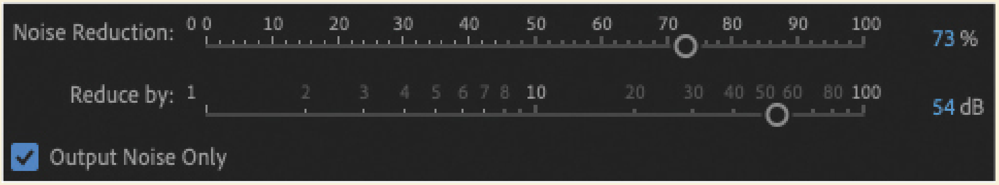
Noise Reduction: 73 %

Reduce by: 54 dB

☐ Output Noise Only

In: L, R | Out: L, R

9. Select Output Noise Only. This allows you to hear only the noise you're removing, which helps you make an accurate selection so you don't accidentally remove too much of the audio you want to keep.
10. Click the Play button at the bottom of the window, and adjust the Noise Reduction and Reduce By sliders to remove noise from the clip. Try not to pull down much or any of the voice.


0 0
10
20
30
40
50
60
70
80
90
100
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
10
20
30
40
50
60
80
100

Noise Reduction: 73 %

Reduce by: 54 dB

☑ Output Noise Only

11. Deselect Output Noise Only, and listen to your cleaned-up audio. You may decide to begin again, selecting a different section of the audio when capturing the noise print to achieve a cleaner result.
12. When you’re happy with the results, click the Apply button to apply the cleanup.
13. Choose File > Close, and save your changes.
14. Saving in Audition automatically updates the clip in Premiere Pro. Switch back to Premiere Pro, where you can listen to the cleaned-up audio clip. You can quit Audition.

Review questions

1 How would you use the Essential Sound panel to set an industry-standard audio level for broadcast television dialogue clips?

2 What’s a quick, easy way to remove electrical interference hum from clips?

3 Where can you find the more detailed controls for the options you set using the Essential Sound panel?

4 How can you send a clip to Adobe Audition directly from the Premiere Pro timeline?

Review answers

1 Select the clips you want to adjust. In the Essential Sound panel, choose Dialogue as the audio type. Then, in the Loudness section, click Auto-Match.

2 Use DeHum in the Essential Sound panel to remove electrical interference hum. Try the 60 Hz or 50 Hz option, depending on the origin of your source footage.

3 Adjustments you make using the Essential Sound panel are applied as effects to clips. You can find the detailed controls by selecting a clip and looking in the Effect Controls panel.

4 Right-click the clip and choose Edit Clip In Adobe Audition.

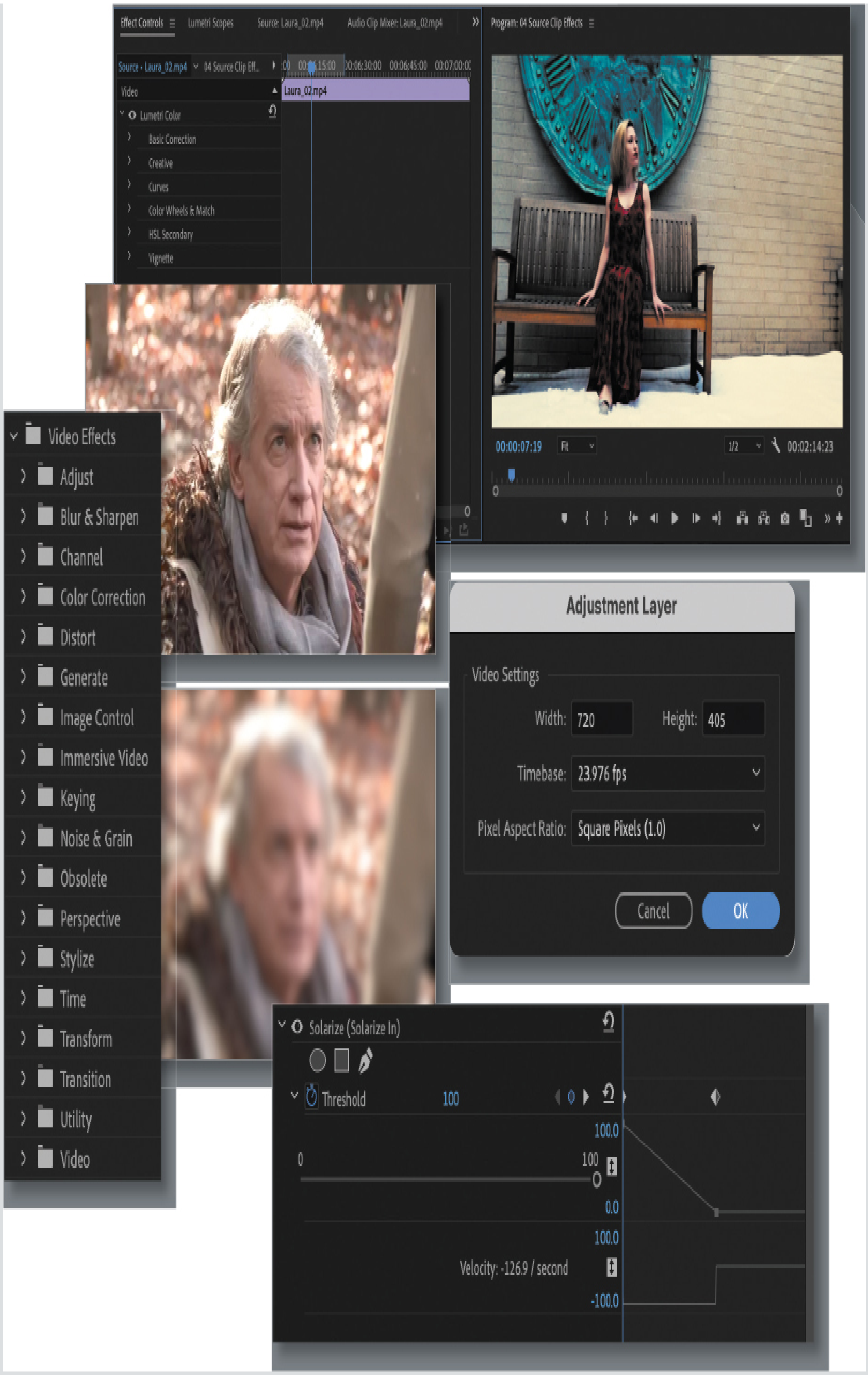
12 Adding Video Effects

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Work with fixed effects.
- Browse effects with the Effects panel.
- Apply and remove effects.
- Mask and track video effects.
- Use keyframing effects.
- Use effect presets.
- Explore frequently used effects.
- Render effects.

This lesson will take about 120 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


Effect Controls
Lumetri Scopes
Source: Laura_02.mp4
Audio Clip Mixer: Laura_02.mp4
Program: 04 Source Clip Effects
Source • Laura_02.mp4
04 Source Clip Eff...
Video
Laura_02.mp4
Lumetri Color
Basic Correction
Creative
Curves
Color Wheels & Match
HSL Secondary
Vignette
00:00:07:19
Fit
1/2
00:02:14:23
Video Effects
Adjust
Blur & Sharpen
Channel
Color Correction
Distort
Generate
Image Control
Immersive Video
Keying
Noise & Grain
Obsolete
Perspective
Stylize
Time
Transform
Transition
Utility
Video
Adjustment Layer
Video Settings
Cancel
OK
Solarize (Solarize In)
Threshold
100
100.0
0
100
0.0
100.0
Velocity: -126.9 / second
-100.0

Width: 720
Height: 405
Timebase: 23.976 fps
Pixel Aspect Ratio: Square Pixels (1.0)

Adobe Premiere Pro features more than 80 video effects. In this lesson, you’ll learn the main skills you need to work with all kinds of effects, as well as some of the more advanced workflows. Most effects come with an array of controls, almost all of which you can change over time using keyframes.

Starting the lesson

You might use video effects for many reasons. They can solve problems with image quality, such as under exposure or a color balance offset. They can create complex composite video effects using techniques such as chromakey. They can also help solve a number of production problems, such as camera shake or a poorly lit subject.

● **Note**

> To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

1. Open Lesson 12.prproj.
2. Save the project as Lesson 12 **Working.prproj.**
3. Switch to the Effects workspace by choosing Effects from the Workspaces menu.
4. Reset the workspace by returning to the Workspaces menu and choosing Reset To Saved Layout.

Effects can also serve stylistic purposes. You can distort footage or alter its color, and you can animate the size and position of a clip within the frame. The exciting challenge is in knowing when to use an effect and when to keep it simple.

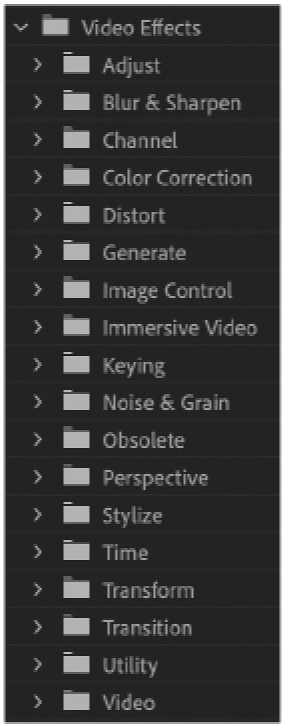
Standard effects can be constrained within elliptical or polygon masks, and these masks can automatically track your footage. For example, you might blur someone’s face to hide their identity and have the blur follow them as they move through the shot. You can use the same feature to relight a scene in post-production.

Working with video effects

You already know how to apply effects and change their settings. You can drag a video effect onto a clip, as you have already done with audio effects, or you can select the clip (or multiple clips) and double-click the effect in the Effects panel. You can combine as many effects as you want on a single clip, which can produce surprising results. You can use an adjustment layer to add effects to a collection of clips.

When it comes to deciding which video effects to use, the number of choices in Premiere Pro can be a little overwhelming. Plus, *many* additional effects are available from third-party manufacturers for sale or free of charge.

Although the range of effects and their controls can be complex, the techniques you’ll use to apply, adjust, and remove effects are straightforward and consistent.


Video Effects
Adjust
Blur & Sharpen
Channel
Color Correction
Distort
Generate
Image Control
Immersive Video
Keying
Noise & Grain
Obsolete
Perspective
Stylize
Time
Transform
Transition
Utility
Video

Modifying fixed effects

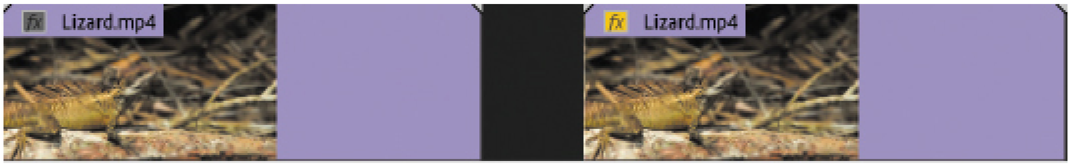
When you add a clip to a sequence, it will automatically have a few effects applied. These effects are called *fixed* effects, or *intrinsic* effects, and you can think of them as controls for the usual geometric, opacity, speed, and audio properties that every clip should have.

Although fixed effects are applied automatically, they don't change the appearance of clips until you modify their settings. The effects include:

- **Motion:** The Motion effect allows you to animate, rotate, and scale a clip. You can also use the Anti-flicker Filter control to decrease shimmering edges for an animated object. This comes in handy when you scale down a high-resolution or interlaced source and Premiere Pro must resample the image.
- **Opacity:** The Opacity effect lets you control how opaque or transparent a clip is. You can also access special blend modes to create visual effects from multiple layers of graphics or video. You'll explore this more in Lesson 14.
- **Time Remapping:** This effect lets you slow down, speed up, or reverse playback, and it even lets you freeze a frame. Think of it as a more advanced version of the Clip Speed/Duration options in the Timeline panel. In fact, the two controls are linked.
- **Audio Effects:** If a clip has audio, Premiere Pro displays its Volume, Channel Volume, and Panner controls. You learned about these in Lesson 10.

You can modify all fixed effects using the Effect Controls panel.

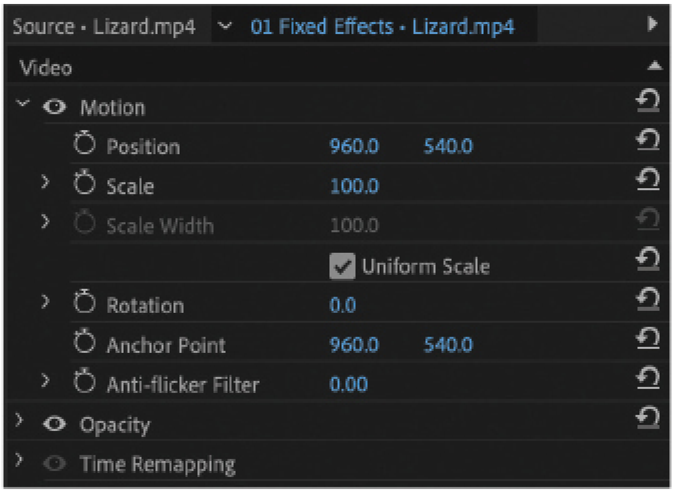
1. If it's not already in the Timeline panel, open the sequence 01 Fixed Effects. Scrub through the sequence to familiarize yourself with the content.



▶ Tip

To expand or collapse all items in the Effect Controls panel or the Project panel, hold Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) when you click a disclosure triangle.

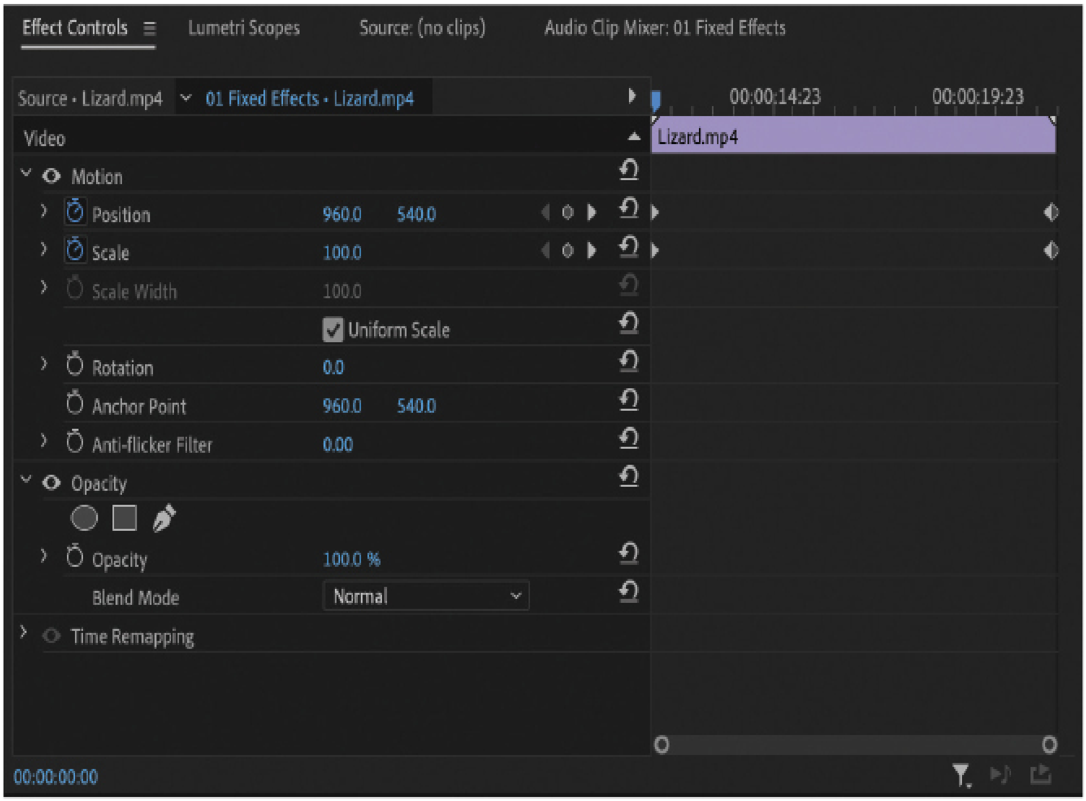
2. Click the first clip in the sequence to select it. In the Effect Controls panel, review the fixed effects applied to this clip.


Source • Lizard.mp4
01 Fixed Effects • Lizard.mp4
Video
Motion
Opacity
Time Remapping

Position 960.0 540.0
Scale 100.0
Scale Width 100.0
☑ Uniform Scale
Rotation 0.0
Anchor Point 960.0 540.0
Anti-flicker Filter 0.00

3. Click the disclosure triangles next to headings or individual controls to display their properties.

4. Click to select the second clip in the sequence, and look at the Effect Controls panel.


Effect Controls
Lumetri Scopes
Source: (no clips)
Audio Clip Mixer: 01 Fixed Effects
Source • Lizard.mp4
01 Fixed Effects • Lizard.mp4
00:00:14:23
00:00:19:23
Lizard.mp4
Video
Motion
Opacity
Time Remapping
00:00:00:00

Position 960.0 540.0
Scale 100.0
Scale Width 100.0
☑ Uniform Scale
Rotation 0.0
Anchor Point 960.0 540.0
Anti-flicker Filter 0.00
Opacity 100.0 %
Blend Mode Normal

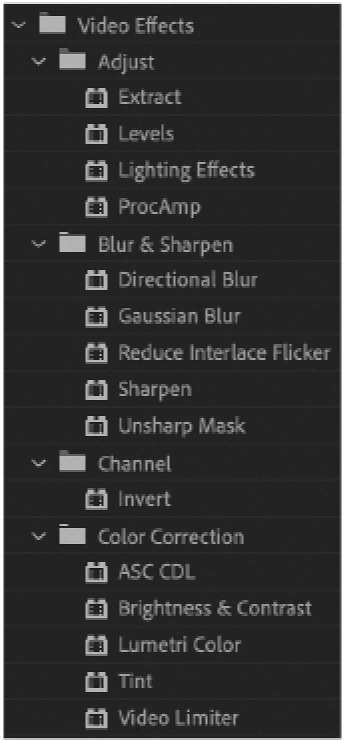
These Position and Scale controls under the Motion effect heading have keyframes, so the settings can change over time. In this case, a slow Scale and Position animation was applied to the clip to create a digital zoom that didn't exist before and to recompose the shot.

When people fix attention on an object, they tend to experience subtle tunnel vision. A slow zoom-in effect can feel the same way for your audience, enhancing the viewer's focus and adding tension in a dramatic moment.

5. Play the current sequence to compare the two clips and view the animation at normal playback speed.

Navigating the Effects panel

In addition to the fixed video effects, Premiere Pro has standard effects that change a clip's appearance. Because there are so many to choose from, effects are organized into categories, such as Distort, Keying, and Time, so you can more easily navigate them. If you install third-party effects, you will have even more choices.


Video Effects
Adjust
Extract
Levels
Lighting Effects
ProcAmp
Blur & Sharpen
Directional Blur
Gaussian Blur
Reduce Interlace Flicker
Sharpen
Unsharp Mask
Channel
Invert
Color Correction
ASC CDL
Brightness & Contrast
Lumetri Color
Tint
Video Limiter

The Obsolete category is a special case.

Many of the effects in the Obsolete category have been replaced with newer, better-designed, or alternative versions, but Adobe keeps them in Premiere Pro to ensure compatibility with older project files. It is best not to use these effects when working on new projects as they may be removed in future versions.

Each category has its own bin in the Effects panel. Like the Project panel, the Effects panel includes the option to create new bins to store copies of effects to make it easier to locate them.

Tip

The keyboard shortcut to display the Effects panel is Shift+7.

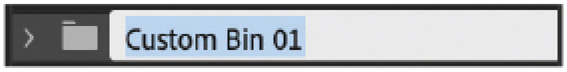
1. Open the Effects panel, and expand the Video Effects category.
2. Click the New Custom Bin button at the bottom of the panel.

   The new custom bin appears in the Effects panel at the bottom of the list (you may need to scroll down to see it). Let’s rename it.

   Note

   When you add an effect to a custom bin in the Effects panel, the original effect remains in its original folder. You can use custom bins to create your own additional effect categories.

3. The bin name should be selected, ready to rename. If not, click once to select the bin, and click once more, directly on the bin’s name (Custom Bin 01), to select that.

4. Change its name to **Favorite Effects**.

5. Expand a few video effects categories and drag several effects into your new Favorite Effects bin to copy them. You may need to resize the panel to make it easier to drag effects. Choose any effects that sound interesting to you. You can add or remove effects from a custom bin whenever you like. You can also click the Delete Custom Items button 🗑 to remove copied effects.

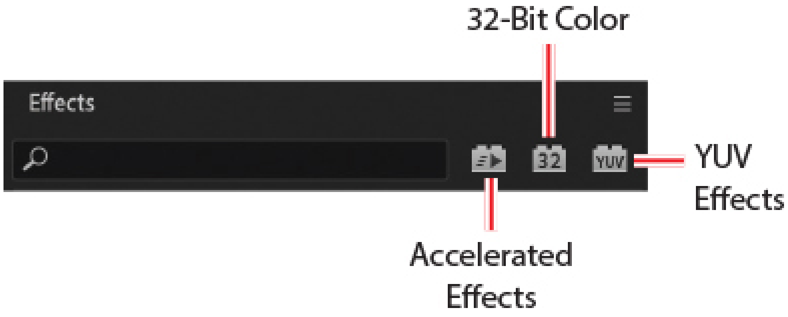
▶ Tip

With so many video effect categories, it’s sometimes tricky to locate the effect you want. If you know part or all of an effect’s name, start typing it in the search box at the top of the Effects panel. Premiere Pro will display all effects and transitions that contain that letter combination, narrowing the search as you type.

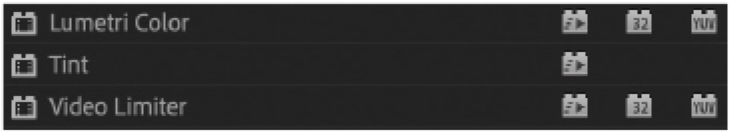
Effect types

If you are working on a smaller computer monitor, some additional useful icons may be hidden in the Effects panel.

If necessary, resize the Effects panel until you can see all of the Effect Type buttons next to the search box.



If you widen the Effects panel a little more, you’ll notice icons next to many of the effect names (you may need to resize the Effects panel to see the icons). Understanding these icons should influence your choices when working with effects.



Only some effects have all three icons. Click the effect type buttons at the top of the Effects panel to display only effects with those features.

Accelerated effects

The Accelerated Effect icon indicates that the effect can be accelerated by your graphics processing unit (GPU). The GPU (often called the video card or graphics card) can greatly enhance the performance of Premiere Pro. The range of cards supported by the Mercury Playback Engine is broad, and with the right card installed, these effects offer accelerated or even real-time performance and need rendering only on final export (which is also hardware accelerated). You’ll find a list of recommended cards on the Premiere Pro product page.

32-bit color (high-bit-depth) effects

Effects with the 32-Bit Color icon can be processed in 32 bits per channel (sometimes called high-bit-depth or float processing).

For maximum quality, use 32-bit color effects.

● **Note**

> When using 32-bit color effects on a clip, try to use only combinations of 32-bit effects for maximum quality. If you mix and match effects on a single clip, the non-32-bit effects force processing back to 8-bit color for that clip.

If you are editing without GPU acceleration, in Software mode, Premiere Pro will render effects in 8-bit color by default. To take advantage of 32-bit color effects, make sure your sequence settings have the Maximum Bit Depth video-rendering option selected. If your project is set to use a hardware-accelerated renderer (in the Project settings), supported accelerated effects will automatically be rendered in 32-bit.

Understanding bit depth

Bit depth is the number of steps from one end of a scale to another. A good example is the brightness of a pixel. How many steps should there be between 0% brightness and 100% brightness?

Many video cameras record 8-bit video by default. Without getting into how it's calculated, 8-bit video gives 256 steps per color channel from one end of the scale to the other.

For every 1 bit you add, the number of steps doubles. So, 10-bit video (a popular option) has 1,024 steps.

Because these scales begin at 0 (not 1), they are really:

8-bit: 0–255

10-bit: 0–1,023

32-bit processing allows more than 4 billion possible steps—that's a lot of doubling! When rendering effects in 32-bit color, the result is as good as lossless—no quality is lost when calculating the effect.

YUV effects YUV

Effects with the YUV icon process color in YUV (processed in Premiere Pro as Luminance, Color-Blue, Color-Red channels). This is particularly important if you're applying color adjustments.

Effects with the YUV icon process color in YUV color mode. YUV effects break down the video into a Y (or luminance) channel and two channels for color information, which is how most video footage is structured natively. Because the brightness of the image is separate from the colors, it's easy to adjust contrast and exposure without shifting the colors.

● **Note**

To learn more about YUV effects, be sure to read the article at *www.provideocoalition.com/what_is_yuv*.

Effects without the YUV icon are processed in the computer’s native RGB space, which might make adjusting exposure and color less accurate.

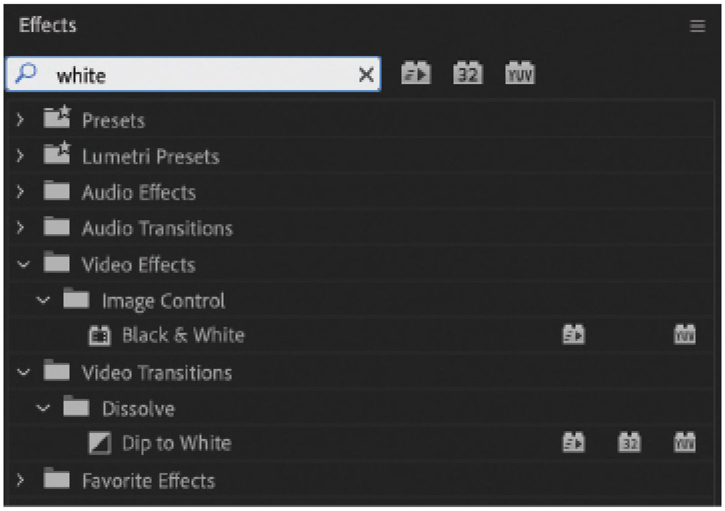
Applying effects

Once you have applied an effect, the video effect settings are accessible in the Effect Controls panel. You can add keyframes to nearly every control to apply changes over time (just look for controls with a stopwatch icon). In addition, you can use Bezier curve handles on those keyframes to adjust the velocity and acceleration of those changes.

1. Open the sequence 02 Browse.

© Copyright Maxim Jago 2017

2. Type **white** into the Effects panel search box to narrow the results. Locate the Black & White video effect.


Effects
white
32
YUV
Presets
Lumetri Presets
Audio Effects
Audio Transitions
Video Effects
Image Control
Black & White
Video Transitions
Dissolve
Dip to White
Favorite Effects

▶ Tip

If you type the word **black** instead of **white** into the Effects panel search box, you’ll see a fantastic list of Lumetri presets for Blackmagic Cameras. Typing the word **white** instead displays a shorter list of effects to scroll through.

3. Drag the Black & White video effect onto the Run Past clip in the Timeline panel.

   This effect immediately converts your full-color footage to black and white, or, more accurately, grayscale.

   © Copyright Maxim Jago 2017

4. Make sure the Run Past clip is selected in the Timeline panel, and open the Effect Controls panel.
5. Toggle the Black & White effect off and on by clicking the FX button 👁 next to the effect name in the Effect Controls panel. Be sure the sequence playhead is over the clip to view the result.

   Toggling an effect on and off is a good way to see how it works with other effects.

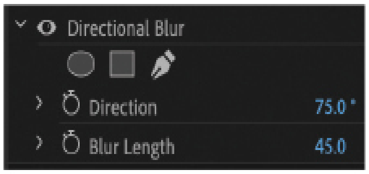
6. Make sure the clip is selected. In the Effect Controls panel, click the Black & White effect heading to select it, and press Delete (macOS) or Backspace/Delete (Windows). This removes the effect.
7. Type **direction** into the Effects panel search box to locate the Directional Blur video effect.

8. In the Effects panel, double-click the Directional Blur effect to apply it to the selected clip.
9. In the Effect Controls panel, expand the Directional Blur effect's controls if they are not already expanded.

Note

If you have a clip selected, you can apply effects by double-clicking them in the Effects panel or by dragging them into the Effect Controls panel directly.

10. Set Direction to 75.0 degrees and Blur Length to 45.



Directional Blur

Direction 75.0 °

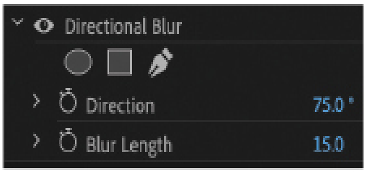
Blur Length 45.0

Tip

The upper limit for a slider may be smaller than the number you can enter by typing.

11. It's an interesting result, but now it's impossible to tell what's going on in the image. This might work well if you were simulating a very fast pan effect (a so-called *whip pan*), but let's tone down the intensity. Click the disclosure triangle to expand the Blur Length control, and move the slider to reduce the strength of the effect.

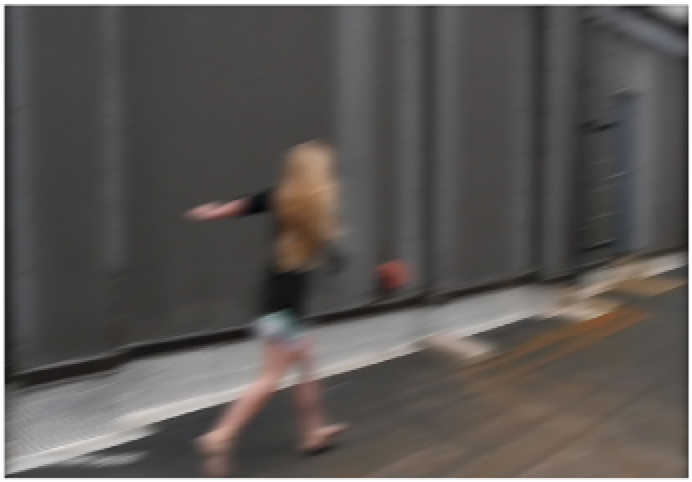
    As you change the setting, the result is displayed in the Program Monitor.



Directional Blur

Direction 75.0°

Blur Length 15.0



Note

You won’t always use video effects to achieve dramatic results for visual impact. Sometimes effects are intended to look natural.

12. Click the panel menu ☰ for the Effect Controls panel, and choose Remove Effects. The Remove Attributes dialog box opens.
13. The Remove Attributes dialog box lets you select which effects to remove and deselect which effects you want to keep. By default, everything is selected. You want to remove them all, so click OK. This is an easy way to start fresh.

Tip

You can also access the Remove Attributes dialog box by right-clicking one or more selected clips in the Timeline panel and choosing Remove Attributes from the contextual menu or by selecting one or more clips and choosing Edit > Remove Attributes.

Premiere Pro processes effects in a particular order, which can lead to unwanted scaling or resizing. You can’t reorder fixed effects, but you can bypass them and use other, similar effects. For example, you can use the Transform effect to achieve similar results to the Motion effect, or you can use the Alpha Adjust effect instead of the Opacity effect. These effects are not identical, but they’re a close match, they behave similarly, and they can be placed in any order you choose.

Other ways to apply effects

There are multiple ways to reuse an effect you have already configured:

- You can select an effect name from the Effect Controls panel, choose Edit > Copy, select a destination clip (or several clips) in the Timeline panel, and choose Edit > Paste.
- You can copy all the effects from one clip so you can paste them onto another clip: Select a clip and choose Edit > Copy; then select the destination clip (or clips) and choose Edit > Paste Attributes.
- You can create an effect preset to store an effect (or multiple effects) with preselected settings for reuse later. You'll learn about this advanced technique later in this lesson.

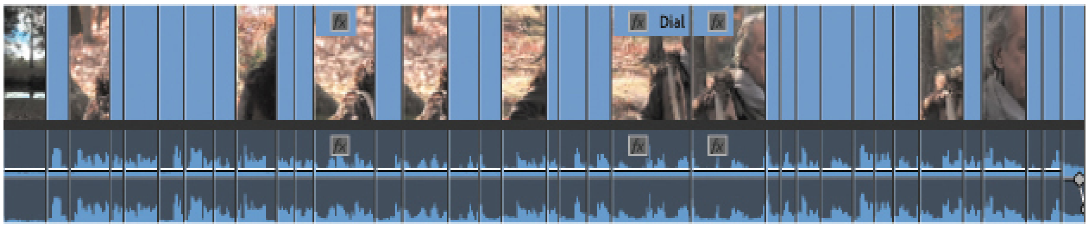
Using adjustment layers

Adjustment layers offer a convenient way to apply effects to multiple clips. The concept is straightforward: Create an adjustment layer clip that can hold effects, and position it above other clips on the timeline, on a higher video track. Everything beneath the adjustment layer clip is viewed through it, receiving any effects it contains.

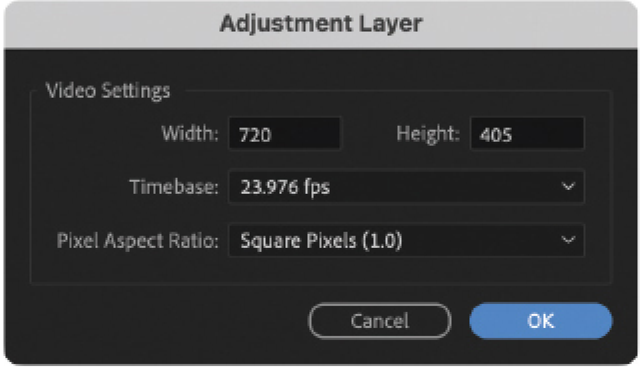
You can easily adjust the duration and opacity of an adjustment layer clip, as you would adjust any graphics clip, making it easy to control which other clips on lower tracks are seen through it. An adjustment layer makes it faster to work with effects because you can change the settings on the layer (a single item) to influence the appearance of several other clips.

Let's add an adjustment layer to a sequence.

1. Open the sequence 03 Multiple Effects.



2. At the bottom right of the Project panel, click the New Item button, and choose Adjustment Layer. You may need to resize the Project panel to see the New Item button .


Adjustment Layer

Video Settings

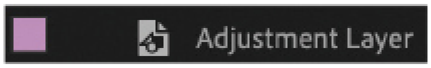
Width: 720 Height: 405

Timebase: 23.976 fps

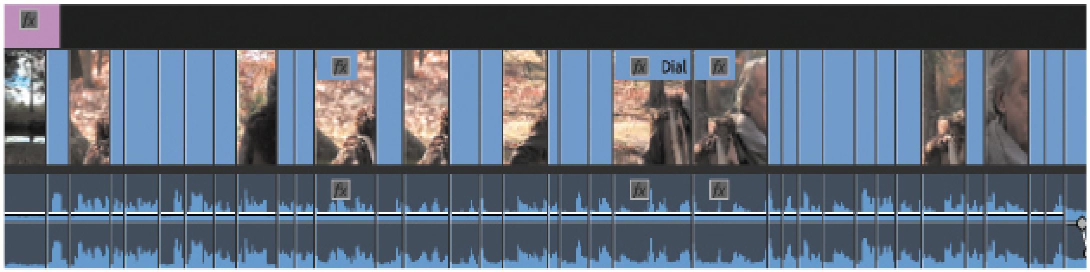
Pixel Aspect Ratio: Square Pixels (1.0)

The Adjustment Layer dialog box allows you to specify settings for the new item you’re creating. The settings in the dialog box will reflect the settings in the current sequence.

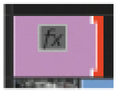
3. Click OK. Premiere Pro adds a new adjustment layer to the Project panel.


Adjustment Layer

4. Drag the adjustment layer from the Project panel to the beginning of the Video 2 track in the Timeline panel.



5. Click the right edge of the adjustment layer clip in the Timeline panel to select just the Out point. A red trim handle icon appears on the end of the clip.

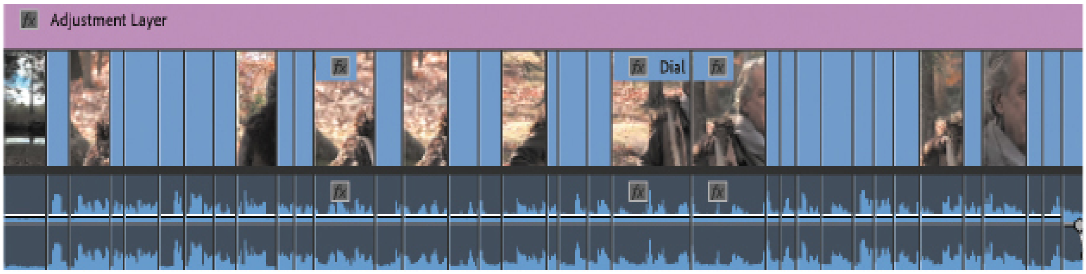


Next, position the playhead at the end of the sequence, just after the last clip. You can achieve this quickly by pressing the End key.

Tip

If you are using a Mac keyboard without an End key, you can use Fn+Right Arrow.

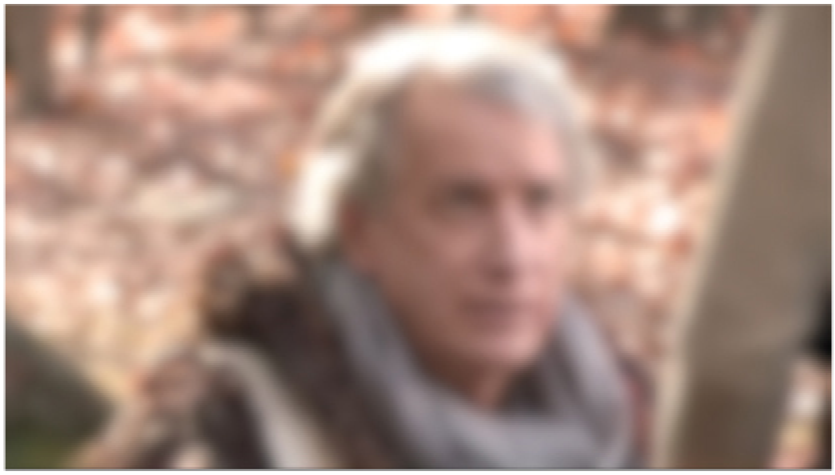
Press E to perform an Extend edit. This extends the selected trim handle to the location of the playhead.



Now that the adjustment layer is in place, let’s apply an effect to it. Once the effect is set up, you can change the adjustment layer’s opacity to alter the intensity of the effect.

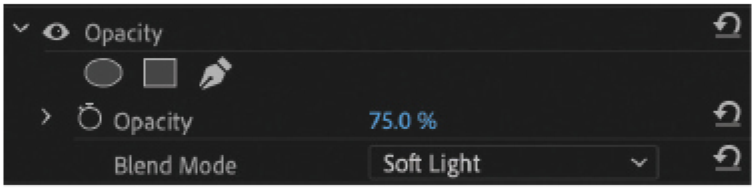
6. In the Effects panel, search for and locate the Gaussian Blur effect.
7. Drag the effect onto the adjustment layer clip in the sequence.
8. Move the playhead to 27:00 to have a good close-up shot to use when designing the effect. Audiences pay particular attention to the eyes of your subjects, so it can be helpful to use a close-up as a reference when applying effects.

9. By default, the Gaussian Blur effect doesn’t change the image. Make sure the adjustment layer clip is selected. In the Effect Controls panel, set Blurriness to a high value, around 25.0. Make sure Repeat Edge Pixels is selected to apply the effect evenly.



The effect is too strong. Let’s blend the adjustment layer with the clips beneath it using a blend mode to create a film look. *Blend modes* let you mix two layers together based on their brightness and color values. You’ll learn more about them in Lesson 14.

10. With the adjustment layer still selected in the sequence, click the disclosure triangle next to the Opacity control in the Effect Controls panel to view the settings.
11. Choose Soft Light from the Blend Mode menu to create a gentle blend with the footage.
12. Set Opacity to **75%** to reduce the effect.



Opacity 75.0 %

Blend Mode Soft Light

Your eyes will quickly adjust to the new appearance of the clip. So, to compare the before and after states, enable and disable the Track Output for the Video 2 track in the Timeline panel using the Toggle Track Output button 👁.

Adjustment layers are a great way to apply a look to a whole scene. Once you have adjusted the colors for individual clips so they match, you can give the overall scene a particular look with an adjustment layer. The same is true of your entire sequence: You can place an adjustment layer above the clips and below graphics to give all clips the same look.

Sending a clip to Adobe After Effects

If you're working with a computer that also has Adobe After Effects installed, you can easily send clips back and forth between Premiere Pro and After Effects. Thanks to the close relationship between the two applications, you can seamlessly integrate them more easily than with any other editing platform. This is a useful way to significantly extend the effects capabilities of your editing workflow.

You don't need to learn to use After Effects to get the most out of Premiere Pro. Still, many editors find working with both applications expands their creative toolset in exciting ways. The process you use to share clips is called *Dynamic Link*. With Dynamic Link you can seamlessly exchange clips with no unnecessary rendering. When a clip is sent from Premiere Pro to After Effects, it is put into a new *composition* (After Effects compositions are similar to sequences in Premiere Pro). The new composition has settings that match the original Premiere Pro sequence, with a composition name based on the Premiere Pro project name, followed by *Linked Comp*. If you'd like to try this, follow the steps in this sidebar.

For After Effects to complete installation, it needs to be started at least once. You'll also need to restart Premiere Pro after installing After Effects so that the installation is recognized. If restarting Premiere Pro after installing After Effects does not enable Premiere Pro to detect the After Effects installation, try restarting your computer. Do this before you perform the following workflow.

1. Open the sequence AE Dynamic Link, and scrub through the sequence to familiarize yourself with the content.

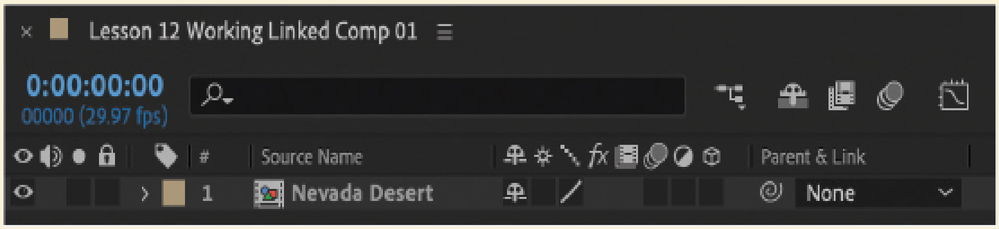
   This sequence has several drone shots of the Valley of Fire State Park in Nevada, with an opening title placed above the second clip. The title would benefit from the advanced text animation features offered by After Effects.

Nevada Desert

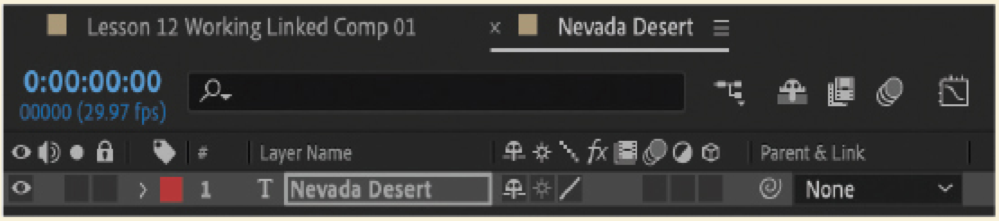
2. Right-click the Nevada Desert clip on the Video 2 track in the sequence and choose Replace With After Effects Composition.
3. If it's not running already, After Effects launches. If the After Effects Save As dialog box appears, enter a name and location for the After Effects project. Name the project **Lesson 12-01.aep**, and save it to a new folder inside the Lessons folder.

   Clips become layers in After Effects compositions to make it easier to work with advanced controls in the Timeline panel.

   There are lots of ways to apply effects with After Effects. To keep things simple, let's work with animation presets (these are similar to effect presets in Premiere Pro). For more on effects workflows, see *Adobe After Effects Classroom in a Book 2024 Release*.
4. The composition should be open in the Timeline panel already. If not, look for it in the After Effects Project panel, and double-click to load it. It should be called Lesson 12 Working Linked Comp 01 (the number may be higher if you have tried this workflow before). There's just one layer, called Nevada Desert. The layer contains the text that you'll work on next.



5. Double-click the Nevada Desert layer, under the Source Name heading, to open it in a new Timeline panel.

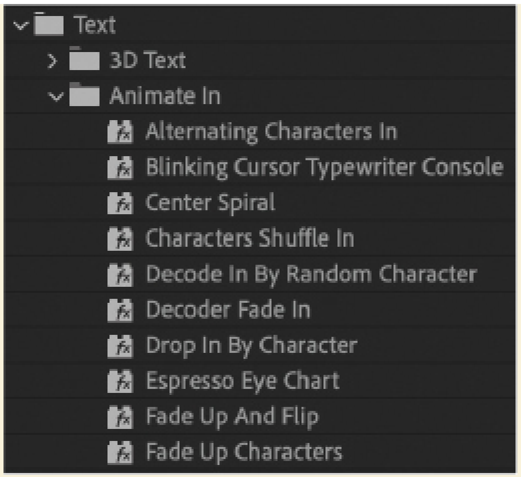


6. Locate the Effects & Presets panel (you can find this in the Window menu if it’s not onscreen already). Click the disclosure triangle to expand the *Animation Presets category. If the category is not displayed, check that it is enabled in the Effects & Presets panel menu.

   Animation presets in After Effects use standard built-in effects to achieve impressive results. They are an excellent shortcut to producing a professional finish for your work.

7. Expand the Text category and then the Animate In group. You may need to resize the panel a little to read the full preset names.
8. Make sure the playhead is at the beginning of the composition. Drag the Decoder Fade In preset onto the Nevada Desert layer in the Timeline panel.
9. Press the spacebar to play the animation—a cool animated effect as the text appears.

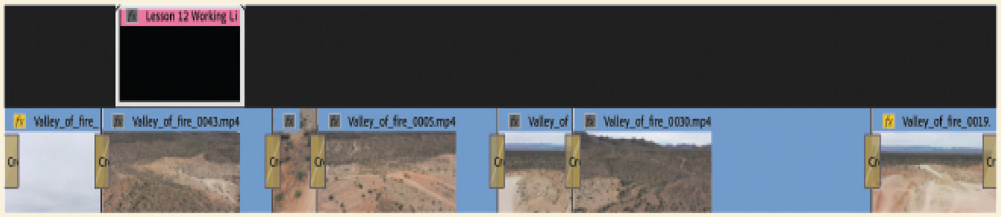
   The green line at the top of the Timeline panel indicates After Effects created a temporary preview. Only playback of the highlighted section of the timeline is likely to be smooth.



- Text
  - 3D Text
  - Animate In
    - Alternating Characters In
    - Blinking Cursor Typewriter Console
    - Center Spiral
    - Characters Shuffle In
    - Decode In By Random Character
    - Decoder Fade In
    - Drop In By Character
    - Espresso Eye Chart
    - Fade Up And Flip
    - Fade Up Characters

10. This looks great, but it’s hard to know what the effect looks like against the desert background. Switch back to Premiere Pro to check.

    In Premiere Pro, the title has been replaced with the dynamically linked After Effects composition you just created. The new animation plays right away in Premiere Pro. Any changes made in After Effects appear automatically in Premiere Pro.



11. Switch back to After Effects, and choose File > Save. Then quit After Effects.

    The frames are processed in the background and handed off from After Effects to Premiere Pro. As Premiere Pro has the After Effects playback engine built in, the result continues to display properly.

12. Preview your sequence in Premiere Pro. To improve preview playback performance, you can select the clip in the Timeline panel and choose Sequence > Render Effects In To Out.

You’re not limited to sending single clips from Premiere Pro into new After Effects projects. If an After Effects project is already open when you send a clip, the clip will be added as a new composition to the existing project, rather than needing a new project. You can also select multiple clips to send to After Effects in a single step, making it easier to check compositions and set up more complex animated compositions.

Applying source clip effects

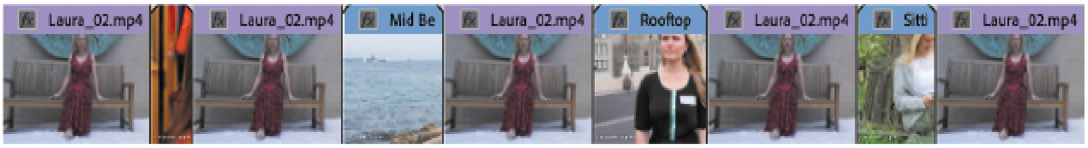
You can also apply video effects to clips in the Project panel. You use the same effects and work with them in the same way. Clips in the Project panel are called *source clips* (to distinguish them from *sequence clip instances)*, and effects applied to them are called *source clip effects*. With source clip effects, any instance of a clip, or part of a clip, you add to a sequence will inherit the effects you have applied. You can even apply source clip effects *after* adding clips to sequences, and the sequences will update—a powerful way to make adjustments to multiple clip segments in a single step.

For example, you could add a color adjustment to a clip in the Project panel so that it matches other camera angles in a scene. Each time you use that clip or part of that clip in a sequence, the adjustment will already be applied. Even if you don’t make the adjustment until after the scene is edited, you can use a source clip effect to quickly match the colors.

Let’s add a source clip effect now.

1. Open the sequence 04 Source Clip Effects.

   This has one clip, Laura_02, edited five times into the same sequence. The copies of the clip are separated by a number of other, similar shots.

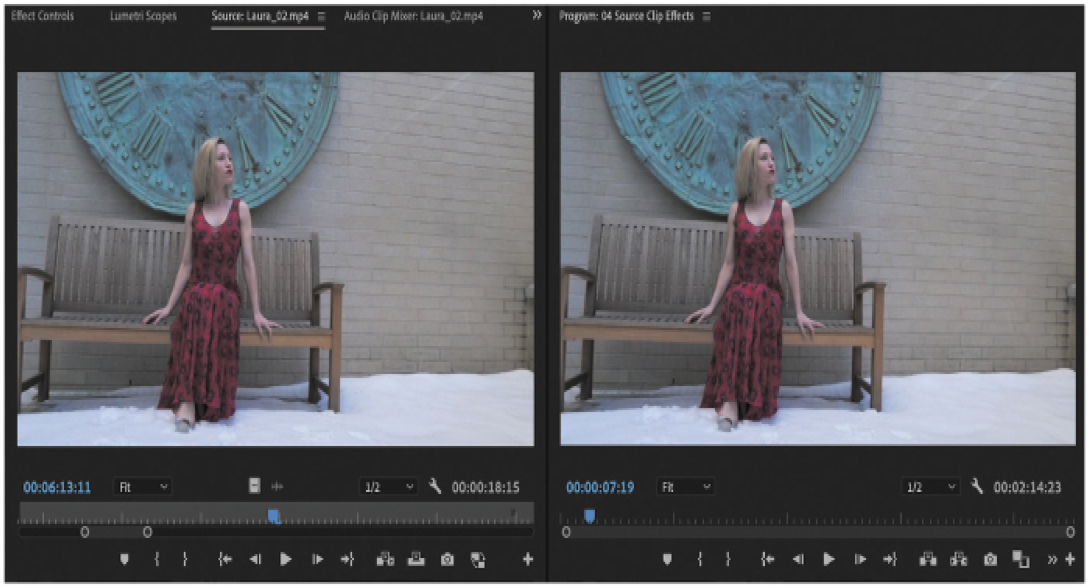
   

2. Position the Timeline panel playhead somewhere over the first instance of the Laura_02 clip. You want to open this sequence clip’s original source clip in the Source Monitor so you can apply an effect to it. It’s no good double-clicking the clip in the sequence because it will open that instance.

Select the clip and press the F key. This is the shortcut for Match Frame, which opens the original source clip in the Source Monitor at the frame that is displayed in the Program Monitor.

This is a useful shortcut to remember, as you will often want to check source clips when reviewing sequences, either to see a version of a clip without effects applied or to check for alternative content.

You now have the same clip open in the Source Monitor (the source clip) and displayed in the Program Monitor (the sequence segment), so you can see how the changes affect the sequence as you apply them.

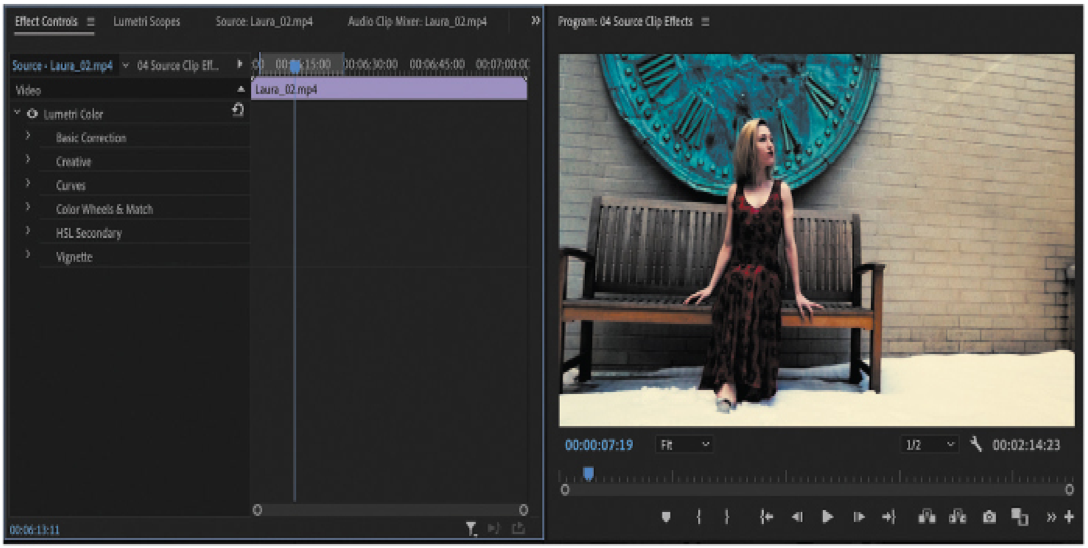

Effect Controls
Lumetri Scopes
Source: Laura_02.mp4
Audio Clip Mixer: Laura_02.mp4
Program: 04 Source Clip Effects
00:06:13:11
Fit
1/2
00:00:18:15
00:00:07:19
Fit
1/2
00:02:14:23

3. In the Effects panel, type **100** in the search box to quickly locate the Lumetri Look effect preset named Cinespace 100.
4. Drag the Cinespace 100 effect into the Source Monitor.

   This applies the effect to the source clip.
5. Click the Source Monitor to make sure it’s the active panel, and then open the Effect Controls panel to see the effect options.

● Note

Selection is important in Premiere Pro. Clicking to activate the Source Monitor before going to the Effect Controls panel is necessary to see the correct options.


Effect Controls
Lumetri Scopes
Source: Laura_02.mp4
Audio Clip Mixer: Laura_02.mp4
Program: 04 Source Clip Effects
Source · Laura_02.mp4
04 Source Clip Eff...
Video
Lumetri Color
Basic Correction
Creative
Curves
Color Wheels & Match
HSL Secondary
Vignette
Laura_02.mp4
00:06:13:11
00:00:07:19
Fit
1/2
00:02:14:23

Because you applied the effect to the clip in the Source Monitor and then selected the Source Monitor to make it active, the Effect Controls panel shows the effect applied to the source clip, rather than the instance in the sequence.

This is a Lumetri Color effect, and you will be learning a lot more about these effects in Lesson 13, “Applying Color Correction and Grading.”

▶ Tip

You can also apply an effect to a source clip by dragging the effect onto the clip directly in the Project panel or by selecting a clip in a sequence and clicking the source clip name at the top left of the Effect Controls panel and then dragging the effect into that panel.

6. Because the effect has been applied to the source clip, every instance of the clip in the sequence shows the results. Play the sequence to see that the effect is applied to every copy of the Laura_02 clip. You can tell a source clip effect is applied to a clip because the FX badge has a red underline fx.

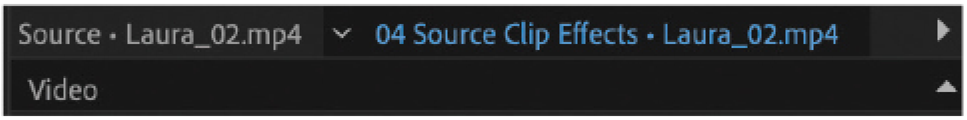
   The result of the effect is displayed in the Source Monitor *and* the Program Monitor because sequence clips inherit their source clip effects dynamically.

   From now on, anytime you use this clip, or part of it, in a sequence, Premiere Pro will include the effect.

However, while the source clip has the effect applied, none of the timeline instances of the clip (the sequence clips) has the effect applied.

7. Single-click any of the sequence instances of the Laura_02 clip on the timeline to select it, and look in the Effect Controls panel—no Lumetri Color effect, just the usual fixed effects (which are applicable only to sequence clips, not clips in the Project panel).

   At the top of the Effect Controls panel there are two tabs. The tab on the left shows the name of the source clip, Source • Laura_02.mp4.

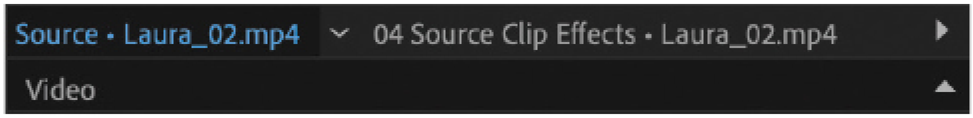
   

   The tab on the right shows the name of the sequence followed by the name of the sequence clip, 04 Source Clip Effects • Laura_02.mp4.

   Because you selected the clip in the sequence, the tab on the right is highlighted in blue, showing that you're working on that instance of the clip.

   There's no Lumetri Color effect displayed because you haven't applied the effect to the Timeline panel's instance of the clip.

8. In the Effect Controls panel, click the tab at the top that shows the source clip name. Now you'll see the source clip effect options.

9. Experiment with the controls for the Lumetri Color effect, and then play the sequence. You'll see the changes are applied to every instance of the clip.

Source clip effects provide a powerful way to manage effects in Premiere Pro. You may need to experiment a little to make the most of them. You use the same video effects as you would use on the timeline, so the techniques you're learning in this book will work the same way, but the planning is a little different.

Masking and tracking video effects

All standard video effects can be constrained within elliptical, polygonal, or custom masks, which you can manually animate using keyframes. These masks can motion track your shots to animate their position, following the action with the constrained special effect.

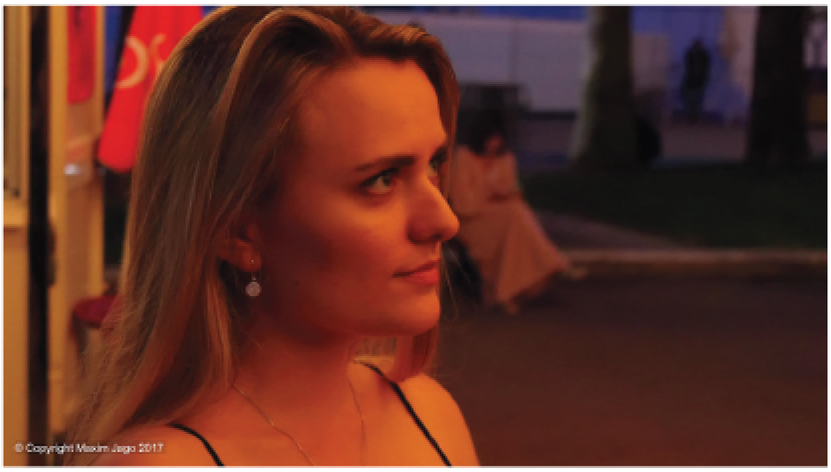
Masking and tracking effects are great ways to hide a detail like a face or logo behind a blur. You can also use the technique to apply subtle creative effects or modify the lighting in a shot.

● **Note**

This example uses a vivid adjustment to illustrate a technique. You will usually make subtler adjustments.

Continue working with the 04 Source Clip Effects sequence.

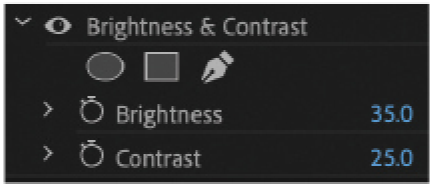
1. Position the playhead over the first frame of the second clip in the sequence, Evening Smile.

   It looks good, but it would benefit from a stronger light on the subject to help separate the foreground from the background.
2. Search the Effects panel for the Brightness & Contrast effect.
3. Apply this effect to the clip.
4. In the Effect Controls panel, scroll down to the Brightness & Contrast controls.

   Choose the following settings:

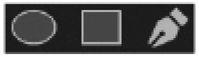
- Brightness: 35
- Contrast: 25


Brightness & Contrast
Brightness 35.0
Contrast 25.0

You can set these levels by clicking the blue numbers and typing the new setting, by scrubbing the blue numbers, or by expanding the controls and using the sliders.

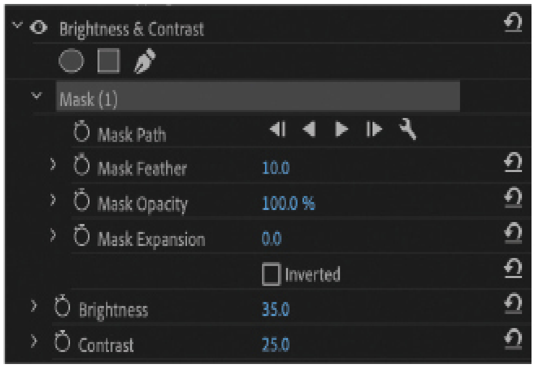
This effect changes the entire picture. You’re going to constrain the effect to just one area of the shot.

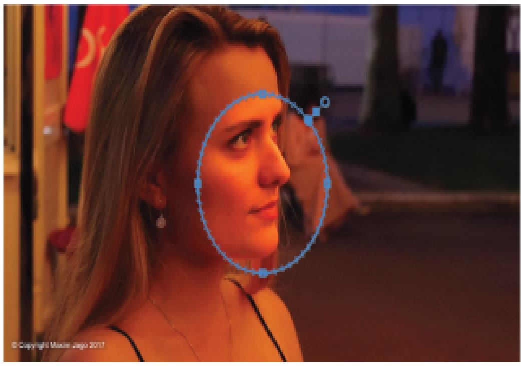
Just under the name of the Brightness & Contrast effect in the Effect Controls panel, you’ll see three buttons that allow you to add a mask to the effect.



5. Click the first button to add an elliptical mask.

   A mask is added to the Brightness & Contrast effect in the Effect Controls panel, and, in the Program Monitor, the effect is constrained to the new mask region.

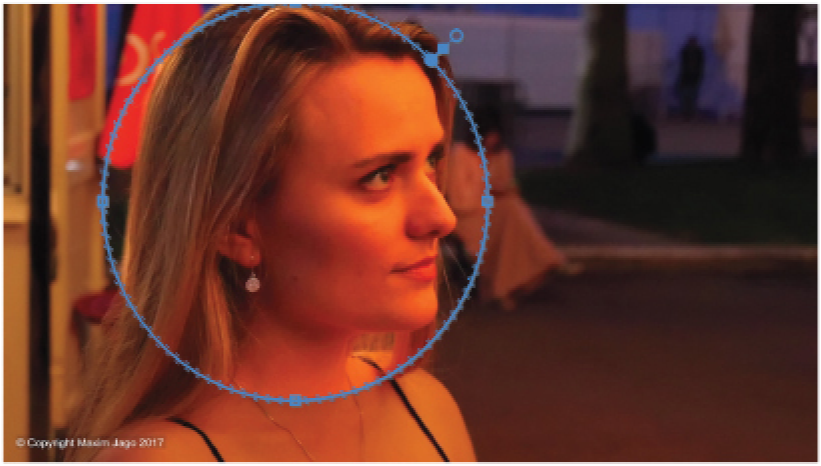

Brightness & Contrast
Mask (1)
Mask Path
Mask Feather 10.0
Mask Opacity 100.0 %
Mask Expansion 0.0
☐ Inverted
Brightness 35.0
Contrast 25.0



   You can add multiple masks to an effect. If you select a mask in the Effect Controls panel, you can modify the shape in the Program Monitor.

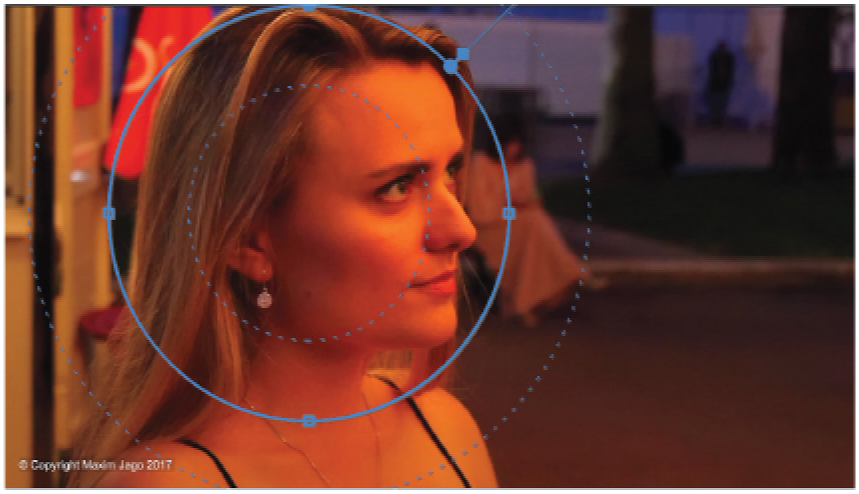
6. Make sure the playhead is at the start of the clip, and use the mask control points (the small squares on the mask shape) in the Program

Monitor to reshape the mask so it covers the subject's face and hair. You may find it helpful to adjust the Zoom level for the Program Monitor to see beyond the edges of the image.



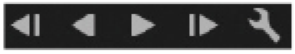
If you deselect the mask, the controls will disappear in the Program Monitor. To bring them back, select the name of the mask in the Effect Controls panel. In this case, select Mask (1) to display the controls again.

7. Feathering softens the edge of the mask. In the Effect Controls panel, set Mask Feather to 240.



You have brightened the area around the subject's face, with a natural return to regular lighting in the rest of the picture. Now you just need the mask to follow the moving video.

8. In the Effect Controls panel, to the right of the Mask Path item, there are several mask-tracking controls.



Click the Track Selected Mask Forward button ▶. Premiere Pro tracks the contents of the clip to reposition and resize the mask to continue covering the subject’s face as it moves in the frame.

The movement is quite subtle, so it’s easy for Premiere Pro to follow the action.

9. Scrub the Effect Controls panel playhead to see the movement of the mask.
10. Deselect the mask by clicking away from the mask name in the Effect Controls panel or by clicking an empty track in the Timeline panel. The mask handles in the Program Monitor will be removed.

Premiere Pro can also track backward so that you can select an item partway through a clip and then track in both directions to create a natural path for the mask to follow.

In this example you’re making a subtle lighting adjustment, but almost any video effect can be constrained to a mask in this way.

Keyframing effects

When you add keyframes to an effect, you’re setting particular values for controls at precise moments in time. Each keyframe will store a setting for one control. If, for example, you were intending to keyframe Position, Scale, and Rotation, you would need three separate keyframes.

Set keyframes at precise moments where you need a particular setting and let Premiere Pro work out how to animate the controls between them.

Adding keyframes

You can change almost all parameters for all video effects over time using keyframes. For example, you can have a clip gradually become out of focus, change color, or lengthen its shadow.

1. Open the sequence 05 Keyframes.

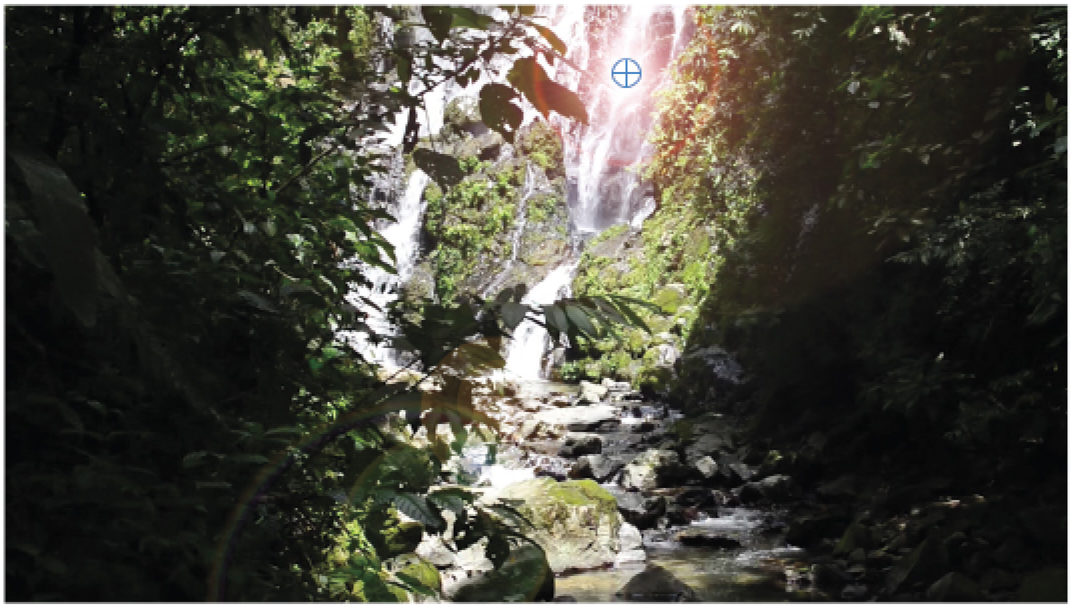
2. View the sequence to get familiar with the footage, and then position the Timeline playhead over the first frame of the clip.

3. In the Effects panel, locate the Lens Flare effect and apply it to the clip in the sequence. This is not a subtle effect, but it illustrates Motion keyframes beautifully.

● **Note**

Be sure to move the playhead over the clip you’re working with when applying effects so you can view your changes as you work. Selecting the clip alone will not make it visible in the Program Monitor.

4. In the Effect Controls panel, select the Lens Flare effect heading. With the effect selected, the Program Monitor displays a small control handle. Use the handle to reposition the lens flare to match the following figure so that the center of the effect is near the top of the waterfall, as seen in the frame.



5. Make sure the Effect Controls panel timeline is visible. If it isn’t, click the Show/Hide Timeline View button next to the clip name at the top right of the panel to toggle the display.

6. Click the stopwatch icons to toggle animation on for the Flare Center and Flare Brightness properties. Clicking the stopwatch

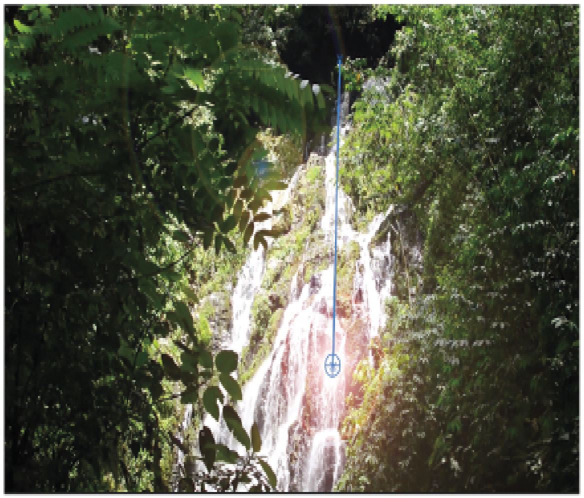
icon enables keyframing and adds a keyframe at the current location with the current settings.

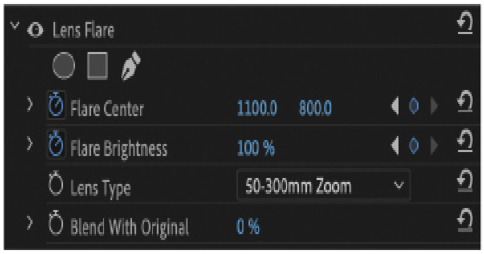
7. Set the Flare Brightness to 50%.
8. Move the playhead to the last frame of the clip.

   To do this, you can drag the playhead directly in the Effect Controls panel. Make sure you see the last frame of video and not black (which would be the first frame of the next clip if there were one).

9. Adjust Flare Center and Flare Brightness settings so the flare drifts across the screen with the camera pan and gets brighter. With the Lens Flare effect selected in the Effect Controls panel, you can drag the lens flare center to a new position directly in the Program Monitor.

   Use the following figures for guidance.





Lens Flare

Flare Center 1100.0 800.0

Flare Brightness 100 %

Lens Type 50-300mm Zoom

Blend With Original 0 %

10. Deselect the Lens Flare effect to hide the controls in the Program Monitor, and play the sequence to watch the effect animate over time. You may need to render the sequence for full-frame-rate playback, by choosing Sequence > Render Effects In To Out.

Adding keyframe interpolation and velocity

Keyframe interpolation changes the behavior of an effect setting as it moves between keyframes with different settings. The default behavior you’ve seen so far is linear; in other words, it produces a constant change between keyframes. What generally works better is something that mirrors your real-world experience or exaggerates it, such as gradual acceleration or deceleration.

▶ **Tip**

> Be sure to use the Next Keyframe and Previous Keyframe buttons to move between keyframes efficiently. This will keep you from adding unwanted keyframes.

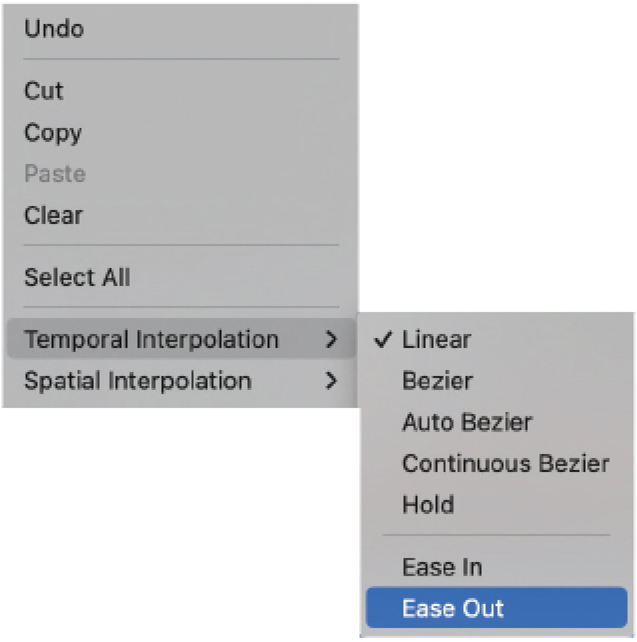
Premiere Pro offers a way to control those changes: keyframe interpolation and the Velocity graph. Keyframe interpolation is easy and simplified, whereas adjusting the Velocity graph can be complex but more precise.

Velocity graphs appear in the timeline on the right side of the Effect Controls panel, along with the keyframes, when you expand a property by clicking its disclosure triangle .

1. Open the sequence 06 Interpolation. Play the sequence to view the action.

   A Lens Flare effect has been applied to this clip and animated. However, the movement begins before the camera, which isn't very natural-looking.

2. Position the playhead at the beginning of the clip, and select the clip.
3. In the Effect Controls panel, toggle the Lens Flare effect off and on by clicking the FX button next to the effect name in the Effect Controls panel so you can see the result.
4. In the Effect Controls panel timeline, right-click the first keyframe for the Flare Center property. Choose Temporal Interpolation > Ease Out to create a gentle transition into the move from the keyframe that more closely matches the camera movement.


Undo
Cut
Copy
Paste
Clear
Select All
Temporal Interpolation >
Spatial Interpolation >
✓ Linear
Bezier
Auto Bezier
Continuous Bezier
Hold
Ease In
Ease Out

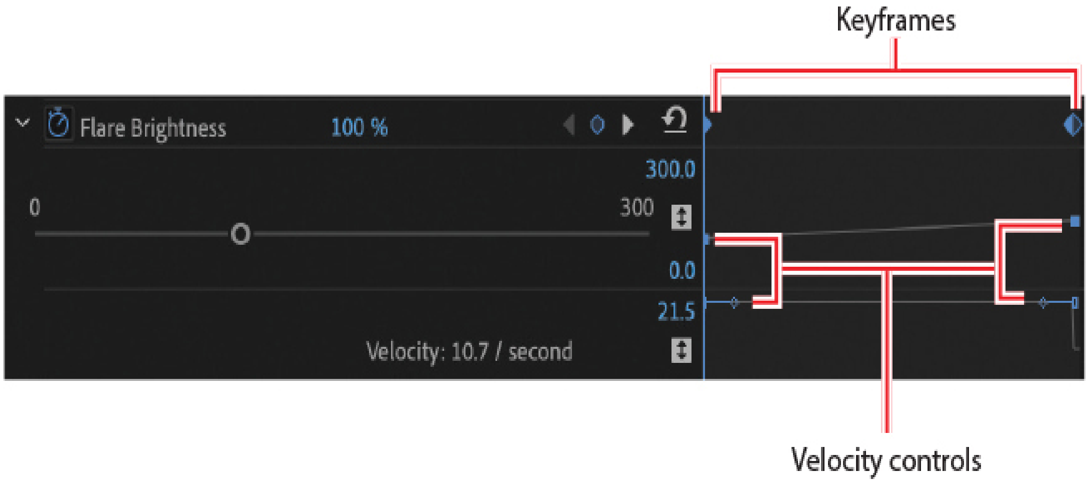
● **Note**

When working with position-related parameters, the context menu for a keyframe will offer two types of interpolation: spatial (related to location) and temporal (related to time). You can make spatial adjustments in the Program Monitor as well as in the Effect Controls panel if you select the effect in the Effect Controls panel. You can make temporal adjustments on the clip in the Timeline and Effect Controls panels. These motion-related topics were covered in Lesson 9, “Putting Clips in Motion.”

5. Right-click the second keyframe for the Flare Center property and choose Temporal Interpolation > Ease In. This creates a gentle transition from the stationary position of the last keyframe.

6. Let’s modify the Flare Brightness property. Click the first keyframe for Flare Brightness, and then hold down the Shift key and click the second keyframe so both are active, highlighted in blue.

   You could also click the Flare Brightness property name, which selects all existing keyframes for the property. However, there will be occasions when you’ll want to select specific keyframes, so it’s worth remembering the Shift key.

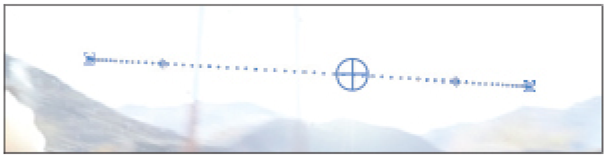


7. Right-click either one of the Flare Brightness keyframes and choose Auto Bezier to create a gentle animation between the two properties. Because both keyframes were selected, both are changed.

8. Play back the animation to watch the changes you've made.

   When you animate position, a clip anchor point or effect center (in this example, the Flare Center control) follows a path across the frame. This path is called the *motion path*.

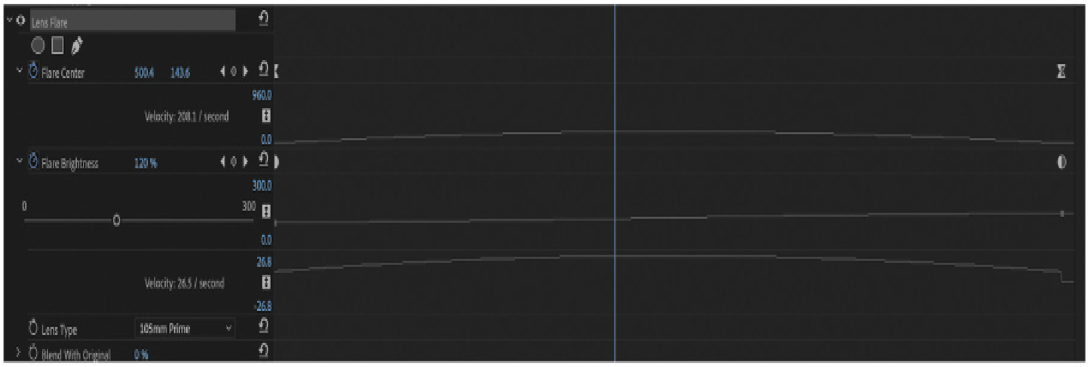
9. In the Effect Controls panel, select the Lens Flare effect name. Scrub through the clip to see the animation with the effect motion path displayed.

   Let's refine the keyframes with the Velocity graph.

10. Hover the pointer over the Effect Controls panel, and then, if your keyboard has the key, press ` (accent grave) to maximize the panel; or double-click the panel name. This will give you a clearer view of the keyframe controls.

11. If necessary, click the disclosure triangles next to the Flare Center and Flare Brightness controls to show the adjustable properties.


Lens Flare

Flare Center 500.4 143.6

Velocity: 200.1 / second

Flare Brightness 120 %

Velocity: 26.5 / second

Lens Type 105mm Prime

Blend With Original 0 %

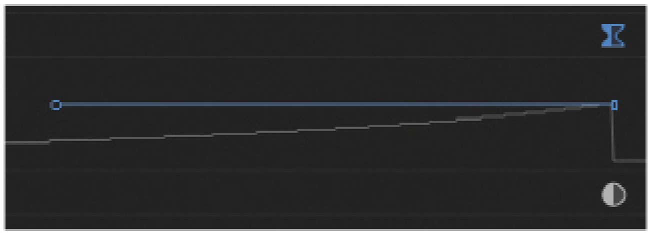
The Velocity graph shows the velocity between keyframes. Any sudden drops or jumps represent sudden changes in velocity. The farther the point or line is from the baseline, the greater the velocity.

Understanding interpolation methods

Here's a rundown of the keyframe interpolation methods available in Premiere Pro:

- **Linear:** This is the default behavior and creates a uniform rate of change between keyframes.
- **Bezier:** This lets you manually adjust the shape of the graph on either side of a keyframe. Beziers allow for sudden or smooth acceleration into or out of a keyframe.
- **Continuous Bezier:** This method creates a smooth rate of change through a keyframe. Unlike with regular Bezier keyframes, if you adjust one handle of a Continuous Bezier keyframe, the handle on the other side moves equally to maintain a smooth transition through the keyframe.
- **Auto Bezier:** This method creates a smooth rate of change through a keyframe even if you change the keyframe value. If you choose to manually adjust the keyframe's handles, it changes to a Continuous Bezier point, retaining the smooth transition through the keyframe. The Auto Bezier option can occasionally produce unwanted motion, so try one of the other options first.
- **Hold:** This method holds a setting until the next keyframe. The graph following a keyframe with the Hold interpolation applied appears as a horizontal straight line.
- **Ease In:** This method slows down the value changes entering a keyframe and converts it to a Bezier keyframe.
- **Ease Out:** This method gradually accelerates the value changes leaving a keyframe and converts it to a Bezier keyframe.

12. Select a keyframe, and then adjust its extended handle to change the steepness of the velocity curve.



13. Press the ` (accent grave) key, or double-click the panel name, to restore the Effect Controls panel, and play back your sequence to see the impact of your changes. Experiment some more until you have the hang of keyframes and interpolation.

    Perhaps the change to the velocity of the keyframes for the Flare Center isn’t enough to make the movement appear perfectly natural. Try dragging the first keyframe later to better match the camera movement and adjust the velocity keyframes.

Using effect presets

There are several prebuilt presets included for specific tasks, but the true power of effects lies in creating your own presets, particularly when you know you’ll need an effect configuration again in the future. A single preset can contain more than one effect and can even include keyframes for animation.

Using built-in presets

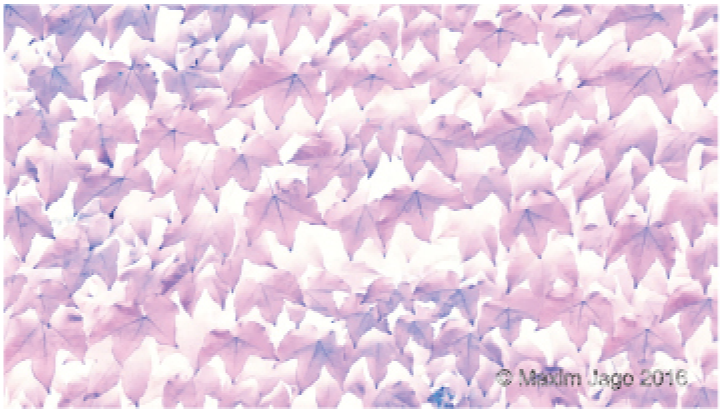
The effect presets provided with Premiere Pro give you a head start when performing common tasks, such as setting up a picture-in-picture effect or creating a stylized transition.

1. Open and preview the sequence 07 Presets.

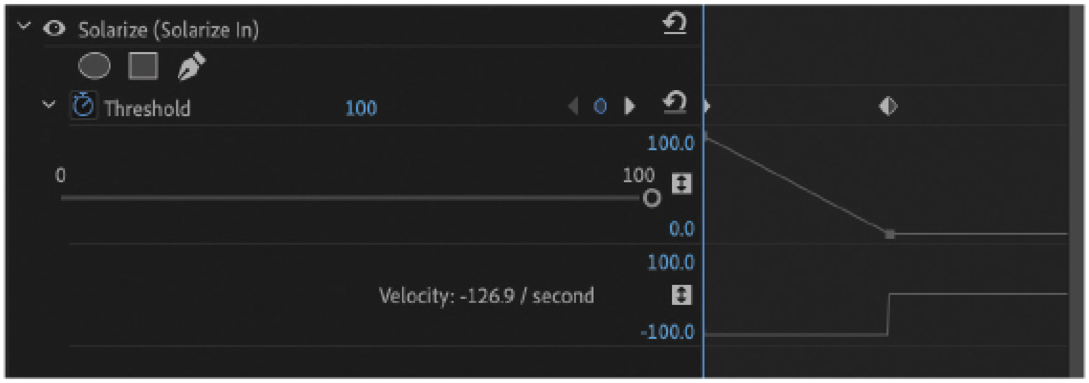
   This sequence has a single clip with a slow start—the emphasis is on the texture of the background. Let’s use a preset to add visual interest to the beginning of the shot.

2. In the Effects panel, click the X to clear the search box at the top of the panel. Browse inside the Presets > Solarizes category to find the Solarize In preset.

3. Drag the Solarize In preset onto the clip in the sequence.
4. Play back the sequence to watch the Solarize effect transform the opening.



5. Select the clip in the Timeline panel, and view its controls in the Effect Controls panel.
6. There are two keyframes, relatively close together. Zoom in by adjusting the navigator at the bottom of the Effect Controls panel timeline to see them more clearly.



Threshold 100

Velocity: -126.9 / second

Experiment with adjusting the position of the second keyframe in the Effect Controls panel to customize the effect. If you extend the timing of the effect, it creates a gentler start to the shot.

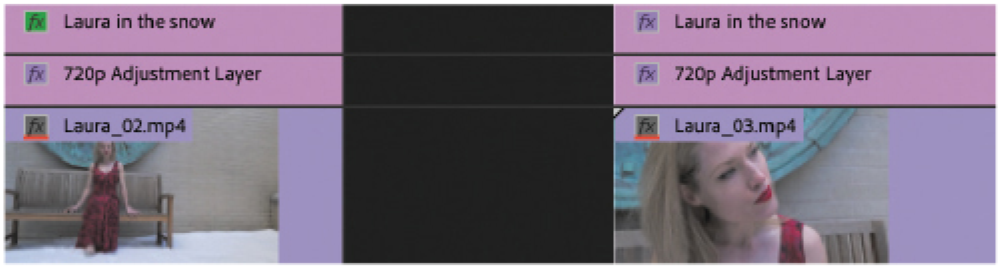
7. Remove the Solarize effect and experiment with other presets in the Effects panel—or combine multiple presets.

Saving effect presets

Although there are several built-in effect presets to choose from, you can easily create your own. You can also import and export presets to share them between editing systems.

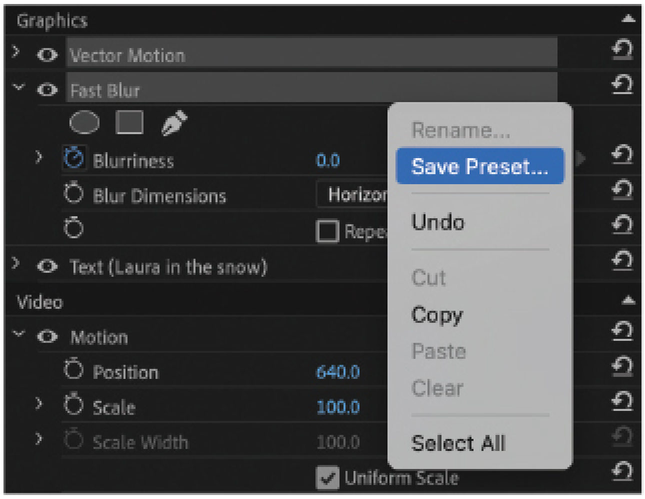
1. Open the sequence 08 Creating Presets.

   This sequence has two clips, each with an adjustment layer on the V2 track and a title on the V3 track.

2. Play the sequence to watch the opening animation.
3. Select the first instance of the “Laura in the snow” title clip on the V3 track and look in the Effect Controls panel. A Fast Blur effect has been applied to the title, and there are keyframes animating several controls.
4. In the Effect Controls panel, click the Vector Motion effect heading to select it. Next, hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) while you click the effect headings for the Fast Blur effect and then the Opacity effect. Now all three effects are selected.
5. Right-click any of the selected effects and choose Save Preset.
6. In the Save Preset dialog, name the effect **Title Animation**. Click in the Description box, and type **Title blurs into view**.

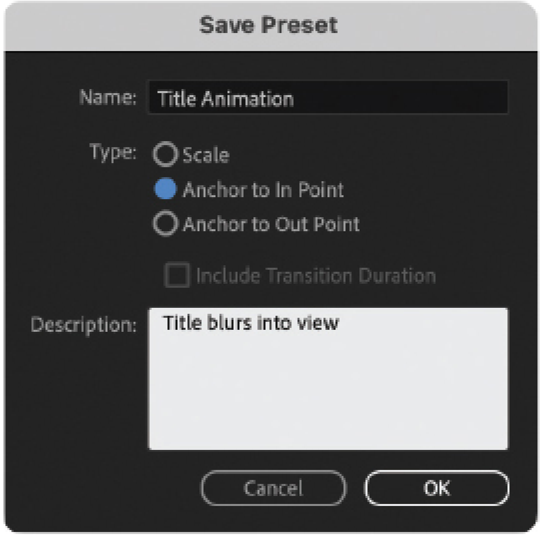
   When you apply an animated preset to a clip with a different duration, Premiere Pro needs to know how to distribute the keyframes.


Graphics
Vector Motion
Fast Blur
Blurriness
0.0
Blur Dimensions
Horizon
Repe
Text (Laura in the snow)
Video
Motion
Position
640.0
Scale
100.0
Scale Width
100.0
Uniform Scale
Rename...
Save Preset...
Undo
Cut
Copy
Paste
Clear
Select All

There are three options.

- **Scale:** Redistributes the original preset keyframes to the duration of the new clip proportionally.
- **Anchor To In Point:** Preserves the position of the first keyframe as well as the relationship of other keyframes in a clip relative to its In point.
- **Anchor To Out Point:** Preserves the position of the last keyframe as well as the relationship of other keyframes in a clip relative to its Out point.

7. For this preset, select Anchor To In Point so the timing matches at the start of each clip the preset is applied to.
8. Click OK to store the effects and keyframes as a new preset.



Save Preset

Name: Title Animation

Type: ○ Scale
● Anchor to In Point
○ Anchor to Out Point

☐ Include Transition Duration

Description: Title blurs into view

9. In the Effects panel, locate the Presets category and your newly created Title Animation preset. Hover the pointer over the preset to see the description you added appear as a tool tip.

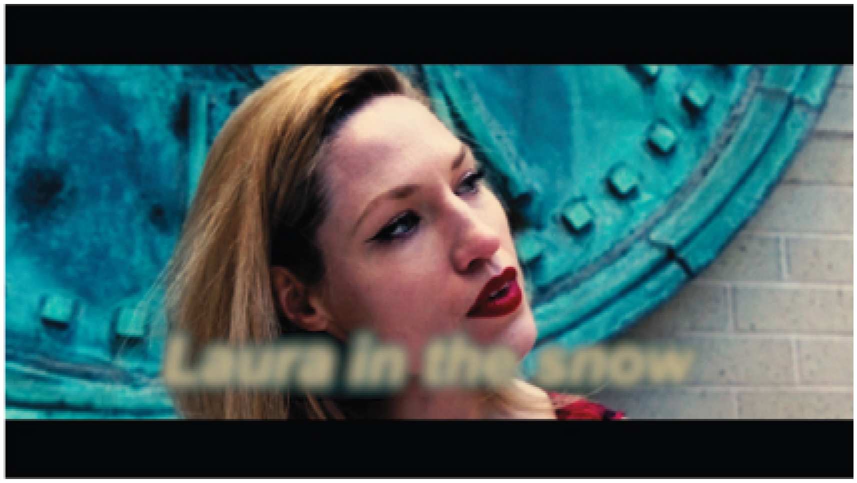
Title Animation

10. Drag the new Title Animation preset from the Effects panel onto the second instance of the "Laura in the snow" title clip on the V3 track in the Timeline.

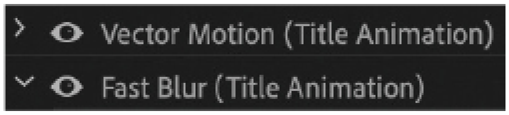
11. Watch the sequence play back to see the newly applied title animation.

▶ **Tip**

Effect presets can be exported and imported so they can be shared. You'll find the Import and Export options in the Effects panel menu. You can select and export an individual preset or a whole custom bin containing multiple presets. You'll find a number of free presets at *premierepro.net/presets*.



12. Select the second title clip on the V3 track and look in the Effect Controls panel. All three effects included in the preset have been added to the clip. The name of the preset is included in parentheses after each effect name, so you know the way the effect has been configured. You can still edit the effect controls, but it's a useful way to check which preset you used in the first place.



You can change the configuration of a preset by right-clicking it in the Effects panel and choosing Preset Properties or by double-clicking it. Double-clicking an effect (rather than a preset) will apply the effect to a selected clip.

Using multiple GPUs

If you'd like to speed up the rendering of effects or the export of clips, consider adding an internal GPU card or external GPU. If you're using a tower or workstation, you may have an additional internal slot that can support a second graphics card. An additional GPU won't improve playback performance when previewing real-time effects or displaying multiple layers of video, but Premiere Pro takes full advantage of computers with multiple GPU cards to significantly accelerate render and export times. You can find additional details about supported cards on the Adobe website.

Exploring frequently used effects

Although it's beyond the scope of this book to explore all the effects available, here are a few that are useful in many editing situations. You'll learn about color adjustments in the next lesson.

Applying image stabilization and rolling shutter reduction

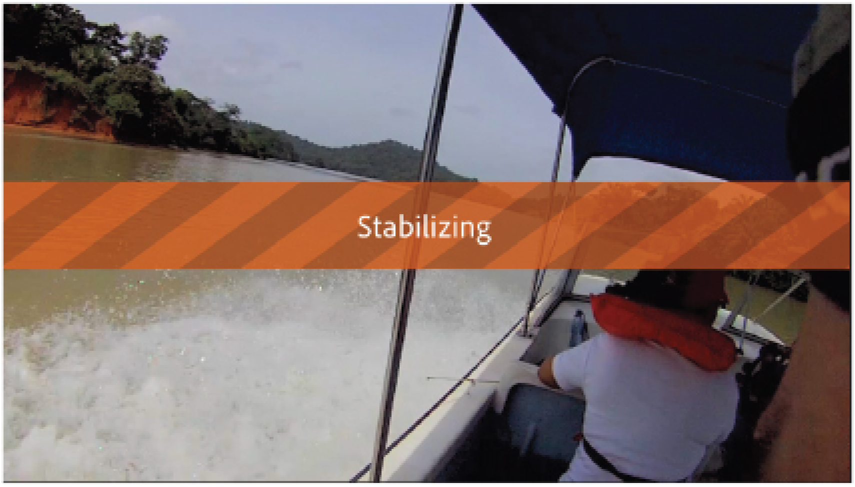
The Warp Stabilizer effect can remove jitter caused by camera movement (which is increasingly common with today's lightweight cameras). The effect is useful because it can remove unstable parallax-type movements, where images appear to shift on planes.

The result is achieved by zooming into the image by just enough to automatically animate the clip position within the frame to compensate for unwanted camera movement.

Let’s explore the effect.

1. Open the sequence 09 Warp Stabilizer.
2. Play the first clip in the sequence to see the wobbly shot.
3. In the Effects panel, locate the Warp Stabilizer effect and apply it to the shot.

   As Premiere Pro analyzes the clip, a banner across the footage lets you know you’ll need to wait before working with the effect. The Effect Controls panel also displays a detailed progress indicator. The analysis takes place in the background, so you can carry on working while waiting for it to complete.

4. Once the analysis has completed, you can adjust settings in the Effect Controls panel to improve results by choosing options that better suit the shot.

   - **Result:** You can choose Smooth Motion to retain the general camera movement (albeit stabilized), or you can choose No Motion to attempt to remove all camera movement. For this exercise, choose Smooth Motion.
   - **Smoothness:** This option specifies how much of the original camera movement should be retained for Smooth Motion. Use a higher value to smooth out the shot the most. Experiment with this shot until you’re happy with its stability.

- **Method:** You can use the four methods available. The two most powerful, because they warp and process the image more heavily, are Perspective and Subspace Warp. If either method creates too much distortion as the effect compensates for camera movement, try switching to Position, Scale, Rotation, or just Position. More of the image will probably be cropped using these alternative methods, but it may be worth it when working with very shaky footage.

5. Play the clip. The impact is pretty dramatic.

Tip

If you notice that some of the details in the shot appear to wobble, you may be able to improve the overall effect. In the Advanced section, select Detailed Analysis. This makes the Analysis phase do extra work to find elements to track. You can also use the Enhanced Reduction option from the Rolling Shutter Ripple option in the Advanced category. These options are slower to render but often do produce better results.

6. Play the second clip in the sequence to review it. This shot should be static, but it's handheld, so there's a little movement. Apply the Warp Stabilizer effect to this clip. Choose No Motion from the Warp Stabilizer Result menu.

© Maxim Jago 2016

The Warp Stabilizer effect is amazingly effective at locking these kinds of shots into position.

> Because the results are achieved by moving the image to compensate for camera wobble, the copyright notice that is burned into this footage now appears to move. This is a good reason to avoid using footage with burned-in graphics or text.

The Warp Stabilizer effect adds quite a lot of data to the Premiere Pro project file. If you plan to stabilize lots of clips, consider performing the stabilization in a separate project and exporting new media files for use in your main project. Large project files take longer to open and to save.

Use an adjustment layer with the Clip Name effect

If you intend to send a review copy of a sequence to a client or colleague, you can apply the Metadata & Timecode Burn-in effect to an adjustment layer and have it generate visible clip names for the entire sequence.

This is helpful because it allows others to give feedback based on a particular clip. You can control the clip name format position, size, and opacity.

You can enable a similar timecode overlay when exporting media, but this clip effect has more options.

1. Open the sequence 10 Clip Names.
2. At the lower right of the Project panel, click the New Item button (you may need to resize the Project panel to see it), and choose Adjustment Layer from the menu. Click OK in the Adjustment Layer dialog box.

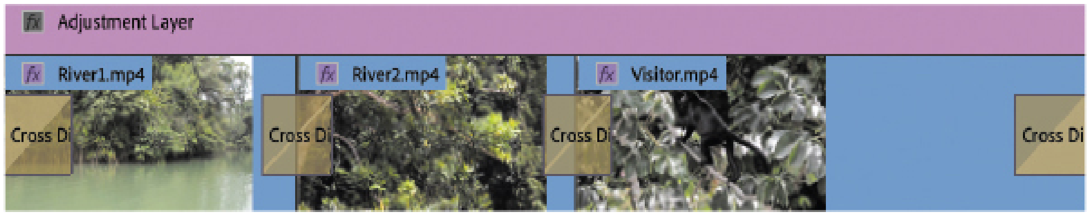
   A new adjustment layer is added to the Project panel, with settings that match your current sequence.

   > ▶ Tip
   >
   > If you work with multiple sequences with different format settings in a single project, it’s worth naming adjustment layers to make it easier to identify their resolution. You can rename adjustment layers in the Project panel just as you would any other item.

3. Drag the new adjustment layer to the beginning of track V2 in the current sequence.

4. Position the Timeline playhead at the end of the sequence. Click once to select the right edge of the new adjustment layer clip, and press E. Then press Esc to deselect the edit.

   This useful shortcut performs an Extend edit, which trims the selected edit to the current position of the playhead.

5. You can add most video effects to an adjustment layer. Let's try an example effect.

   In the Effects panel, locate the Horizontal Flip effect. Drag it onto the adjustment layer to apply it. This switches the video horizontally, giving the effect of changing the direction of movement.

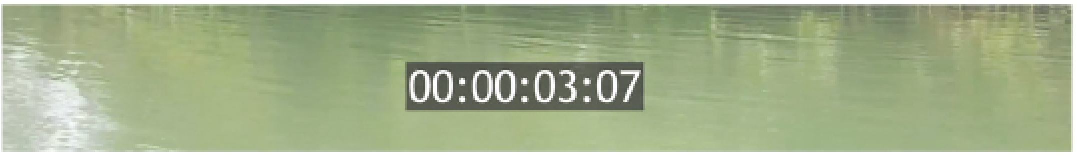
   There are no controls for the Horizontal Flip effect. You can still use masks to constrain the effect, which produces interesting results where there is movement in the shot.

   This effect works well with this kind of content but may not work if there is visible text or a recognizable logo in the picture.

   Let's add the Metadata & Timecode Burn-in effect.

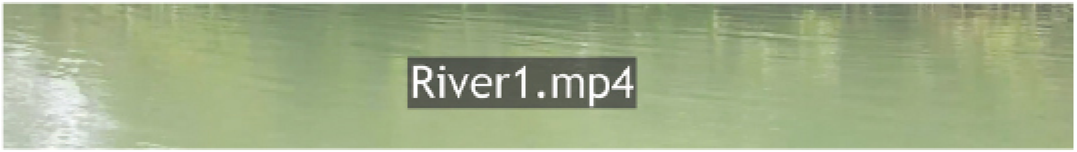
6. In the Effects panel, search for the Metadata & Timecode Burn-in effect.

7. Apply the Metadata & Timecode Burn-in effect to the adjustment layer clip.

   By default, the effect shows the timecode of the clip you applied it to, which in this case is Adjustment Layer—not very useful!

8. In the Effect Controls panel, in the Metadata & Timecode Burn-in effect controls, use the Metadata menu to choose Sequence Clip Name, and use the Source Track menu to choose Video 1. Now the clip names from the V1 track are displayed.



9. Clear the Effects panel search box by clicking the X.

▶ **Tip**

You can click the Clip Name effect heading in the Effect Controls panel and then drag the anchor point for the name displayed in the Program Monitor to reposition it.

Rendering all sequences

If you have several sequences with effects you want to render, you can render them all as a batch, without opening each sequence to render it individually.

Select the sequences you would like to render in the Project panel, and choose Sequence > Render Effects In To Out.

All effects that need to render in the selected sequences will be rendered.

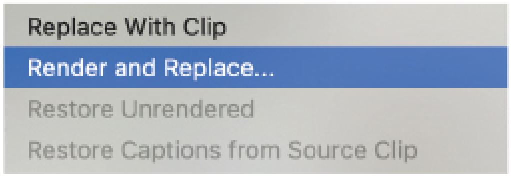
Using the Render And Replace command

If you are working on a low-powered system and your media is high resolution, you may find media tends to drop frames routinely when previewing. You may also see dropped frames when working with dynamically linked After Effects compositions or complex third-party video effects that don’t support GPU acceleration.

If all your media is high resolution, you may decide to use the proxy workflow, which allows you to switch between full-resolution and lower-resolution media file playback.

However, if just one or two clips are difficult to play back, you also have the option to render just those clips as new media files and replace the original item in a sequence quickly and easily.

To replace a sequence clip segment with a version that's easier to play back, right-click the clip and choose Render And Replace.



The Render And Replace dialog box has similar options to the proxy workflow. Here are the main settings:

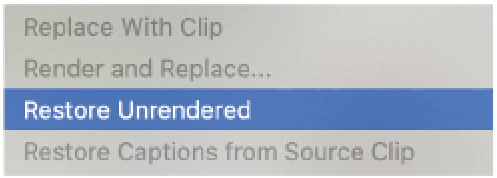
- **Source:** Choose whether the new media file that will be created will match the frame rate and frame size of the sequence, the original media, or a preset.
- **Format:** Specify your preferred file type. Different formats give access to different codecs.
- **Preset:** Choose a preset here. You can use a custom preset created with Adobe Media Encoder or one of the several built-in options.

> ▶ Tip
>
> Another benefit of using the Render And Replace command is that clips do not need to be re-rendered if you move them to a different part of your sequence or combine them with other clips in a layered composition. This can be a huge time-saver.

If you enable Include Video Effects for an option, Premiere Pro will incorporate the effects into the new file, which means you will no longer be able to adjust those effects' settings in the Effect Controls panel.

Once you have chosen a preset and a location for the new file, click OK and the sequence clip is replaced.

A rendered and replaced clip is no longer directly linked to the original media—it's linked to a new media file. This means, for example, changes that you make to a dynamically linked After Effects composition will not update in Premiere Pro. To restore the link to the original item, right-click the clip and choose Restore Unrendered.



If you had chosen the option to include video effects, they would be restored along with the original file and fully editable again.

Review questions

1 What are two ways to apply an effect to a clip?

2 List three ways to add a keyframe.

3 Dragging an effect onto a clip turns on its parameters in the Effect Controls panel, but you don’t see the effect in the Program Monitor. Why not?

4 Describe how you can apply one effect to a range of clips.

5 Describe how to save multiple effects to a custom preset.

Review answers

1 Drag the effect to the clip, or select the clip and double-click the effect in the Effects panel.

2 Move the playhead in the Effect Controls panel to where you want a keyframe and activate keyframing by clicking the stopwatch icon to toggle animation on; move the playhead and click the Add/Remove Keyframe button; and with keyframing activated, move the playhead to a position and change a

parameter. You could also set up and use a custom keyboard shortcut.

3 You need to move the Timeline panel playhead to the selected clip to see it in the Program Monitor. Selecting a clip does not move the playhead to that clip. Also, many effects do not produce visible changes until you adjust the controls.

4 You can add an adjustment layer above the clips you want to affect. You can then apply an effect to the adjustment layer that will modify all the clips below the layer. You can also select the clips you would like to apply the effect to and then drag the effect onto the group or double-click the effect in the Effects panel.

5 With the Effect Controls panel active, you can choose Edit > Select All. You can also hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) while you select multiple effect headings in the Effect Controls panel. Once the effects are selected, right-click the selection and choose Save Preset. You can also choose Save Preset in the panel menu.

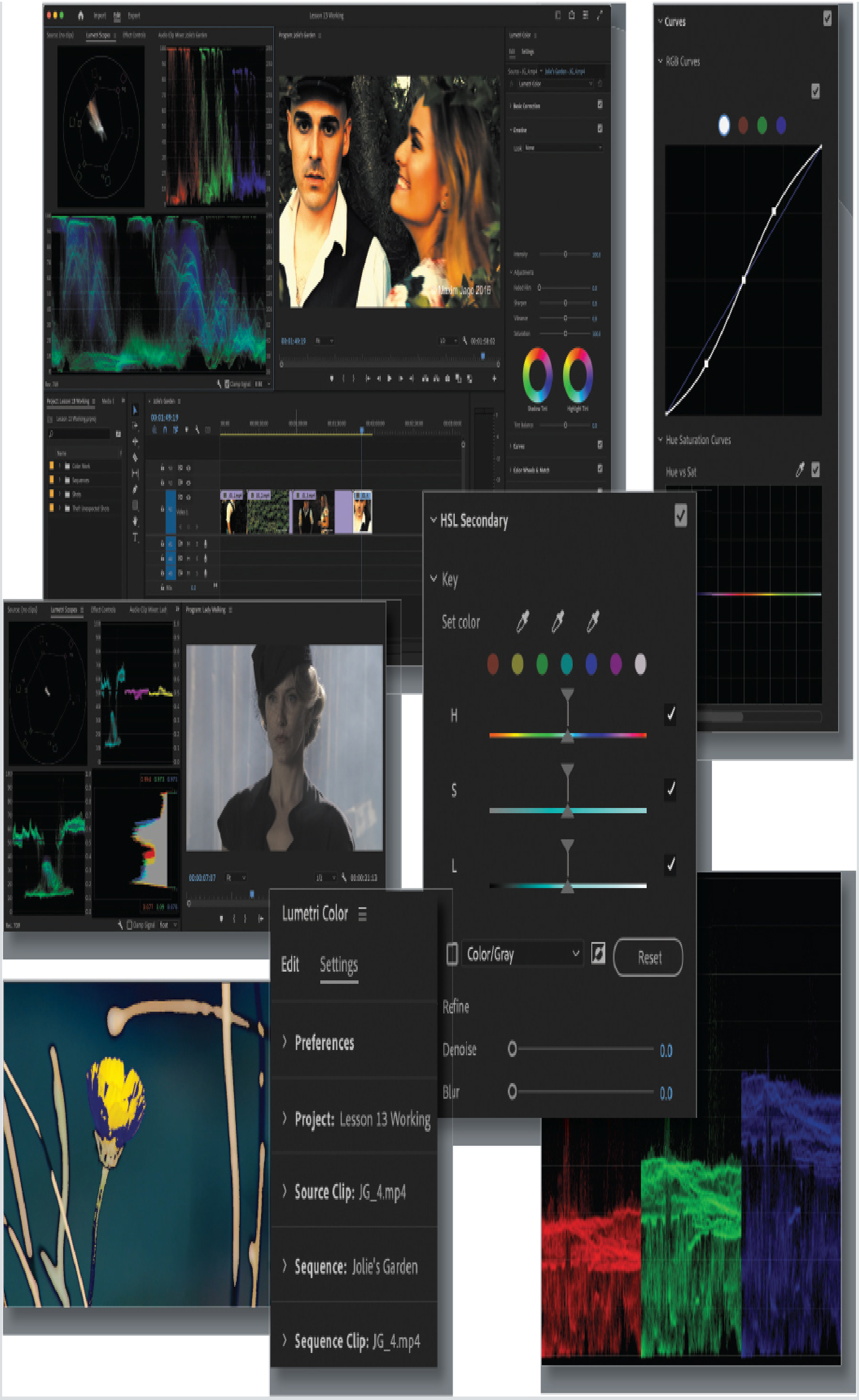
13 Applying Color Correction and Grading

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Work in the Color workspace.
- Use the Lumetri Color panel.
- Use vectorscopes and waveforms.
- Compare and match clip colors.
- Use color correction related effects.
- Fix exposure and white balance problems.
- Work with special color effects.
- Create a look.

This lesson will take about 150 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


Curves
RGB Curves
Hue Saturation Curves
Hue vs Sat
HSL Secondary
Key
Set color
H
S
L
Color/Gray
Reset
Refine
Denoise
0.0
Blur
0.0
Lumetri Color
Edit
Settings
Preferences
Project: Lesson 13 Working
Source Clip: JG_4.mp4
Sequence: Jolie's Garden
Sequence Clip: JG_4.mp4

Editing your clips together is just the first part of the creative process. Now it's time to work with color. In this lesson, you'll learn some key techniques for improving the look of your clips to give them a distinctive atmosphere.

Starting the lesson

So far, you’ve organized your clips, built sequences, and applied special effects. All of these skills come together when working with color correction.

Consider the way your eyes register color and light, the way cameras record it, and the way your computer screen, a television screen, a video projector, a phone, a tablet, or a cinema screen displays it. There are a great many factors when considering the final look of your production.

● **Note**

> To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

Premiere Pro has multiple color correction tools and makes it easy to create your own presets. In this lesson, you’ll begin by learning some fundamental color correction skills and then explore some of the most popular color correction special effects, before using them to deal with common color correction challenges.

1. Open Lesson 13.prproj in the Lessons folder.
2. Save the project as Lesson 13 **Working.prproj**.
3. Choose Color from the Workspaces menu to switch to the Color workspace.
4. Open the Workspaces menu again, and choose Reset To Saved Layout.

   This changes the workspace to a preset that was created to make it easier to work with color correction effects and, in particular, the Lumetri Color panel and Lumetri Scopes panel.

Understanding display color management

Computer monitors generally use a different system for displaying color than do TV screens and cinema projectors (see the sidebar “About 8-bit video” for more on this).

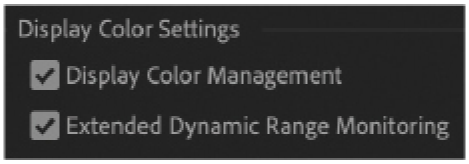
If you’re producing video for online distribution, you can be reasonably confident your audience will be using a computer monitor similar to yours to view your content, and you can be confident the colors and brightness levels of your images will be comparable. If you’re delivering video for TV or the cinema screen, you’ll need a way to view video that matches the type of screen it’s intended for.

Professional colorists have multiple display systems to check their work on. If they’re working on a film intended for theaters, they’ll use the same kind of projector a theater would use—projecting the image onto a screen for review purposes.

Some computer monitors offer excellent color reproduction—better than television screens. If you have enabled GPU acceleration (see Lesson 2, “Setting Up a Project”) and you are using a computer monitor of this kind, Premiere Pro can adjust the way video is displayed in the Source Monitor and Program Monitor to match the colors a television screen would display.

Premiere Pro automatically detects if you have the right kind of monitor. To enable this feature, choose Premiere Pro > Settings > Color (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Color (Windows), and select Display Color Management (Requires GPU Acceleration).

If you are working with high dynamic range (HDR) media and have a monitor that can display in HDR, you can also enable the Extended Dynamic Range Monitoring option to display the full contrast range.



Display Color Settings

☑ Display Color Management

☑ Extended Dynamic Range Monitoring

These options are also available in the Lumetri Color panel under the Settings tab, which you’ll learn about in this lesson.

For more information about these color management features, check out *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/using/color-management.xhtml*.

About 8-bit video

As mentioned earlier, 8-bit video works on a scale from 0 to 255 for each of the three color channels. That means, for RGB color, each pixel has red, green, and blue (RGB) values somewhere on that scale, which combine to produce a particular color. You can think of 0 as 0% and 255 as 100%. A pixel that has a red value of 127 is equivalent to having a red value of 50%.

Broadcast video uses a similar but different range, with a color system called YUV.

Although YUV color uses the three color channels differently, it still uses 8 bits per channel. However, if you were to compare the YUV scale with the 0 to 255 RGB scale, you'd find that the 8-bit YUV scale ranges from 16 to 235.

TVs usually use YUV color, not RGB. However, your computer screen is RGB. If you are producing video for broadcast television, you may encounter issues because you are looking at your video footage on a different kind of screen than the kind it will ultimately be viewed on. There is only one sure way of overcoming the uncertainty this creates: Connect a TV or calibrated broadcast monitor to your editing system and view your footage on that screen.

The difference is a little like comparing a photograph you view onscreen in Photoshop with a printed version. The printer and your computer screen use different color systems, and it's an imperfect translation from one to the other.

Sometimes you will view footage with visible detail in the brightest and darkest pixels on an RGB screen (like your computer display) that disappears when viewed on a TV screen. You'll need to make adjustments to the color to bring those details into the TV screen color range.

Some TVs give you the option to display color as RGB, using a range of names such as Game Mode or Photo Color Space. If your screen is set up this way, you may see the full 0 to 255 RGB range, and the only way to know is to check the settings—confusing!

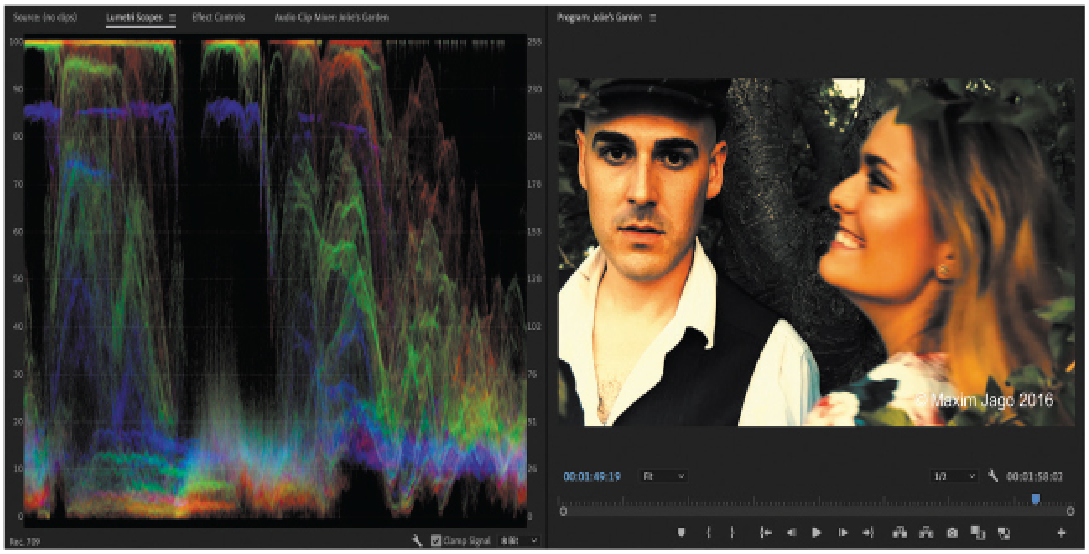
With some computer screens, Premiere Pro can adjust the way video colors are displayed to more accurately mimic other screens (see “Understanding display color management”).

Following the color adjustment workflow

Now that you’ve switched to the Color workspace, it’s a good time to switch to a different kind of thinking too. With your clips in place, it’s time to look at them less in terms of the action, events, and continuity of movement, and more in terms of whether they fit together aesthetically and have the right look.

There are two main phases to working with color.

- Make sure clips in each scene have matching colors, brightness, and contrast so they look like they were shot at the same time, in the same place, and with the same camera.
- Give everything a “look”—in other words, a particular tonality or color tint.


Source: (no clips)
Lumetri Scopes
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Jolie's Garden
Program: Jolie's Garden
© Maxim Jago 2016
00:01:49:19
Fit
1/2
00:01:58:02
Clamp Signal
8 Bit
Rec. 709

You’ll use the same tools to achieve both of these goals, but it’s common to approach them in this order, separately. If two clips from the same scene don’t have matching colors, it creates a jarring continuity problem that will distract the audience. This might be your goal, but most of the time you will want your audience to focus on the story.

Color correction and color grading

You’ve probably heard of both color correction and color grading. There is often confusion about the difference. In fact, both types of color work use the same tools, but there’s a difference of approach.

Color correction is usually aimed at standardizing the shots to make sure they fit together and to improve the appearance in general—to give brighter highlights and stronger shadows or to correct a color bias captured in-camera. This is more craft than art.

Color grading is aimed at achieving a look that conveys the atmosphere of the story more completely.

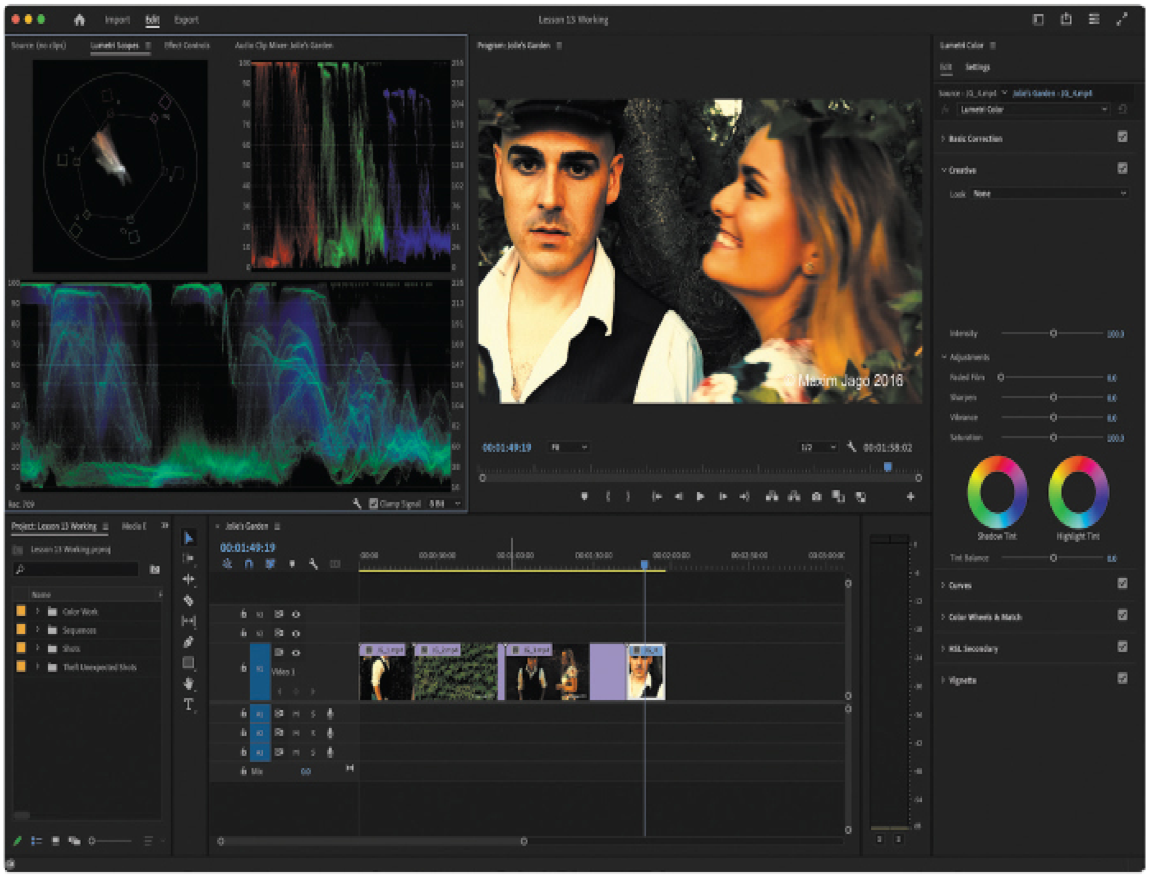
This is more art than craft. There is, of course, a debate about where one ends and the other begins, and you will sometimes alternate between the two approaches.

Exploring the Color workspace

The Color workspace includes the Lumetri Color panel, which has a number of sections offering color adjustment controls, and places the Lumetri Scopes panel in the same group as the Source Monitor. The Lumetri Scopes panel contains a set of image analysis tools.

The remaining screen area is devoted to the Program Monitor, Timeline panel, Project panel, Tools panel, and Audio Meters. The Timeline panel shrinks to accommodate the Lumetri Color panel.

If it’s not already visible, select the Lumetri Scopes panel to bring it into view. Here, the panel is shown with more display options enabled than the default.


Import
Edit
Export
Lumetri Scopes
Effect Controls
Lumetri Color
Basic Correction
Creative
Curves
Color Wheels & Match
HSL Secondary
Vignette
Shadow Tint
Highlight Tint
© Maxim Jago 2016

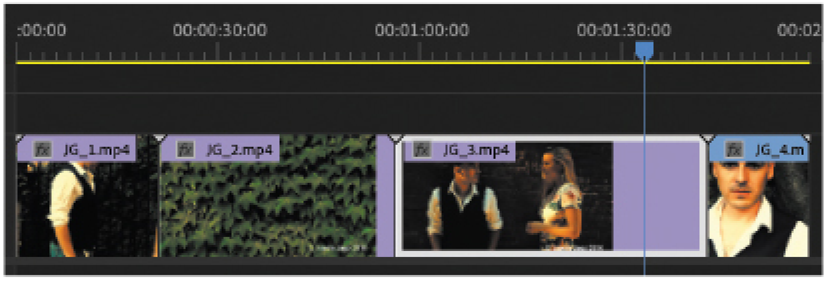
The Lumetri Scopes panel contains a set of image analysis tools, called *scopes*. To view the scopes shown in the example, right-click in the middle of the Lumetri Scopes panel and choose Presets > Vectorscope YUV/Parade RGB/Waveform YC. You’ll learn more about these important tools later in this lesson.

You can open and close any panel at any time, but this workspace focuses on finishing work, rather than organizing or editing your project.

▶ Tip

If more than one track-targeted track has a clip under the playhead, the clip on the highest targeted track is selected.

While the Lumetri Color panel is displayed, sequence clips on tracks that have track targeting enabled are selected automatically as you scrub the playhead over them.



This feature is important because adjustments made with the Lumetri Color panel, like other effects, are always applied to the selected clip. You can apply an adjustment and quickly move the Timeline panel playhead over the next clip to automatically select it, and then you can work on it.

● Note

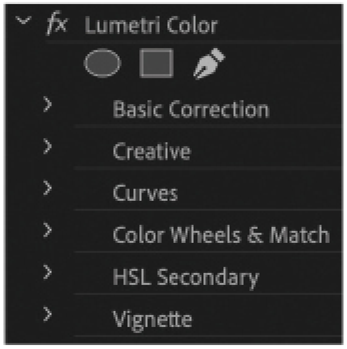
> Automatic clip selection selects only clips on targeted tracks. If there are multiple clips overlapping on different tracks, the clip on the highest targeted track will be selected. You can turn off track targeting for any tracks you would like to be ignored by automatic clip selection.

You can enable or disable automatic clip selection by choosing Sequence > Selection Follows Playhead.

Getting an overview of the Lumetri Color panel

There is an effect available in the Effects panel called Lumetri Color, which provides all the controls and options available in the Lumetri Color panel. Like any other effect, its controls are displayed in the Effect Controls panel.

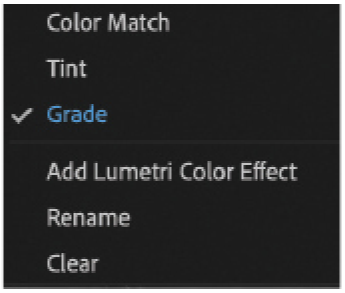
The first time you make an adjustment using the Lumetri Color panel, a Lumetri Color effect is applied to the selected clip. If there is a Lumetri Color effect already applied to the clip, the settings for that existing effect are updated as you make adjustments.


fx Lumetri Color
Basic Correction
Creative
Curves
Color Wheels & Match
HSL Secondary
Vignette

In a sense, the Lumetri Color panel is a kind of remote control for the Lumetri Color effect settings in the Effect Controls panel. As with any other effect, you can create presets, copy and paste Lumetri Color effects from one clip to another, and change the settings in the Effect Controls panel.

You can apply more than one Lumetri Color effect to the same clip, each making different types of adjustments to produce a combined result. This can make it easier to stay organized when working on complex projects. For example, you might use one Lumetri Color effect to match the colors between clips, and another to add a particular color tint. Keeping the effects separate makes it easier to apply precise adjustments later.

At the top of the Lumetri Color panel, you can choose which Lumetri Color effect you're currently working on. You can also add a new Lumetri Color effect.


Color Match
Tint
✓ Grade
Add Lumetri Color Effect
Rename
Clear

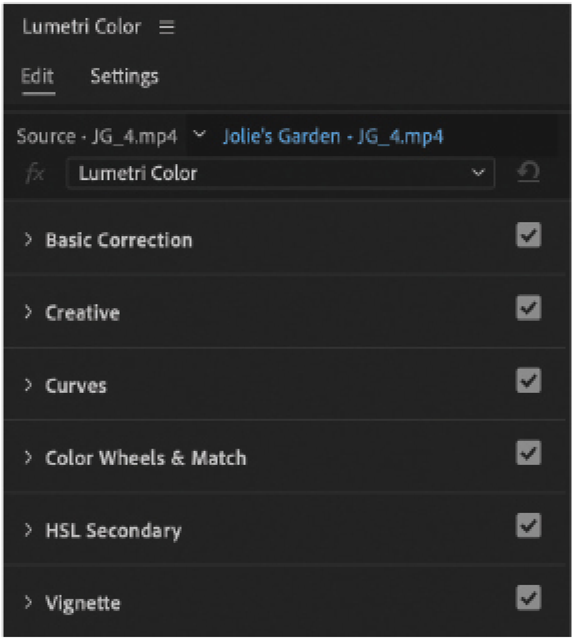
The same menu allows you to rename the current Lumetri Color effect to make it easier to navigate your effects. You can also rename effects in the Effect Controls panel by right-clicking the effect name and choosing Rename.

The Lumetri Color panel contains an Edit tab divided into six sections, and a Settings tab divided into five.

● **Note**

Each section has a checkbox to enable and disable it, making it easy to toggle the result on and off. This lets you check the effect against the original image.

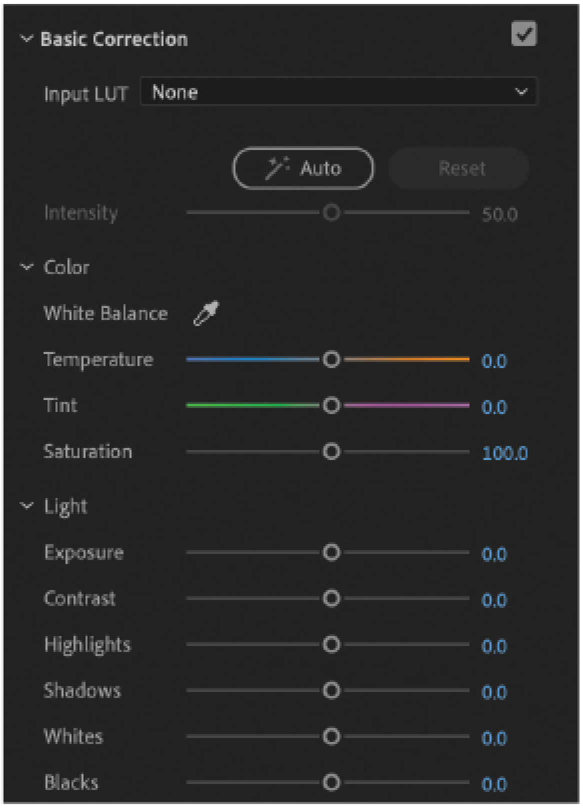
Each section provides a group of controls with different approaches to color adjustment. You can use any or all of the sections to achieve the result you want. You can expand or collapse a section in the Lumetri Color panel by clicking its heading. Let’s take a look at each section.


Lumetri Color
Edit
Settings
Source · JG_4.mp4
Jolie's Garden · JG_4.mp4
fx
Lumetri Color
Basic Correction ☑
Creative ☑
Curves ☑
Color Wheels & Match ☑
HSL Secondary ☑
Vignette ☑

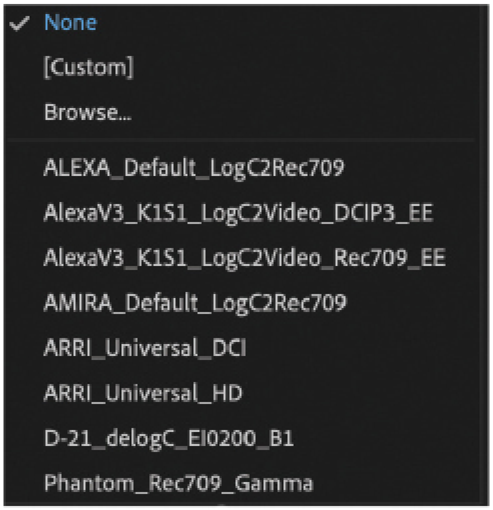
Basic Correction

The Basic Correction section provides you with simple controls to apply quick fixes to your clips.

At the top of the section, the Input LUT menu allows you to apply a preset adjustment to your media in the form of an Input LUT (Lookup Table), which makes standard adjustments to media that might otherwise look quite flat.


Basic Correction
Auto
Reset
Color
Light

Input LUT None
Intensity 50.0
White Balance
Temperature 0.0
Tint 0.0
Saturation 100.0
Exposure 0.0
Contrast 0.0
Highlights 0.0
Shadows 0.0
Whites 0.0
Blacks 0.0


None
[Custom]
Browse...
ALEXA_Default_LogC2Rec709
AlexaV3_K1S1_LogC2Video_DCIP3_EE
AlexaV3_K1S1_LogC2Video_Rec709_EE
AMIRA_Default_LogC2Rec709
ARRI_Universal_DCI
ARRI_Universal_HD
D-21_delogC_EI0200_B1
Phantom_Rec709_Gamma

A LUT is actually a file, a little like an effect preset, intended to adjust the appearance of clips. LUTs can be imported and exported for advanced collaborative color grading workflows.

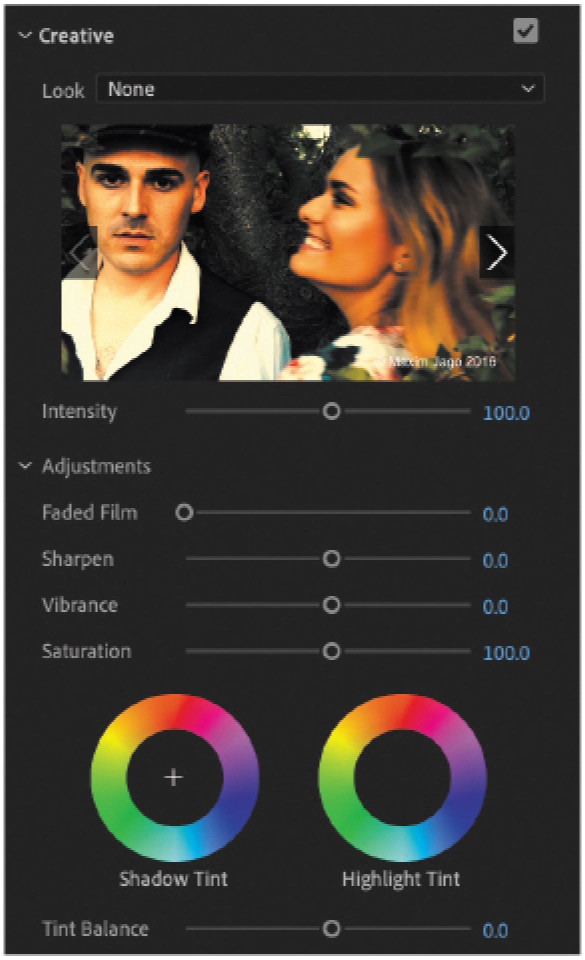
If you’re familiar with Adobe Photoshop Lightroom, you’ll recognize the controls in the Basic Correction section. You can work your way down the list making adjustments to improve the look of your footage, or you can click the Auto button to let Premiere Pro work out some settings for you.

Creative

As the name suggests, the Creative section allows you to go a little further into developing a look for your media.

A number of creative Looks are included, with a preview based on your current clip. Click the arrows on the preview to review different Looks, and then click the image to apply a Look to the clip.

You can make subtle adjustments to the color intensity, and there are color wheels configured to adjust the color for the shadow (darker) pixels or highlight (lighter) pixels in the image.



Look: None

Intensity 100.0

Faded Film 0.0

Sharpen 0.0

Vibrance 0.0

Saturation 100.0

Tint Balance 0.0

Curves

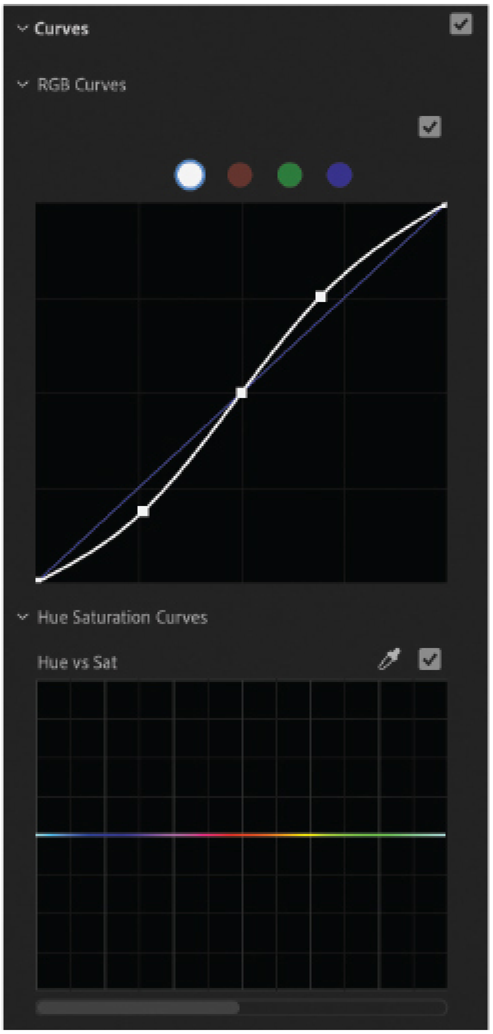
With curves you can make precise adjustments to visuals. They make it easier to achieve natural-looking results with just a few clicks.

These are some of the more advanced controls, providing nuanced adjustments to the luminance, red, green, and blue pixels.

Adjustments are made in a similar way to those you applied to the Parametric Equalizer effect graph or the audio rubber bands on clips. The position of the line in the graph indicates the adjustment.

In addition to traditional RGB curves, the Curves section contains multiple controls for hue, saturation, and luma curves. Each of these gives precise control over a specific adjustment.

For example, the first control, Hue Vs Sat, allows you to add (by clicking) and position (by dragging) control points to increase or decrease color saturation for specific hues.


Curves
RGB Curves
Hue Saturation Curves
Hue vs Sat

The next, Hue Vs Hue, allows you to change one hue into another. For an exploration of these controls, check out *blog.frame.io/2017/11/06/advanced-curves-techniques*.

▶ **Tip**

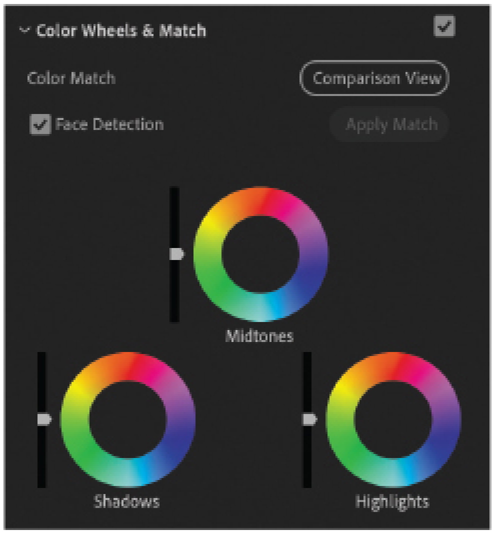
You can reset most controls in the Lumetri Color panel by double-clicking the control.

Color Wheels & Match

The Color Wheels & Match section provides precise control over the shadow, midtone, and highlight pixels in the image. Drag the control puck from the center of a wheel toward the edge to apply an adjustment.

Each color wheel has a luminance control slider on the left, which allows you to make adjustments to the brightness for each of the three types of pixels.

There’s also a button that opens the Program Monitor Comparison view and another button to automatically color match clips.

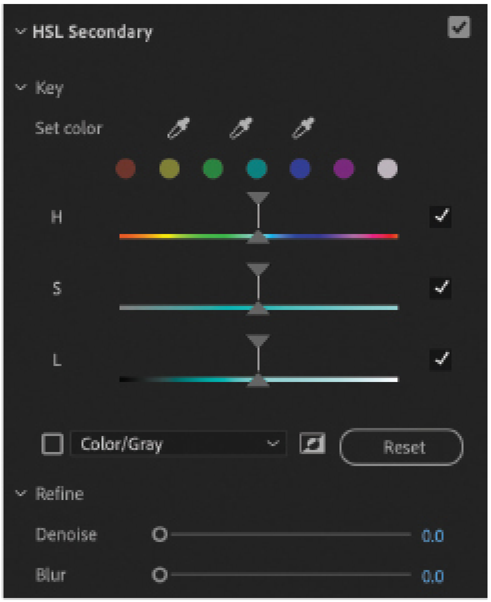


HSL Secondary

The HSL Secondary settings enable you to make color adjustments to precisely selected areas of an image, defined by selecting Hue, Saturation, and Luminance ranges.

Using this section of the Lumetri Color panel, you could selectively make a blue sky even bluer, or make a field of grass a deeper green, without affecting other areas of the picture.

The Hue Saturation Curves controls (in the Curves section of the Lumetri Color panel) can provide similar results, and you are likely to choose one method or the other based on personal preference.


HSL Secondary
Key
Set color
H
S
L
Color/Gray
Reset
Refine

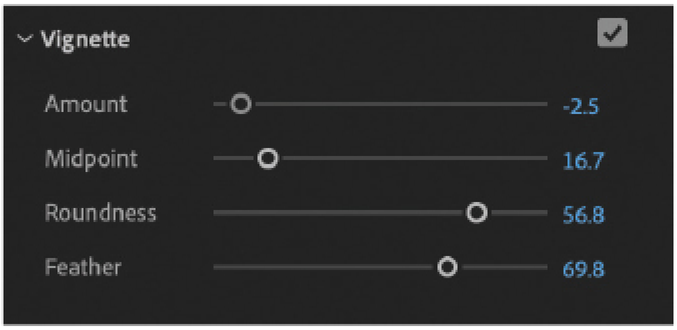
Denoise 0.0

Blur 0.0

Vignette

It’s surprising how much difference a simple vignette effect can make to a picture.

A classic vignette is caused by camera lenses darkening the edge of the frame. Modern lenses produce a subtler effect than older lenses.



Amount -2.5

Midpoint 16.7

Roundness 56.8

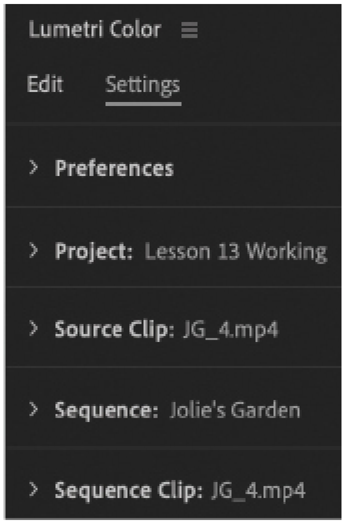
Feather 69.8

Instead, a vignette is commonly used to bring attention to the center of an image, and it can be highly effective, even when the adjustment is subtle.

© Maxim Jago 2016
© Maxim Jago 2016

Adjusting the Lumetri Color settings

The Lumetri Color panel Settings tab includes several important settings that impact the way color is interpreted and displayed.



Lumetri Color

Edit Settings

› **Preferences**

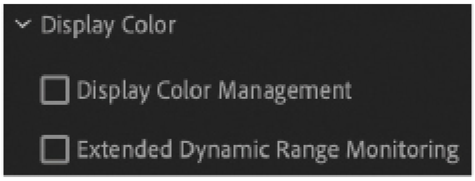
› **Project:** Lesson 13 Working

› **Source Clip:** JG_4.mp4

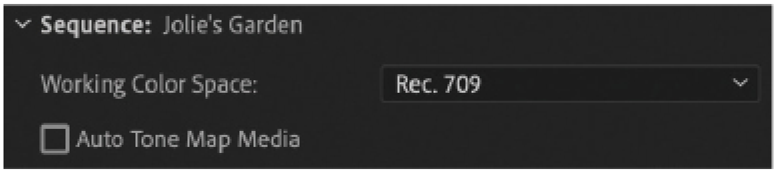
› **Sequence:** Jolie's Garden

› **Sequence Clip:** JG_4.mp4

Many of these settings are repeated in other menus, but it's convenient to have them all in one place as part of the Lumetri Color panel. Here you'll find settings for your general user preferences, your project, the source clip for a currently selected clip, the currently active sequence, and the currently selected sequence clip. For example, the Display Color Management and Extended Dynamic Range Monitoring options you explored earlier are also available here. Changing any of these settings in one place changes them everywhere.


Display Color
☐ Display Color Management
☐ Extended Dynamic Range Monitoring

By default, clips that have no defined color space are interpreted as having Rec.709 color (the industry standard for HD video) and automatically adjusts clip tones to display them correctly in newly created sequences (this is described as *tone mapping*). Sequences created using previous versions of Premiere will not have automatic tone mapping enabled, but you can enable it in the Sequence section of the Lumetri Color panel settings by selecting the Auto Tone Map Media option.


Sequence: Jolie's Garden
Working Color Space:
Rec. 709
☐ Auto Tone Map Media

In most cases, all the default settings on this tab will work well and there should be no need for you to change anything.

If you are working with high dynamic range (HDR) video shot on a phone, you will probably get acceptable results by setting the sequence working color space to Rec. 709 and selecting Auto Tone Map Media.

For now, switch back to the Edit tab.

The Lumetri Color panel in action

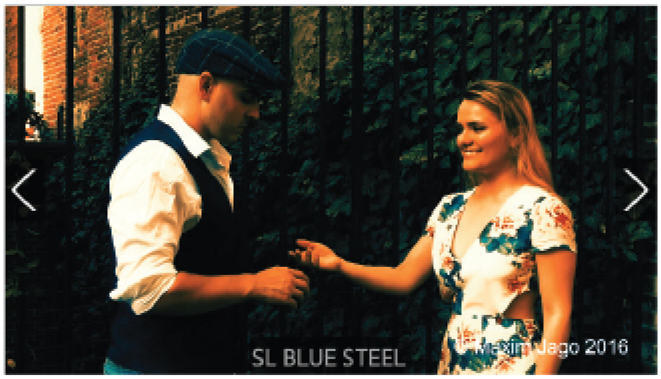
Because adjustments made using the Lumetri Color panel are added collectively as a regular Premiere Pro effect, you can also enable and disable the effect in the Effect Controls panel or create an effect preset.

Let’s start with some prebuilt Looks.

1. If it’s not already open, open the sequence Jolie’s Garden in the Sequences bin. This simple sequence has a series of clips that have a good range of color and contrast.

© Maxim Jago 2016

2. Position the playhead over the first clip in the sequence. The clip should highlight automatically in the Timeline panel.
3. Click the Creative section heading in the Lumetri Color panel to reveal its controls.
4. Browse through several prebuilt Looks by clicking the arrows on the right and left sides of the preview display. When you see a Look you like, click the preview image to apply it.
5. Try adjusting the Intensity slider to vary the amount of adjustment.



This is a good time to experiment with the other controls in the Lumetri Color panel. Some controls will make sense immediately, while others will take time to master. Use the clips in this sequence as a testing ground to learn about the Lumetri Color panel through experimentation; drag all the controls from one extreme to the other to see the result. You'll learn about many of these controls in detail later in this lesson.

Understanding Lumetri Scopes essentials

You might have wondered why the Premiere Pro interface is dark gray. There’s a good reason: Human vision is subjective. In fact, it’s also highly relative.

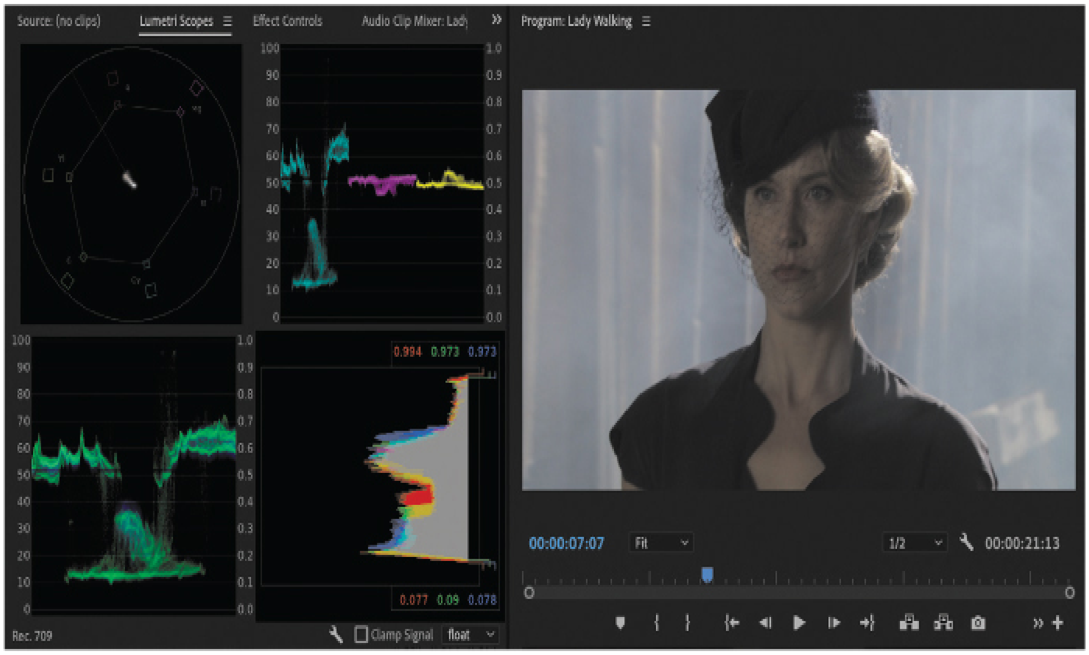
If you see two colors next to each other, the way you see one is changed by the presence of the other. To prevent the Premiere Pro interface from influencing the way you perceive colors in your projects, Adobe has made the interface almost entirely gray. If you’ve ever seen a professional color-grading suite, where artists provide the finishing touches to films and television programs, you’ve probably noticed that most of the room is gray. Colorists sometimes also have a large gray piece of card, or a section of a wall, that they can look at for a few moments to “reset” their vision before checking a shot.

The combination of your subjective vision and the variations in the way computer monitors and television monitors display color and brightness means we need a way to objectively measure color and brightness.

Video scopes provide exactly that. And they’re used throughout the media industry; learn them once, and you’ll be able to use them everywhere!

1. Open the sequence Lady Walking.
2. Position the Timeline playhead so that it’s over the clip in the sequence.
3. The Lumetri Scopes panel should be sharing the panel group with the Source Monitor. Click to select the panel and make it active, or select it in the Window menu.

4. Open the Lumetri Scopes panel Settings menu 🔧, and choose Presets > Premiere 4 Scope YUV (float, no clamp).


Source: (no clips)
Lumetri Scopes
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Lady
Program: Lady Walking
0.994 0.973 0.973
0.077 0.09 0.078
Rec. 709
Clamp Signal
float
00:00:07:07
Fit
1/2
00:00:21:13

▶ **Tip**

You can also access the Lumetri Scopes Settings menu by right-clicking anywhere in the panel.

You should see the lady walking in the street in the Program Monitor, along with the synchronized display in the Lumetri Scopes panel. For an exploration of the Lumetri Scopes panel, see *blog.frame.io/2017/09/27/introduction-to-video-scopes*.

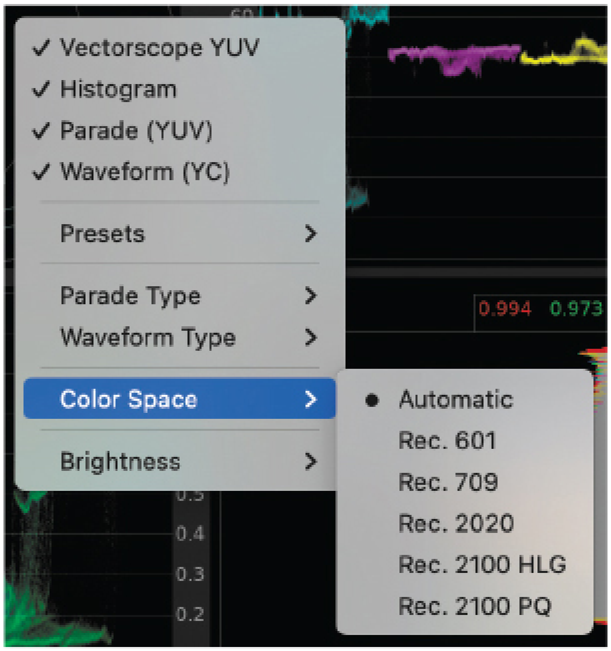
Working with the Lumetri Scopes panel

The Lumetri Scopes panel displays an array of industry-standard meters to get an objective view of your media.

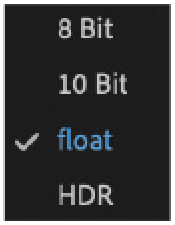
The full complement of displays can be a little overwhelming at first, plus you’ll have smaller graphs because they are all sharing one panel. You can turn individual items off and on by opening the Settings menu and choosing items on the list.

In the Settings menu, you can specify which professional color space you are working to. If you’re producing content for broadcast television, you will almost certainly be working to one of these standards. If you’re not sure, choose Automatic.

At the bottom right of the Lumetri Scopes panel, you can choose to display the scopes in 8 Bit, 10 Bit, Float (which is 32-bit, floating-point color), or HDR.


✓ Vectorscope YUV
✓ Histogram
✓ Parade (YUV)
✓ Waveform (YC)
Presets >
Parade Type >
Waveform Type >
Color Space >
Brightness >
● Automatic
Rec. 601
Rec. 709
Rec. 2020
Rec. 2100 HLG
Rec. 2100 PQ
0.994
0.973
0.4
0.3
0.2

The option you choose does not change the clip or the way effects are rendered, but it does change the way the scopes display the information. You’ll want to choose an option that matches the color space you’re working in or choose Automatic.



The HDR option refers to High Dynamic Range, which has a much bigger range between the darkest and brightest parts of the picture than SDR (Standard Dynamic Range). Though HDR is beyond the scope of these lessons, it’s an important technology that is increasingly supported by cameras and displays.

The Clamp Signal option constrains the scopes to standard legal levels for broadcast television. Again, this doesn’t impact the image or the result of your effects—it’s a matter of personal preference if you would like to limit the range of the scopes in this way to see the scales more clearly.

☑ Clamp Signal

Let’s simplify the view and take a look at two of the main components in the Lumetri Scopes panel.

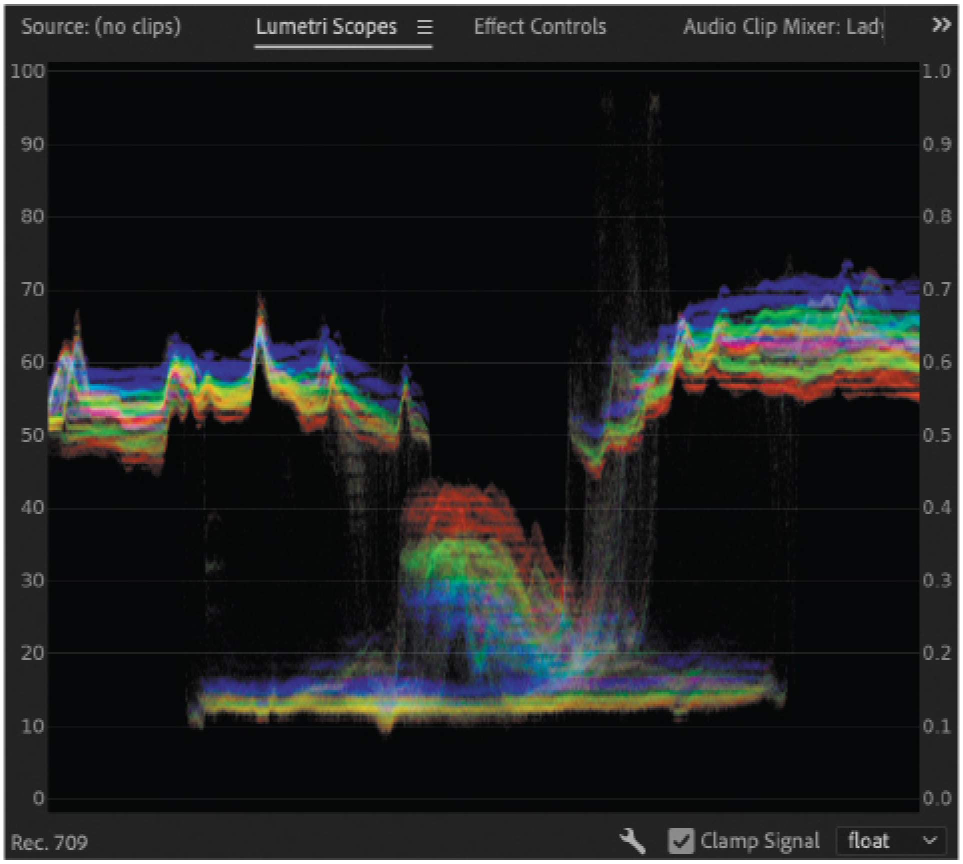
Begin by using the Lumetri Scopes settings menu to click each of the selected items to deselect them and remove them from the display, keeping only the Waveform (YC).

Waveform

Right-click in the panel and choose Waveform Type > RGB.

If you’re new to waveforms, they can look a little strange, but they’re actually a relatively simple graph. They show you the brightness and color intensity of your images.

Every pixel in the current frame is displayed in the waveform. The brighter the pixel, the higher it appears on the graph. The pixels have their correct horizontal position (that is, a pixel halfway across the screen will be displayed halfway across the waveform), but the vertical position is not based on the pixel’s position in the image.


Source: (no clips)
Lumetri Scopes
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Lady
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
1.0
0.9
0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0.3
0.2
0.1
0.0
Rec. 709
☑ Clamp Signal
float

Instead, the vertical position indicates brightness or color intensity; the brightness and color intensity waveforms are displayed together in this version of the waveform, using different colors.

- 0, at the bottom of the scale, represents no luminance at all and/or no color intensity.
- 100, at the top of the scale, represents a pixel that is fully bright. On the 8-bit RGB scale, this value would be 255 (if you set the Scope to 8 Bit, you can see this scale on the right side of the waveform display).

This all might sound rather technical, but in practice it's straightforward. There's a visible baseline that represents "no brightness" and a top level that represents "fully bright." The numbers on the edge of the graph might change depending on your settings, but the use is essentially always the same.

You can view the waveform in several ways. To access a type, open the Lumetri Scopes Settings menu and choose Waveform Type, followed by one of these options:

- **RGB**: Shows the Red, Green, and Blue pixels in their own colors.
- **Luma:** Shows the brightness (luminance) value of pixels against a scale of –20 to 120, called IRE (Institute of Radio Engineers). This allows for precise analysis of bright spots and contrast ratio.
- **YC:** Shows the image luminance (brightness) in green and the chrominance (color intensity) in blue.
- **YC No Chroma:** Shows the luminance only, with no chrominance.

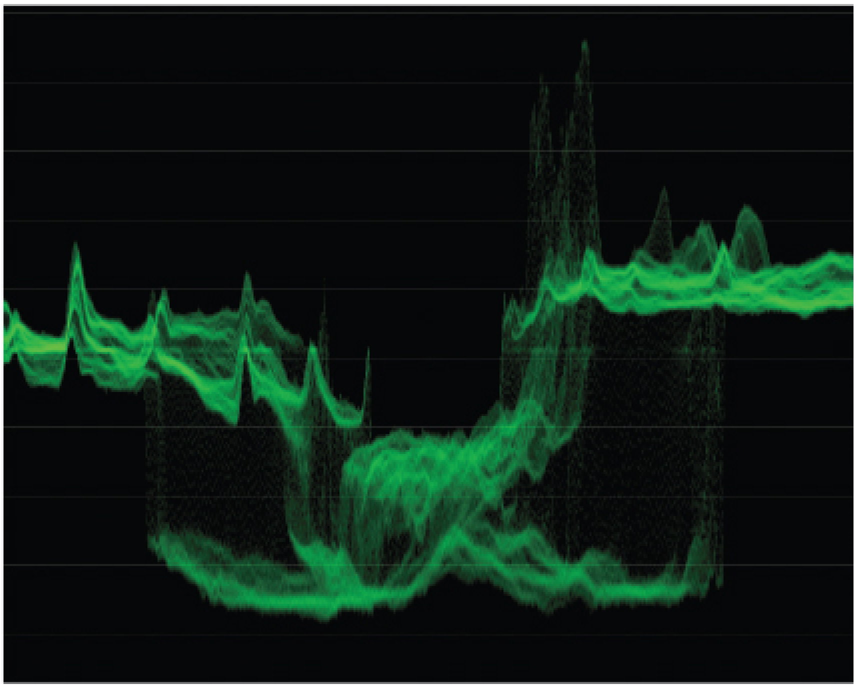
Why *YC*?

The letter *C*, for chrominance, makes simple sense, but the letter *Y*, for luminance, takes a little explaining. It comes from a way of measuring color information that uses x-, y-, and z-axes, where *Y* represents the luminance. The idea was originally to create a simple system for recording color, and the use of *Y* to represent brightness, or luminance, stuck.

Let’s try this display a little.

1. Continue using the Lady Walking sequence. Set the Timeline playhead to 00:00:07:00 so you can see the subject against the smoky background.

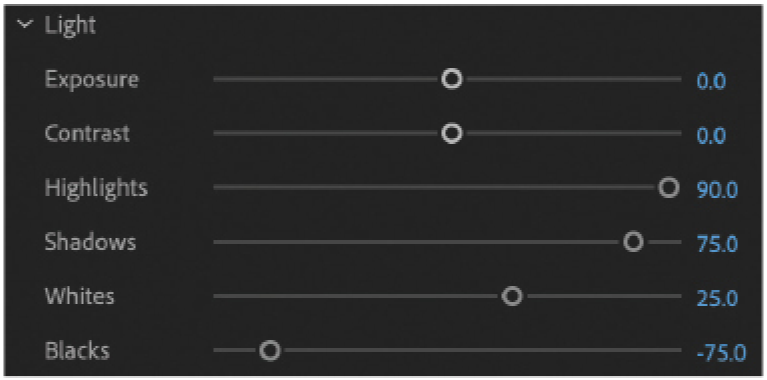
2. Set the waveform display to YC No Chroma. This is a brightness-only waveform.

   The smoky parts of the image have little contrast and are displayed as a relatively flat line in the waveform display. The lady's head and shoulders are darker than the smoky background. They're around the middle of the image, and they are clearly visible in the middle area of the waveform display.

3. Expand the Basic Correction section of the Lumetri Color panel.
4. Experiment with the Exposure, Contrast, Highlights, Shadows, Whites, and Blacks controls. As you adjust the controls, watch the waveform display to see the result.

If you make an adjustment to the image and then wait a few seconds, your eyes will adjust to the new appearance, and it will seem normal. Make another adjustment, and a few seconds later the new appearance seems normal too. Which is correct?



Light

Exposure 0.0

Contrast 0.0

Highlights 90.0

Shadows 75.0

Whites 25.0

Blacks -75.0

Ultimately, the answer is based on perceived quality. If you like what you see, it’s right. However, the waveform display will give you objective information about how dark or bright pixels are or how much color is in the shot, which is useful when attempting to meet delivery standards.

If you scrub through the sequence or play the sequence, you’ll see the waveform display update live.

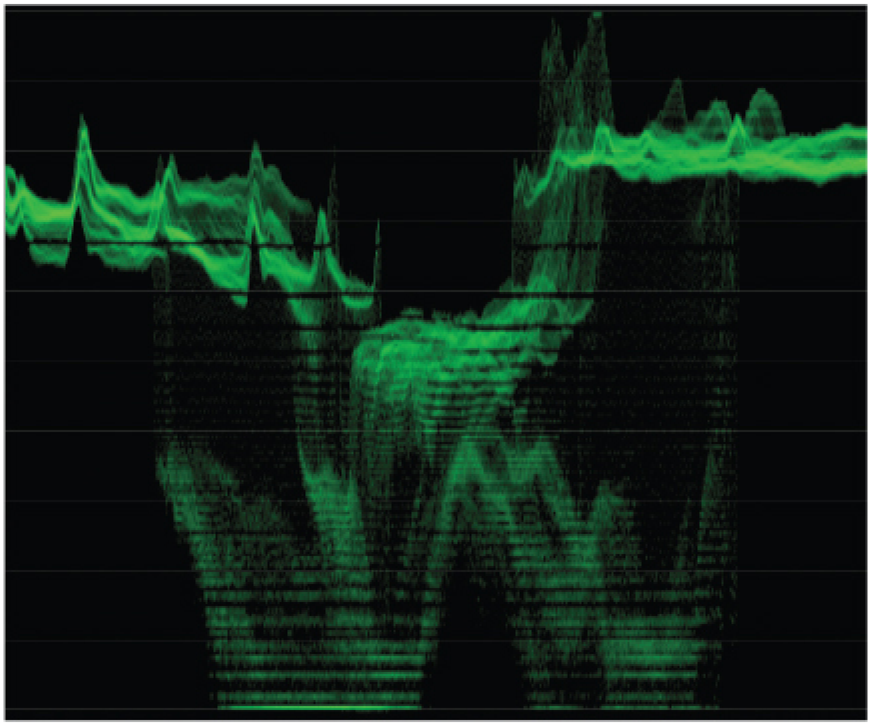
The waveform display is useful for showing how much contrast you have in your images (the difference between the bright and dark areas of the image) and for checking whether you are working on video that has “legal” levels (that is, the minimum and maximum brightness or color saturation permitted by a broadcaster). Broadcasters adopt their own standards for legal levels, so you will need to find out for each case where your work will be broadcast.

▶ Tip

> It can sometimes seem as if the waveform display is showing an image. Remember, the vertical position of the pixels in your images is not indicated in a waveform display.

You can see right away that you do not have great contrast in this shot. There are some strong shadows but few *highlights* in the upper part of the waveform display. Any time you see perfectly flat horizontal lines in the waveform display, it means there’s no visible detail. In the following example, the shadows have been darkened so much, they’re flattened at the bottom of the waveform.

The flattening may not be visible until you select Clamp Signal to limit the waveform display to the visible part of the output.



The result is not necessarily bad and might be exactly the look you are seeking—it's certainly dramatic! It's just important to know when adjustments are so extreme that detail is being lost.

Reset the Lumetri Color panel by clicking the Reset Effect button ↺ at the upper-right corner of the panel.

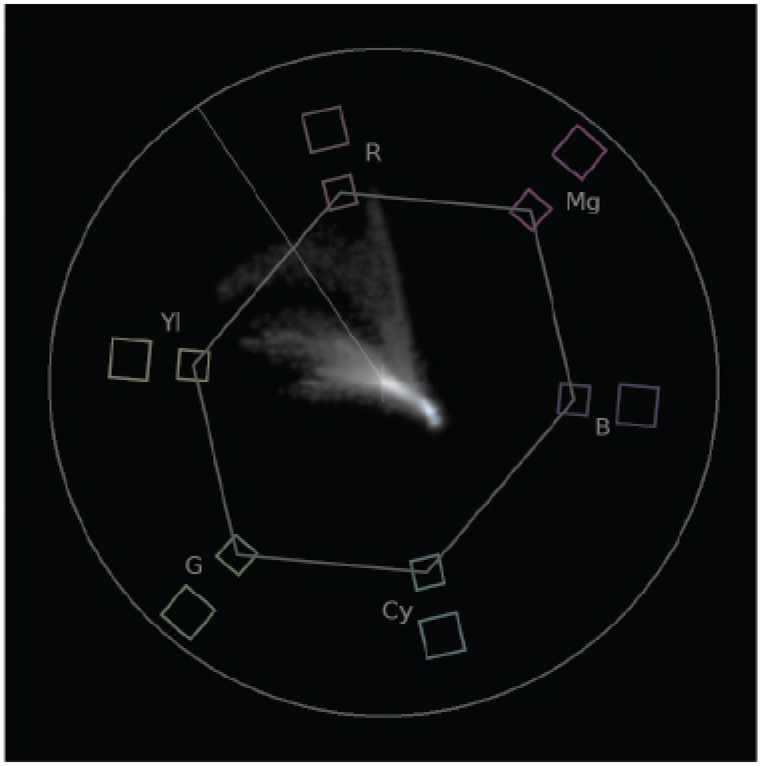
YUV vectorscope

Whereas the Luma waveform shows luminance in terms of the vertical position of pixels displayed, with brighter pixels displayed at the top and darker pixels displayed at the bottom, the vectorscope shows only color.

1. Open the sequence Skyline.

2. Open the Lumetri Scopes Settings menu, and choose Vectorscope YUV; then open the Settings menu again, and choose Waveform (YC No Chroma) to deselect it.

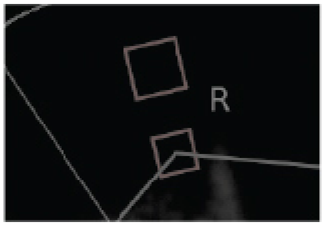
Pixels in the image are displayed in the vectorscope. If a pixel appears in the center of the circle, it has no color saturation. The closer to the edge of the circle, the more color a pixel has.



If you look closely at the vectorscope, you’ll see a series of targets indicating primary colors.

- R = Red
- G = Green
- B = Blue

There are two boxes for each target. The smaller, inner box is at 75% saturation, the YUV color limit, while the larger, outer box is at 100% saturation, the RGB color limit. RGB color extends to a greater level of saturation than YUV. The thin line connecting the inner boxes shows the YUV color gamut (the range of YUV colors).

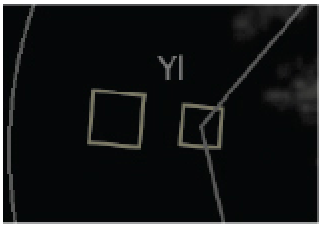


You’ll also see a series of targets indicating secondary colors.

- Yl = Yellow

- Cy = Cyan
- Mg = Magenta

The closer a pixel is to one of these targets, the more of that color it has. Unlike the waveform display, which indicates the horizontal position of each pixel, no position information is indicated in the vectorscope.



It’s clear enough to see what’s happening in this shot of Seattle. There’s a lot of blue, and there are a few spots of red and yellow. The small amount of red is indicated by the streak of peaks reaching out toward the R marking in the vectorscope.

The vectorscope is helpful because it gives you objective information about the colors in your sequence. If there’s a color cast, perhaps because the camera was not calibrated properly, it’s often obvious in the vectorscope display. You can use one of the Lumetri Color panel controls to reduce the amount of the unwanted color or add more of the opposite color.

Some of the controls for color correction adjustments have the same color wheel design as the vectorscope, making it easy to see what you need to do.

About primary and secondary colors

Computer screens and televisions use additive color, which means the colors are created by generating light in different colors and combining them to produce a precise mix.

When you draw with color on paper, it is usually white paper, which reflects a full spectrum of colors. You subtract from the white of the paper by adding pigment. Because the pigment absorbs light in a portion of the spectrum and prevents those parts of the light from being reflected, this is called *subtractive color*.

Red, green, and blue are the primary colors used by video displays. Television screens and your computer monitor combine these three colors in varying relative amounts to produce the colors you see. You produce white by combining equal amounts of red, green, and blue.

There's a beautiful symmetry to the way a standard color wheel works, and a color wheel is essentially what the vectorscope displays.

Any two primary colors will combine to produce a secondary color. The secondary colors for additive color (yellow, cyan, and magenta) appear opposite the remaining primary color on a color wheel.

For example, red and green (two of the primary colors) combine to produce yellow, which is the opposite of blue (the third primary color).

The secondary colors used in additive color are equivalent to the primary colors used in subtractive color. It's an elegant symmetry!

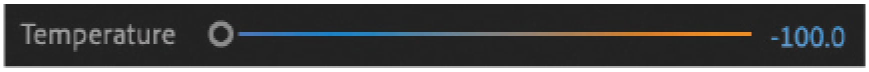
For a more detailed explanation of color, see *helpx.adobe.com/photoshop/using/color.xhtml*.

Let's make an adjustment and observe the result in the vectorscope display.

1. Continue working with the Skyline sequence. Position the Timeline playhead at 00:00:01:00, where the colors are more vivid than at the

end of the clip.

2. In the Lumetri Color panel, expand the Basic Correction section.
3. While watching the result in the vectorscope display, drag the Temperature slider from one extreme to the other. Try making an extreme blue adjustment.

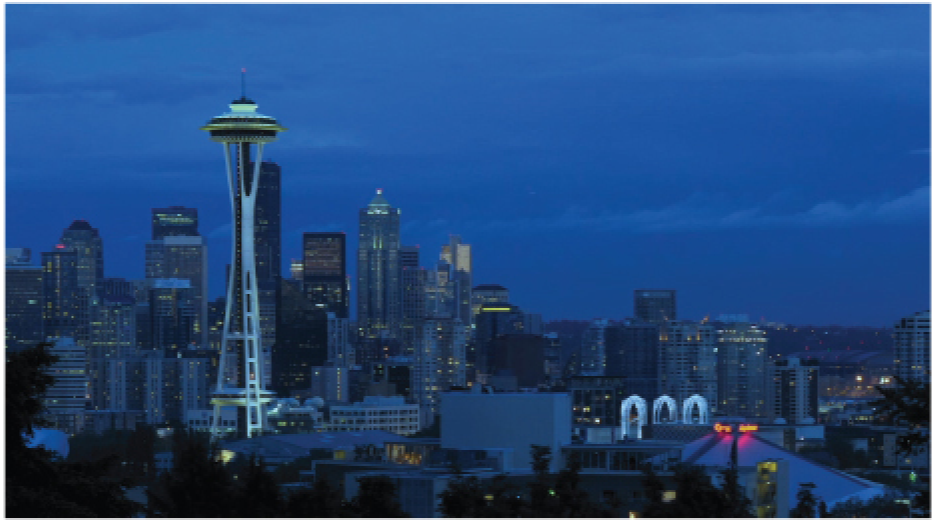


Temperature -100.0

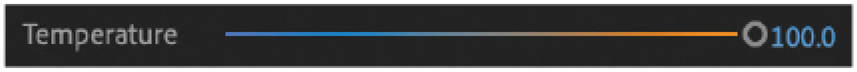
Tip

You can jump to 00:00:01:00 by clicking the timecode in the Source Monitor, Program Monitor, or Timeline panel; typing **1.** (that’s 1 followed by a period); and then pressing Return (macOS) or Enter (Windows). Each period (.) adds one pair of zeros.

The pixels displayed in the vectorscope move away from the orange area of the display toward the blue.



4. The adjustment enhances the existing blue tint. Now try an extreme orange adjustment.



Temperature 100.0

Shifting the color temperature to the orange compensates for the original tint and makes the shot look more natural.

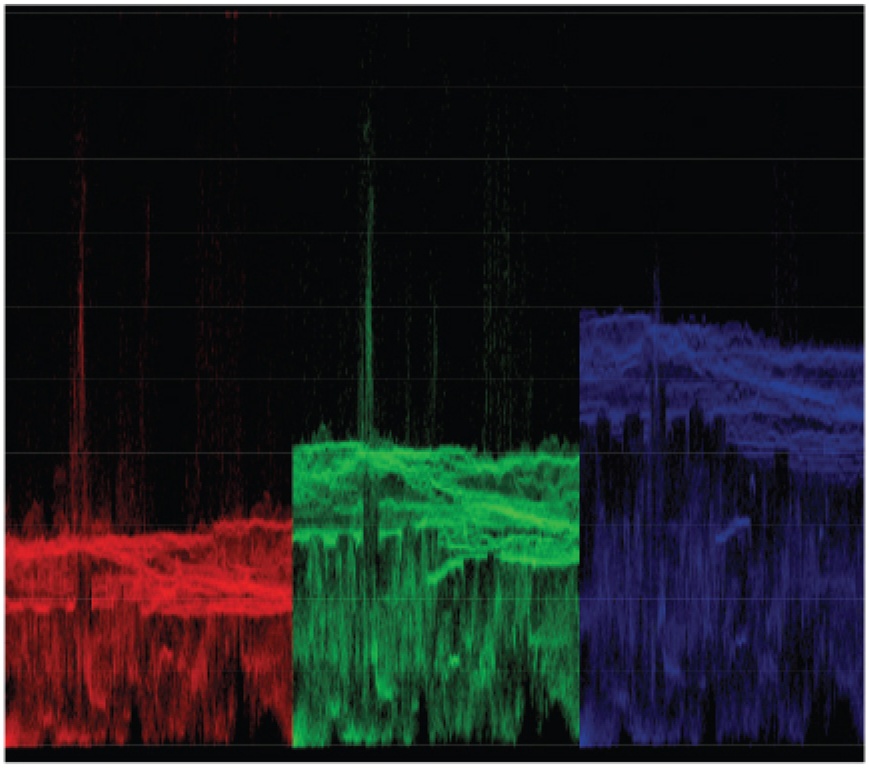
5. Double-click the Temperature slider to reset it.
6. In the Lumetri Color panel, drag the Tint slider from one extreme to the other.

   The pixels displayed in the vectorscope move between the green and magenta areas of the display.
7. Double-click the Tint slider to reset it.

By making adjustments while checking the vectorscope, you can give an objective indication of the change you’re making.

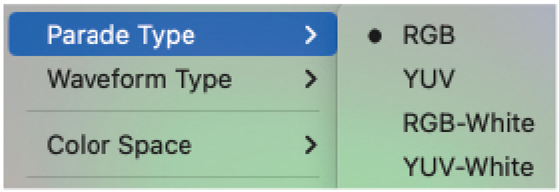
RGB parade

Open the Lumetri Scopes Settings menu and choose Presets > Parade RGB.



The RGB parade provides another form of waveform-style display. The difference is that the red, green, and blue levels are displayed separately. To fit all three colors in, each display is squeezed horizontally to one-third of the total width.

You can choose which kind of parade you see by clicking the Lumetri Scopes Settings menu or by right-clicking in the Lumetri Scopes panel and choosing Parade Type.



The three parts of the parade have similar patterns in them, particularly where there are white or gray pixels, because these parts will have equal amounts of red, green, and blue. The RGB parade is one of the most frequently used tools in color correction because it clearly shows the relationship between the primary color channels.

To see the dramatic impact color adjustments can have on the parade, go to the Basic Correction section of the Lumetri Color panel and try adjusting the White Balance using the Temperature and Tint controls. Be sure to reset them when you finish by double-clicking each control.

Using Comparison view

Let's take a moment to consider two important stages in the process when adjusting colors.

- **Color correction:** Correcting for color cast or brightness issues and matching shots in the sequence to ensure they look like part of content that was shot at the same time in the same location or that they match an in-house standard for final delivery.
- **Color grading:** Establishing a creative look for shots on a shot-by-shot, scene-by-scene, or sequence-wide basis.

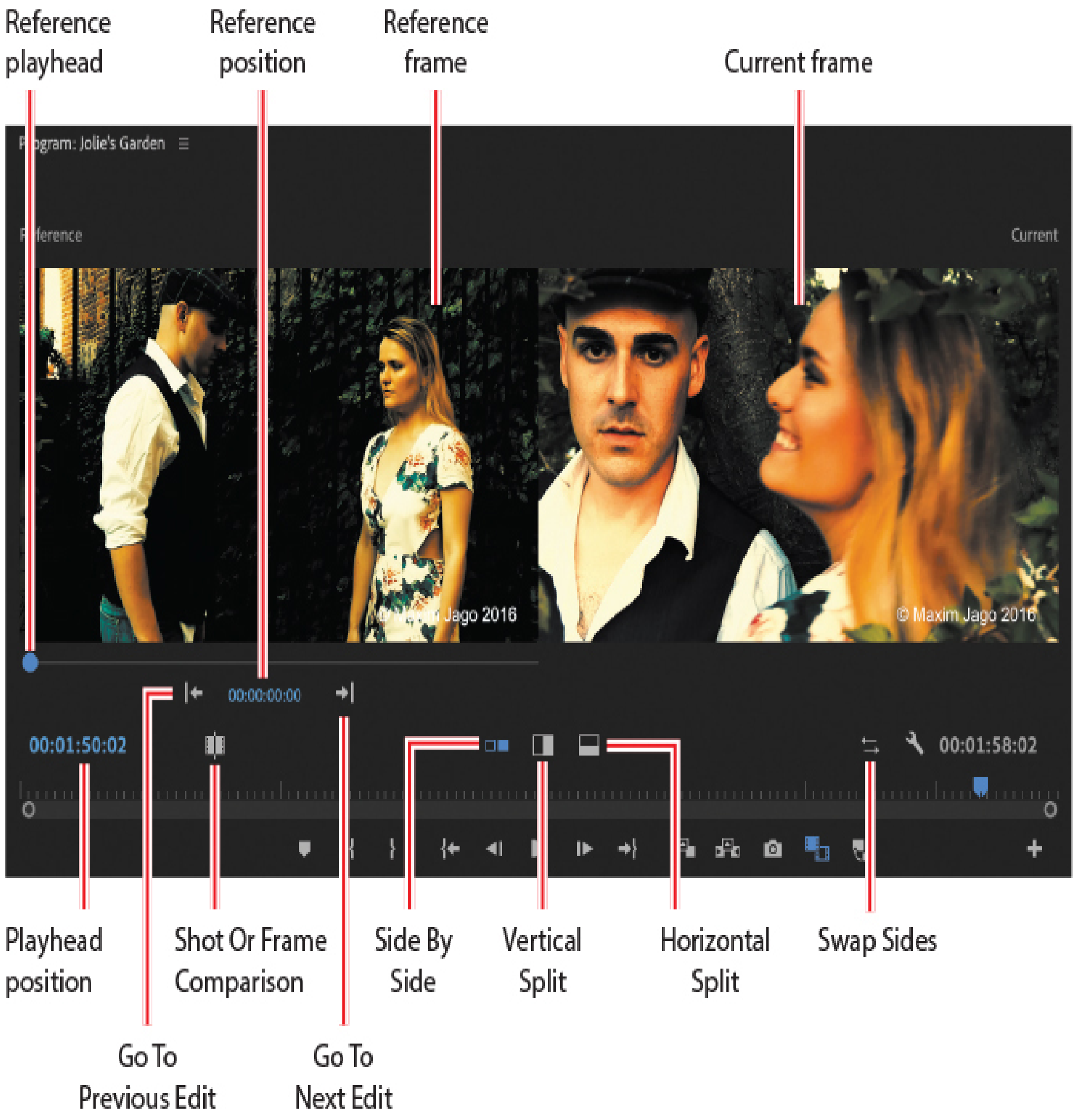
When color correcting, it's helpful to compare one shot with another to achieve a match. This is especially helpful when the two shots come from different scenes, meaning some color variation is expected even if the overall tone should be similar.

You can drag your current sequence from the Project panel into the Source Monitor to use that monitor as a reference for side-by-side comparison, but there's an easier way: You can set the Program Monitor to Comparison view.

© Maxim Jago 2016

Let's explore the controls:

1. Open the Jolie’s Garden sequence, and position the Timeline playhead over the last clip in the sequence.
2. Click the Comparison View button in the Program Monitor.


Reference playhead
Reference position
Reference frame
Current frame
Program: Jolie's Garden
Reference
Current
© Maxim Jago 2016
© Maxim Jago 2016
00:00:00:00
00:01:50:02
00:01:58:02
Playhead position
Shot Or Frame Comparison
Side By Side
Vertical Split
Horizontal Split
Swap Sides
Go To Previous Edit
Go To Next Edit

● **Note**

The Comparison View button may not be visible on smaller displays. In the Program Monitor click the double arrow in the lower-right corner and choose Comparison View from the menu. You can also choose Comparison View from the Program Monitor Settings menu.

Let’s take a look at the new controls.

- **Reference frame:** The frame in the current sequence you are using as a reference or for color matching.
- **Reference position:** The timecode for the reference frame.
- **Playhead position:** The timecode for the current frame.
- **Shot Or Frame Comparison:** Toggle between using another frame as a reference and using the current state of the current frame. The latter option is useful when working on effects, as it allows a constant before-and-after view when working with effects so your eyes can’t adjust to the finished version.

  ▶ Tip

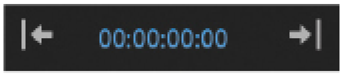
  Whenever the Program Monitor is not already set to Comparison view, you can click the Lumetri Color panel’s Comparison View button in the Color Wheels & Match section, just under the heading. It has the same function as the button in the Program Monitor.

- **Side By Side:** View the two images separately, side by side.
- **Vertical Split:** View the two images as a single vertically split screen, with a divider you can drag to reposition.
- **Horizontal Split:** The same as the Vertical Split option but now with a horizontal divider.
- **Swap Sides:** Switch the sides displayed of the reference and current frame images.
- **Current frame:** The frame you’re working on now.

3. Make sure the last clip in the sequence is selected, and in the Lumetri Color panel, open the Color Wheels & Match section.
4. Try changing the reference frame in one of these ways:

- Drag the mini playhead under the reference frame to a new position.
- Click the reference position timecode, and enter a new time or scrub the timecode to choose another time.

- Click the Go To Previous Edit or Go To Next Edit button on either side of the reference position timecode to jump between clips.



5. Try the split view options, and drag the divider between the two sides of the split.

   At first, Comparison view might seem to have lots of new buttons to remember. They all work together, however, giving you precise control over the two clips you are comparing and how they are displayed.

   Viewing two parts of your sequence using Comparison view is helpful, and it's the starting point for an automated color adjustment available in the Lumetri Color panel.

   Now that you're familiar with Comparison view, it's time to work on these clips and match their colors.

Matching colors

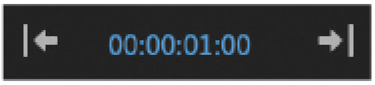
One of the most powerful and time-saving features of the Lumetri Color panel is the option to automatically match colors between two clips.

To use this feature, you'll switch to Comparison view in the Program Monitor, choose a reference frame and a current frame, and click the Apply Match button in the Color Wheels & Match section of the Lumetri Color panel.

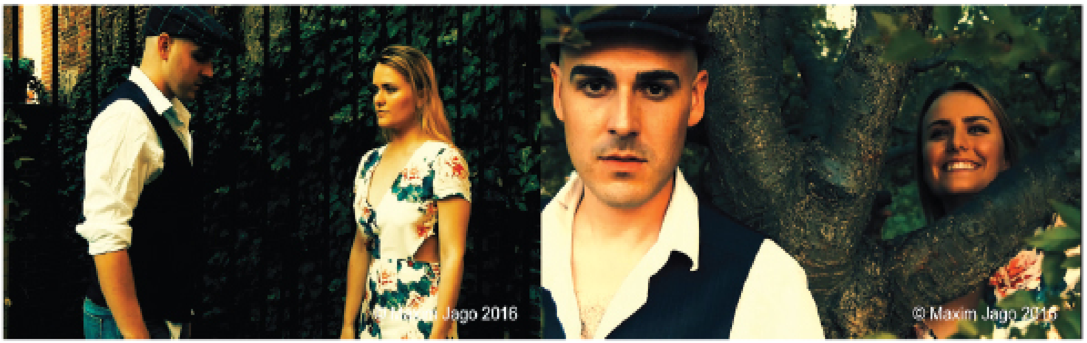
The result will not always be perfect, and you may need to experiment with different reference and current frame selections to get a closer match. However, the result *is* often close enough for you to make final adjustments that are guided by the initial automated adjustment. If Premiere Pro gets the color 80% right, it's a huge time-saver.

Let's try this with our current sequence.

1. Continuing from the previous exercise, set the reference frame to 00:00:01:00.

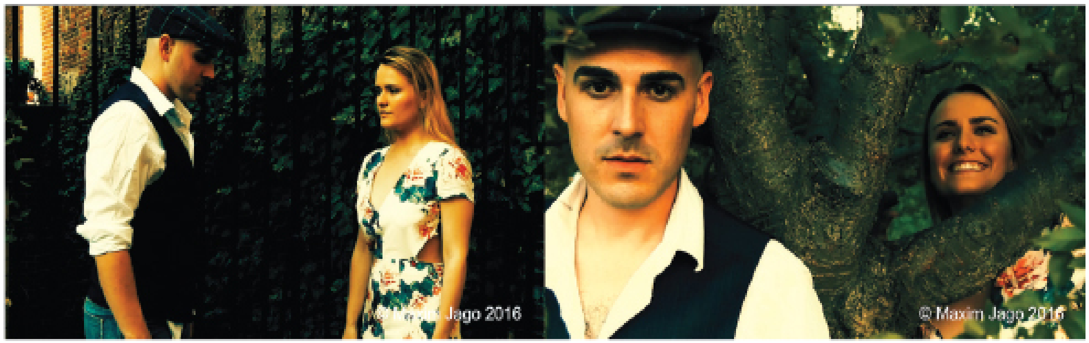


2. Position the Timeline panel playhead on the first frame of the last clip in the sequence, and set the comparison view to Side by Side.

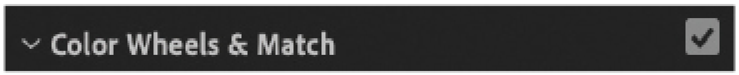


3. These are clips from different scenes in the same film. They don’t need to have exactly the same colors, but it would be helpful if the skin tones matched better. Make sure the Face Detection option is selected in the Lumetri Color panel. This way, Premiere Pro will automatically detect faces and prioritize matching those tones.

4. Click the Apply Match button in the Lumetri Color panel, and Premiere Pro applies a color adjustment to the selected clip.



5. The difference is clear. However, within a few moments, your eyes are likely to adjust to the new appearance of the current frame. To help see the change more clearly, toggle the Color Wheels & Match checkbox off and on repeatedly.



6. Click the Comparison View button to switch back to the regular playback view in the Program Monitor.

The automated color matching offered by the Lumetri Color panel is not likely to produce an identical color match, partly because the perception of color is so subjective and contextual. However, all of the adjustments that were applied are editable, so you can finesse the result until it's perfect.

Exploring the color-adjustment effects

As well as adjusting color using the Lumetri Color panel, there are a number of regular color adjustment effects worth familiarizing yourself with. Just as with the other effects, you can use keyframes to modify the settings over time. In fact, the same is true of the Lumetri Color effect, if you adjust the controls in the Effect Controls panel.

As you build familiarity with Premiere Pro, you may find yourself uncertain about which effect is best for a particular purpose; this is normal! There are often several ways of achieving the same outcome in Premiere Pro, and sometimes the choice comes down to which interface you prefer.

It's a good idea to experiment with effects to get to know the options available to you. Choose footage with a range of colors, highlights, and shadows, so you can see the results for different types of content.

▶ Tip

> You can always find an effect using the search box at the top of the Effects panel. A good way to learn how to use an effect is to apply it to a clip that has a good range of colors, highlights, and shadows and then adjust all the settings to see the result.

Using the Video Limiter effect

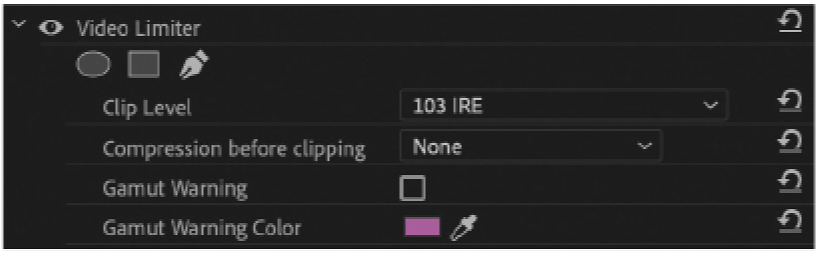
In addition to creative effects, the color correction repertoire available in Premiere Pro includes effects used for professional video production.

When you prepare video for distribution, keep in mind that the video must not exceed specific limits for maximum luminance, minimum luminance, and color saturation. Although it's possible to confine your video levels to the limits permitted using manual controls, it's easy to miss parts of your sequence that need adjustment.

Tip

> While in the Color workspace, the Effects panel may not be easy to locate. You can always access any panel by choosing it from the Window menu.

In the Effects panel, the Video Limiter effect, found in Video Effects > Color Correction, automatically limits the levels of clips to ensure they meet the standards you set.



Video Limiter

Clip Level: 103 IRE

Compression before clipping: None

Gamut Warning: ☐

Gamut Warning Color

Check the limits approved by your broadcaster before adjusting the Clip Level setting. This is the level above which the broadcaster will enforce prescribed limits and cut off luminance and/or saturation.

Next, it’s simply a question of choosing the Compression Before Clipping amount. You can have Premiere Pro apply a gradual compression of the higher levels to produce a more natural-looking result before the absolute cut-off level set in the Clip Level menu.

The compression can be set to begin 3%, 5%, 10%, or 20% before the cutoff level.

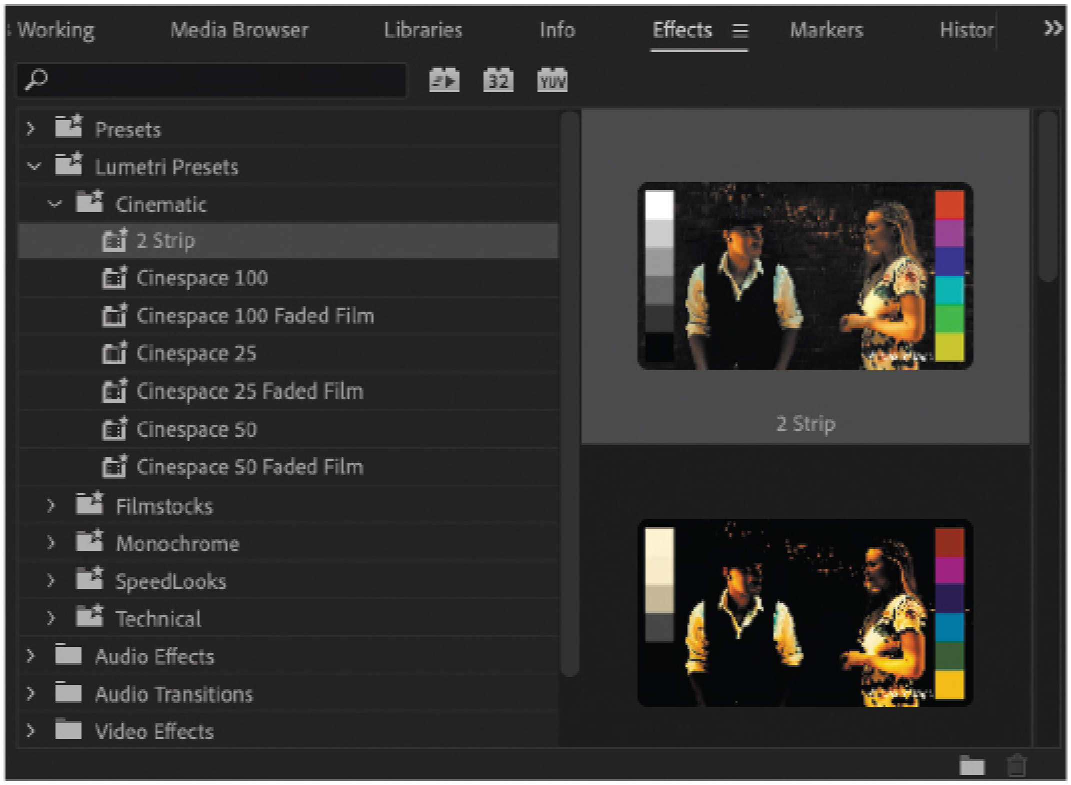
If you turn on the Gamut warning, pixels that would have gone above the Clip Level setting or would be affected by the compression setting are highlighted in the Gamut Warning color. This is useful when reviewing your sequence, but be sure to deselect the Gamut Warning option before exporting your sequence, as the color highlight will be included in the exported file!

Tip

> It’s common to apply the Video Limiter effect to the whole sequence by using it on an adjustment layer or by enabling it as an export setting (see Lesson 16, “Exporting Frames, Clips, and Sequences”).

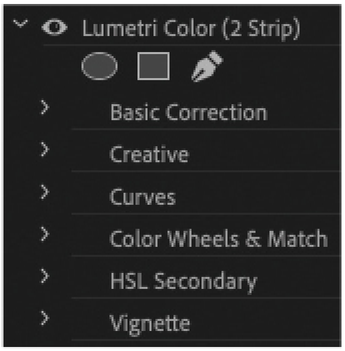
Using Lumetri Color presets in the Effects panel

In addition to the controls available in the Lumetri Color panel, there are a number of Lumetri Color presets available in the Effects panel. These are a fantastic way to get started with advanced color adjustments, and as they are presets, you can modify the settings to achieve exactly the finish you want. If you resize the Effects panel to make it wider, you can reveal previews of the presets.


Working
Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
Histor
Presets
Lumetri Presets
Cinematic
2 Strip
Cinespace 100
Cinespace 100 Faded Film
Cinespace 25
Cinespace 25 Faded Film
Cinespace 50
Cinespace 50 Faded Film
Filmstocks
Monochrome
SpeedLooks
Technical
Audio Effects
Audio Transitions
Video Effects
2 Strip

You apply a Lumetri Color preset effect in the same way that you would apply any other effect available in the Effects panel.

Lumetri Color presets are Lumetri Color effects with an input LUT applied in the Basic Correction settings or a Look applied in the Creative settings.



You can switch or remove these in the Effect Controls panel or in the Lumetri Color panel.

Fixing exposure problems

Let’s look at some clips that have exposure issues and use some of the Lumetri Color panel controls to address them.

1. Make sure you are in the Color workspace, and reset it to the saved version if necessary.
2. Open the sequence Color Work.
3. In the Lumetri Scopes panel, right-click or open the Settings menu to choose Presets > Waveform RGB. This is a quick way to close any other scopes and open the waveform display on its own.
4. Again, in the Lumetri Scopes panel, right-click or open the Settings menu to choose Waveform Type > YC No Chroma. This changes the display to a waveform that uses the standard broadcast television range, which is a useful reference for most video projects.
5. Position the Timeline playhead over the first clip in the sequence. It’s the shot of the lady walking. You’re going to add some contrast.

   This composition is smoky; 100 IRE (at the top of the scale on the left on the waveform) means fully exposed, and 0 IRE (at the bottom of the scale on the left) means not exposed at all. No part of this image comes close to these upper or lower limits. Your eye quickly adjusts to the image, and it’ll soon appear fine, but it’s relatively low contrast and the waveform shows it. Let’s see whether you can bring it to life a little.

6. In the Lumetri Color panel, click the Basic Correction heading to display that section.
7. Use the Exposure and Contrast controls to make adjustments to the shot while checking the waveform display to make sure the image doesn't become too dark or too light.

   You'll get the best perceived results if you have a frame from later in the clip on the screen. Around 00:00:07:19 there's a section of sharp focus.

   Try an Exposure setting of 0.6 and a Contrast setting of 60.

8. Your eyes are likely to adjust quickly to the new image. Use the checkbox to toggle the Basic Correction section off and on to compare the image before and after.

The subtle adjustment you made adds depth to the image, giving it stronger highlights and shadows. As you toggle the effect off and on, you’ll see the waveform changing in the Lumetri Scopes panel. The image still doesn’t have bright highlights, but that’s fine because the colors, particularly in the fog, are mainly midtones.

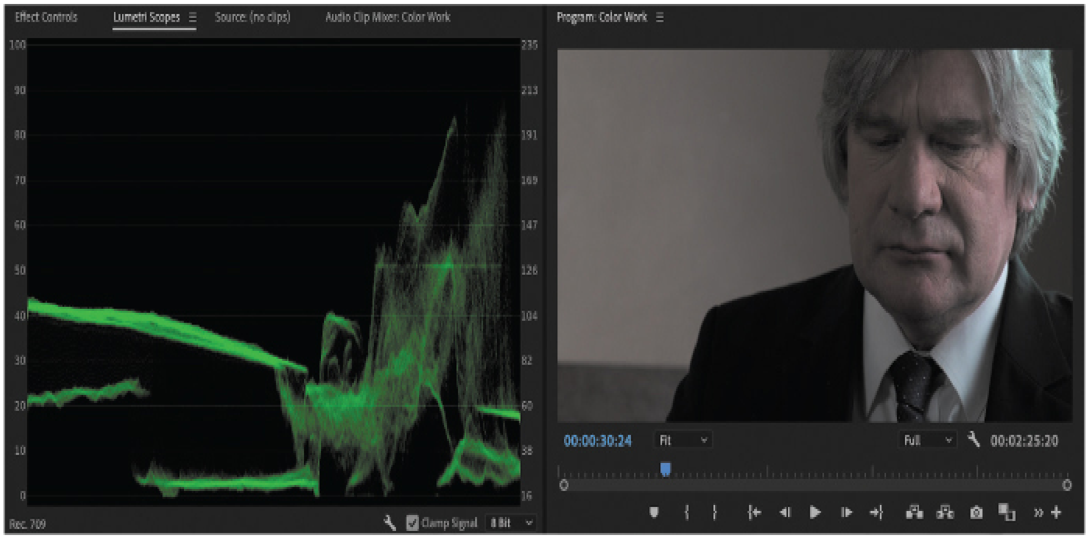
▶ Tip

> You can create a keyboard shortcut to temporarily turn off all instances of the Lumetri Color effect. Use the Keyboard Shortcuts dialog box to assign a keyboard shortcut to the Bypass Lumetri Color Effects command. For information on assigning keyboard shortcuts, see Lesson 1, “Touring Adobe Premiere Pro.”

Fixing underexposed images

Now let’s work with an underexposed image.

1. Switch to the Effects workspace.
2. Position the Timeline playhead over the second clip in the Color Work sequence. When you first look at this clip, it might look fine. The highlights don’t look strong, but there’s a reasonable amount of detail throughout the image. The face, especially, is sharp and detailed.
3. Open the Lumetri Scopes panel so you can view a waveform representation of this clip. At the bottom of the waveform there are quite a few dark pixels, with some touching the 0 IRE line.


Effect Controls
Lumetri Scopes
Source: (no clips)
Audio Clip Mixer: Color Work
Program: Color Work
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
235
213
191
169
147
126
104
82
60
38
16
Rec. 709
Clamp Signal
8 Bit
00:00:30:24
Fit
Full
00:02:25:20

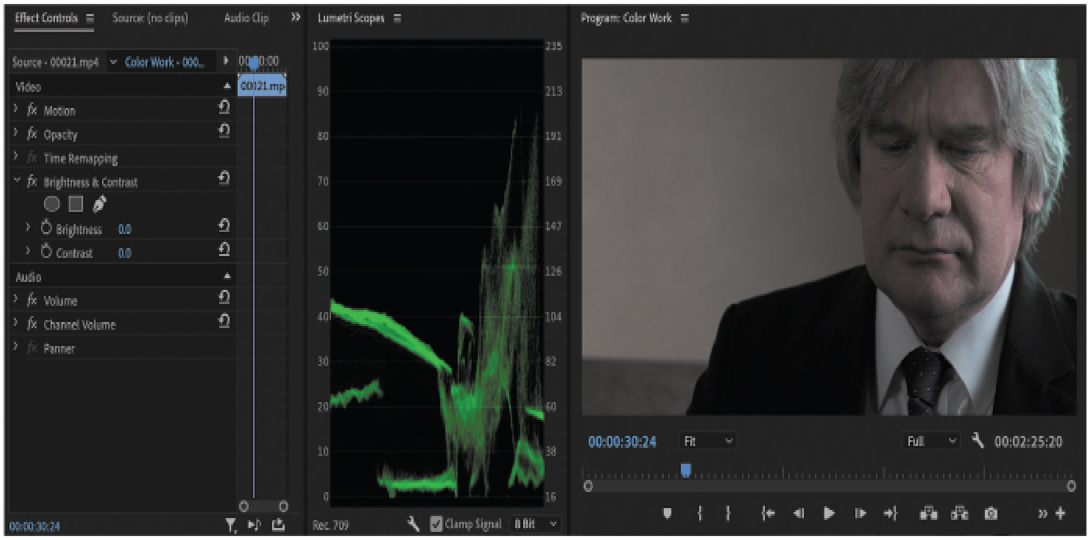
▶ Tip

The Lumetri Scopes panel isn’t limited to the Color workspace. You can always open it from the Window menu.

For this clip, it looks like the missing detail is in the shoulder of the suit, on the left. The problem with such dark pixels is that increasing the brightness will simply change the strong shadows into gray, and no detail is likely to emerge.

4. In the Effects panel, locate the Brightness & Contrast effect. Apply the effect to the clip.
5. Drag the Lumetri Scopes panel to the right and down to move it into a new panel group on the left of the Program Monitor.

   This way you can view the Effect Controls panel and Lumetri Scopes panel together with the Program Monitor.

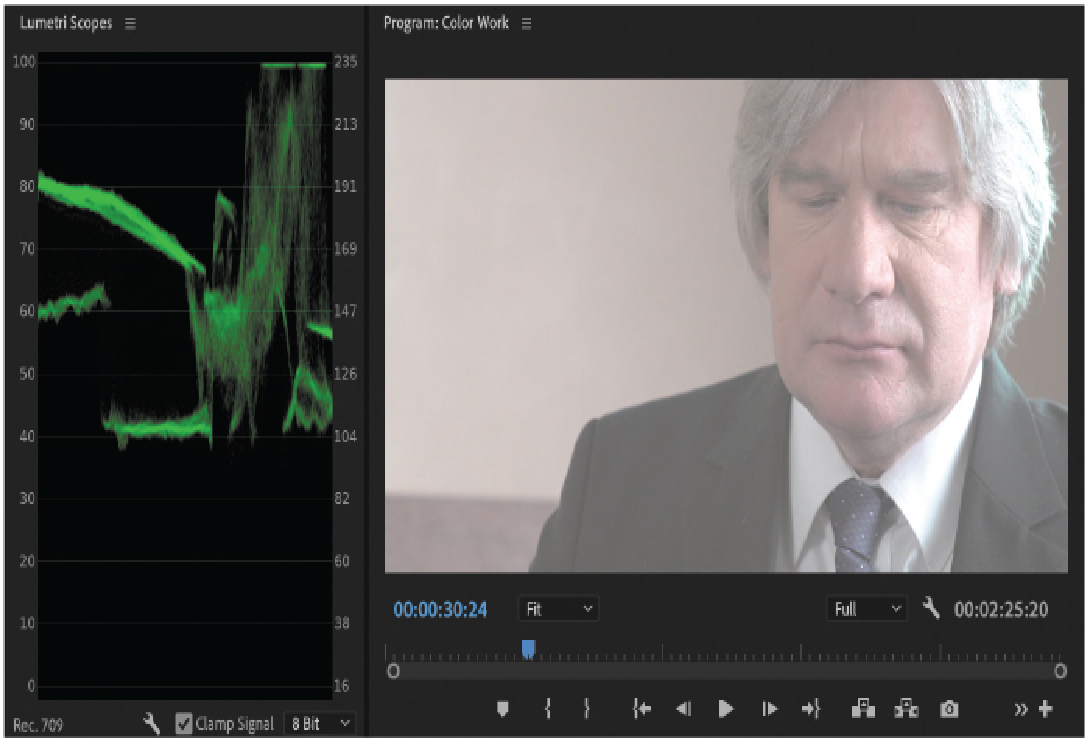

Effect Controls
Source: (no clips)
Audio Clip
Lumetri Scopes
Program: Color Work
Source - 00021.mp4
Color Work - 000...
00021.mp
Video
Motion
Opacity
Time Remapping
Brightness & Contrast
Brightness 0.0
Contrast 0.0
Audio
Volume
Channel Volume
Panner
00:00:30:24
Rec. 709
Clamp Signal
8 Bit
00:00:30:24
Fit
Full
00:02:25:20

6. Use the Brightness control in the Effect Controls panel to increase the brightness. Rather than clicking the blue number and typing a new number, drag to the right so you can see the change happening incrementally.

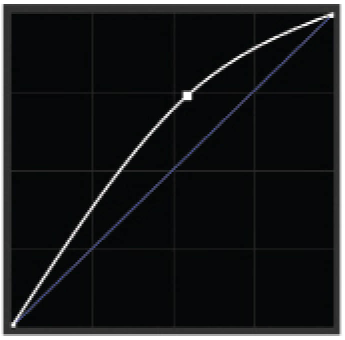
   As you drag, notice that the whole waveform moves up. This is fine for bringing out the highlights in the image, but the shadows remain a flat line. You’re changing the black shadows to gray. If you drag the Brightness control all the way to 100, clipping the highlights a little, you’ll see just how flat the image still is.

● **Note**

The Brightness & Contrast effect offers a quick, easy fix, but it’s also easy to accidentally clip the black (dark) or white (bright) pixels, losing detail.


Lumetri Scopes
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
235
213
191
169
147
126
104
82
60
38
16
Rec. 709
☑ Clamp Signal
8 Bit
Program: Color Work
00:00:30:24
Fit
Full
00:02:25:20

7. Remove the Brightness & Contrast effect.
8. Switch back to the Color workspace. Try making an adjustment using the RGB Curves control in the Curves section of the Lumetri Color panel. Here's an example of an RGB Curves adjustment that would improve the image.



9. Experiment with the third clip in the sequence. This clip demonstrates that there are limits to what can be "fixed in post!"

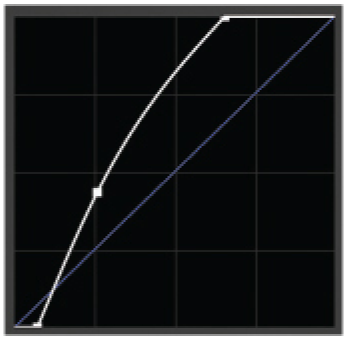
   That doesn't mean it's unusable, but you'd probably have to apply some significant artistic effects to create a look that seemed intentional.
10. Try the fourth clip in the sequence. This drone shot of a desert was underexposed. Drag the lowest RGB Curves control point to the right

until the darkest pixels displayed in the Lumetri Scopes panel waveform touch the bottom of the range. This darkens the shadows.

11. Next, drag the top RGB Curves control point to the left, until the lightest pixels touch the top of the waveform range. This brightens the highlights.

    The effect of both darkening the shadows and brightening the highlights increases the contrast overall.

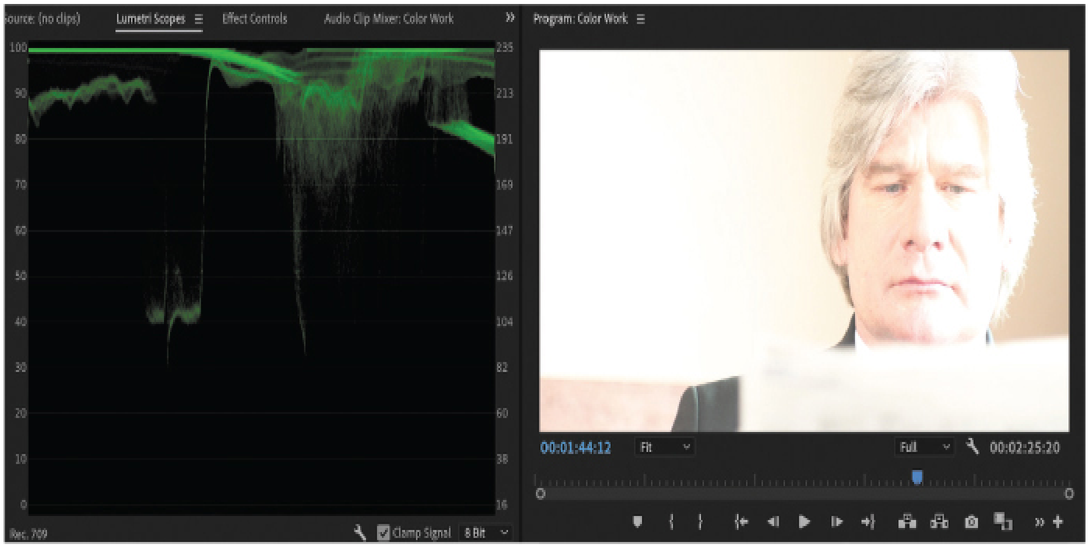
12. Finally, click in the middle of the curve to add a control point to the RGB Curves control and drag up and left until you are satisfied with the result—a dramatic improvement!



Fixing overexposed images

The next clip you’ll work with is overexposed.

1. Move the Timeline playhead to the fifth clip in the sequence. A lot of the pixels are burned out. Just as with the flat shadows in the second clip in the sequence, there’s no detail in burned-out highlights. This means that lowering the brightness will simply make the character’s skin and hair gray; no detail will emerge.


ource: (no clips)
Lumetri Scopes
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Color Work
Program: Color Work
100
90
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
235
213
191
169
147
126
104
82
60
38
16
Rec. 709
Clamp Signal
8 Bit
00:01:44:12
Fit
Full
00:02:25:20

2. Notice that the shadows in this shot don’t reach the bottom of the Waveform Monitor. The lack of properly dark shadows has a flattening effect on the image.
3. Try using the Lumetri Color panel to improve the contrast range. You might produce acceptable results, although the clip will definitely end up looking processed.

This footage is 8 bit, so there is less detail available to reveal when making adjustments to the image. If it had been shot in 10 bit or even 16 bit, it might have been possible to achieve an acceptable result.

Correcting color offset

Your eyes adjust to compensate for changes in the color of light around you automatically. It’s an extraordinary ability that allows you to see white as white, even if objectively it’s orange, for example, because it’s lit by tungsten light.

Cameras can automatically adjust their white balance to compensate for different lighting in the way that your eyes do. With the right calibration, white objects look white, whether you are recording indoors (under oranger tungsten light) or outdoors (in bluer daylight).

Sometimes automatic settings are hit or miss, so professional shooters often prefer to adjust white balance manually. If the white balance is set wrong, you can end up with some interesting results. The most common reason for a white balance problem in a clip is that the camera was not calibrated properly.

When is color correction right?

Making adjustments to images is highly subjective. Though there are precise limits for image formats and broadcast technologies, whether an image should be light, dark, blue-tinted, or green is ultimately a subjective choice. The reference tools that Premiere Pro provides, such as the Lumetri Scopes panel, are a helpful guide, but only you can decide when the picture looks right.

If you're producing video for display on televisions, it's vital that you have a television screen connected to your Premiere Pro editing system to view your content. Television screens usually display color differently from computer monitors, and consumer screens sometimes have special color modes that change the appearance of video. For professional broadcast television, editors will usually have a carefully calibrated preview monitor connected to their editing system. The Display Color Management option helps to show the colors as they might be displayed on a TV, but nothing compares to a calibrated monitor.

The same rule applies if you are producing content for digital cinema projection, Ultra High Definition TV, or High Dynamic Range TV. The only way to know exactly how the picture will look is to view it using the destination medium. Thankfully, the same principle means if your ultimate destination is a computer screen, perhaps as web video or part of a software interface, you are already looking at the perfect test monitor.

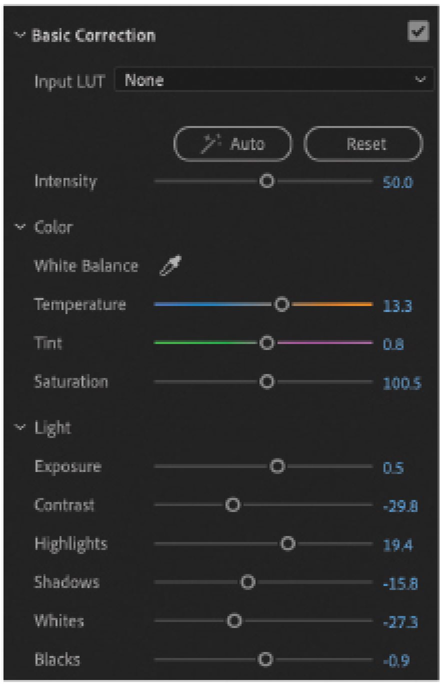
Balancing with the Lumetri color wheels

Let's try using the Lumetri Color panel color wheels to adjust the last shot in the sequence.

1. Make sure you are still viewing the Color workspace, and reset it if necessary.
2. Position the Timeline playhead over the last clip in the Color Work sequence.
3. In the Lumetri Color panel, expand the Basic Correction section and click the Auto button to automatically adjust the levels.

   Premiere Pro automatically adjusts the Color and Light controls to compensate for both the luminance levels and color balance in the shot. The result is an improvement, but there's still a strong blue color cast.

   Applying an automatic adjustment in this way will usually produce results that are close to ideal, but because the shot includes mixed light sources (interior and exterior), Premiere Pro can't know which color temperature is correct.



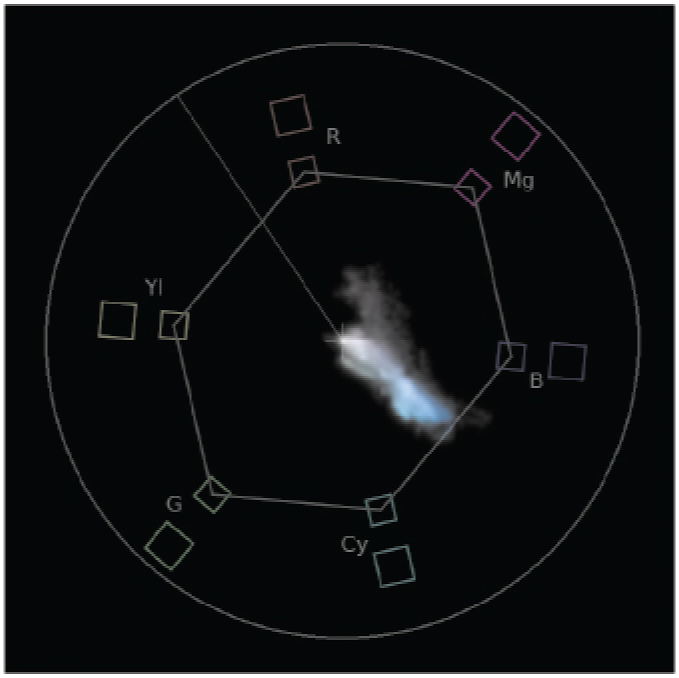
Input LUT None
Intensity 50.0
Temperature 13.3
Tint 0.8
Saturation 100.5
Exposure 0.5
Contrast -29.8
Highlights 19.4
Shadows -15.8
Whites -27.3
Blacks -0.9

4. If the Lumetri Scopes panel isn't at the front of its panel group, click its tab to bring it forward.
5. Right-click the middle of the Lumetri Scopes panel and choose Presets > Vectorscope YUV.

   It's clear there's a strong bias toward the blue. Though the scene has mixed lighting, the bluer daylight coming from the window dominates warmer tungsten light coming from the interior of the room.

6. In the Basic Correction section of the Lumetri Color panel, use the Temperature slider to push the colors toward the orange. You'll need to push the adjustment all the way to 100 to see a reasonable result because the color shift is so strong.

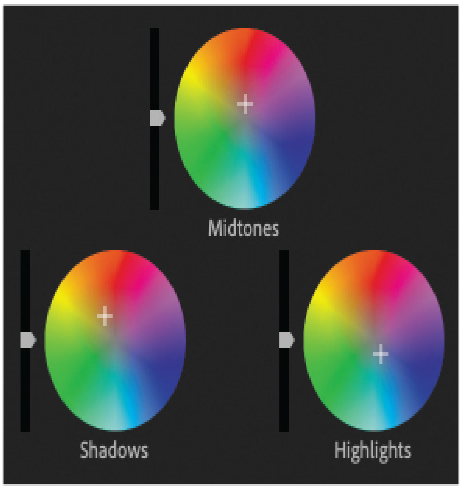
   The result is an improvement, but perhaps it could be better.

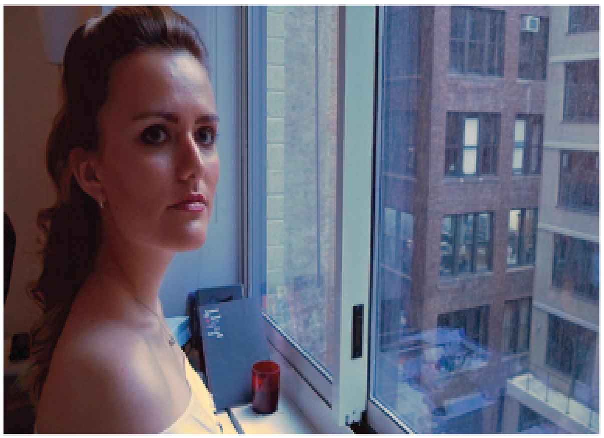
   

   The darker pixels in this shot are generally lit by the interior, warmer room light, while the lighter pixels are generally lit by the bluer daylight. This means different color wheels will interact with different areas of the picture in convincing and natural ways.

7. Expand the Color Wheels & Match section of the Lumetri Color panel. To emphasize the different light sources, try using the Shadows color wheel to pull the color toward the orange, use the Midtones color wheel to pull the color toward the red, and adjust the Highlights color wheel to pull the color toward blue.

8. You've adjusted the color wheels to warm up the shadows and midtones and cool down the highlights. Experiment with the midtones to obtain the most natural result possible. Use the images as a guide.





Experiment with the other controls in the Lumetri Color panel to see whether you can improve the result further.

For more precise control of the image, you can add two Lumetri effects and mask them using the controls in the Effect Controls panel. With one effect constrained to the left side of the image and another constrained to the right, you will be able to make adjustments to suit the interior and exterior lighting in more natural ways.

Making a secondary color adjustment

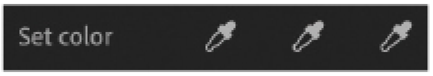
The Lumetri Color panel allows you to make adjustments that are limited to a particular range of hues, a level of color saturation, or a level of brightness.

This is useful if you want to bring out the blue in a subject’s eyes or give a flower a color boost. Let’s try it.

1. Open the sequence Yellow Flower, and position the Timeline playhead over the first clip. This sequence has two shots, each with clearly defined areas of color.

2. Expand the HSL Secondary section of the Lumetri Color panel.
3. Click the first Set Color eyedropper to select it, and then click the yellow petals of the flower to pick that color.

   If you hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) while clicking, the sample that is captured is based on a 5×5-pixel average.

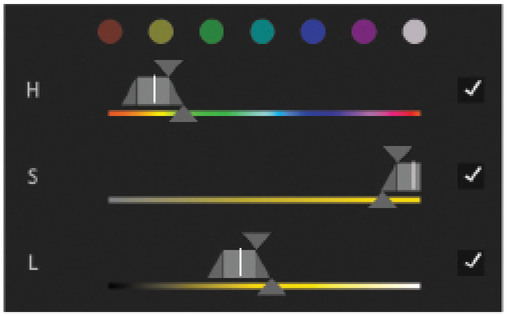
   

   ● Note

   > If you're using macOS, you may see an alert asking you to give Premiere Pro permission to record your computer screen. To do so, click Open System Settings and use an administrator password to unlock Security & Privacy preferences. You'll have to quit Premiere Pro and restart it to confirm the change.

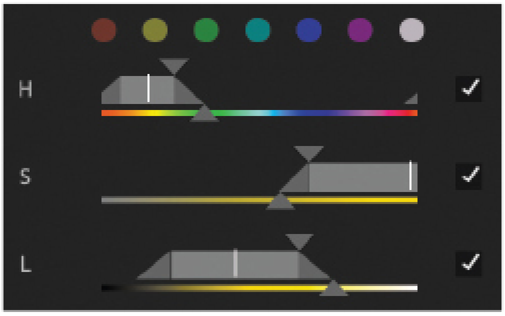
   The Hue, Saturation, and Luminance selection controls update based on the area of the petal you clicked.

4. Drag the H, S, and L (Hue, Saturation, Luminance) color range selection controls to expand the selection. Your initial selection probably selected only a few pixels, as there is quite a lot of variation in the yellow petals.



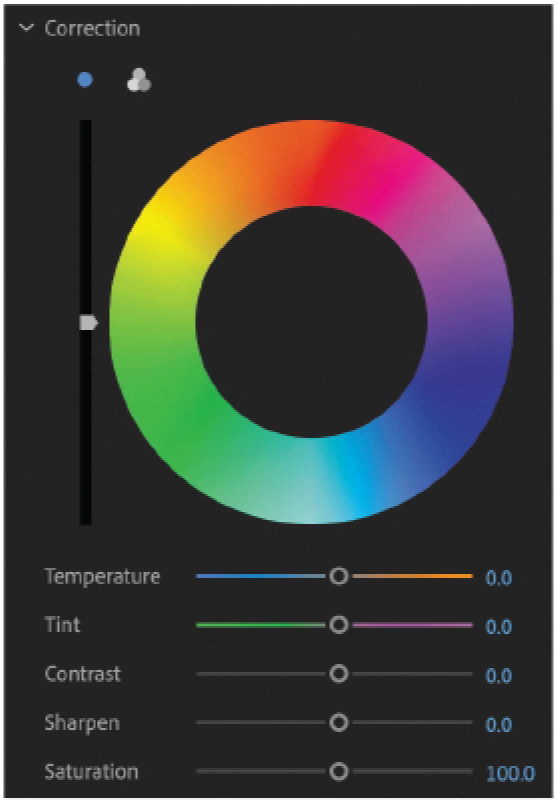
For each control, the upper triangles represent the hard-stop range of the selection. The lower triangles extend the selection with a softening that reduces hard edges.

As you drag the controls, the image hides unselected pixels with gray. When you release the control, the image returns.



5. Experiment with the Denoise and Blur options in the Refine category. These help to smooth the selection range, rather than adjusting the image contents.
6. Once you’re happy you have selected all the pixels in the petals of the flower, adjust the Temperature and Tint controls under the Correction heading.

   The adjustments you make will be limited to the pixels you selected.
7. Now that you have mastered these controls, experiment with the second clip in the sequence. Select the pixels in the blue sky, and then increase the color saturation and add a blue tint to the selection.



Making precise adjustments with curves

The Hue Saturation Curves controls in the Curves section of the Lumetri Color panel offer precise control when adjusting hue and luminance.

Though there are several different controls, they all work essentially the same way. Each control focuses on a different type of precise selection. Adjustments are applied to pixels that have been selected by reshaping the curve—if this feels a little like adjusting the Parametric Equalizer audio effect, you’re right!

The result is similar to the HSL Secondary adjustment you just made but with simplified, faster controls.

Curves start as a straight line but become curved when you add control points to them by clicking. The position of the control points can be set by dragging, and this determines the type of adjustment applied.

The first part of the name of a curve indicates its horizontal axis, while the second part of the name indicates the vertical axis.

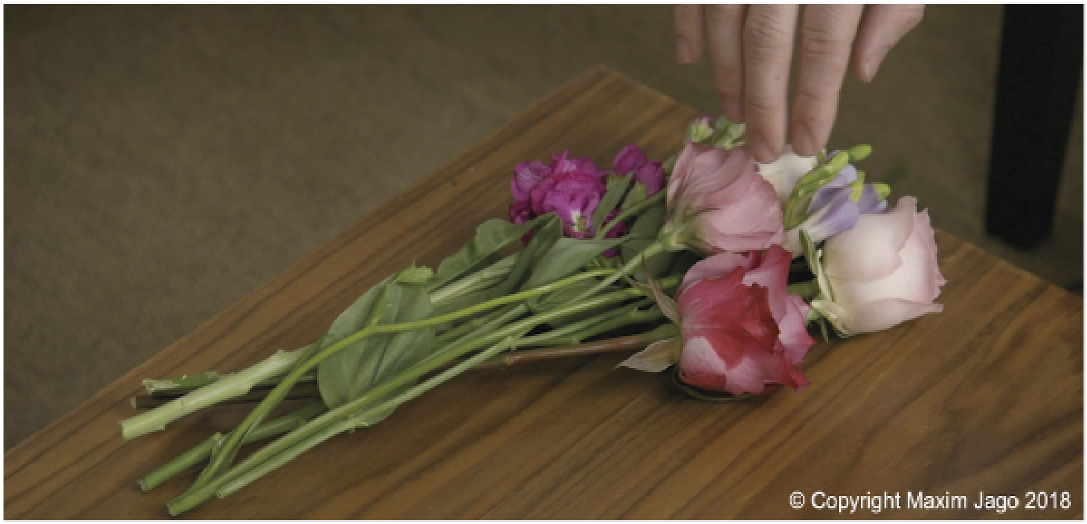
Let’s take a look at each one.

- **Hue Vs Sat:** Select pixels with a particular hue, and change their level of saturation.
- **Hue Vs Hue:** Select pixels with a particular hue, and change that hue.
- **Hue Vs Luma:** Select pixels with a particular hue, and change their brightness (luma).
- **Luma Vs Sat:** Select pixels with a particular brightness (luma), and change their color saturation.
- **Sat Vs Sat:** Select pixels with a particular level of color saturation, and change their level of color saturation. This is particularly useful for reducing the impact of highly color-saturated parts of an image while leaving the rest of the image untouched.

As with so many effects, the quickest way to learn what the controls can do is to try them with extreme adjustments and then experiment to achieve subtler results.

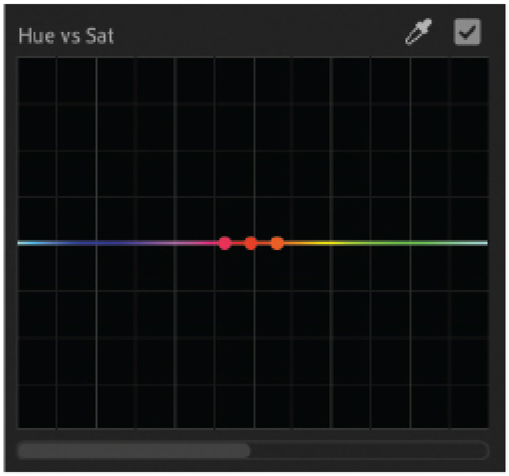
Let’s try these controls on some clips.

1. Open the sequence The Ancestor Simulation. Play the sequence to familiarize yourself with the shots. These images have muted colors with some specific regions with distinguishable colors, such as the flowers on the table.
2. Expand the Curves section of the Lumetri Color panel, and position the Timeline playhead over the second clip, at 00:00:06:00.


© Copyright Maxim Jago 2018

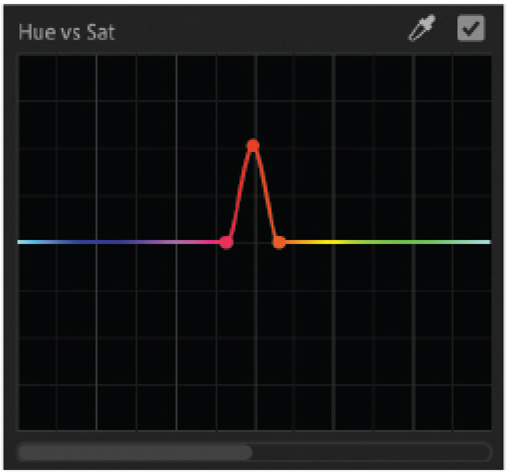
At the top right of each Hue Saturation Curves control, there's an eyedropper . When you use the eyedropper to click the image, Premiere Pro adds three control points to the curve control: One matches the part of the image you clicked, and the other two (one on either side) separate the adjustment you'll make from the rest of the curve.

3. Click the eyedropper for the Hue Vs Sat curve to select it, and then click the petals of the reddish flower closest to the camera on the table to sample the color.
4. If the selection is right at the edges of the hue graph, drag the scroll bar at the bottom of the curve control to access the control points more easily.



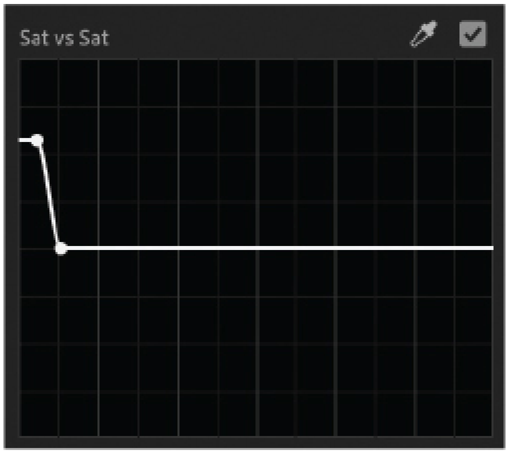
5. Drag the middle control point up to dramatically increase the saturation for the flower.

   The shape of the curve produces a smoothing effect for the selection. Even so, you may want to reduce the intensity of the adjustment for a more natural result.

6. Place the Timeline playhead at the beginning of the sequence, on the first frame. Use the eyedropper for the Sat Vs Sat curve to select the pale beige color of the sofa. This selects pixels that have little color saturation. Drag the left control point up, quite high in the graph, to bring some life to the sofa and similar pale areas of the image.

   Because you exclusively selected pixels that originally had little color saturation, other areas of the image with more saturation are unaffected. The result is a natural-looking adjustment.

● Note

The example video clips are low resolution and are compressed to keep file sizes small. The result is softer edges in images than you can expect when working with your original media files.

7. Experiment with the other clips in this sequence. For example, for the sixth clip, showing the castle with trees, try using the Hue Vs Sat curve to increase the saturation of the green in the trees and then use the Hue Vs Luma curve to darken the leaves. This adds more visual interest and contrast without making an adjustment to the whole clip.

Using special color effects

Several effects available in the Effects panel give you great creative control over the colors in your clips.

Using Gaussian Blur

While it’s not technically a color adjustment effect, adding a tiny amount of blurring can soften the results of your adjustments, making an image look more natural. Premiere Pro has a number of blur effects. The most popular is Gaussian Blur, which has a natural-looking, smoothing effect on an image.

Using Stylize effects

The Stylize category of effects includes some dramatic options, some of which, like the Mosaic effect, you’ll use for more functional applications in combination with an effect mask, such as hiding someone’s face.

The Solarize effect, which you worked with in Lesson 12, gives vivid color adjustments that can be used to create stylized back plates for graphics or intro sequences.

Adding color adjustments from a file

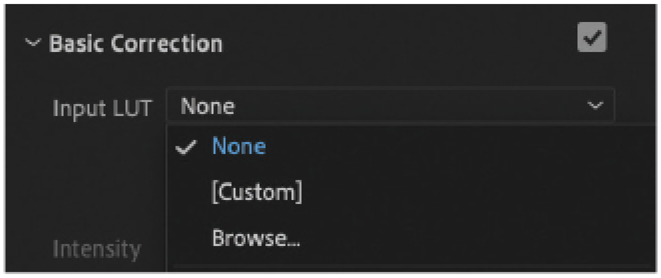
The Lumetri Color panel includes the list of built-in Looks you experimented with earlier, and as you have found, there are a number of Lumetri color presets in the Effects panel to get you started.

These effects all make use of the Lumetri Color effect.

In addition to using the built-in presets, the Lumetri Color effect allows you to browse to an existing LOOK, LUT, or CUBE file to apply nuanced, subtle color adjustments to your footage.

It’s possible you will be given a LOOK or LUT file to use as a starting point for your color adjustments. It’s increasingly common for cameras and location monitors to employ a color reference file of this kind. It helps to use the same reference when you are working on footage in post-production.

To apply an existing LOOK, LUT, or CUBE file, open the Input LUT menu in the Basic Correction section, at the top of the Lumetri Color panel, and choose Browse.



Creating a distinctive look

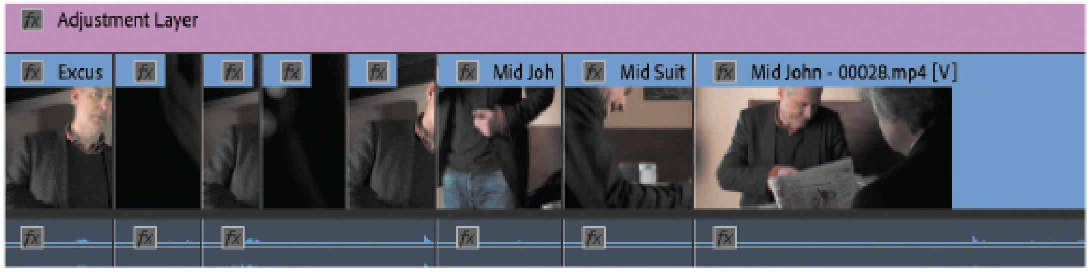
Once you’ve spent a little time with the color correction effects available in Premiere Pro, you should have a feel for the kinds of changes you can make and the impact those changes have on the overall look and feel of your footage.

You can use effect presets to create a distinctive look for your clips. You can also apply an effect to an adjustment layer to give your sequence, or part of a sequence, an overall look.

Let’s try using an adjustment layer to apply a color adjustment to a scene.

1. Open the Theft Unexpected sequence.
2. Click into the Project panel to make it active, and choose File > New > Adjustment Layer. The settings automatically match the current sequence, so click OK.
3. Drag the new adjustment layer to the beginning of the Video 2 track in the sequence. If snapping is enabled in the Timeline panel, the clip should snap to the beginning of the sequence. If snapping is disabled, you can enable it while still dragging the clip by pressing S.

   The default duration for adjustment layers is the same as the duration of still images. It’s too short for this sequence.
4. Trim the adjustment layer until it stretches from the beginning to the end of the sequence.



Note

If you use adjustment layers in this way on a sequence that has graphics, such as titles, you may want to ensure that the adjustment layer is on a track between the titles and the video. Otherwise, you will adjust the appearance of your titles too.

5. In the Effects panel, browse to Lumetri Presets > SpeedLooks > Universal. Drag one of these SpeedLooks onto the adjustment layer. The example uses the SL Gold Heat (Universal) preset.

The Look will apply to every clip in the sequence, and you can modify it using the controls in the Effect Controls panel or in the Lumetri Color panel.

You can apply any standard visual effect this way and use multiple adjustment layers to apply different looks to different scenes.

Tip

SpeedLooks available in the Effects panel are applied as regular effects, so it's easy to combine them—just apply another.

The Lumetri Color panel controls will adjust whichever Lumetri Color effect is selected at the top of the panel.

This is just a brief introduction to color adjustment, and there’s an enormous amount more to explore. It’s worth investing the time to familiarize yourself with the advanced controls in the Lumetri Color panel. There are a great many visual effects that can add nuance or a striking look to your footage. Experimentation and practice are key to developing your understanding in this important and creative aspect of post-production.

For an exploration of the Lumetri Color panel controls, check out *blog.frame.io/2018/05/21/premiere-lumetri-guide*.

Review questions

1 How do you change the display in the Lumetri Scopes panel?

2 How do you access the Lumetri Scopes panel when not viewing the Color workspace?

3 Why should you use the vectorscope rather than depending on your eyes?

4 How can you apply a look to a whole sequence?

5 Why might you need to limit your luminance or color levels?

Review answers

1 Right-click in the panel, or open the Settings menu, and choose the display type you would like.

2 You can choose the Lumetri Scopes panel from the Window menu.

3 Color perception is subjective and relative. Depending on the colors you have just seen, you will see new colors differently. The vectorscope display gives you an objective reference.

4 You can use effect presets in the Effects panel to apply the same color correction adjustments to multiple clips, or you can add an adjustment layer and apply the effects to that. Any clips on lower video tracks covered by the adjustment layer will be affected.

5 If your sequence is intended for broadcast television or professional online distribution, you’ll need to ensure you meet the stringent requirements for maximum and minimum levels. The broadcasters you work with will be able to tell you their required levels.

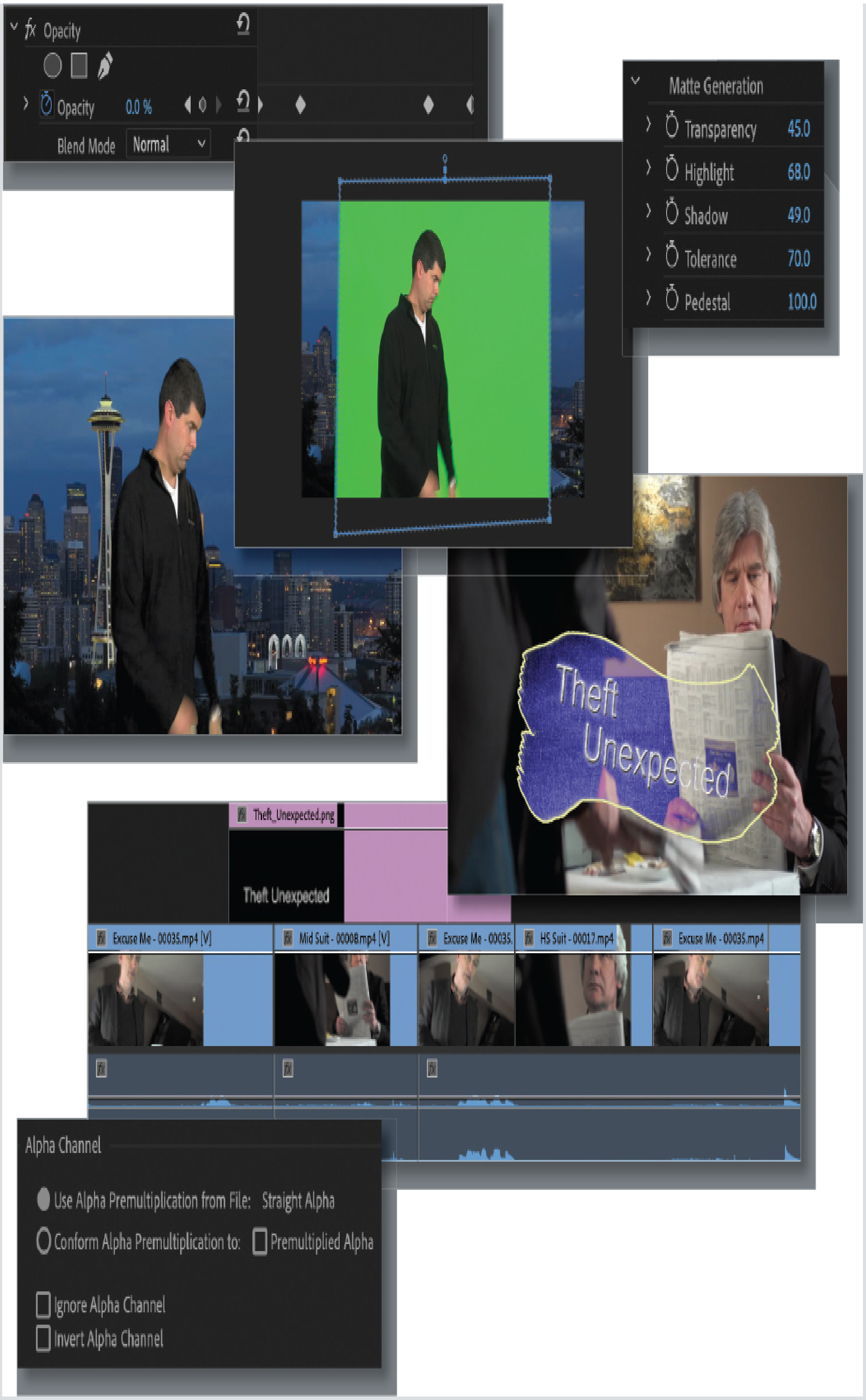
14 Exploring Compositing Techniques

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Use the alpha channel.
- Use compositing techniques.
- Work with opacity.
- Work with a greenscreen.
- Use mattes.
- Use the Track Matte Key effect to combine layers.

This lesson will take about 60 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.



Opacity

Opacity 0.0 %

Blend Mode Normal

Matte Generation

Transparency 45.0

Highlight 68.0

Shadow 49.0

Tolerance 70.0

Pedestal 100.0

Alpha Channel

● Use Alpha Premultiplication from File: Straight Alpha

○ Conform Alpha Premultiplication to: ☐ Premultiplied Alpha

☐ Ignore Alpha Channel

☐ Invert Alpha Channel

Theft Unexpected
Theft_Unexpected.png
Theft Unexpected
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4 [V]
Excuse Me - 00035.
HS Suit - 00017.mp4
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4

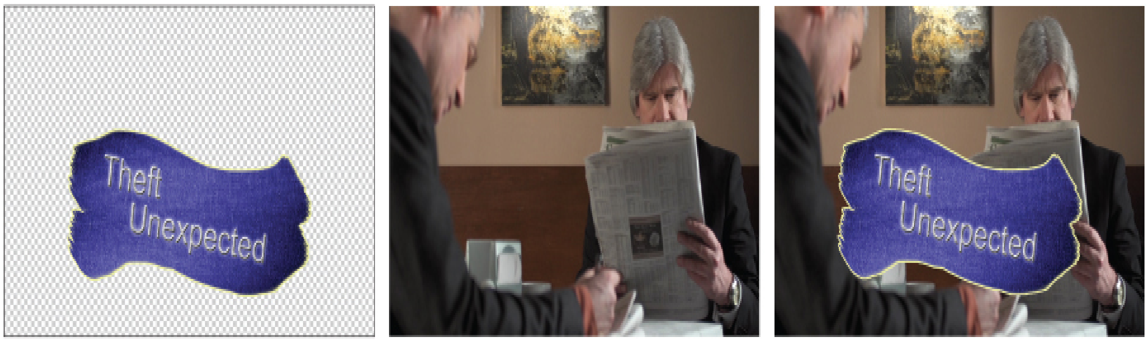
Anything that combines two images is compositing, including blending, layering, keying, masking, and cropping. Premiere Pro has powerful tools that enable you to combine layers of video, photos, graphics, and titles in your sequences. In this lesson, you’ll learn about the technologies that make compositing work, as well as ways to prepare for and perform compositing.

Starting the lesson

Until now, you have been mainly working with single, whole-frame visuals. You have created edits in which you have transitioned between one image and another or edited clips onto upper video tracks to have them appear in front of clips on lower video tracks.

In this lesson, you’ll learn about ways to combine those layers of video. You’ll still use clips on upper and lower video tracks, but now they will become foreground and background elements in one combined composition.

You might combine layers by cropping part of the foreground image, masking, or *keying*—setting pixels with a specific color to become transparent—but whatever the method, the way you edit clips onto a sequence is the same as ever.



Let’s begin by learning about the important concept of *alpha*, which explains the way pixels are displayed, and then try several compositing techniques.

1. Open Lesson 14.prproj in the Lessons folder.
2. Save the project as Lesson 14 Working.prproj.
3. Use the Workspaces menu to switch to the Effects workspace.

4. Reset the workspace by opening the Workspaces menu and choosing Reset To Saved Layout.

● **Note**

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

What is an alpha channel?

Cameras record the red, green, and blue parts of the light spectrum as separate color *channels*. Because each channel has a single color, the channels are commonly described as *monochrome*.

Adobe Premiere Pro uses these three monochromatic (single-color) channels to produce the corresponding primary color channels. They are combined using what's called *additive color* to create a complete RGB image. Your eyes perceive the three channels combined as full-color video.

This approach of combining multiple monochromatic colors to produce a full color range is a little like combining two mono audio channels to produce a stereo mix.

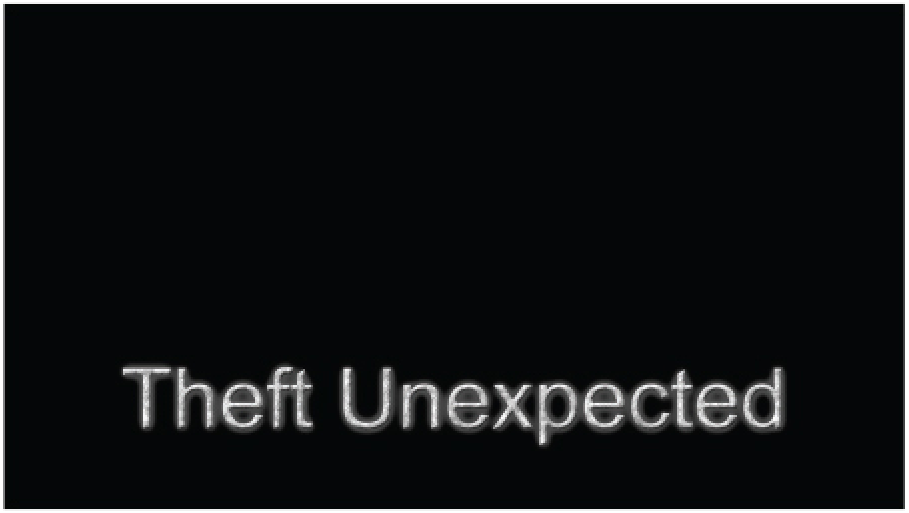
Finally, there is a fourth monochromatic channel: *alpha*. The fourth channel defines no colors at all. Instead, it defines *opacity*—how visible each pixel is. The opacity of pixels is independent of their colors because the alpha channel is separate from the color channels. This fourth channel has several different names, including *visibility*, *transparency*, *mixer*, and *opacity*. The name is not particularly important as long as you can find the setting.

Just as you might use color correction to adjust the amount of red in a clip, you can use Opacity controls to adjust the amount of alpha. By default, the alpha channel, or opacity, of clips is 100%, or fully visible. On the 8-bit video scale of 0 to 255, this means it will be at 255. Not all media will include an alpha channel. Video cameras do not record an alpha channel, for example. In fact, most codecs (methods for storing image and sound information) cannot store an alpha channel.

Animation clips, titles, or graphics will often include alpha channels to define which parts of an image are opaque or transparent.

You can set the Source Monitor and Program Monitor to display a checkerboard background instead of black, just as in Adobe Photoshop, to make it easier to identify transparent pixels. Let’s compare views:

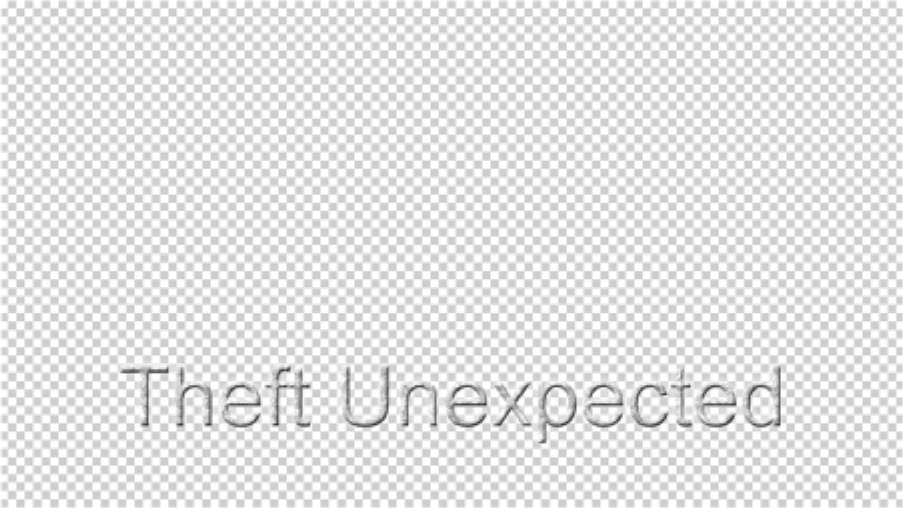
1. From the Graphics bin, open the clip Theft_Unexpected.png in the Source Monitor (be sure to open the PNG clip).



2. Open the Source Monitor Settings menu 🔧, and make sure Transparency Grid is *not* selected.

   It looks as if the graphic has a black background, but those black pixels are actually the background of the Source Monitor. If you were to export this as a media file with a codec that does not support an alpha channel, the new file would indeed have a black background.

3. Open the Source Monitor Settings menu again and choose Transparency Grid to turn it on.



Now you can clearly see which pixels are transparent. However, for some kinds of media, the transparency grid is an imperfect solution, and this is a good example. It's a little difficult to see the edges of the text against the grid.

4. Open the Source Monitor Settings menu, and choose Transparency Grid again to turn it off.

▶ Tip

If there are any specialist words in this lesson that you are not familiar with, check out "Understanding essential terminology," later in the lesson.

Media files that are created using a codec that does not support an alpha channel will always have a black background rather than transparent areas.

The Source Monitor and Program Monitor can also display the alpha channel as a grayscale image. To enable or disable this view, choose Alpha from the Source Monitor or Program Monitor Settings menu.

Making compositing part of your project

Using compositing effects and controls can take your post-production work to a whole new level. Once you begin working with the compositing effects available in Premiere Pro, you'll find yourself discovering new ways of filming and new ways of structuring your edit to make it easier to blend images together.

A combination of pre-production planning, filming techniques, and precise effects setup will produce the most powerful results when compositing. You can combine still images of environments with complex, interesting patterns to produce extraordinary textured moods. Or you can cut out parts of an image that don't fit and replace them with something else.

Compositing is one of the most creative, flexible, and fun parts of nonlinear editing with Premiere Pro.

Shooting videos with compositing in mind

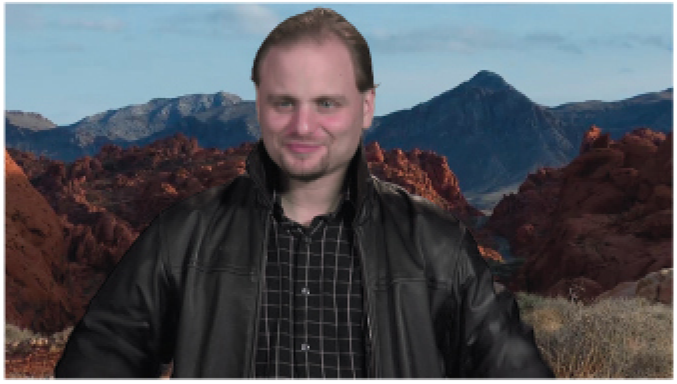
Much of the most effective compositing work begins in pre-production, when you are planning your shoot. Right at the start, you can think about how to help Premiere Pro identify the parts of the image you'd like to be transparent, and there are a number of ways to do this. Consider *chroma keying*, for example, a standard special effect used by major feature film productions to allow action to take place in environments that would otherwise be too dangerous or physically impossible—like the inside of a volcano!

The actors are actually standing in front of a screen that is solid green. The green color is used to identify which pixels should be transparent. The video image of the actors is used as the foreground of a composition, with some visible pixels (the actors) and some transparent pixels (the green background).

Next, it's just a question of putting the foreground video image in front of another background image. In an epic action feature film, it's the prebuilt set, a real-world location, or a composite created by visual effects artists; it could be anything.

The result is a combined composition.

Planning ahead makes a big difference to the quality of your compositing. For the greenscreen effect to work well, the background needs to be a consistent color. It also needs to be a color that does not appear anywhere on your subject. Green-colored jewelry, for example, might turn transparent when a chroma key effect is applied.



● **Note**

> Sometimes chroma key effects are achieved using a blue background. Many of the reasons in favor of using green also apply to blue; it was a more popular background color in the past. Recent developments in camera technology allow green backgrounds to produce better results, which is why green has become the standard.

When shooting greenscreen footage, the way you film can make a big difference to the finished result. Try to match the lighting for your subject to the replacement background you intend to use, in particular when considering the direction of shadows.

Capture the greenscreen background with soft, evenly distributed light, and try to avoid *spill*, where light reflected from the greenscreen in the background bounces onto your subject. If this happens, you’ll be in danger of *keying out*, or making transparent, parts of your subject because they will be in the same green color that you are removing.

● Note

Heavily compressed media files will generally not give the same high-quality result as a raw or lightly compressed file (such as ProRes 4:4:4:4) captured using a high-end camera.

Preprocessing footage

In a perfect world, every greenscreen clip would have a flawless green background and nice, clean edges on your foreground elements. In reality, there are lots of reasons why you might face less-than-perfect material.

There are often problems caused by poor lighting when the video is created. However, there's a further problem caused by the way many video cameras store image information.

Because our eyes do not register color as accurately as they do brightness information, it's common for cameras to reduce the amount of color information stored. This saves storage space and is rarely immediately visible.

The approach varies from system to system. Sometimes color information is stored for every other pixel; other times it might be recorded for every other pixel on every second line. This type of file-size reduction is usually a good idea because otherwise the storage required would be *huge*. However, it can make keying more difficult because there isn't as much color detail.

If you find that your footage is not keying well, try the following:

- Consider applying a light blur effect before keying a foreground clip. This blends pixel detail, softening the edges and often giving a smoother-looking result. If the amount of blur is light, it should not dramatically reduce the quality of your image. You can apply a blur effect to the clip, adjust the settings, and then apply a chroma key effect on top of the blur.
- Consider color correcting your shot before you key it. If your shot lacks good contrast between your foreground and background, you can sometimes help the key by adjusting the picture first using the Lumetri Color panel.

Understanding essential terminology

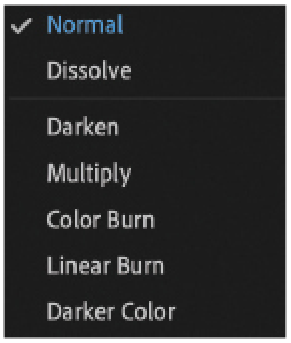
In this lesson, you’ll encounter some terms that might be new to you. Let’s run through the important ones.

- **Alpha/alpha channel:** The fourth channel of information for each pixel. An alpha channel defines transparency for a pixel. It’s a separate channel, and it can be created and adjusted entirely independently of the content of the image. Whether or not your original media file includes an alpha channel, you can work with it in sequences in Premiere Pro.
- **Matte:** An image, shape, or video clip used to identify a region of your image that should be transparent or semitransparent. Premiere Pro allows multiple types of mattes, and you’ll work with them in this lesson. You can use an image, another video clip, or a visual effect like a chroma key to generate a matte dynamically based on pixel colors.

  When you made a secondary color adjustment in Lesson 13, “Applying Color Correction and Grading,” Premiere Pro dynamically generated a matte that was applied only to the color adjustment based on the selection you made.

  This limited the pixels that were changed by the color adjustment. In contrast, a chroma key effect applies its matte to the alpha channel, selectively making pixels transparent.
- **Opacity:** The overall alpha channel value for clips in a sequence in Premiere Pro. The higher the value, the more opaque the clip is—the inverse of transparency. You can adjust the opacity for a clip over time using keyframes, just as you adjusted audio level in a previous lesson.
- **Blend mode:** A technology originally seen in Adobe Photoshop. Rather than simply placing foreground images in front of background images, you can select one of several blend modes that cause the foreground to interact with the background in various ways. You might, for example, choose to view only pixels that are brighter than the background or to apply only the color information from the foreground clip to the background. You used a blend mode in Lesson 12, “Adding Video Effects.” Experimentation is a good way to learn

about the many blend modes available. You'll find them on the Effect Controls panel, under the Opacity effect.



- **Key/keying:** The process of selectively making pixels transparent based on their color or brightness. Chroma key effects use color as a reference to generate transparency (that is, to modify the alpha channel). Luma key effects use brightness.
- **Greenscreening or bluescreening:** The process of filming a subject in front of a screen that is solid green and then using a special effect to selectively turn green pixels transparent. The clip is then combined with a background image. Greenscreening is a type of chroma key effect.

▶ Tip

For more information on blend modes in Adobe software, see *The Hidden Power of Adobe Photoshop: Mastering Blend Modes and Adjustment Layers for Photography*, by Scott Valentine (Adobe Press).

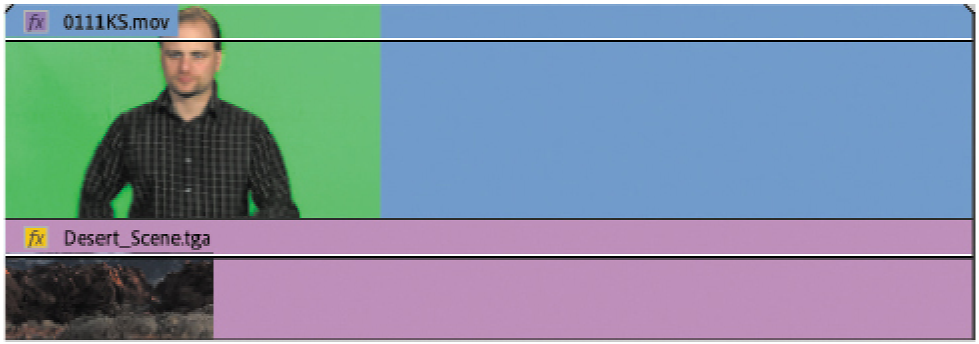
Working with the Opacity effect

You can adjust the overall opacity of a clip using keyframes in the Timeline panel or in the Effect Controls panel.

1. If it's not already open in the Timeline panel, open the sequence Desert Jacket. This sequence has a foreground image of a man putting on a jacket, with a background image of a desert. The composition was created using the Ultra Key effect. You'll learn how to use this effect later in this lesson.

2. Increase the height of the Video 2 track so the thumbnail is easily visible. You can do this by dragging the dividing line in the track header (at the far left of the Timeline panel) between Video 2 and Video 3. You can also hover the pointer over the Video 2 track header, hold Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows), and scroll with your mouse wheel or trackpad.

3. Open the Timeline panel Display Settings menu , and make sure Show Video Keyframes is enabled.

   Now you can use the rubber band (the thin horizontal black-and-white line on clips) to adjust the settings and keyframe effects. There is only ever one rubber band per clip, and it allows the adjustment of one control at a time.

   By default, the rubber band on visual clips controls the Opacity setting. The default for audio clips is the Volume setting.

   The small FX badge fx in the upper-left corner of a clip changes color if an effect is applied to a clip or if an intrinsic effect is adjusted. The FX badge for the foreground clip in this sequence is purple fx because a non-intrinsic effect (the Ultra Key chroma key effect) has been applied.

   If you want to specify that the rubber band adjust a different effect parameter, right-click the FX badge, and choose an effect and parameter from the menu.

4. Try dragging the rubber band up and down using the Selection tool on the clip on Video 2. Try to set it to exactly 50%. The clip FX badge turns green fx to indicate that you have combined a non-intrinsic effect with an intrinsic effect adjustment.

You can make more precise adjustments by holding Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) after you have begun dragging. Be careful not to press the modifier key before clicking or you’ll add a keyframe instead.

When you use the Selection tool in this way, the entire rubber band is moved without additional keyframes being added.

FX badge colors

There are several colors you’ll see on clip FX badges in the Timeline panel. Here’s what they all mean:

fx **Gray:** No effect applied (default badge color).

fx **Purple:** Non-intrinsic effect applied (for example, color correction or a blur).

fx **Yellow:** Intrinsic effect modified (for example, Motion and Opacity).

fx **Green:** Intrinsic effect modified and additional effect applied (from the Effects panel).

fx **Red underline:** Source Clip effect applied.

Keyframing opacity

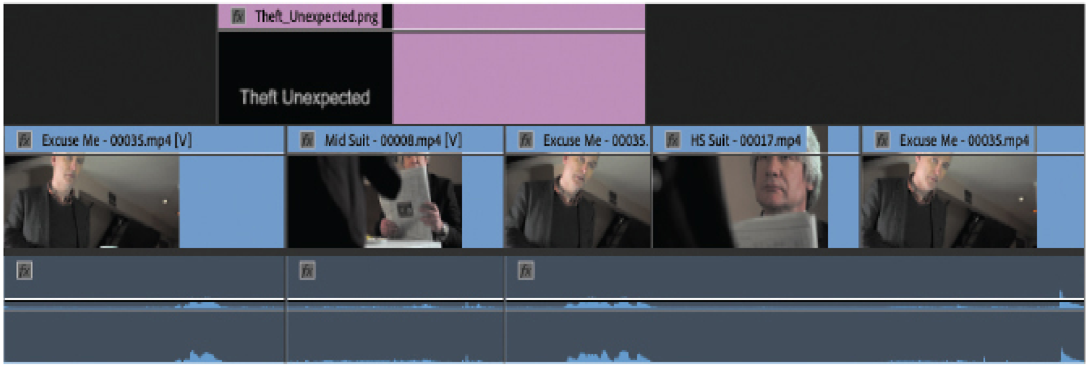
Keyframing opacity in the Timeline panel is similar to keyframing volume. You use the same tools and keyboard shortcuts, and the results are likely to be exactly as you expect: The higher the rubber band, the more visible a clip will be.

1. Open the Theft Unexpected sequence in the Sequences bin. Scrub through the sequence to familiarize yourself with the content.

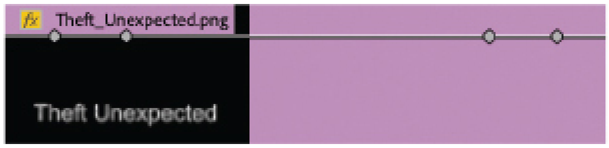
   This sequence has a title in the foreground, on the V2 track. It’s common to fade titles up and down at different times and with different durations. You can do so using a transition effect, just as you would add a transition to a video clip; or, for more control, you can use keyframes to adjust the opacity.

2. Make sure track Video 2 is expanded so you can see the rubber band for the foreground title, Theft_Unexpected.png. Zoom in enough to be

able to make precise adjustments to the title graphic’s rubber band.


Theft_Unexpected.png
Theft Unexpected
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4 [V]
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4 [V]
Excuse Me - 00035.
HS Suit - 00017.mp4
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4

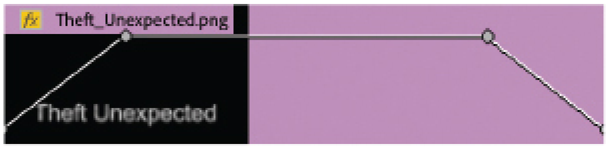
3. Command-click (macOS) or Ctrl-click (Windows) the rubber band for the title graphic four times to add four keyframes—two near the beginning and two near the end. Don’t worry about the precise positions of the new keyframes; you’ll adjust them in a moment.


Theft_Unexpected.png
Theft Unexpected

▶ **Tip**

It’s sometimes easier to add the keyframe markers to set the timing first and then drag them vertically to adjust them.

4. Adjust the keyframes so the title fades up and down, just as you would with audio keyframes.

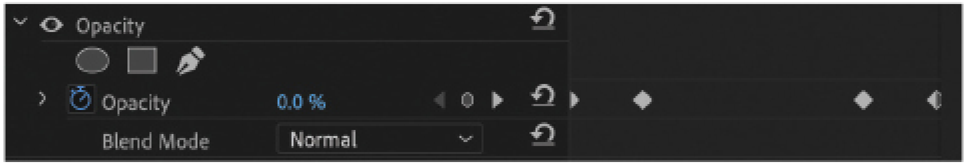

Theft_Unexpected.png
Theft Unexpected

▶ **Tip**

Once you’ve added a keyframe by Command-clicking (macOS) or Ctrl-clicking (Windows), you can release the key and start dragging to set the keyframe position.

5. Play through the graphic clip in the sequence, and watch the results of your keyframing.

You can also use the Effect Controls panel to add keyframes to the opacity for a clip. If you select the title clip in the Timeline panel, you’ll see that the keyframes you just added are also displayed in the Effect Controls panel.



Opacity 0.0 %

Blend Mode Normal

Combining tracks using a blend mode

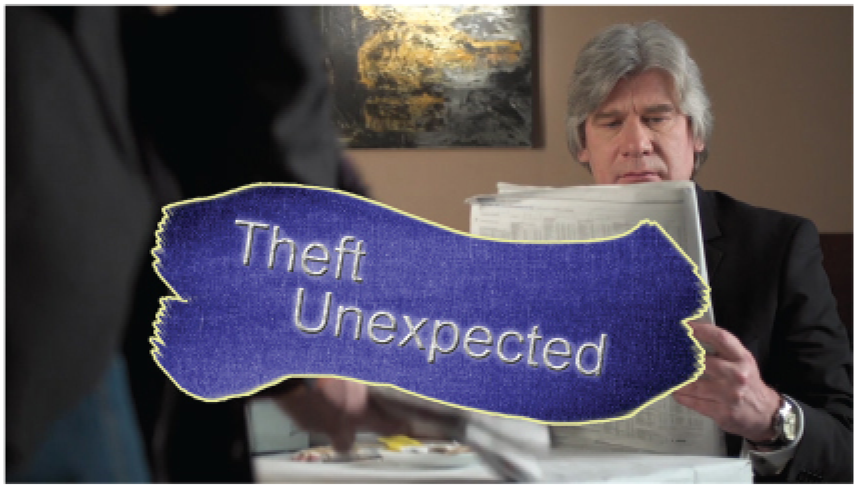
Blend modes are special ways for foreground pixels (in clips on upper tracks) to combine with background pixels (in clips below them). Each blend mode applies a different calculation to combine the foreground red, green, blue, and alpha (RGBA) values with those of the background. Each pixel is calculated in combination with the pixel directly behind it.

The default blend mode is called Normal. In this mode, the foreground image has a uniform alpha channel value across the entire image. The more opacity the foreground image has, the more strongly you will see those pixels in front of the pixels in the background.

The best way to find out how blend modes work is to try them.

1. Replace the current title in the Theft Unexpected sequence with the more complex title Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd in the Graphics bin.

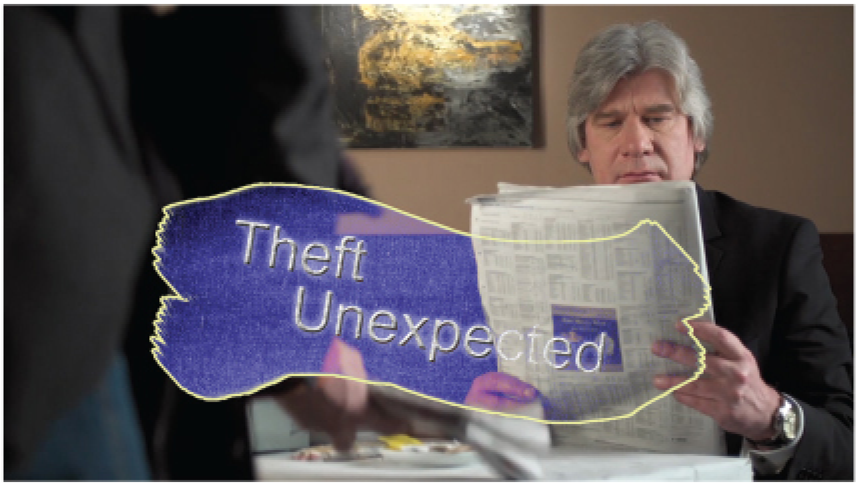
   You can replace the existing title by dragging the new item onto it while holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows). Notice that replacing a clip this way retains the sequence clip keyframes you added.



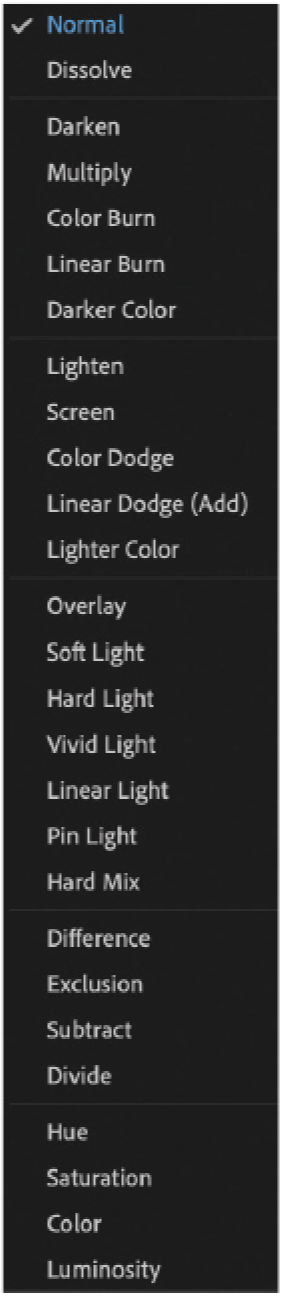
2. Select the new title in the sequence, and take a look at the Effect Controls panel.
3. In the Effect Controls panel, expand the Opacity controls, and browse through the Blend Mode menu options.
4. Right now, the blend mode is set to Normal. Try a few different options to see the results. Each blend mode calculates the relationship between the foreground layer pixels and the background pixels differently. See Premiere Pro Help for a description of the blend modes.

   To quickly browse through the modes, hover the pointer over the Blend Mode menu, without clicking to open it, and scroll with your mouse wheel or trackpad.

   Try the Lighten blend mode, for instance. In this mode, a pixel is visible only if it is lighter than the pixel behind it.



5. Choose the Normal blend mode when you have finished experimenting.


✓ Normal
Dissolve
Darken
Multiply
Color Burn
Linear Burn
Darker Color
Lighten
Screen
Color Dodge
Linear Dodge (Add)
Lighter Color
Overlay
Soft Light
Hard Light
Vivid Light
Linear Light
Pin Light
Hard Mix
Difference
Exclusion
Subtract
Divide
Hue
Saturation
Color
Luminosity

Adjusting alpha channel transparencies

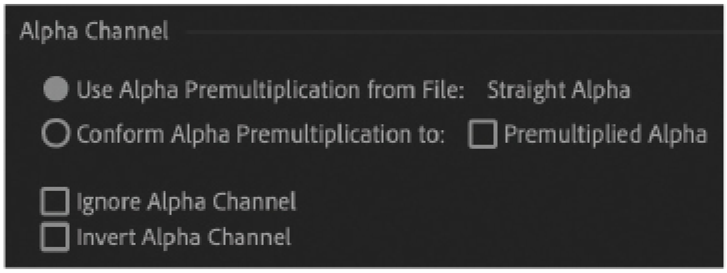
Many types of media will already have an alpha channel. A title graphic is an obvious example: Where text exists, pixels generally have 100% opacity, and where there is no text, pixels usually have 0% opacity. Elements such as drop shadows around text typically have a value somewhere in between.

Keeping some transparency in a drop shadow helps it look a little more realistic.

Premiere Pro sees pixels with higher values in the alpha channel as being more visible. This is the most common way to interpret alpha channels, but occasionally you might come across media that is configured in the opposite way. You will immediately recognize the problem because you'll see a cutout in an otherwise black image. This is easy to address because, just as Premiere Pro can interpret the audio channels on a clip, it's also possible to choose a different interpretation of an alpha channel.

You can see the results using a title in the Theft Unexpected sequence.

1. Locate Theft_Unexpected_Layered.psd in the Project panel.
2. Right-click the clip and choose Modify > Interpret Footage. In the lower half of the Modify Clip dialog box, you'll find the Alpha Channel interpretation options.



Alpha Channel

● Use Alpha Premultiplication from File: Straight Alpha
○ Conform Alpha Premultiplication to: ☐ Premultiplied Alpha

☐ Ignore Alpha Channel
☐ Invert Alpha Channel

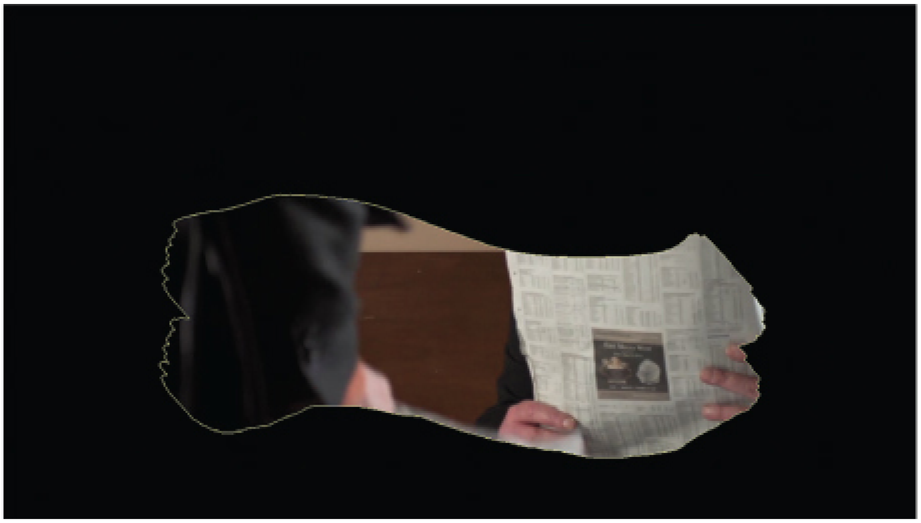
- **Alpha Premultiplication options:** Relate to the way semitransparent areas are interpreted. If you find that soft semitransparent image areas are blocky or poorly rendered, try selecting Premultiplied Alpha and compare the results.
- **Ignore Alpha Channel:** Treats all pixels as having 100% alpha, with no transparency. This can be useful if you don't intend to use a background clip in your sequence and would prefer black pixels.
- **Invert Alpha Channel:** Reverses the alpha channel. This means that pixels that were fully opaque will become fully transparent, and pixels that were transparent will become opaque.

3. Try selecting Ignore Alpha Channel, and click OK; then open the Modify Clip dialog box again, deselect Ignore Alpha Channel, and

then select Invert Alpha Channel. Compare the results in the Program Monitor.

● **Note**

Blend modes still apply when changing the interpretation of the alpha channel. For example, if you invert the alpha channel and use a blend mode like Lighten, the black background won’t be visible.



4. When you have finished experimenting, make sure the Alpha Channel option is set to Use Alpha Premultiplication From File and Invert Alpha Channel is deselected. You can use Undo to restore the clip interpretation.

Color keying a greenscreen shot

When you change the opacity level of a clip using the rubber band or the Effect Controls panel, you adjust the alpha for every pixel in the image by the same amount. There are also ways to selectively adjust the alpha for pixels, based on their position on the screen, their brightness, or their color.

Chroma key effects adjust the opacity for specific pixels, selected based on their luminance, hue, and saturation level.

The principle is straightforward: Select a color or range of colors, and the more similar a pixel is to the selection, the more transparent it becomes.

That is, the more closely a pixel matches the selection, the more its alpha channel value is lowered, until it becomes fully transparent.

Let’s create a chroma key composition.

1. If necessary, resize the Project panel to display the New Item button. Drag the clip Timekeeping.mp4, in the Greenscreen bin, onto the New Item button in the Project panel. This creates a sequence with settings that match the media. The clip will be added to the Video 1 track.

Tip

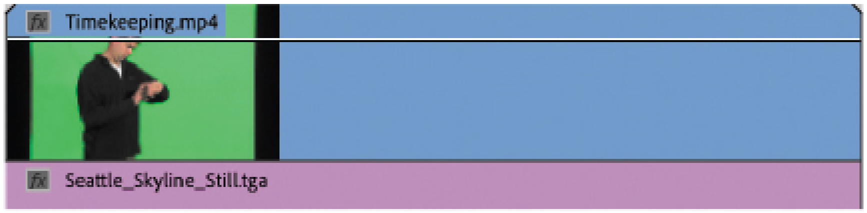
To create a new sequence with matching settings, you can also right-click a clip in the Project panel and choose New Sequence From Clip. Both options work with multiple selected clips too. If you select clips with multiple formats, the first item selected will be used to configure the new sequence.

2. In the sequence, drag the Timekeeping.mp4 clip up to Video 2—this will be the foreground. You may need to resize the Video 2 track to see the thumbnail for the clip. You can do this quickly by double-clicking the blank part of the Video 2 track header.
3. Drag the clip Seattle_Skyline_Still.tga from the Shots bin to track Video 1, under the Timekeeping.mp4 clip on the Timeline panel.

   Because this is a single-frame graphic, its default duration is too short.

4. Trim the Seattle_Skyline_Still.tga clip so that it's long enough to be a background for the full duration of the foreground clip on Video 2.

   A quick way to extend the background clip is to position the playhead at the end of the Timekeeping.mp4 clip, select the outpoint of the Seattle_Skyline_Still.tga clip (the right edge of the clip in the sequence), and press E—this is the default keyboard shortcut for Extend.

5. In the Project panel, your sequence is still named after the Timekeeping.mp4 clip, and it's stored in the same Greenscreen bin. Rename the sequence **Seattle Skyline**, and drag it into the Sequences bin.

   This kind of on-the-fly organization is worth the extra effort, as it helps you stay in control of your project.

You now have foreground and background clips. All that remains is to make the green pixels transparent.

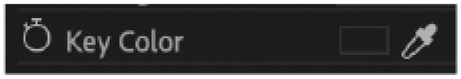
Using the Ultra Key effect

Premiere Pro includes a powerful, fast, and intuitive chroma key effect called Ultra Key. To apply a key, you'll choose a color that should be transparent and then adjust settings to improve the color selection.

The Ultra Key effect generates a matte (defining which pixels should be transparent) dynamically based on the color selection. The matte is adjustable using the detailed settings in the Effect Controls panel. Let's try using the Ultra Key effect on the Timekeeping clip.

1. Apply the Ultra Key effect to the Timekeeping.mp4 clip in the new Seattle Skyline sequence. You can find the effect by typing **Ultra** in the Effects panel search box.

2. In the Effect Controls panel, click the Key Color eyedropper (not the color swatch) to select it.



3. Holding the Command key (macOS) or Ctrl key (Windows), use the eyedropper to click a green area in the Program Monitor. This clip has a consistent green background, so it’s not too important where you click. With other footage, you may need to experiment to find the best spot.

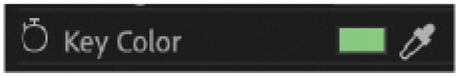
▶ **Tip**

Avoid using too much in-camera sharpening when filming greenscreen footage as it can make it difficult to get a clean edge when configuring a chroma key effect.

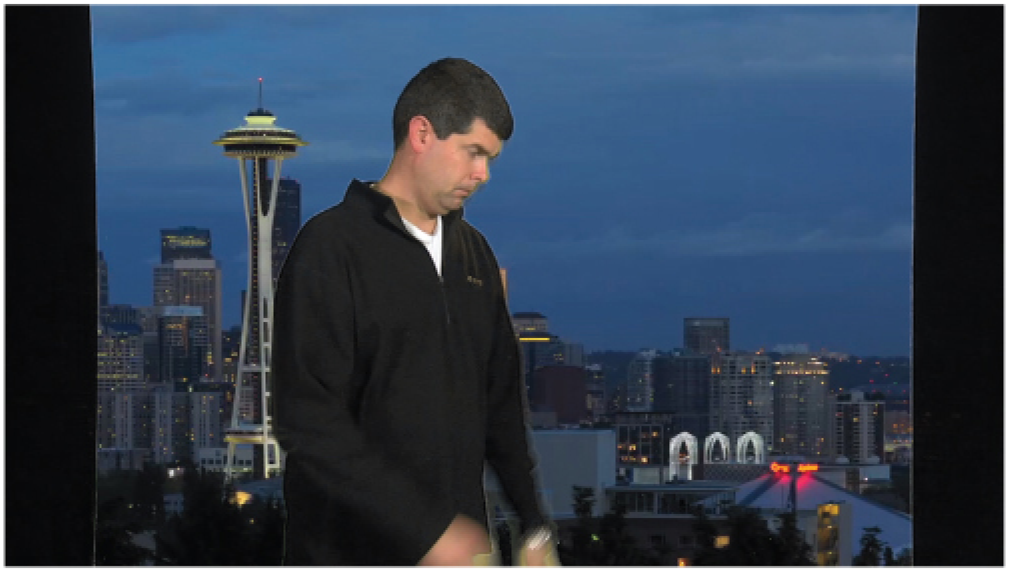
● **Note**

If you’re using macOS, you may see an alert asking you to give Premiere Pro permission to record your computer screen. To do so, click Open System Settings and use an administrator password to unlock Security & Privacy settings. You may have to quit Premiere Pro and restart it to confirm the change.

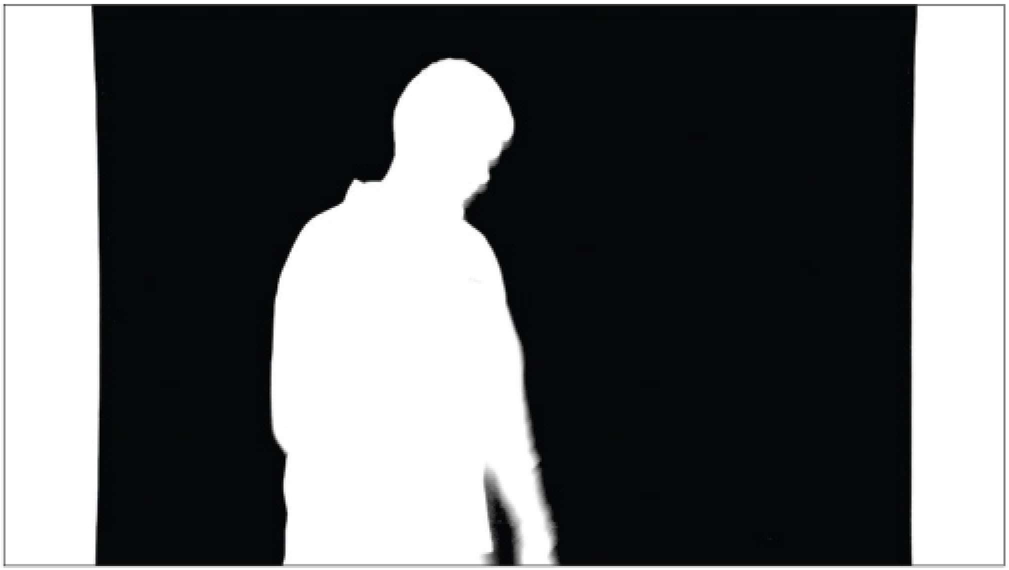
If you hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) when you click with the eyedropper, Premiere Pro takes the average of a 5×5-pixel sample, rather than a single-pixel selection. This often captures a better color for keying.



The Ultra Key effect identifies all pixels that have the green you selected and sets their alpha to 0%.

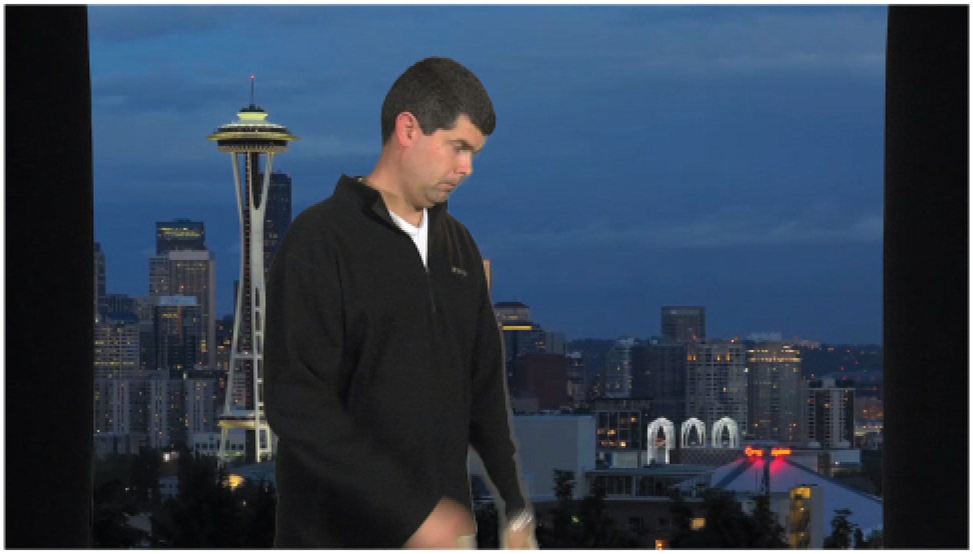


4. In the Effect Controls panel, under the Ultra Key effect, choose Alpha Channel from the Output menu. In this mode, the Ultra Key effect displays the alpha channel that has been generated as a grayscale image, where dark pixels will be transparent and light pixels will be opaque.



It’s a pretty good key, but there are a few areas of gray where the pixels will be partially transparent, which you don’t want. Where there’s naturally semitransparent detail, like hair or the soft edges of clothing, there should be some gray, and the right and left sides of the image don’t have any green, so none of those pixels can be keyed. We’ll fix that later. Still, the main areas of the alpha channel should be solid black or white.

5. In the Effect Controls panel, under the Ultra Key effect, choose Aggressive from the Setting menu. This cleans up the selection a little. Scrub through the shot to see whether it has clean black areas and white areas. If you see gray pixels in this view, the result will be partially transparent parts in the picture. This might be desirable if the image area should be partially transparent. Expect to switch back and forth between viewing the composite image and the alpha channel often when setting up the Ultra Key effect.
6. Choose Composite from the Ultra Key effect Output menu to see the result.



▶ Tip

You may notice the image looks cleaner when paused than during playback. If so, this may be because you have the Program Monitor playback resolution set to 1/2 (which is the default). Try setting it to full quality. You may also want to try enabling High Quality Playback in the Program Monitor Settings menu.

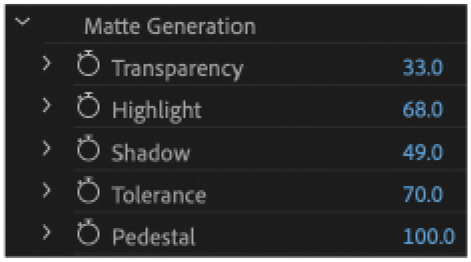
The Aggressive setting works better for this clip.

The Default, Relaxed, and Aggressive settings actually modify the Matte Generation, Matte Cleanup, and Spill Suppression settings. You can also modify these manually to get a better key with more challenging footage.

Here's an overview of those settings:

- **Matte Generation:** Once you've chosen your key color, the controls in the Matte Generation category change the way it's interpreted. Even with challenging footage, you'll often get positive results by adjusting these settings.

  In the example you are working on, there are issues with the original media, particularly around the edge of the subject. These are more visible during fast motion, such as when the jacket is moving quickly. Try matching the settings in the figure shown here.

  Matte Generation
  Transparency 33.0
  Highlight 68.0
  Shadow 49.0
  Tolerance 70.0
  Pedestal 100.0

  When adjusting settings, try dragging each control to its extremes first, then find the middle ground to discover the best configuration possible. You will often find you will need to re-adjust a parameter as you finesse the settings.

- **Matte Cleanup:** Once your matte is defined, you can use these controls to adjust it:
  - **Choke** shrinks the matte, which is helpful if your key selection misses some edges. Be careful not to choke the matte too much because you'll begin to lose edge detail in the foreground image, often applying a *digital haircut* in the vernacular of the visual-effects industry.
  - **Soften** applies a blur to the matte, which often improves the apparent "blending" of the foreground and background images for a more convincing composite.
  - **Contrast** increases the contrast of the alpha channel, making that black-and-white image a stronger black-and-white version and

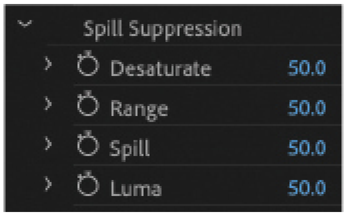
  more clearly defining the key. You will often get cleaner keys by increasing the contrast, at the risk of producing unwanted hard edges.

  - **Mid Point** is the level from which contrast is adjusted—a kind of anchor point for contrast. Adjust contrast around a different level for more subtle control.

Note

In this example, you’re using footage with a green background. If you have footage with a blue background, the workflow is the same.

- **Spill Suppression:** Spill Suppression compensates for color that bounces from the green background onto the subject. When this happens, the reflected green color does not affect the subject’s own colors enough to cause them to be keyed out (made transparent). However, it does not look good when the edges of your subject are green!

  Spill Suppression
  Desaturate 50.0
  Range 50.0
  Spill 50.0
  Luma 50.0

  Spill Suppression automatically compensates by adding color to the foreground element edges that are positioned opposite, on a color wheel, to the key color. For example, Spill Suppression adds magenta when you’re greenscreen keying and yellow when you’re bluescreen keying. This neutralizes the color “spill” in the same way that you’d fix a color cast.

- **Color Correction:** The built-in Color Correction controls give you a quick and easy way to adjust the appearance of your foreground video to help it blend in with your background more naturally. For more comprehensive color adjustment controls, use the Lumetri Color panel.

These color adjustment controls are often enough to make a more natural match. The adjustments are applied after the key, so you won’t cause problems for the key by adjusting the colors with these controls. You can use any color adjustment tools in Premiere Pro, including the Lumetri Color panel.

Partially masking clips

The Ultra Key effect generates a matte dynamically, based on the colors in your shot. You can also create your own custom-shaped matte or use another clip as the basis for a matte.

Earlier, you used a mask to constrain an effect to a region in the image. The Opacity setting can be combined with a mask in the same way, allowing you to set regions in an image that should be transparent with great precision.

Let’s create a matte to remove the unwanted edges from the Timekeeping.mp4 clip.

1. Return to the Seattle Skyline sequence.

   As you discovered earlier, the foreground clip has an actor standing in front of a greenscreen, but the screen does not reach the edge of the picture. It’s common to shoot greenscreen footage this way, particularly when filming on location, where full studio facilities may not be available.

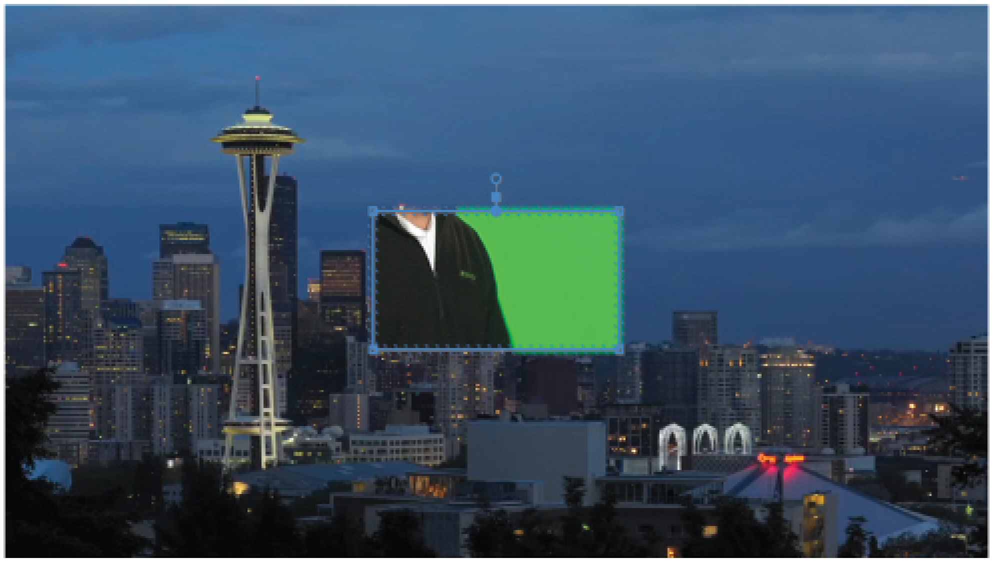
2. Turn off the Ultra Key effect, without removing it, by clicking the Toggle Effect button 👁 in the Effect Controls panel . This allows you to clearly see the green areas of the picture again.

3. Still in the Effect Controls panel, expand the Opacity controls and click the Create 4-Point Polygon Mask button ▣ just under that heading.

   Premiere Pro applies a mask to the clip’s opacity setting, making most of the image transparent.

Tip

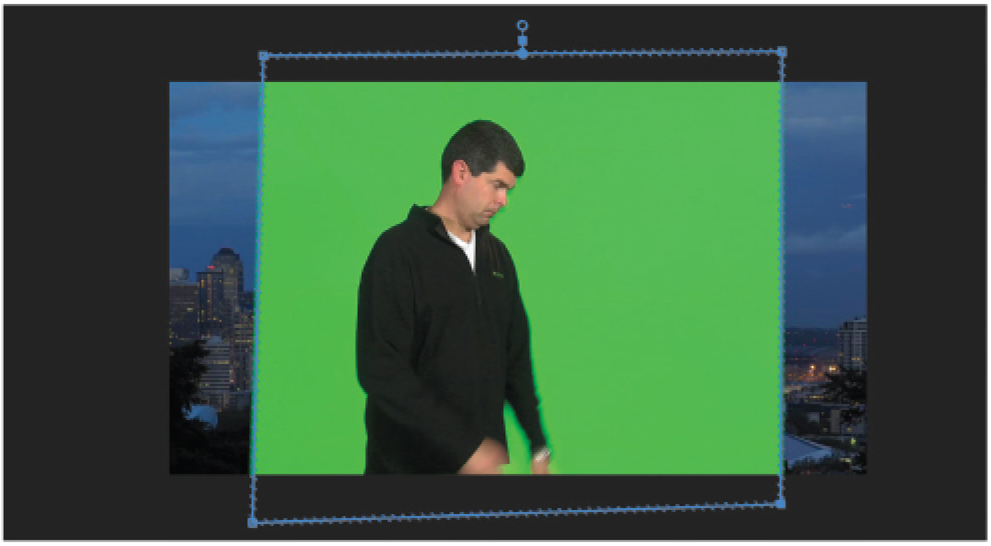
If you deselect the mask, the control points displayed in the Program Monitor will disappear. Select the mask in the Effect Controls panel to reactivate them.



4. Resize the mask so that it reveals the central area of the shot but hides the black edges. You will almost certainly need to reduce the Program Monitor zoom to 50% or 25% to see beyond the edges of the image.

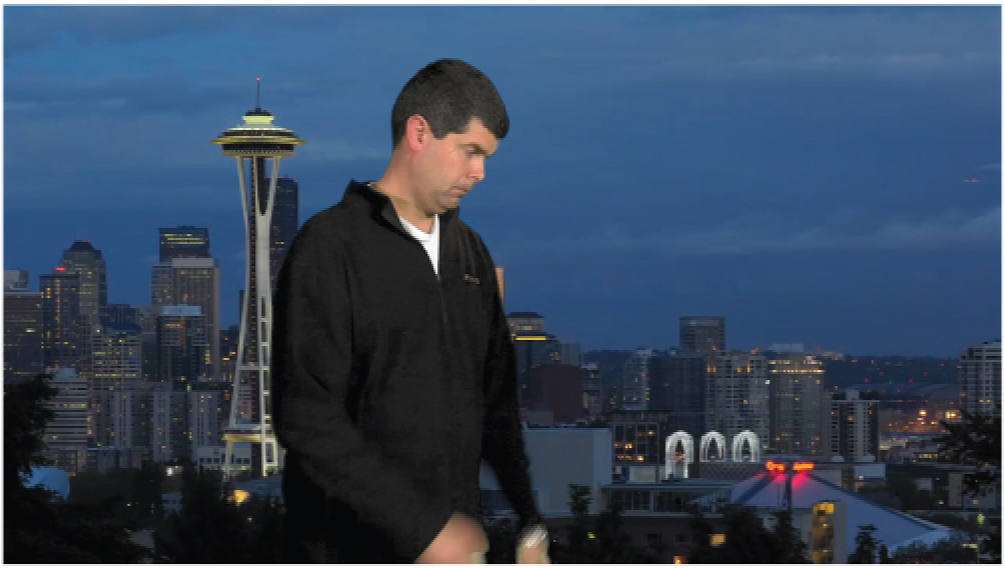
Note

A rough mask of this kind, used to remove unwanted image elements, is often referred to as a garbage matte.



As long as you have the mask selected in the Effect Controls panel, you can click directly in the Program Monitor to reposition the corner control points for the mask. Don't worry about precisely matching the edges of the frame. Instead, focus on selecting the areas in the picture the subject moves into.

5. Set the Program Monitor zoom option to Fit.
6. Toggle the Ultra Key effect back on in the Effect Controls panel, and deselect the clip to hide the visible mask handles.



▶ Tip

You can add control points for a more precise shape by clicking the mask outline. Hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) when you click a control point to remove it.

▶ Tip

If you have difficulty clicking the right part of the image in the Program Monitor, it may be because the screen scaling applied by your operating system is causing an offset. Try adjusting your operating system settings to make sure screen scaling is set to 100% or 200%. This is easier to set in Windows, which displays a percentage in the setting. On macOS, you may find it easier to keep your monitor set to the default scaling. There are third-party apps that can help with this.

This is challenging footage to key because the original camera recording includes adjustments to the edges of the subject, and it uses a color compression system that reduces color fidelity. With patience and precise adjustments, you can still achieve a reasonable result.

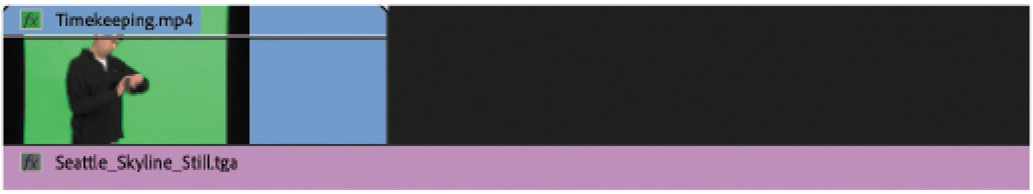
Using the Track Matte key effect

Adding a mask to the Opacity effect in the Effect Controls panel sets a user-defined region that should be visible or transparent. Premiere Pro can also use another sequence clip, positioned above the clip to be affected, to generate a custom matte.

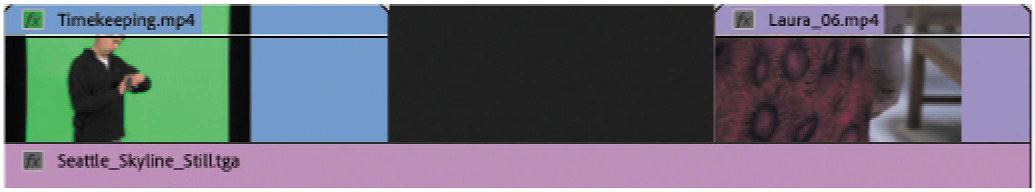
The Track Matte Key effect uses the luminance information or existing alpha channel information from clips placed on one track to define a transparency matte for a clip on another track. With a little planning and preparation, this simple effect can produce powerful results because you can use any clips as a reference and even apply effects to them, changing the resulting matte.

Let's use the Track Matte Key effect to add a layered title to the Seattle Skyline sequence.

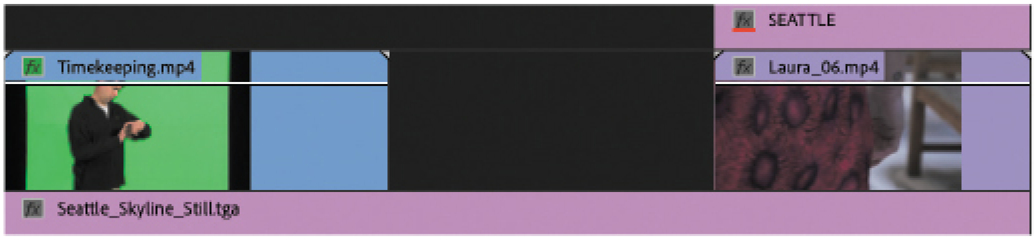
1. Trim the Seattle_Skyline_Still.tga clip longer so you can use it as the background for another foreground clip. Trim it to a duration of around 50 seconds.



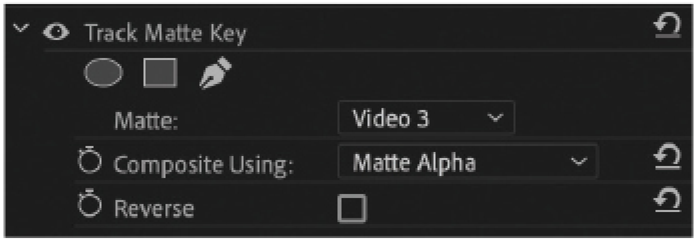
2. Edit the clip Laura_06.mp4, from the Shots bin, onto the Video 2 track, lined up with the end of the background clip.



3. Drag the graphic clip SEATTLE from the Graphics bin onto the Timeline V3 track, directly above the Laura_06.mp4 clip. This clip has an alpha channel that defines the non-text portion of the image as transparent, allowing you to see the background.
4. Trim the SEATTLE graphic clip to match the duration of the Laura_06.mp4 clip.



5. Find the Track Matte Key effect in the Effects panel, and apply it to the Laura_06.mp4 clip on the Video 2 track. The effect is applied to the clip you want to change (not the clip or clips you are using as a reference for the effect).
6. Make sure the Laura_06.mp4 clip is selected. In the Effect Controls panel, choose Video 3 from the matte menu in the Track Matte Key controls. Any clips on the chosen track will be used as the reference for the newly generated matte.


Track Matte Key

Matte: Video 3

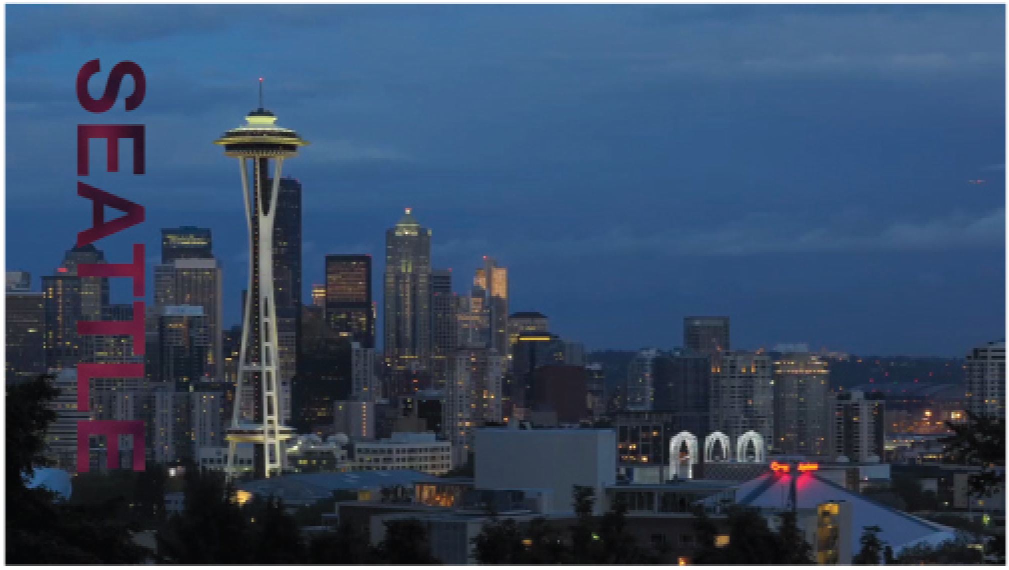
Composite Using: Matte Alpha

Reverse ☐

7. Scrub through the sequence to see the result. The white text in the title clip on Video 3 is no longer visible. Instead, it's being used as a guide to define the visible and transparent regions of the clip on V3.

▶ **Tip**

In this example, you're using a still image as a reference for the Track Matte Key effect. You can use any type of visual clip, though, including video clips.



By default, the Track Matte Key effect uses the alpha channel from clips on the selected track to generate a key. If your reference clips don't use an alpha channel, change the Composite Using menu to Matte Luma, so the Track Matte Key effect uses the brightness of the reference clips instead.

The Track Matte Key effect is an unusual effect because most other effects exclusively change the clip they are applied to. The Track Matte Key effect changes both the clip it's applied to *and* the clip used as a reference, which is made transparent for the duration of the effect.

The colors in the Laura_06.mp4 clip work well against the blue in the background clip, but they could be more vivid. You might want to experiment with color correction tools to make the red stronger and brighter so it's a more compelling composition.

You could animate the SEATTLE title too, having it move on-screen or gradually increase in size.

You could also add a blur effect to the Laura_06.mp4 clip before adding the Track Matte Key effect and change the playback speed to create a softer, slower-moving texture.

Review questions

1 What is the difference between the RGB channels and the alpha channel?

2 How do you apply a blend mode to a clip?

3 How do you keyframe clip opacity?

4 How do you change the way a media file’s alpha channel is interpreted?

5 What does it mean to key a clip?

6 Are there any limits to the kinds of clips you can use as a reference for the Track Matte Key effect?

Review answers

1 RGB channels contain color information; the alpha channel describes opacity.

2 Choose a blend mode from the Blend Mode menu in the Opacity category in the Effect Controls panel.

3 You adjust clip opacity in the same way you adjust clip volume, in the Timeline panel or in the Effect Controls panel. To make an adjustment in the Timeline panel, make sure you’re viewing the Opacity rubber band for the clip you want to adjust and then drag with the Selection tool. If you hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) while clicking, you’ll add keyframes. You can also work with keyframes in more advanced ways using the Pen tool.

4 Right-click the file in the Project panel and choose Modify > Interpret Footage.

5 A key is usually a special effect where the color or brightness of pixels is used to define which part of the image should be transparent and which part should be visible.

6 You can use just about anything visual to create your key with the Track Matte Key effect, as long as it is positioned on a track above the clip you apply the effect to. You can apply special effects to the reference clip, and the results of those effects will be reflected in the matte. You can even use multiple clips because the setting is based on the whole track, rather than a particular clip.

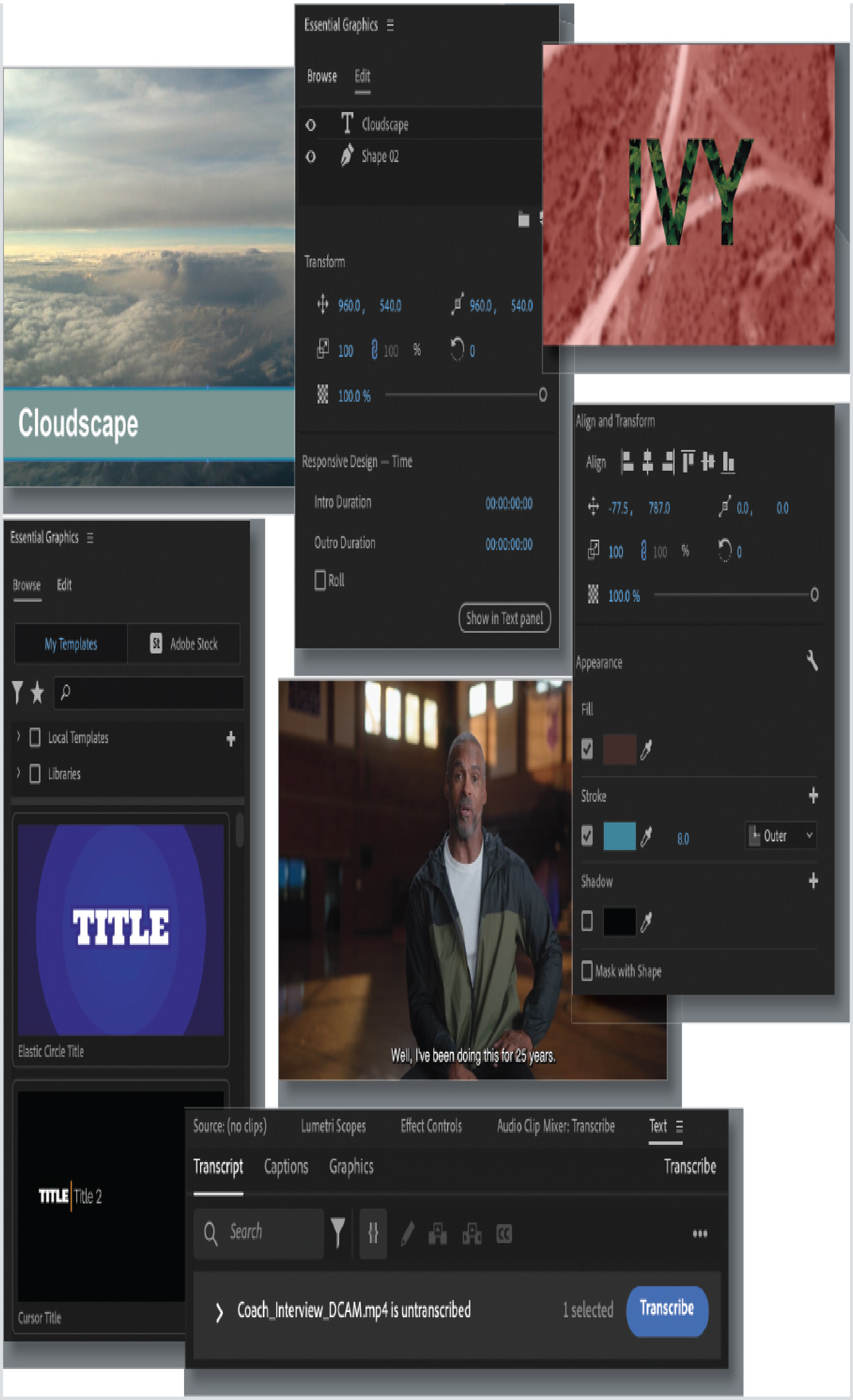
15 Creating New Graphics

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Use the Essential Graphics panel.
- Work with video typography.
- Create graphics.
- Work with shapes and logos.
- Make text roll and crawl.
- Work with Motion Graphics templates (MOGRTs).
- Create captions.

This lesson will take about 90 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


Cloudscape
Essential Graphics
Browse
Edit
Cloudscape
Shape 02
Transform
960.0, 540.0
960.0, 540.0
100
100 %
0
100.0 %
Responsive Design – Time
Intro Duration 00:00:00:00
Outro Duration 00:00:00:00
Roll
Show in Text panel
IVY
Align and Transform
Align
-77.5, 787.0
0.0, 0.0
100
100 %
0
100.0 %
Appearance
Fill
Stroke
8.0
Outer
Shadow
Mask with Shape
My Templates
Adobe Stock
Local Templates
Libraries
TITLE
Elastic Circle Title
TITLE | Title 2
Cursor Title
Well, I've been doing this for 25 years.
Source: (no clips)
Lumetri Scopes
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Transcribe
Text
Transcript
Captions
Graphics
Transcribe
Search
Coach_Interview_DCAM.mp4 is untranscribed
1 selected
Transcribe

Although video and audio clips are the primary ingredients in a sequence, you will also often choose to incorporate text and graphics into your project. Adobe

Premiere Pro includes powerful title and graphic-creation tools you can work with right in the Program Monitor; or you can browse editable templates in the Essential Graphics panel.

Starting the lesson

Text can help to convey information quickly to your audience. For example, you can identify a speaker in your video by superimposing their name and title during the interview (often called a *lower third*). You can also use text to identify sections of a longer video (often called *bumpers*) or to acknowledge the cast and crew (with *credits*).

Text can be clearer than a narrator's voice and allows for additional information to be presented in the middle of dialogue. Text can also reinforce key information.

In the Program Monitor, the Essential Graphics panel, and the Text panel, you'll find a range of text-editing and shape-creation tools that you can use to design graphics. You can use the fonts loaded on your computer (and those available via Adobe Fonts as part of your Creative Cloud membership).

You can also control opacity and color and insert graphic elements or logos.

● **Note**

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

Let's try a few graphic and titling techniques.

1. Open Lesson 15.prproj in the Lessons folder.
2. Save the project as Lesson 15 **Working.prproj**.
3. Switch to the Captions and Graphics workspace by choosing Captions And Graphics from the Workspaces menu or by choosing Window > Workspaces > Captions And Graphics.

4. Reset the workspace by opening the Workspaces menu and choosing Reset To Saved Layout, or by choosing Window > Workspaces > Reset To Saved Layout.

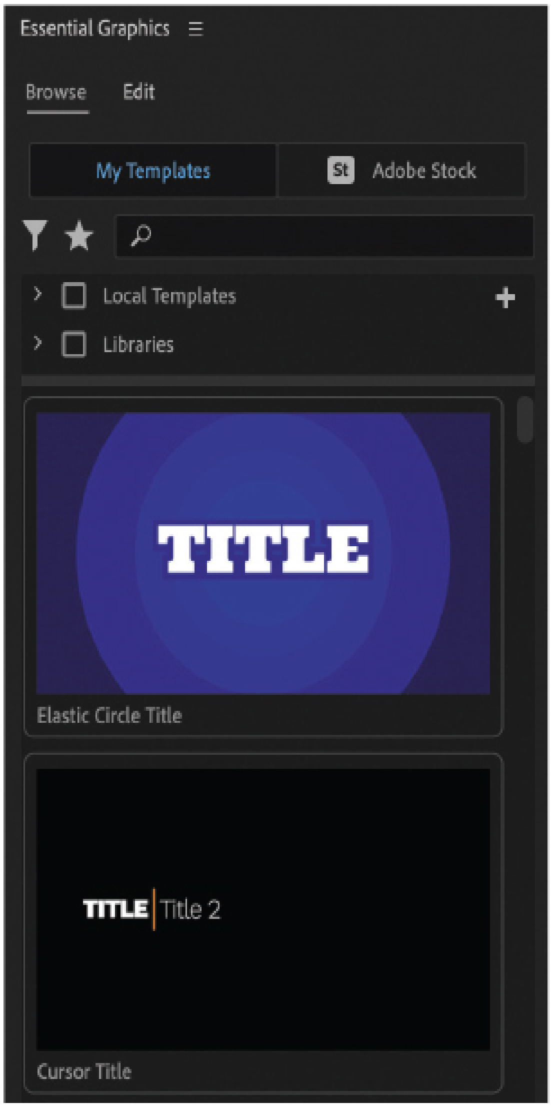
The Captions And Graphics workspace reveals the Essential Graphics panel and positions the Tools panel next to the Program Monitor to give quick access to text and shape tools.

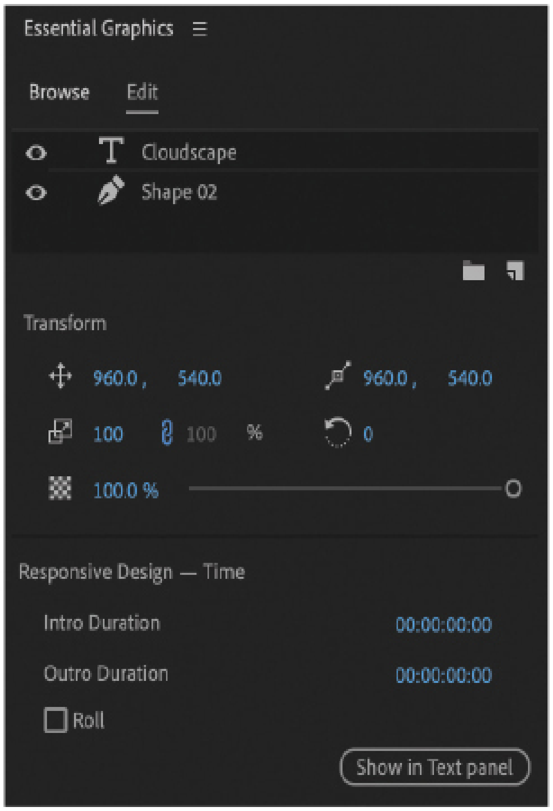
Exploring the Essential Graphics panel

The Essential Graphics panel has two tabs.

- **Browse:** Select built-in or imported title templates and Motion Graphics templates, many of which include animation.
- **Edit:** Adjust titles and graphics in a sequence.

When using the Browse tab, you can look for templates you own in the My Templates area or switch to searching Adobe Stock. There are free and paid templates available from Adobe Stock. For these lessons, we’ll focus on templates available in My Templates.


Essential Graphics
Browse
Edit
My Templates
Adobe Stock
Local Templates
Libraries
TITLE
Elastic Circle Title
TITLE Title 2
Cursor Title

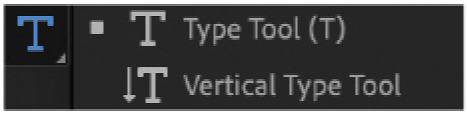

Essential Graphics
Browse
Edit
Cloudscape
Shape 02
Transform
Responsive Design — Time
Roll
Show in Text panel

960.0, 540.0
960.0, 540.0
100 100 %
0
100.0 %

Intro Duration 00:00:00:00
Outro Duration 00:00:00:00

In addition to starting with an editable built-in template, you can use the Type tool, Pen tool, Rectangle tool, Ellipse tool, or Polygon tool to create new graphics by clicking in the Program Monitor with no clips selected (if a graphic clip is selected, you'll add to that clip).

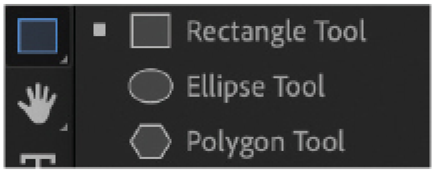
If you click and hold the Type tool, you'll reveal the Vertical Type tool, which allows you to type text in a column, instead of a row.


Type Tool (T)
Vertical Type Tool

You can also use the Pen tool directly in the Program Monitor to create custom shapes to use as graphic elements in titles.

You can click and hold the Rectangle tool to reveal the Ellipse tool and the Polygon tool.

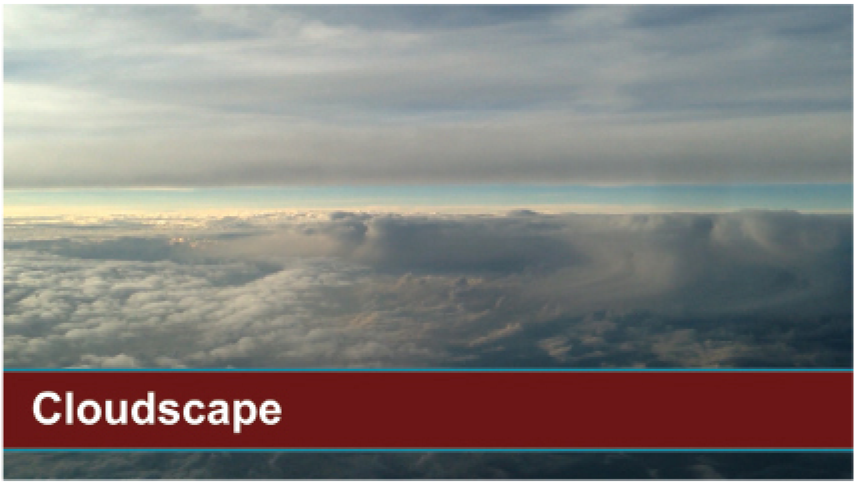
You can select, reposition, and resize graphic and text elements using the Selection tool ▶.



You perform all of this creative work directly in the Program Monitor. As soon as you click to add text or a shape, Premiere Pro creates a new clip in the Timeline panel. You apply adjustments in the Essential Graphics panel.

Let’s start with some preformatted text and modify it. This is a good way to get an overview of the powerful features of the Essential Graphics panel. Later in this lesson, you’ll build a new title.

1. If it’s not open already, open the sequence 01 Clouds.
2. Position the playhead over the Cloudscape title on the V2 track and select it.

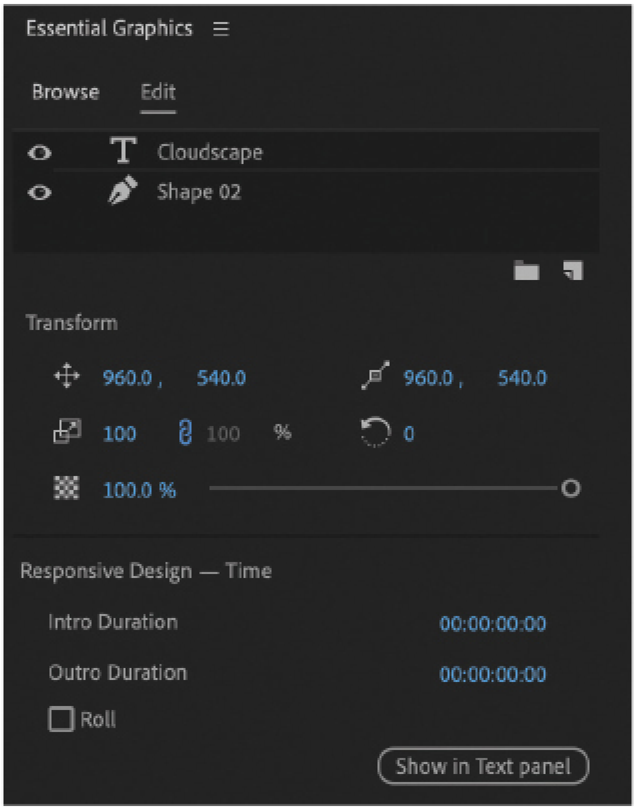


3. If the Essential Graphics panel is open, selecting the title in the Timeline panel should automatically switch the view to the Edit tab. If

not, click Edit at the top of the Essential Graphics panel.

Like the Effect Controls panel, the Edit tab of the Essential Graphics panel shows options for whichever clip is selected in the Timeline panel.

Also, just as with the Effect Controls panel, the Essential Graphics panel displays options for only one clip at a time.


Essential Graphics
Browse
Edit
Cloudscape
Shape 02
Transform
960.0, 540.0
960.0, 540.0
100
100
%
0
100.0 %
Responsive Design — Time
Intro Duration
00:00:00:00
Outro Duration
00:00:00:00
☐ Roll
Show in Text panel

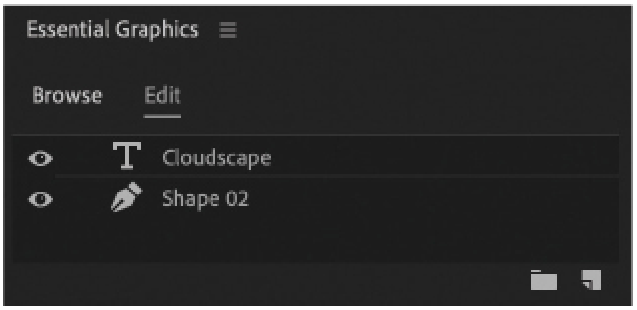
Like the Lumetri Color panel, changes made in the Essential Graphics panel actually appear as effects in the Effect Controls panel, with the full range of settings available, including the options to create effect presets and to animate graphic elements with keyframes.

Graphics and titles use a vector-based version of the Motion effect, which works the same way as the video version you are familiar with but which maintains the clean edges of fonts and shapes.

Notice there are two items listed at the top of the Essential Graphics panel: Cloudscape and Shape 02.

If you are familiar with Adobe Photoshop, you'll recognize these as layers. Every item in a graphic is displayed as a *layer* in the Essential

Graphics panel, a little like tracks in the Premiere Pro Timeline panel.



The layers at the top are in front of the layers at the bottom, and you can drag items up and down the list.

You’ll also recognize the familiar eye button for making layers visible 👁 or invisible ⊘.

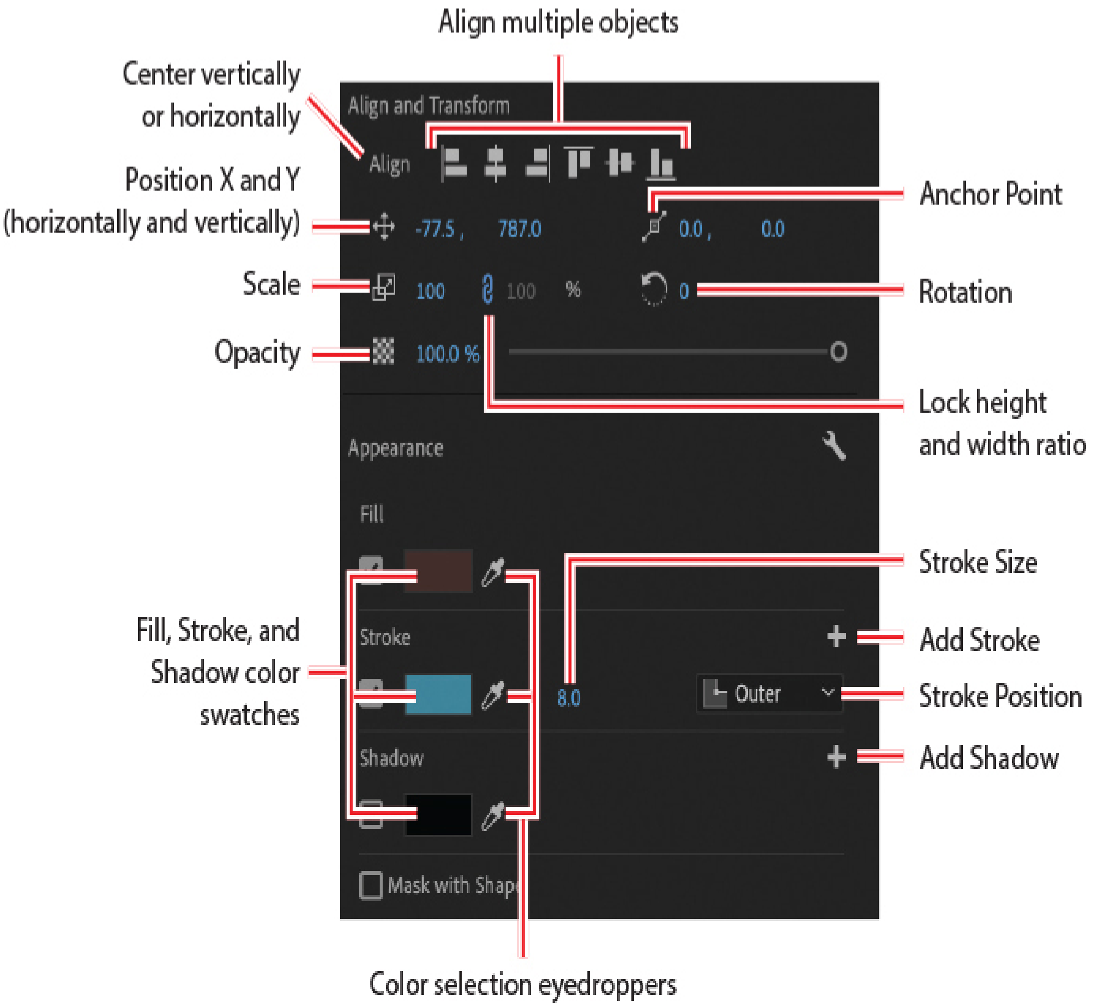
Provided no layers are selected in the Essential Graphics panel and no graphic or text items are selected in the Program Monitor, below these layers you’ll see the transform controls for the entire graphic and the Responsive Design controls. These allow you to specify a time duration at the start and end of the graphic clip that will not be adjusted if you change the duration of the clip in the sequence. This protects the timing of animation keyframes at the start and end of the graphic.

4. Click to select the Shape 02 layer at the top of the Essential Graphics panel. This is the red band that goes across the screen.

   Now the Essential Graphics panel displays alignment, transform, and appearance controls for the shape.

   Although the controls do not display a name, you can hover over an icon to see a tool tip that includes a description of the control. Most of the icons are actually buttons, some of which enable keyframe animation in the same way that the stopwatch icons in the Effect Controls panel do.

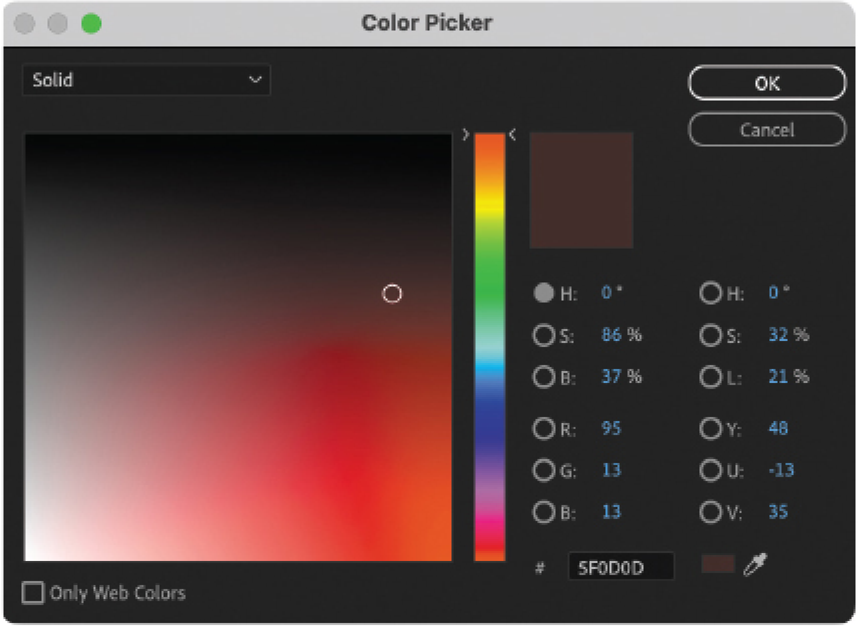
   Many of the options will be familiar to you from the Motion effect in the Effect Controls panel.


Align multiple objects
Center vertically or horizontally
Position X and Y (horizontally and vertically)
Scale
Opacity
Anchor Point
Rotation
Lock height and width ratio
Stroke Size
Add Stroke
Stroke Position
Add Shadow
Fill, Stroke, and Shadow color swatches
Color selection eyedroppers
Align and Transform
Align
-77.5 , 787.0
0.0 , 0.0
100 100 %
0
100.0 %
Appearance
Fill
Stroke
8.0
Outer
Shadow
Mask with Shape

In the Appearance section you can set a color for shape fill, stroke (a colored line on the edges of a shape or text), background (directly behind the text), and shadow (see “Text styles” later in this lesson for more information about them).

Perhaps these color swatches are already familiar to you. They work in an intuitive way.

5. Click the Fill color swatch.



Solid

● H: 0 °
○ S: 86 %
○ B: 37 %
○ R: 95
○ G: 13
○ B: 13

○ H: 0 °
○ S: 32 %
○ L: 21 %
○ Y: 48
○ U: -13
○ V: 35

# 5F0D0D

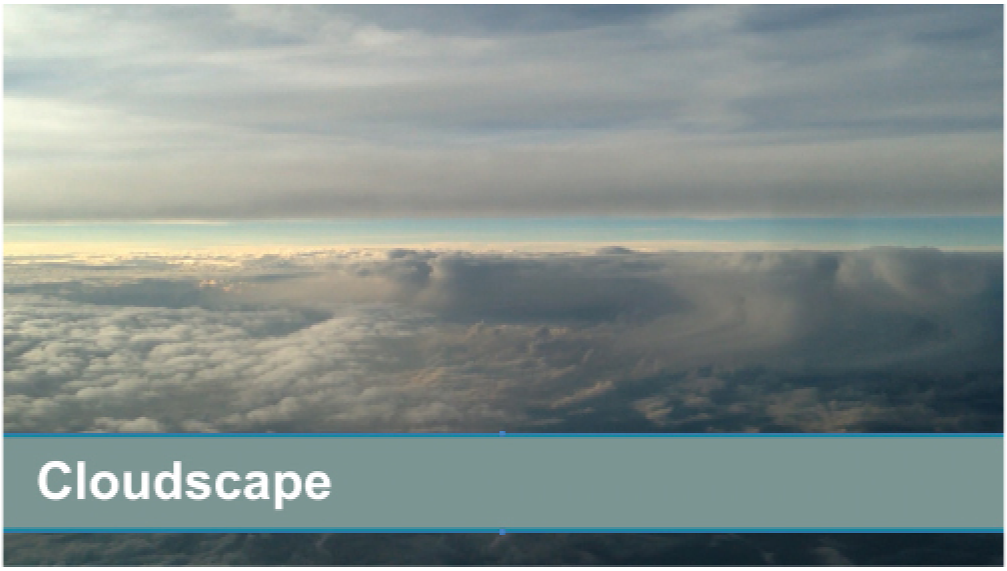
☐ Only Web Colors

A Color Picker appears that allows you to choose a precise color. There are a number of color models to choose from, or you can move your pointer over a sample of the color you want and click to select it directly.

6. Click Cancel, and then click the eyedropper for the fill color, on the right side of the Essential Graphics panel.

   The eyedropper allows you to pick a color from anywhere in the image. In fact, you can pick colors from anywhere on your computer screen! This is particularly useful if you have a range of colors you always want to use. For example, you may need to be certain that you match a logo or branding color.

7. In the Program Monitor, click the thin blue band of sky between the clouds. The shape fill changes color to match the sky.



8. Make sure you have selected the Selection tool in the Tools panel and that the Shape 02 layer is still selected in the Essential Graphics panel.

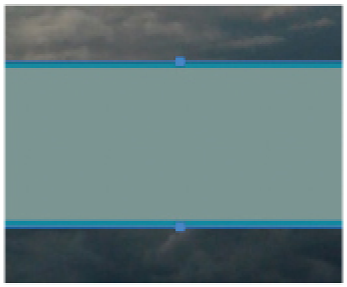
▶ Tip

With all the clicking and testing, it's easy to accidentally deselect layers. If there's no bounding box with handles around the text or shape, select it using the Selection tool.

Notice the tiny control handles visible on the midpoint of the shape in the Program Monitor. You can use the Selection tool to change the shape directly.

For now, you're going to use the Selection tool to select another layer in the title.

To select a layer in the Program Monitor, you may need to first deselect the layer that's already selected. You can do this by clicking the background of the Program Monitor or by deselecting the title clip in the Timeline panel.

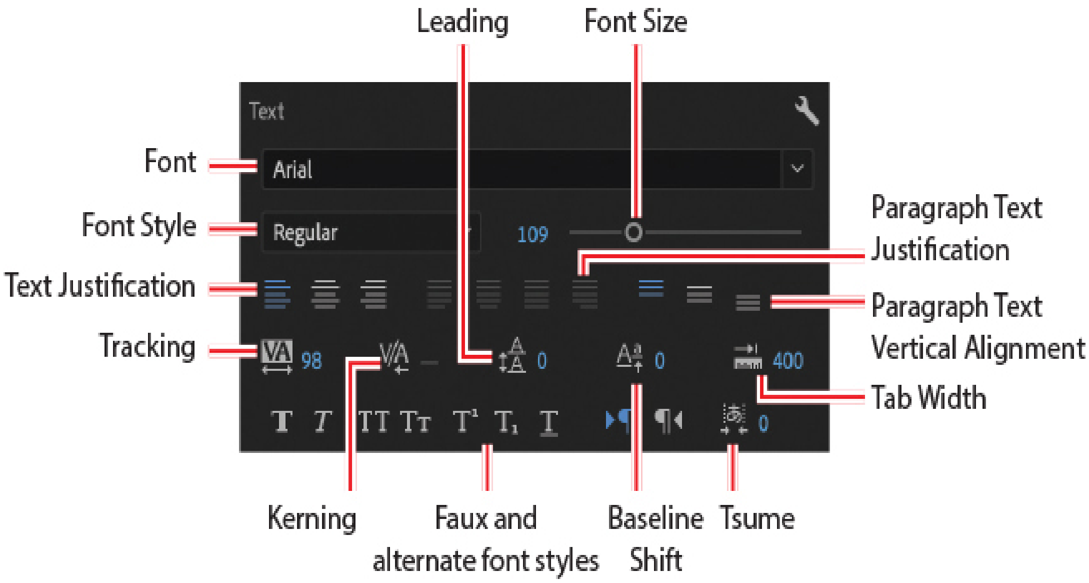


9. Use the Selection tool to click the word *Cloudscape* in the Program Monitor.

Note

You may have to expand the window or scroll to see all the Essential Graphics panel options.

The familiar Align And Transform and Appearance controls are displayed in the Essential Graphics panel, but now there are additional controls for the text.


Leading
Font Size
Text
Font
Arial
Font Style
Regular
109
Paragraph Text Justification
Text Justification
Paragraph Text Vertical Alignment
Tracking
98
0
0
400
Tab Width
0
Kerning
Faux and alternate font styles
Baseline Shift
Tsume

Tip

If you're unsure about the purpose of a control, hover the pointer over an icon and a tool tip will tell you the name.

10. Try a few fonts and font styles to experiment with the controls. Anywhere you see blue numbers, you can scrub to update the setting. You can also click a blue number to select it and use the Up Arrow and Down Arrow keys to change a setting incrementally. If you hold Shift while using the arrow keys, you'll change the settings by 10 at a time.

Note

When working with Chinese, Japanese, and Korean fonts, Tsume adjusts the spacing around characters without adjusting the vertical or horizontal scaling of the characters.

This is a quick way to find out what a control is for—make an extreme adjustment to view the result; then undo.

The specific fonts loaded on each system will vary, and your Adobe Creative Cloud membership includes access to many more fonts than you will have available to begin with.

● **Note**

Premiere Pro saves your titles in the project file. They do not show up as separate files on your hard drive.

To add fonts, click the Add Adobe Fonts button that appears while browsing fonts (or choose Graphics And Titles > Add Fonts From Adobe Fonts). This will open the Adobe Fonts website in your default internet browser, where you will find thousands of fonts to use.

Add Adobe Fonts:

Learning video typography essentials

When you design text for video, it’s helpful to follow typography conventions. If text is composited over a moving video background with multiple colors, it can take some adjustment to create a clear design.

Find a balance between legibility, style, and making sure enough information is on the screen. The more text there is, the harder it is to read, particularly if the words are moving.

Choosing a font

Your computer has many fonts, which can make choosing a good option for video work time-consuming. To simplify the selection process, try using a triage approach and consider these factors:

- **Readability:** Is the font easy to read at the size you’re using? Are all the characters readable? If you look at it quickly and then close your eyes, what do you remember about the text?

▶ Tip

If you’d like to learn more about typography, consider the book *The Complete Manual of Typography: A Guide to Setting Perfect Type, 2nd Edition* (Adobe Press, 2011), by Jim Felici.

- **Style:** Using adjectives only, how would you describe the font you’ve chosen? Does the font convey the right emotion? Type is a little like a wardrobe or a haircut; picking the right font is essential to the overall success of the design.
- **Flexibility:** Does the font mix well with others? Does it come in various weights (such as bold, italic, and semibold) that make it easier to convey significance? Can you create a hierarchy of information that conveys different kinds of information, such as a name and title for a speaker’s lower-third name graphic?
- **Language compatibility:** Does the font include all the characters required for the language you are using? Some fonts have limited character sets.

The answers to these guiding principles should help steer you toward better-designed titles. You may need to experiment to find the best font. Fortunately, you can easily modify an existing title or duplicate it and change the copy for a side-by-side comparison.

When creating text for use in a video, you will often find yourself placing it over a background that has many colors present. This will make it difficult to achieve proper contrast (which is essential to preserving legibility). To help in this case, you may need to add a stroke or shadow to get a contrasting edge. For more information about adding a stroke or shadow, see “Text styles” later in this lesson.

Choosing a color

Although you can create a near-infinite number of color combinations, choosing the right colors to use in a design can be surprisingly tricky. This is because only a few colors work well for text while remaining clear for the viewer. This task becomes even more difficult if you’re editing your video for broadcast television or if your design must match the style and branding of a show, product, or company. The text may also need to work when placed over a busy moving background.

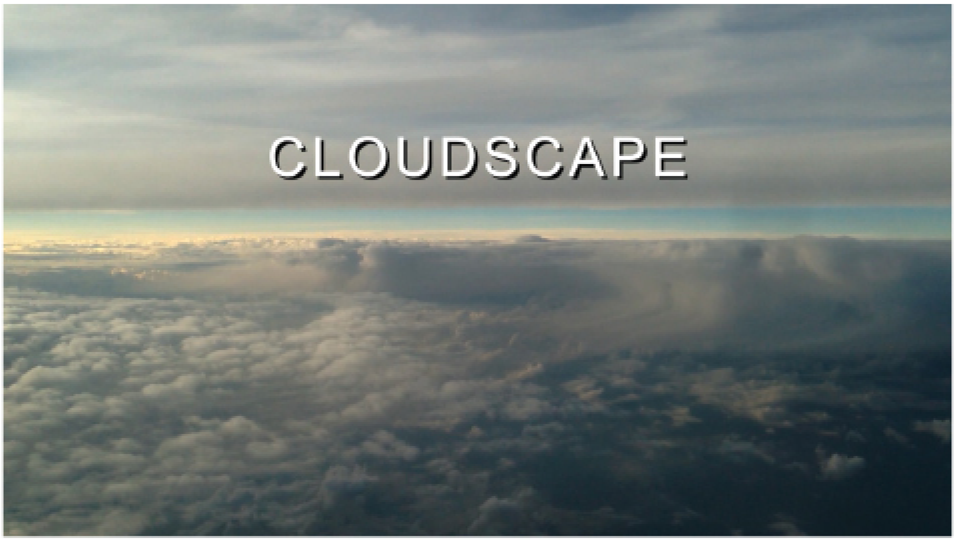
While it may feel a little conservative, the most common choices for text in video are black and white. If colors are used, they tend to be very light or very dark shades or have a thick, strongly colored stroke.

The color you choose must provide suitable contrast with its background, which means you’ll be making constant assessments about ideal colors, which often include factors such as branding requirements or a consistent color palette for your sequence.

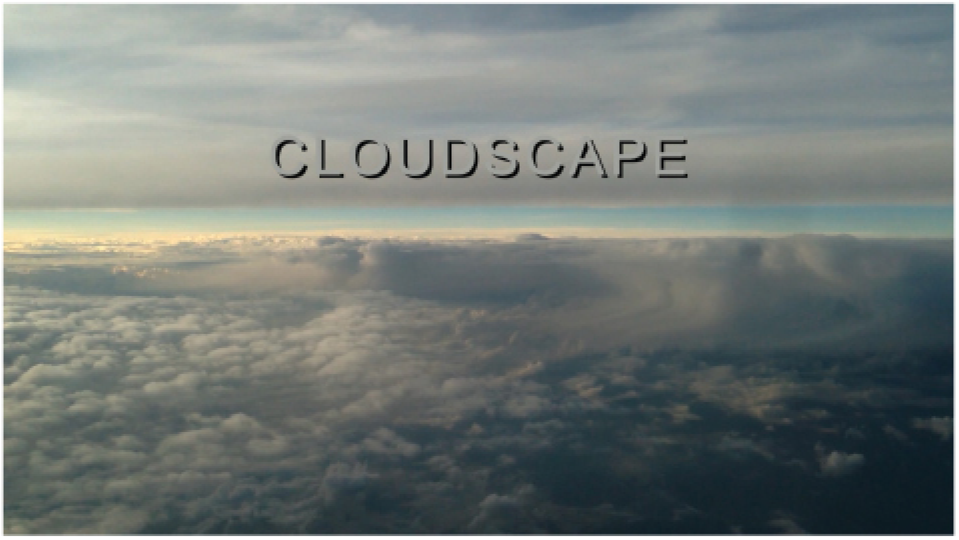
● **Note**

> The Adobe Color service helps you choose harmonious and appealing color combinations for your design projects. For more information, visit *color.adobe.com*.

Consider a positive example with clear light text over a dark background.



And now here’s a less positive example. The text is similar in color and tone to parts of the sky.



Adjusting the kerning

It’s common to adjust the spacing between the letters in a title to improve the appearance of text and help match it to the design of the background. This process is called *kerning*. Taking the time to manually adjust text becomes more important the larger the font gets (because it makes improper kerning more visible). The goal is to improve the appearance and readability of your text while creating visual flow.

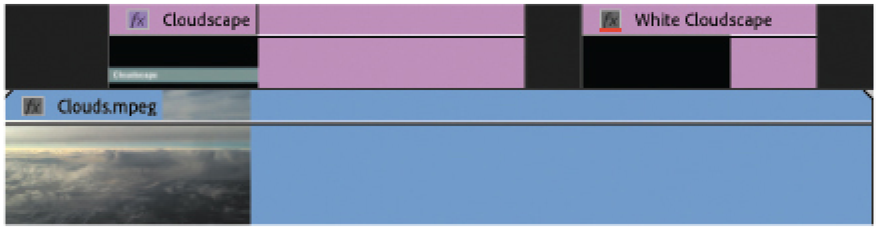
You can learn a lot about kerning by studying professionally designed materials such as posters and magazines. Kerning is applied letter by letter, allowing for creative use of spacing.

● Note

> It’s common to begin kerning by adjusting the spacing between an initial capital letter and the succeeding lowercase letters, particularly in the case of a letter with very little “base,” such as T, which creates the illusion of excessive space along the baseline.

Try kerning an existing title.

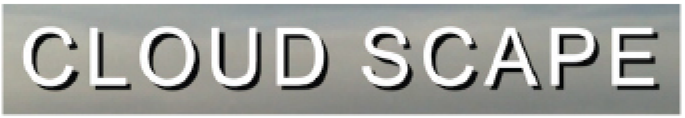
1. Locate the title clip White Cloudscape in the Assets bin.
2. Edit the clip into the 01 Clouds sequence after the first title on the Video 2 track.



Make sure the title is positioned over the background video clip so you can use it as a reference for positioning.

3. Select the Type tool (the keyboard shortcut is T), and click to place the insertion point between the *D* and the *S* of the word *CLOUDSCAPE*.
4. In the Edit tab of the Essential Graphics panel, in the Text section, set Kerning to 300.

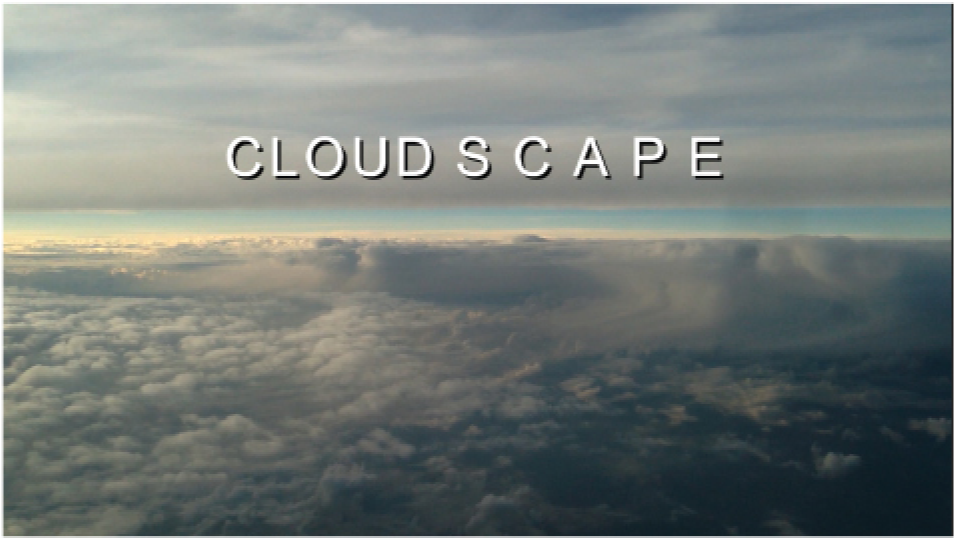
The Kerning option is available only when you select a single letter or place the text cursor between two letters.



5. Repeat this process for the other letters to the right, adjusting kerning between each pair of letters.
6. Click the Align Center Horizontally button in the Align And Transform section of the Essential Graphics panel to reposition the text. Then deselect the text by clicking an empty track in the Timeline panel.

Note

After using a different tool, it’s a good idea to return to the Selection tool to avoid accidentally adding new text or making unwanted changes to your sequence.



7. Select the Selection tool.

Setting the tracking

Another important text property is *tracking* (which is similar to kerning). This is the overall control of spacing between multiple selected letters. You can use tracking to globally condense or expand selected text.

Here are some common scenarios:

- **Tighter tracking:** If a line of text is too long (such as a lengthy title for a speaker's lower third), you might tighten the tracking slightly. This keeps the font size the same but fits more text into the available space.
- **Looser tracking:** When using all uppercase letters or a more complex font, it can help readability to spread out the letters. It's used often for large titles or when text is used as a design or motion-graphics element.

You can adjust tracking for a selected layer (or item in the Program Monitor) in the Text section of the Essential Graphics panel. Let's try it.

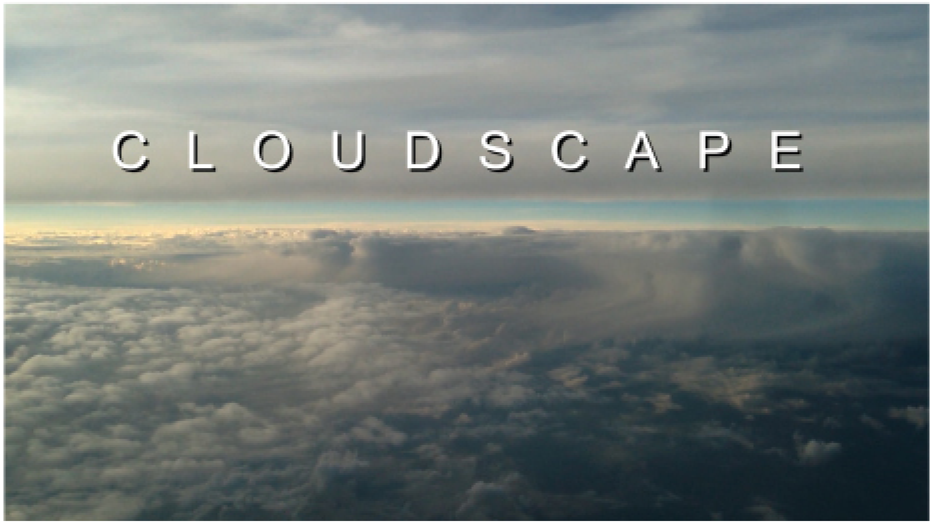
1. Drag the clip Cloudscape Tracking from the Assets bin onto the clip White Cloudscape in the 01 Clouds sequence to overwrite one clip with the other.

If Snap is turned on in the Timeline panel, the new clip will snap to the beginning of the existing title in the sequence. They have the same duration, so the new clip will perfectly replace the old one.

2. Make sure the clip is selected, and use the Selection tool to select the text.
3. In the Edit tab of the Essential Graphics panel, experiment with the tracking control. As you increase the tracking, the letters expand to the right, away from the anchor point.
4. Set the tracking to 530.
5. In the Text section of the Essential Graphics panel, click the Center Align Text button to center the text object on its anchor point.

   This moves the text object too far to the left.
6. Click the Align Center Horizontally button to align the object's anchor point with the center of the frame. This will also center the text object in the frame.
7. Now that the text is centered, try adjusting the tracking to 700. Notice that the text stays centered.

   Tracking adjustments tend to look neater and more intentional than individual kerning adjustments.



8. Restore the tracking to 530 to continue working on this design.

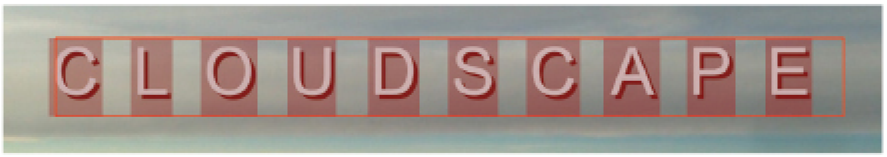
Adjusting the leading

Kerning and tracking control the horizontal space between characters. *Leading* (pronounced “led-ing”) controls the vertical space between lines of text. The name comes from a time when strips of lead were used on a printing press to create space between lines of text.

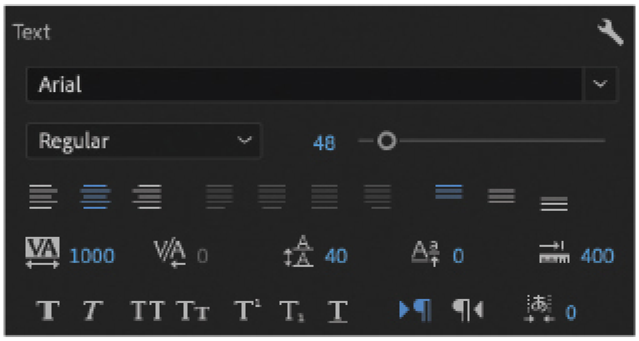
You adjust the leading in the Text section of the Essential Graphics panel Edit tab. Let’s add another line of text.

1. Continue to work with the Cloudscape Tracking clip in the 01 Clouds sequence.
2. With the Cloudscape Tracking clip selected in the Timeline panel, use the Selection tool to double-click the CLOUDSCAPE text in the Program Monitor.

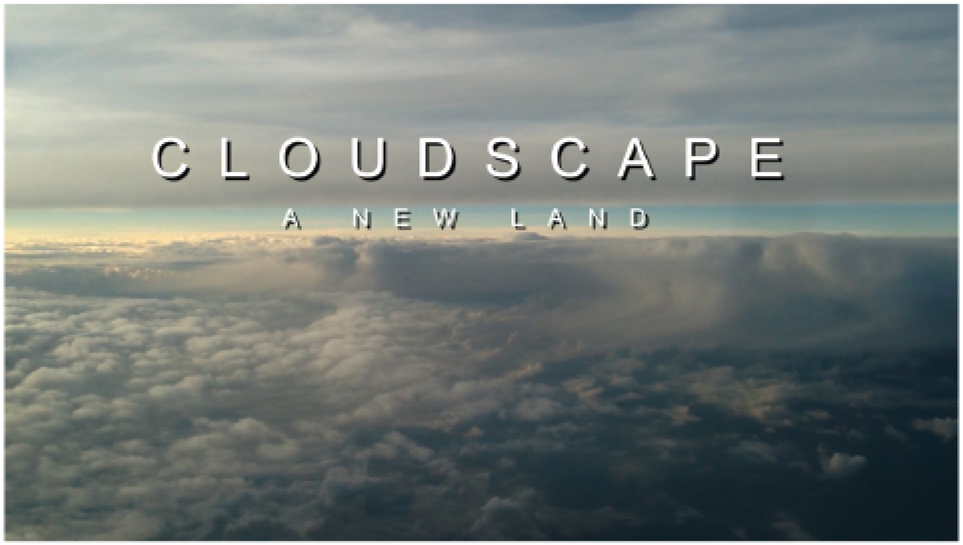
   This highlights the text, ready for editing, and changes the Selection tool to the Type tool.



3. Press the Right Arrow key to move the cursor to the end of the text.
4. Press Return (macOS) or Enter (Windows) to enter a second line of text. Type (in all capital letters) **A NEW LAND**.
5. Triple-click the new second line of text to select the whole line. Give the new text a font size of **48**, set the tracking to **1000**, and set the leading to **40**.



6. Click an empty track in the Timeline panel to deselect the graphic.



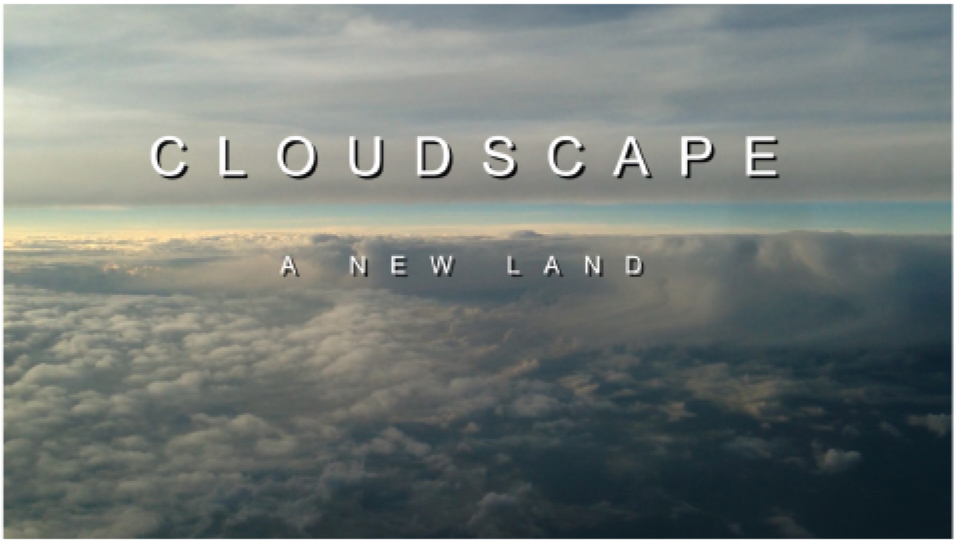
Increasing the leading helps to separate the second line of text, but it's still a little difficult to read because of the background image.

7. Using the Selection tool, select the text in the Program Monitor. This is a quick way to access a specific element in a graphic.

   At the top of the Essential Graphics panel, the text layer CLOUDSCAPEA NEW LAND is selected (the text in the layer is condensed into a single layer name).

   Increase the leading to **140**. This adds space between lines and improves readability.

8. Click an empty track in the Timeline panel to deselect the clip.

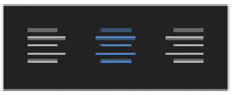


In most cases, you’ll find the default setting works well for leading. Adjusting leading can have a big impact on your title. Don’t set the leading too tight; otherwise, descenders from the top line (such as the downward lines on *j, p, q,* and *g*) will cross ascenders from the lower line (like the upward lines on *b*, *d*, *k*, and *l*). This collision is likely to make the text more difficult to read, particularly against a moving background.

Setting the alignment

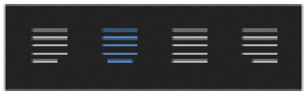
Although you may be used to seeing text left justified for things like a newspaper, there are no hard-and-fast rules for aligning text for video. Generally, text used for a lower-third title is left-aligned or right-aligned.

You’ll often center text used in a rolling title sequence or segment bumper. In the Essential Graphics panel, there are buttons for aligning and justifying your text. The alignment buttons align selected text to the left, center, or right relative to the anchor point of the text.

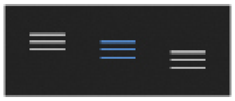


You can create a text box by dragging with the Type tool in the Program Monitor, rather than clicking.

With text inside a box, use the justification buttons to make the text fill the width of its bounding box.



With text inside a box, you can also use the vertical alignment buttons to make the text align with the top, middle, or bottom edge of the box.



It’s safe to experiment and use the Undo option if necessary, so don’t worry about memorizing which alignment option is which.

You may find the position of text in the frame changes when choosing a new alignment setting. If so, manually reposition the text, or click the Align

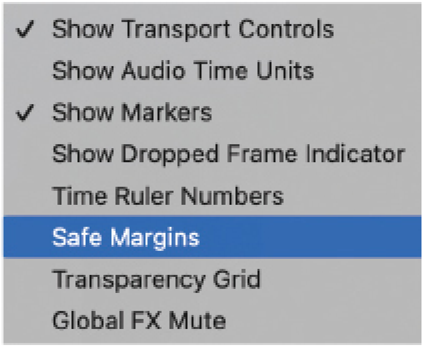
Center Vertically button or Align Center Horizontally button to bring the text back into the middle of the frame.

Setting the safe title margin

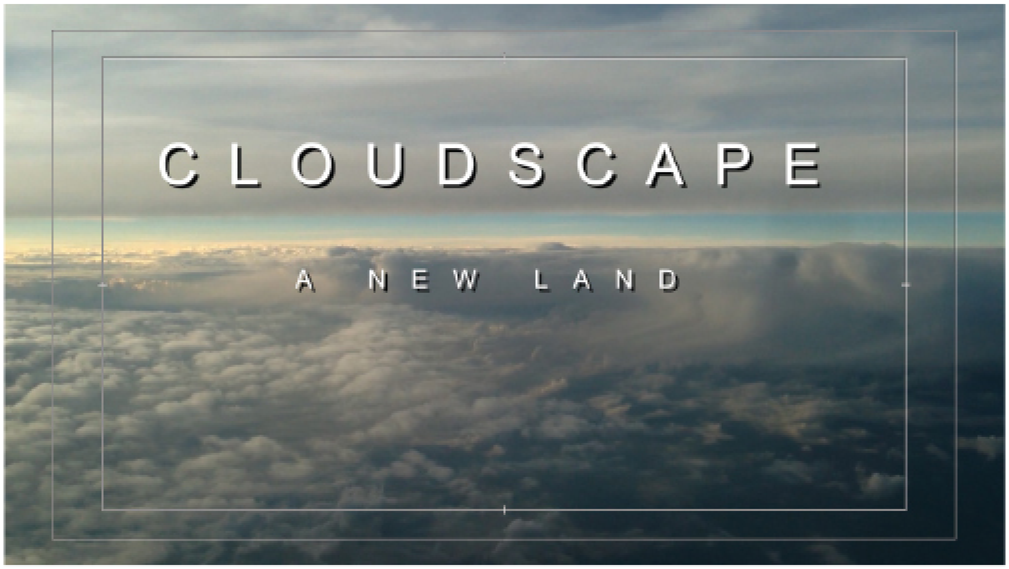
When creating titles, you may want to view guides to help you position text and graphic elements.

You can enable or disable these by opening the Settings menu in the Program Monitor and choosing Safe Margins.

By default, the outer guide leaves a 10% margin on each edge of the screen. The area inside this box is considered the *action-safe area*. Things that fall outside this box may get cut off when the video signal is viewed on a television monitor. Be sure to place all critical elements that are meant to be seen (like a logo) inside this region.


✓ Show Transport Controls
Show Audio Time Units
✓ Show Markers
Show Dropped Frame Indicator
Time Ruler Numbers
Safe Margins
Transparency Grid
Global FX Mute

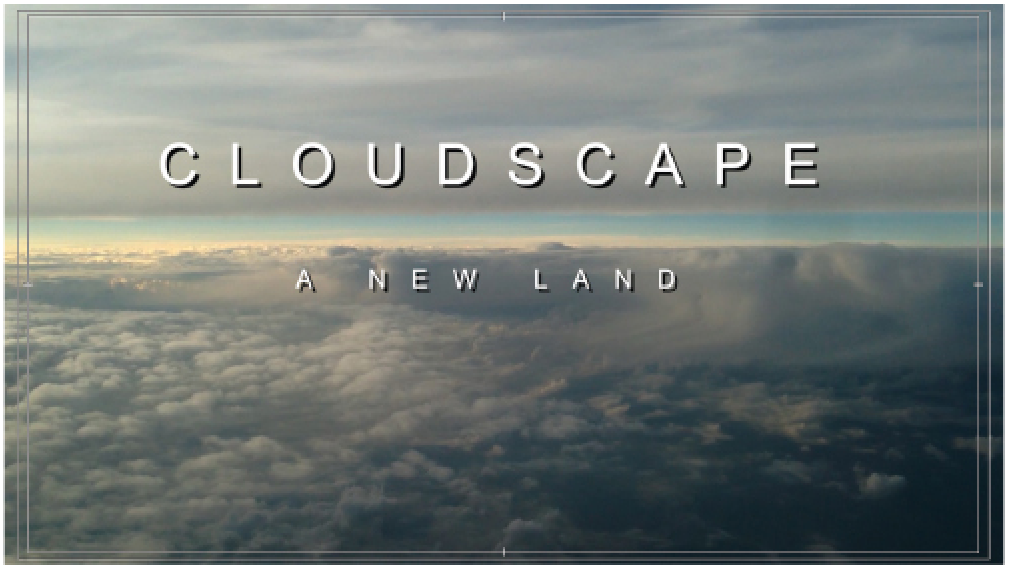
By default, the inner guide leaves a 20% margin on each edge of the screen. The area inside this box is called the *title-safe area*. Just as this book has margins to keep the text from getting too close to the edge, it’s a good idea to keep text inside the innermost safe margin. This will make it easier for your audience to read the information.



If text is outside the *title-safe area*, there's a chance some letters may be missed on a miscalibrated screen.

Screen technology has improved over time, and it's now common to set the *action-safe area* to 3% from the edge, and the *title-safe area* to 5% from the edge.

You can change these settings by opening the Settings menu in the Source Monitor or Program Monitor and choosing Overlay Settings > Settings.



Creating new titles

When you create a title, you’ll need to make some choices about how the text is displayed. There are two approaches to creating text, each offering both horizontal and vertical text direction options.

- **Point text:** This approach builds a text bounding box as you type. The text runs on one line until you press Return/Enter. Changing the shape and size of the box changes the Scale property in the Essential Graphics panel (and the Effect Controls panel).
- **Paragraph (Area) text:** You set the size and shape of a text box before entering text inside it. Changing the box size later displays more or less text but does not change the size of the text.

When using the Type tool in the Program Monitor, you choose which sort of text you are adding when you first click.

- Click and type to add point text.
- Drag to create a text box and then type to add paragraph text inside the box.

Most of the options in the Essential Graphics panel apply to both types of text.

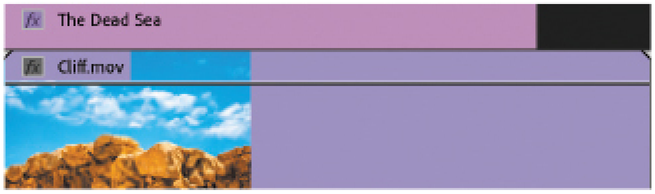
Adding point text

Now that you have been introduced to some of the main factors when modifying and designing a graphic, let’s create a new one.

You’ll create a new title to help promote a tourist destination.

1. Open the sequence 02 Cliff.
2. Position the Timeline playhead at the beginning of the sequence, and select the Type tool.
3. Click in the Program Monitor, and type **The Dead Sea**.

   Premiere Pro adds a new graphic clip to the sequence in the Timeline panel on the next available video track. In this case, it’s Video 2.



The settings you last used are applied to new titles when you create them.

If you clicked the white clouds in the background image before typing, it might be difficult to read the text.

4. Try changing the background video frame by dragging the Timeline playhead. Choose the background frame carefully when designing a title. Because video moves, you may find a title works at the start of a clip but not at the end.
5. Select the Selection tool by clicking it in the Tools panel. You won’t be able to use a keyboard shortcut for the Selection tool because you’re typing into a text bounding box. Handles appear on the text bounding box.

Choose the following settings in the Essential Graphics panel:

Font: Arial Bold

Font size: 83

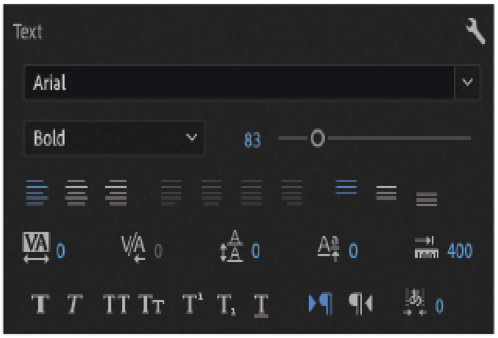
Tracking: 0

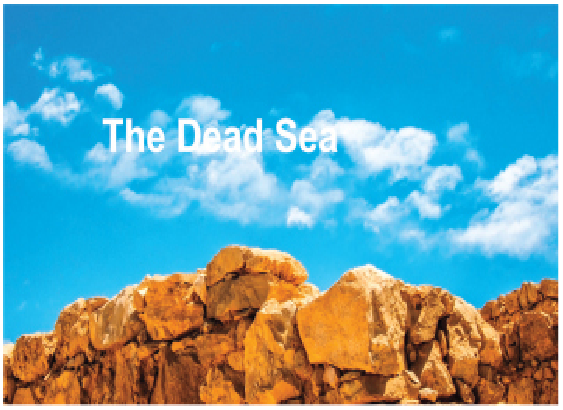
Kerning: 0

Leading: 0

Fill color: White

In the Appearance options, enable the Fill only (deselect Stroke, Background, and Shadow). Try to match the example given here.





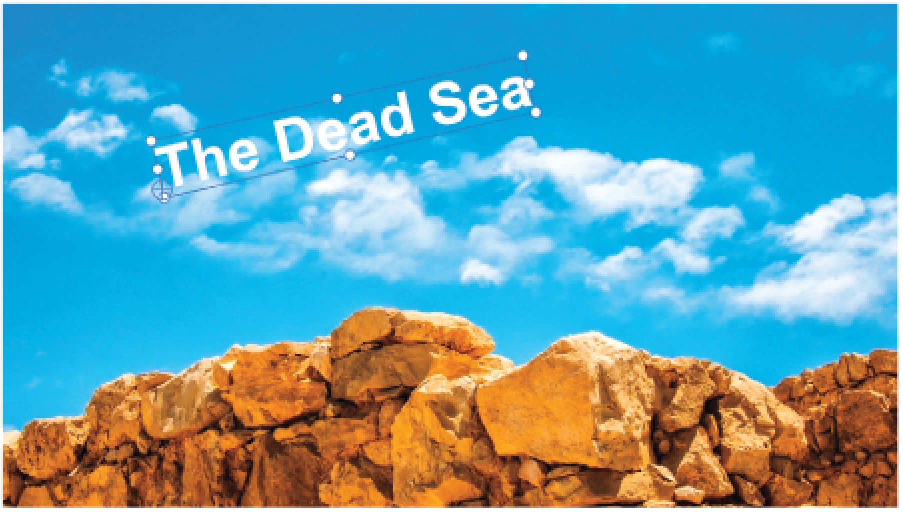
6. Try using the Selection tool to drag the corners and edges of the text bounding box. Notice that the Font Size, Width, and Height settings do not change. Instead, the Scale setting in the Align and Transform section is adjusted.

   By default, the height and width maintain the same relative scale. You can adjust the height and width separately by clicking Set Scale Lock .

   Set Scale back to 100%, and make sure Set Scale Lock is selected.

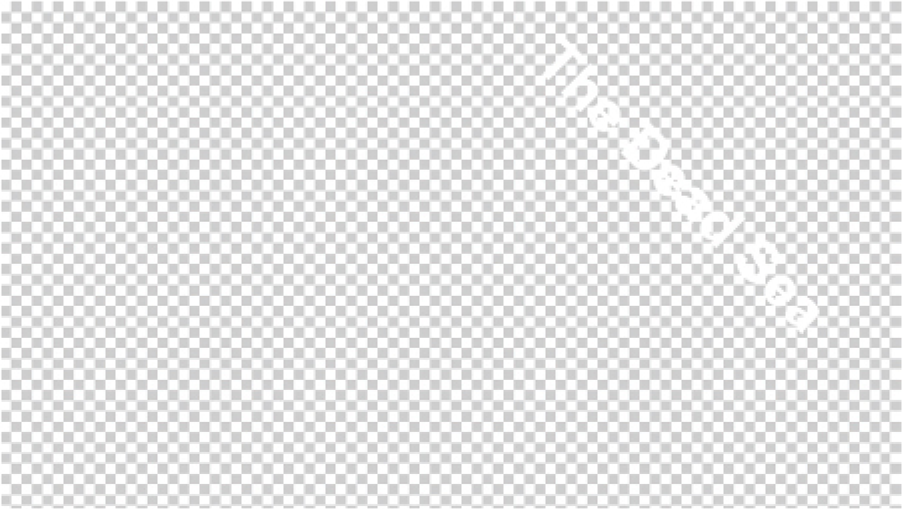
7. Hover the pointer just outside a corner of the text box until a curved pointer appears. This allows you to rotate the text box. Drag to rotate the bounding box off its horizontal orientation.

   The anchor point is the point around which objects will rotate and the single point that’s referenced by position controls. When you adjust position settings, the position applies specifically to the anchor point, which itself has a position on the object. For many items it’s the exact center of the object (which makes sense, particularly when rotating).



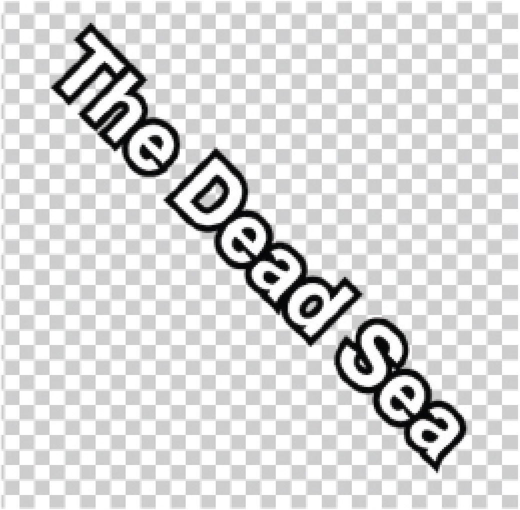
This is not the case with text objects. The default location of the anchor point for this left-aligned text is the lower-left corner of the text (not the box around the text). When you rotate the text, it doesn't pivot around the center but instead around that corner.

8. With the Selection tool still active, click the blue number for the Rotation setting in the Essential Graphics panel, type 45, and press Return/Enter to manually set the angle to 45 degrees.
9. Click anywhere in the bounding box and drag the text and its bounding box toward the upper-right corner of the frame.
10. Disable the Video 1 track output by clicking the Toggle Track Output button in the Timeline panel.
11. Open the Program Monitor Settings menu, and choose Transparency Grid to enable it.



Now you can see the graphic against a transparency checkerboard, but it’s almost impossible to read!

12. Make sure the text object is selected, go to the Appearance section of the Essential Graphics panel, and select the Stroke option to add an outline to the letters. Set the color to black, and set Stroke Width to 7.



Now it’s easy to see the text, and you can be confident it will remain readable against a range of background colors. For more information about adding a stroke or a shadow to text, see “Text styles” later in this lesson.

The Text panel offers direct access to the contents of graphics added to a sequence.

1. Open the Text panel. If it’s not open already, you will find it in the Window menu.
2. Select the Graphics tab.

   The thumbnail of only one graphic is displayed because all of the text you have added is part of one graphic clip.

   Tip

   You can quickly open the Text panel by clicking the Show In Text Panel button at the lower-right corner of the Essential Graphics panel.

3. Double-click the text to the right of the thumbnail to edit it directly. Try this now and watch the text update directly in the Program Monitor.
4. Use Undo to restore the original version of the text.

Adding paragraph text

Although point text is flexible, you’ll have more control over your layout using paragraph text. This option will automatically wrap the text onto the next line when it reaches the edge of the paragraph text box.

Note

If a title clip is selected, clicking to add new text or a shape will add to the existing clip. If no graphic clip is selected in the Timeline panel, a new clip will be created on the next available track above.

Continue working with the same graphic clip selected in the 02 Cliff sequence.

1. Select the Type tool T, and make sure the graphic clip is selected in the Timeline panel.
2. Drag in the Program Monitor to create a text box that fills the lower-left corner, with a gap toward the edges of the frame.

3. Start typing. Start entering names of participants who will be attending the tour. Use the names shown here or add your own. Press Return/Enter after each name for a new line.

   Tip

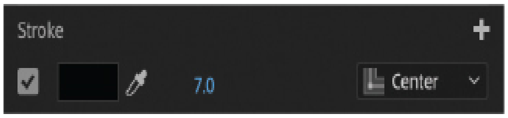
   A good way to avoid spelling mistakes is to copy and paste text from an approved script or email that has already been reviewed by your client or producer.

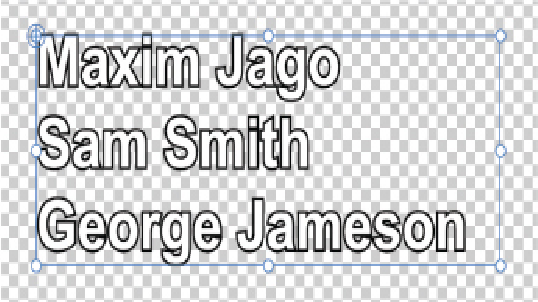
   Type at least one name with enough characters to go beyond the right edge of the text box. Unlike point text, paragraph (area) text remains within the confines of the bounding box you defined, and it wraps at the edges of the box onto the next line. If you add so much text that some won't fit in the text box, the extra letters won't be visible.

4. Use the Selection tool to change the size and shape of the bounding box to fit around the text a little better.

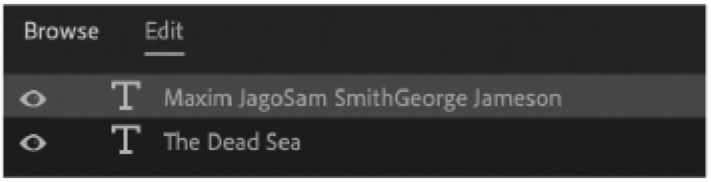
   When you resize a text box, the text stays the same size, adjusting its position in the text box.

5. In the Essential Graphic panel, the Stroke Position menu sets whether a stroke is on the outside, center or inner edge. Change this to Center to give a sharper edge to the new paragraph text.





Each item has its own layer in the graphic, so there are now two layers displayed in the Essential Graphics panel. When selected, each item has its own controls.



Styling text

In addition to offering settings for fonts, position, and opacity, the Essential Graphics panel also allows you to apply a stroke and shadow to text or shapes in a graphic.

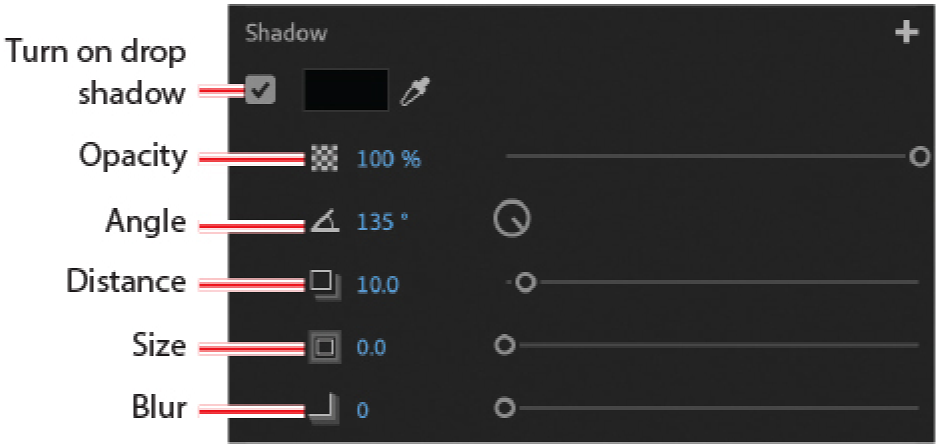
When you’d like to reuse a particular group of text settings, for example, to ensure all the lower-thirds in your video match, you don’t have to manually re-enter the settings each time. Instead, you can save them as a *text style* (think of it as a preset look for text). You can then use the text style to apply all the settings at once.

After we refine the appearance of the graphics in our sequence a bit more, we’ll save each appearance as a text style.

Changing a title’s appearance

In the Appearance section of the Essential Graphics panel, there are three main options for improving the readability of text.

- **Stroke:** An edge added to text. It helps to keep text legible over moving video or a complex background.
- **Background:** A solid color that appears behind the letters, creating a controllable backdrop for the text.
- **Shadow:** A common addition to video text because it makes the text easier to read without being intrusive. Be sure to adjust the Blur of the shadow. Also, be sure to keep the angle of shadows identical for all titles in a project for consistency.



Opacity 100 %

Angle 135 °

Distance 10.0

Size 0.0

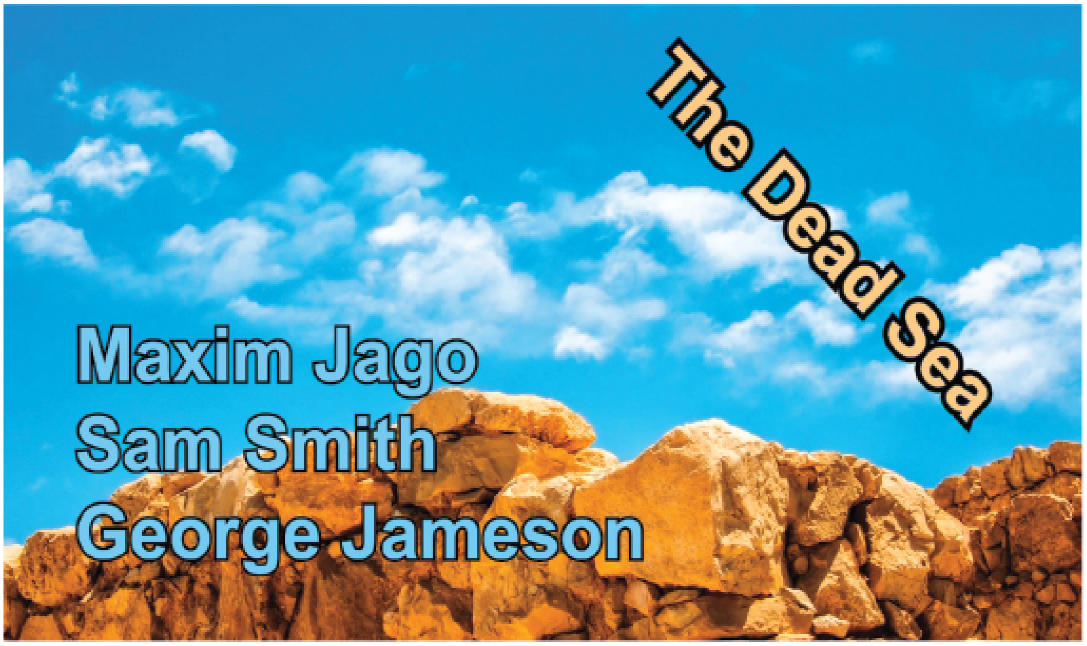
Blur 0

Just as with the text fill, you can assign any color to strokes, backgrounds, and shadows.

1. Enable the track output for Video 1.
2. Experiment with the options in the Essential Graphics panel to make the text more readable and add more color to the composition.
3. To set the color for the text in the upper right, select the text and use the Fill color eyedropper to select the orange rocks.
4. To set the color for the text in the lower left, select the text and use the Fill color eyedropper to select a pale blue from the sky around the clouds.

   The colors in the rocks and clouds vary, so you may want to use the eyedropper to select an approximate color and then click the Fill color swatch to manually adjust the selection. Alternatively, keep clicking with the eyedropper until you have found a color in the image you like.

   Try to match the appearance of the title in this example.

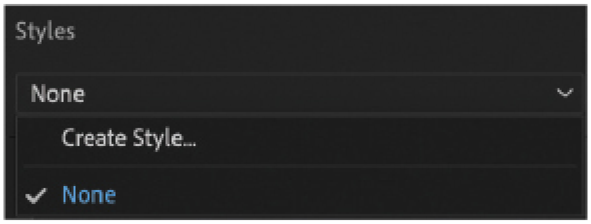

The Dead Sea
Maxim Jago
Sam Smith
George Jameson

Saving Styles

If you create a text style you like, you can store it and reuse it in the project. A style describes the color, font, and appearance for text. You can use a style to change the appearance of a text object with a single click; all the properties of the text update to match the preset.

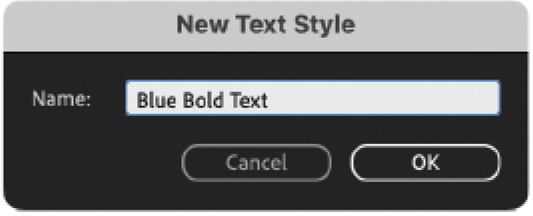
Let’s create a style from the text you modified in the previous exercise.

1. Continuing to work on the same title, use the Selection tool to select the paragraph text in the lower-left corner.
2. In the Essential Graphics panel, open the Styles menu and choose Create Style.

   
   Styles
   None
   Create Style...
   ✓ None

   The New Text Style dialog box opens.
3. Enter the name **Blue Bold Text**, and click OK.

The new style is added to the Styles menu in the Essential Graphics panel and appears in the Project panel.


New Text Style

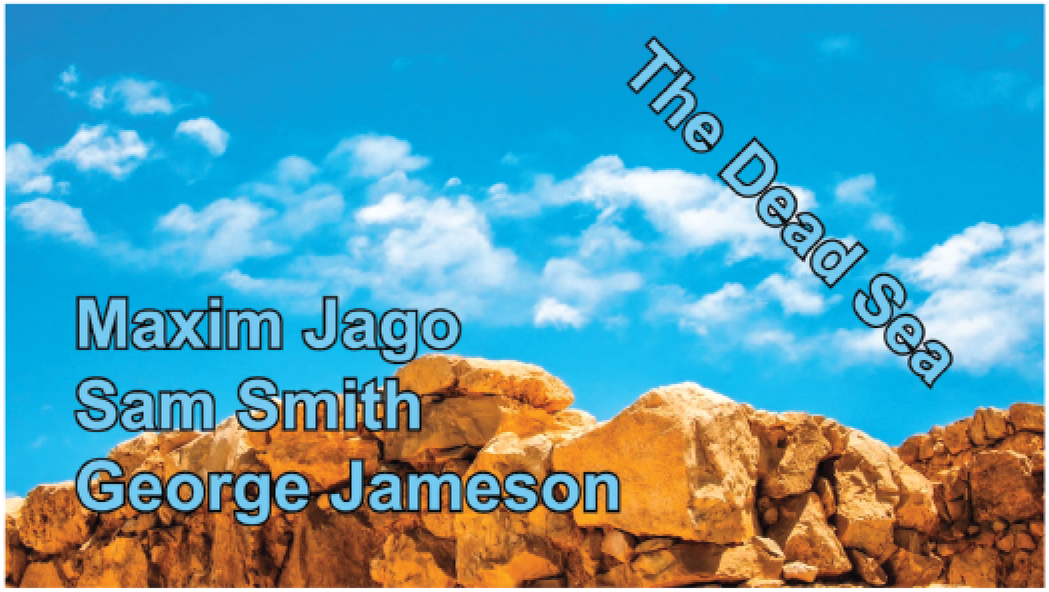
Name: Blue Bold Text

Pr
Blue Bold Text

▶ **Tip**

You can copy styles from one open project to another. Plus, you can right-click a style in the Project panel and choose Export Text Styles to save it as a .prtextstyle file that can be imported into other projects.

4. Select the other text in the upper-right corner and use the Styles menu to apply the Blue Bold Text style.


The Dead Sea
Maxim Jago
Sam Smith
George Jameson

Any styles that are in the Project panel will appear on the list of available styles in the Essential Graphics panel. To remove a style, delete it from the Project panel.

Saving Source Graphics

So far, you have worked with a title that was already created in a sequence, edited one from the Project panel, and created a new one.

In most cases, Premiere Pro requires that items included in sequences also exist in the Project panel. Graphics created in Premiere Pro are an exception to this rule.

Earlier, you edited the Cloudscape Tracking title into the 01 Clouds current sequence. Open that sequence now, and from the Project panel, edit a second instance of the same title into the timeline on the Video 2 track. You may need to move the other version of the title out of the way to make space for the new copy.

CLOUDSCAPE
A NEW LAND

Compare the two instances of the title clip. The changes you made to the title in the sequence, including adding text, have also been applied to the source clip in the Project panel. That’s because the title is a *Source Graphic*.

You can convert any graphic to a Source Graphic by selecting it in the Timeline panel and choosing Graphics And Titles > Upgrade To Source Graphic.

A new graphic clip is added to the Project panel that you can share between multiple sequences or multiple projects.

● Note

Titles have a default duration set in the user preferences, just like other single-frame media.

Any graphic clips made from that Source Graphic, including the one you upgraded it from, are duplicates of each other. Any changes made to the text, style, or contents in any instance of a Source Graphic are reflected in all other instances of the same Source Graphic.

Source Graphics are useful when you expect to use the same graphic elements multiple times in a project. You might work on a multipart episodic show with standard opening titles, for example, or a documentary with the same lower-third design used to introduce every subject.

Being able to make adjustments to one item that updates everywhere can be a great time-saver.

Working with shapes and logos

When creating title graphics, you’ll likely need more than just words to build a complete graphic. Premiere Pro also offers the ability to create vector shapes as graphic elements. Many of the settings you adjusted when working with text also apply to shapes. You can also import completed graphics (like a logo) as a layer in a new graphic clip.

Creating a graphic or title in Adobe Photoshop

You can create graphics or titles for Premiere Pro in Adobe Photoshop. While Photo-shop is known as the premier tool for modifying photos, it also has many capabilities for creating titles or logos for video projects. Photoshop offers several advanced options, advanced formatting (such as scientific notation), flexible layer styles, and even a spelling checker.

To create a new Photoshop document from inside Premiere Pro, follow these steps:

1. Choose File > New > Photoshop File.
2. The New Photoshop File dialog box appears, with settings based on your current sequence. Click OK.
3. Choose a location to store your new PSD file, name it, and click Save.

   Photoshop opens, ready for you to edit the file. The file has canvas guides for safe action and safe title zones (visible if you enable them in Photoshop). These guides won't appear in the finished image.

   ▶ **Tip**

   If you have disabled canvas guides in the Photoshop View options, you can enable them by choosing View > Show > Canvas Guides.

4. Select the Horizontal Type tool by pressing the T key.
5. You can click to add point text or draw a text box for paragraph text. As in

   Premiere Pro, using a text box in Photoshop allows you to precisely control the layout of text.

6. Enter some text you'd like to use.

7. Adjust the font, color, and point size to taste using the controls in the Options bar across the top of the screen.
8. Click the Commit button ✓ (in the Options bar) to commit the text layer.
9. To add a drop shadow, choose Layer > Layer Style > Drop Shadow and adjust to suit.

When you’re finished in Photoshop, you can save and close the file. It will already be in the Project panel in Premiere Pro, ready for you to edit into a sequence.

If you’d like to edit the title in Photoshop, right-click it in the Project panel or Time-line and choose Edit In Adobe Photoshop. When you save changes in Photoshop, the title updates automatically in Premiere Pro.

Creating shapes

If you’ve created shapes in graphics-editing software such as Photoshop or Adobe Illustrator, you’ll find creating geometric objects in Premiere Pro similar.

You can use the Pen tool to click multiple points in the Program Monitor to create a unique shape.

You can also use the Rectangle tool, Ellipse tool, or Polygon tool. Access the Ellipse tool and Polygon tool in the Rectangle tool submenu. Using any of those tools, drag in the Program Monitor to create a new shape.

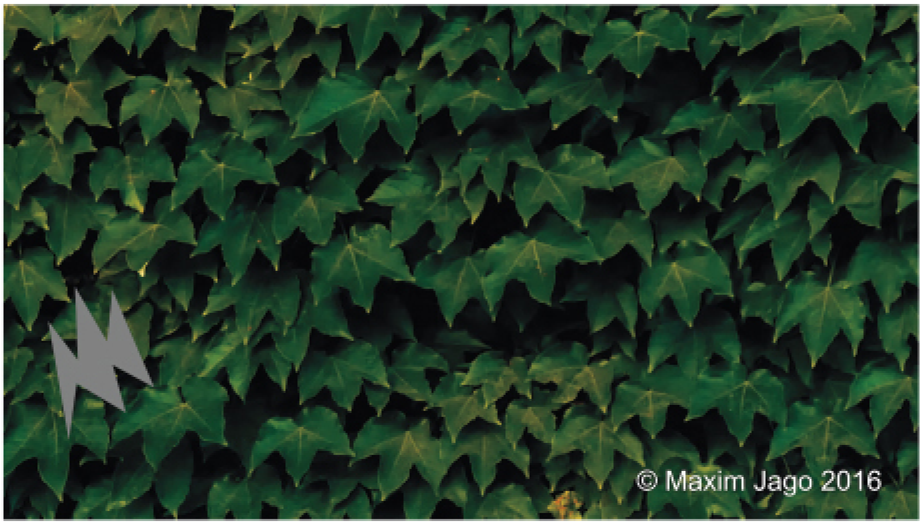
Try creating some shapes and adjusting their settings:

1. Open the sequence 03 Shapes.
2. Select the Pen tool, and click multiple points in the Program Monitor to create a shape. Each time you click, the tool adds a new control point. Create something small and unique in the lower-left corner of the frame.

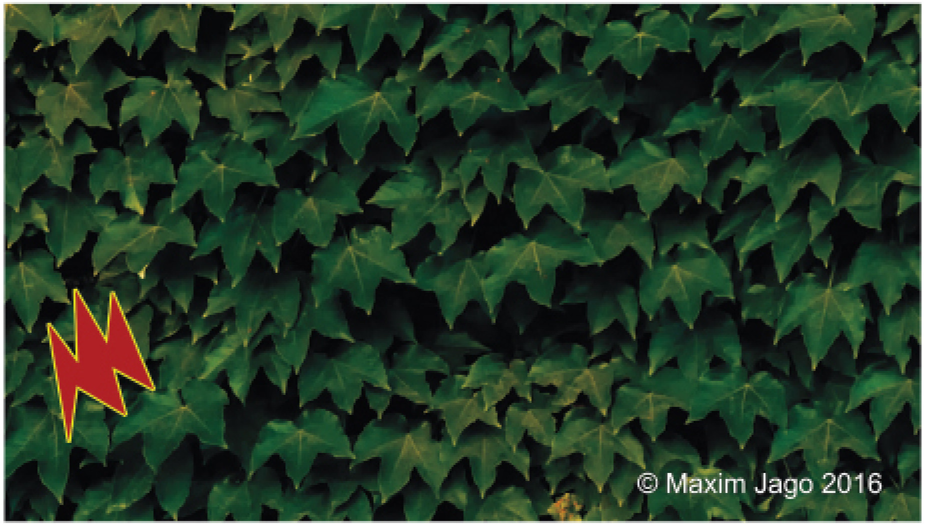
● **Note**

Until you quit Premiere Pro and start it again, new shapes will have the same appearance you last selected for a shape in the Essential Graphics panel. You can easily change the settings. New titles will have the same appearance you last selected for a title.

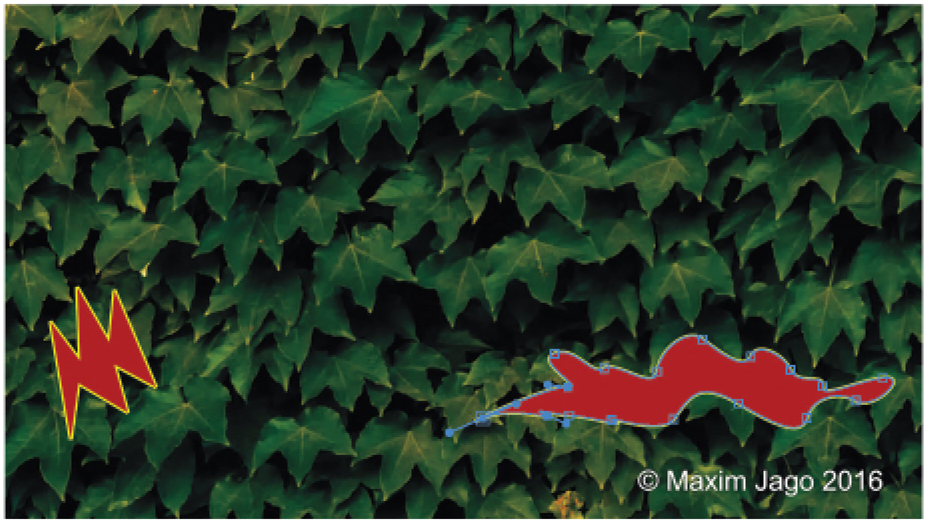
Complete the shape by clicking the first control point, and switch to the Selection tool.



3. Try changing the fill color, adding a stroke, and changing the stroke color.

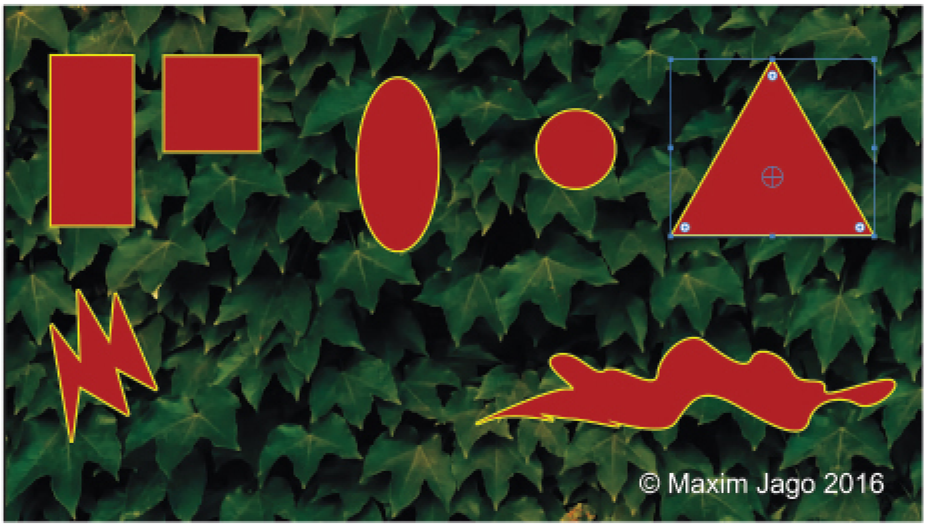


4. Create a new shape with the Pen tool, in the lower-right corner. This time, instead of just clicking, drag each time you click.

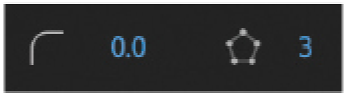


Dragging when you click creates control points with Bezier handles; these are the same handles you experimented with when setting up keyframes. These handles give you precise control over the shape you have created, allowing you to design more organic-looking shapes.

5. Select the Rectangle tool.
6. Drag to create rectangles in the Program Monitor. After you begin dragging, hold the Shift key to create squares.
7. Now click and hold the Rectangle tool in the Tools panel to select the Ellipse tool. Try drawing ellipses. The Shift key allows you to create perfect circles.
8. Click and hold the Ellipse tool in the Tools panel to select the Polygon tool. Try drawing a polygon, and then select the Selection tool.



With a polygon selected, you can use the Corner Radius and Number Of Sides settings in the Align And Transform section of the Essential Graphics panel to change its appearance.



The Corner Radius setting can be changed for any polygon or rectangle. Using the Selection tool, drag the small circles ◉ inside a shape to adjust the corner radius directly in the Program Monitor. Hold Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) to adjust individual corners.

These kinds of random shapes may not win design awards, but they are the basic building blocks of some of the most common multilayer graphics.

You can use the Pen tool to adjust any selected shape. You can even click to add control points for more complex shapes. Try changing the selected shape using the Pen tool now.

9. If you want a clean slate, press Command+A (macOS) or Ctrl+A (Windows), and then press Fn+Delete (macOS) or Delete (Windows) —this is the Forward Delete key. You can also select layers in the Essential Graphics panel and delete them. For now, keep some shapes onscreen to work with later.
10. Experiment with the different shape options. Try overlapping them and using different colors, with different levels of opacity.

    The layer positions of objects in the Essential Graphics panel set which objects appear in front, just as tracks do in the Timeline panel. You can drag objects to different positions on the list.

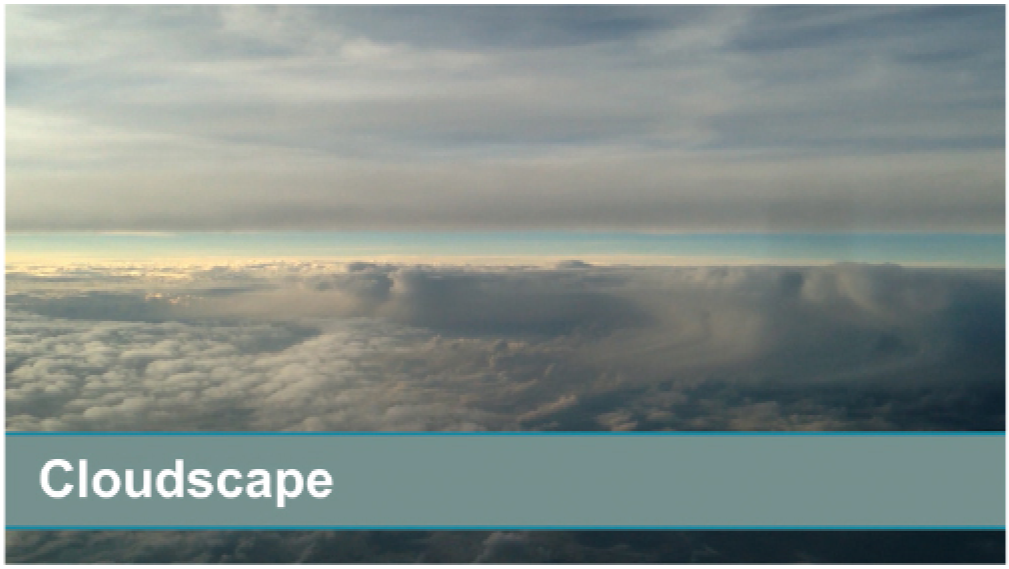
Adding a graphic

You can add image files to your graphic clips using common file formats, including vectors (AI, EPS) and still images (PSD, PNG, JPEG).

Let’s try this with an existing graphic.

1. Open the sequence 04 Logo.

This is a simple sequence with space in the graphic for a logo.



2. Using the Selection tool, select the “Add a logo” title clip in the sequence.
3. In the Essential Graphics panel, just below the layers area in the Edit tab, open the New Layer menu and choose From File, or choose Graphics and Titles > New Layer > From File.
4. Browse to the file logo.ai in the Lessons/Assets/Graphics folder, and click Import (macOS) or Open (Windows).
5. With the Selection tool, drag the logo to position it where you want it in the title. Then adjust the size, opacity, rotation, or scale of the logo.

● **Note**

When resizing imported items in a graphic clip, scaling over 100% of the original item’s image size will lead to a loss of quality because the result is displayed as pixels rather than as a vector image.

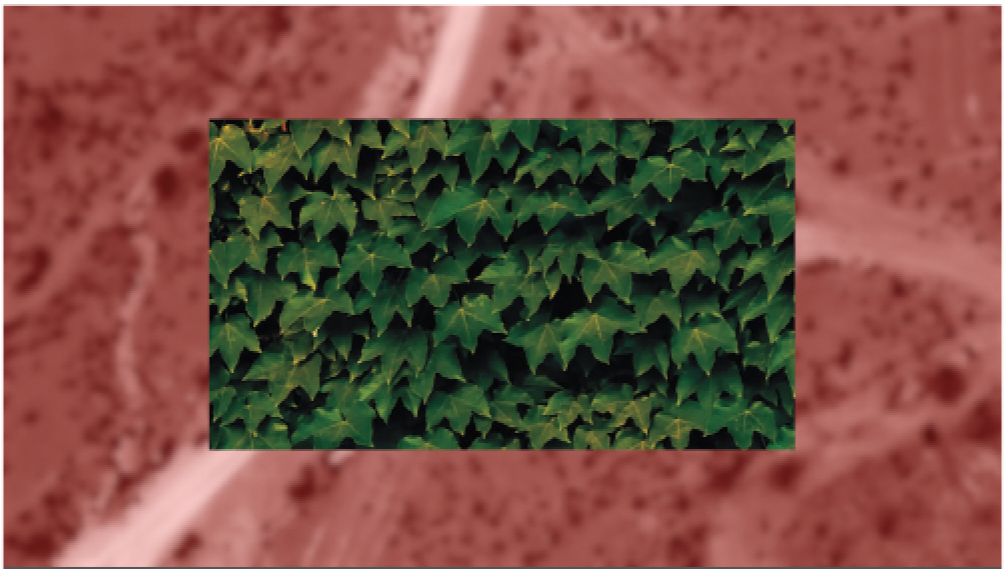
Cloudscape

Masking with a layer

There’s one further option in the Essential Graphics panel that deserves an explanation: Mask With Text.

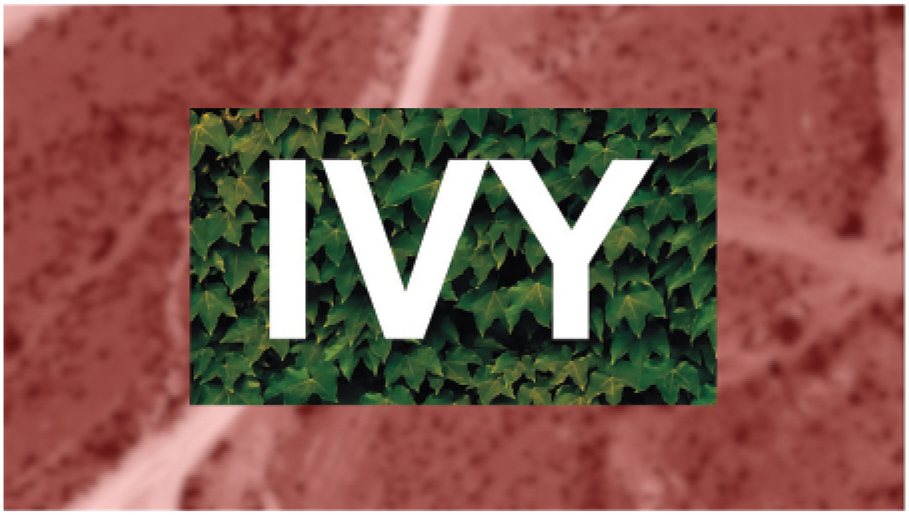
This is best understood by trying it.

1. Open the sequence 05 Mask. This simple sequence has a slow-moving background clip and a graphic with one layer that is an imported image of some ivy. The background clip has a color adjustment and a blur to help separate it from the color and texture of the foreground clip.



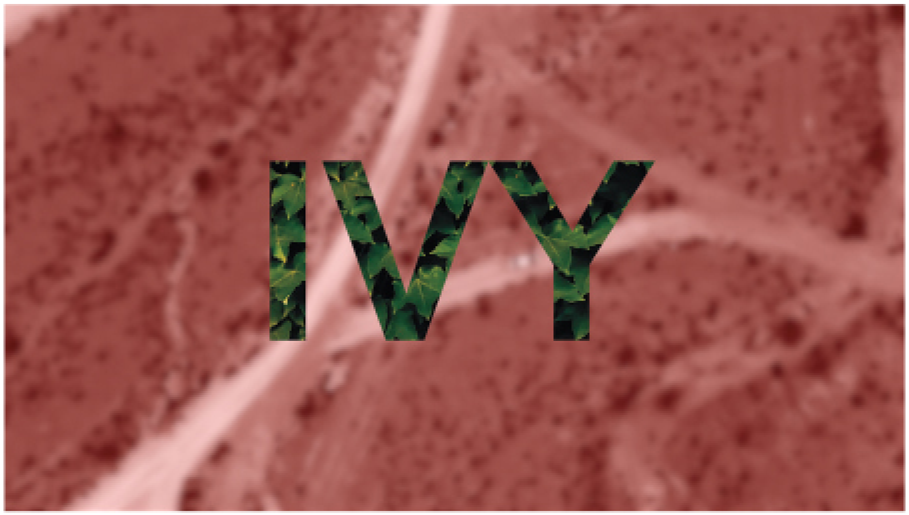
2. Position the Timeline playhead at the beginning of the sequence. Select the Graphic clip, and select the Type tool. Click in the Program Monitor, and type the word **IVY**, in all capital letters.

3. Switch to the Selection tool. Use the options in the Essential Graphics panel to expand the IVY text to fill the ivy clip area as closely as possible. Reposition the text with the Selection tool as needed to match this example.

   Don’t worry about the fill color or the stroke color—these will be ignored in the next step.

4. With the text item selected, scroll down in the Essential Graphics panel and select Mask With Text.

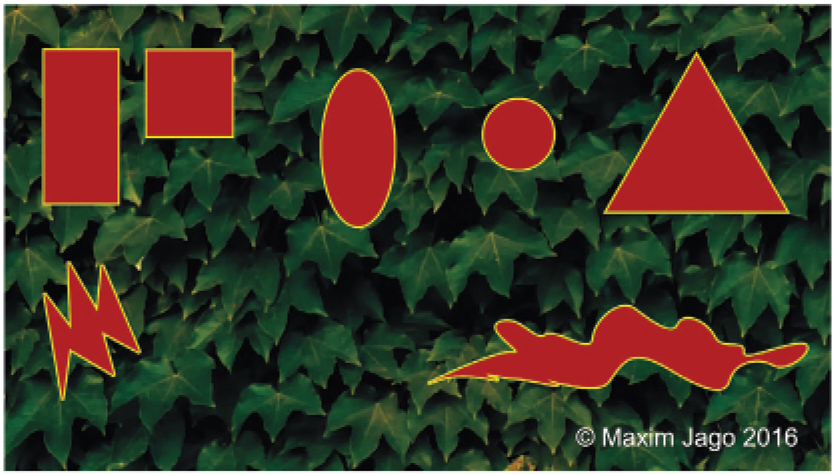
   

The Mask With Text option masks any layer inside a graphic, using the selected layer as the mask. This is similar to the masking you performed earlier using the Track Matte Key effect. The difference is that the effect is limited to the contents of the current graphic.

Using rulers and guides

There are several ways to arrange and align items in the Program Monitor. By default, you'll be able to move items freely in view, but, like the snapping option in the Timeline panel, there are also ways to snap items into position in the Program Monitor.

1. Open the 03 Shapes sequence you worked on earlier.
2. With the Selection tool, try moving the shapes around. They'll move freely and overlap based on their stacking order in the Essential Graphics panel.
3. With the Program Monitor active, choose View > Snap In Program Monitor if it isn't already selected. Now as you drag items, lines appear showing alignment with other items or the center or edge of the Program Monitor. Any item you drag will also snap into alignment.



In this complex graphic, snapping can be a little overwhelming as there are just so many items.

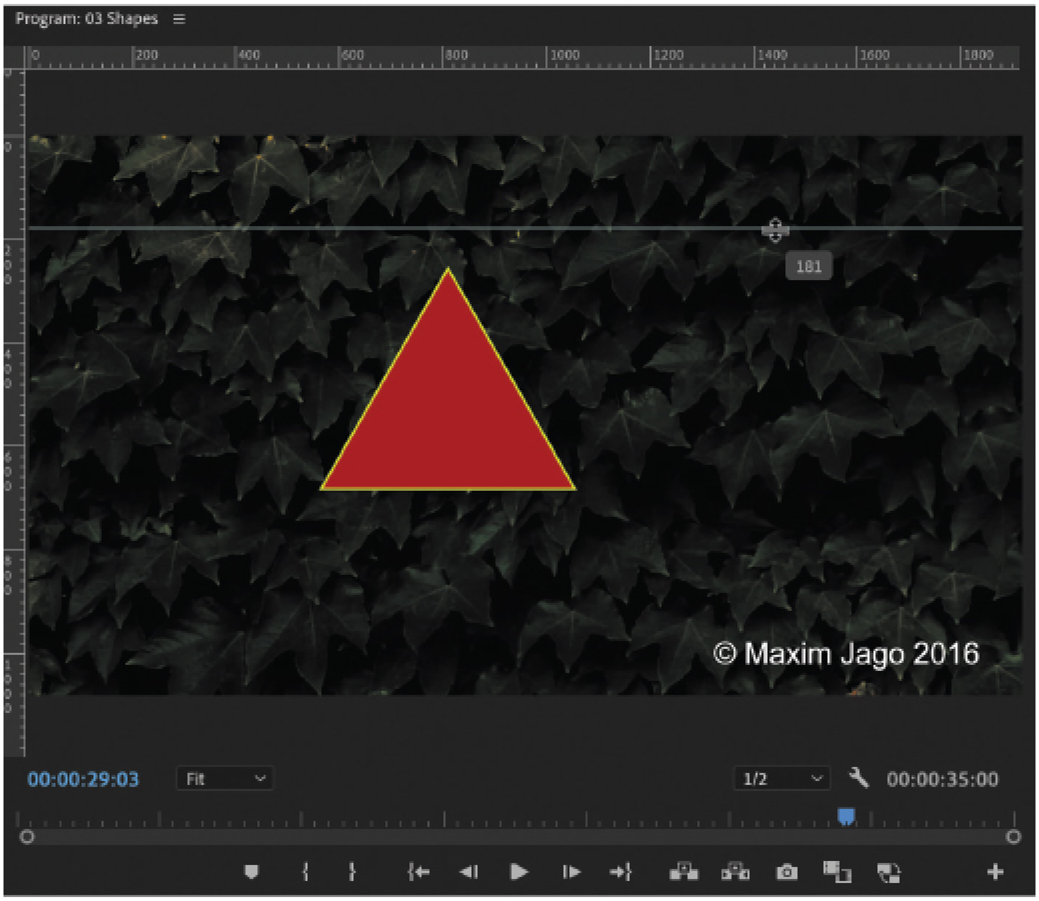
Tip

If you find the Snap In Program Monitor option is unavailable, check you have the right panel active. The option is also available in the Program Monitor Settings menu.

4. Create a new graphic, with one shape, toward the end of the sequence, where the frame is clear again. Try dragging the graphic around the frame, and take note of the satisfying certainty when the shape snaps into position.
5. Make sure the Program Monitor is the active panel, with a blue outline, and choose View > Show Rulers. Rulers are not interactive, but they give you a reference for the next step.
6. Click the ruler at the top of the Program Monitor and drag down. This creates a guide that you can snap items to. As you drag, the pixel position is shown as a tool tip. You can drag multiple guides from either ruler.

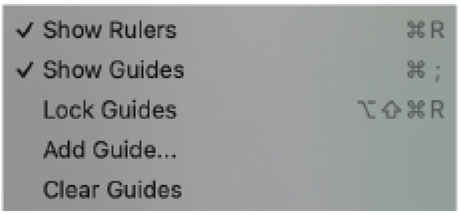
Note

If you want to use specific guides as a long-term reference, you can lock them in position. Choose View > Lock Guides. Choose the option again to unlock the guides.


Program: 03 Shapes
0
200
400
600
800
1000
1200
1400
1600
1800
181
© Maxim Jago 2016
00:00:29:03
Fit
1/2
00:00:35:00

You can also right-click a guide and choose Edit Guide to assign a new color and specify a precise position.

You can show or hide rulers and guides by choosing them from the View menu. Guides are persistent: If you hide them and then show them again, they will be exactly where you left them.


✓ Show Rulers ⌘R
✓ Show Guides ⌘;
Lock Guides ⌥⇧⌘R
Add Guide...
Clear Guides

You can also use the View menu to clear any guides you have added.

In the Program Monitor, use the Button Editor ✚ to add buttons that let you select and deselect these options.

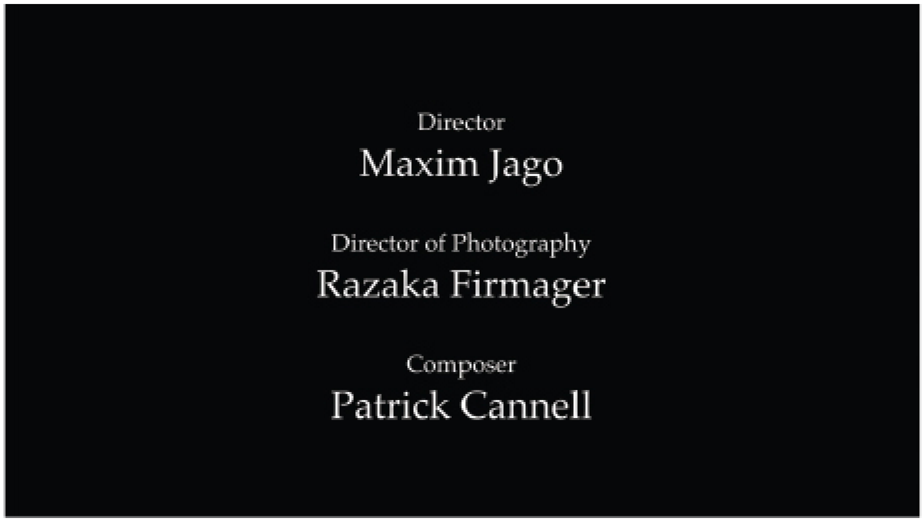
Making a title roll

You can make rolling text for opening and closing credits. In fact, you can apply a roll to any graphic, not just to text.

1. Open the 04 Logo sequence. Use the Program Monitor Settings menu to make sure the Transparency Grid is not active.
2. Position the Timeline panel playhead at the end of the sequence, just after the clip on the Video 1 track.
3. Using the Type tool, click in the Program Monitor to add point text.
4. Type several lines of text that you would like to use as a credit roll, pressing Return/Enter after each line.

   For the purposes of this exercise, don't worry about the precise words.

   It can be difficult to add many lines of text without constantly repositioning it. It's often easier to have the text ready in a document so you can copy and paste it into Premiere Pro.
5. When you have typed a few lines, use the Essential Graphics panel to format your text as desired.



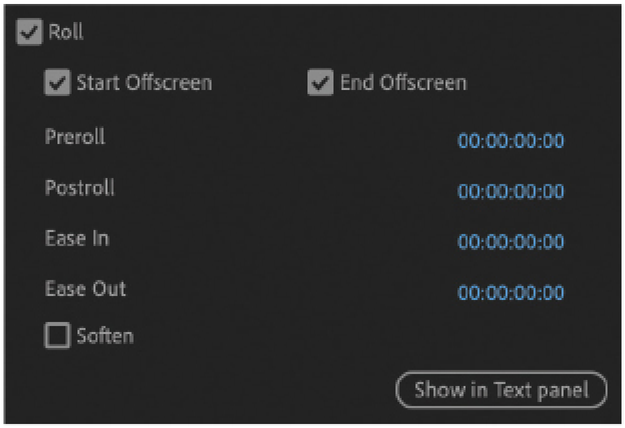
6. Deselect the text layer (by clicking the background of the Program Monitor with the Selection tool). The Edit tab of the Essential Graphics panel will now show properties for the whole graphic, not just the text item you were typing.
7. In the Essential Graphics panel, select Roll to roll the title.

When you set a title to Roll, a scroll bar appears in the Program Monitor. Now, when you play through the clip, it will roll on and off the screen.

With the scroll bar in place, it's much easier to add more lines of text and navigate through a long title.

You have the following options:

- **Start Offscreen:** This sets whether the credit begins offscreen and rolls in or whether it begins where you positioned it in the Program Monitor. Combined with a Cross Dissolve effect, you could have your title fade up onscreen and roll off.
- **End Offscreen:** This indicates whether the credits roll completely off the screen or end on the screen. Combined with a Cross Dissolve effect, you could have your title roll onscreen and fade out.



☑ Roll

☑ Start Offscreen ☑ End Offscreen

Preroll 00:00:00:00

Postroll 00:00:00:00

Ease In 00:00:00:00

Ease Out 00:00:00:00

☐ Soften

- **Preroll:** This sets the amount of time to delay before the rolling motion begins.
- **Postroll:** This specifies the amount of time to play after the roll ends.
- **Ease In:** This specifies the number of frames at the beginning to gradually increase the speed of the roll from zero to full speed.
- **Ease Out:** This specifies the number of frames to slow down the speed of the roll at the end.
- **Soften:** This softens the edges of your rolling text.

If your credits begin or end offscreen, the Preroll, Postroll, and Ease options won't have much impact because the contents will be out of the frame.

Note

The Responsive Design options that were touched on earlier are for motion graphics with a precisely timed intro and outro. Use these time controls to prevent clip duration changes from retiming start and end animations.

When you trim a title to set the length, this sets the playback speed of a rolling title. A shorter title will roll faster than a long one because, one way or another, all of the contents of the title will be displayed in the duration you set for the clip.

8. Play through your rolling title.

Working with Motion Graphics templates

The Browse tab of the Essential Graphics panel includes many built-in template graphics you can add to your sequences. They are all customizable. Many of the presets include motion, so they are referred to as Motion Graphics templates (often abbreviated to MOGRTs).

You can add a Motion Graphics template to a sequence by dragging it onto a video track.

Motion Graphics templates can be created in Premiere Pro or Adobe After Effects, and there are differences in the templates each application creates.

- Motion Graphics templates created in Premiere Pro produce graphics that are completely editable.
- Motion Graphics templates created in After Effects can include more advanced design and complex animation. They also have restricted controls, set by the original designer to give flexibility while retaining the original core design.

The built-in templates are divided into categories. Drag a template directly into any sequence to add it.

Some templates may have a yellow font warning symbol T⚠. This indicates that the template uses a font not currently installed on your system.

If you use a template that includes fonts available on Adobe Fonts and you are online, Premiere Pro automatically downloads and installs the missing fonts. If in doubt, you can right-click a template in the Essential Graphics panel and choose Sync Missing Fonts.

If it’s not possible to install a missing font automatically, you’ll see a warning message advising you that the missing font can’t be downloaded. The Resolve Fonts dialog box will appear, letting you know which fonts are missing.

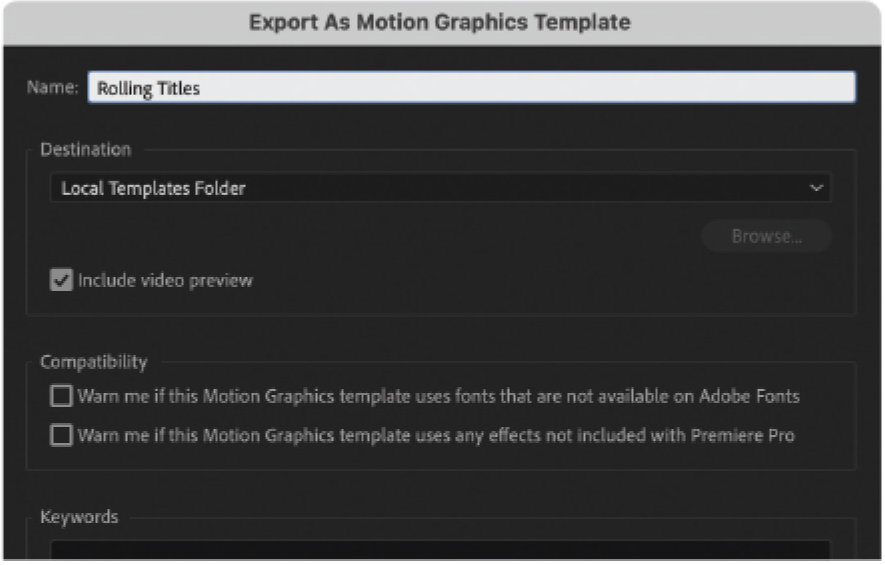
The easiest way to resolve a missing font is to go online and add the template again. If that’s not possible, you can choose another font in the Essential Graphics panel. You can also set a default replacement font in the Premiere Pro user preferences, in the Graphics section.

Experimenting with Motion Graphics templates is a great way to learn about what’s possible when designing animated graphics. Add any template to a sequence and then explore the settings that have been used in the Essential Graphics panel.

Creating a custom Motion Graphics template

You can add your own custom graphics to the Browse tab of the Essential Graphics panel. Simply select a graphic clip in a sequence, and choose Graphics And Titles > Export As Motion Graphics Template.

Choose a name for the new template graphic, and choose a location from the Destination menu. You can add keywords to make the template easier to locate when searching by entering each keyword and pressing Return/Enter.



Export As Motion Graphics Template

Name: Rolling Titles

Destination

Local Templates Folder

Browse...

☑ Include video preview

Compatibility

☐ Warn me if this Motion Graphics template uses fonts that are not available on Adobe Fonts

☐ Warn me if this Motion Graphics template uses any effects not included with Premiere Pro

Keywords

▶ Tip

> You can quickly add multiple keywords, separating them with a comma (,) before pressing Return/Enter.

When you’re happy with the settings, click OK. The new Motion Graphics template will automatically be added to the Browse tab of the Essential Graphics panel.

You can import an existing Motion Graphics template file on any computer by choosing Graphics And Titles > Install Motion Graphics Template or by clicking the button in the lower-right corner of the Essential Graphics panel Browse tab.

This makes it easy to share your custom template titles or store them in a collection for future use.

Adding captions

There are two kinds of captions you might encounter when producing video for television broadcast and beyond: closed and open.

Closed captions are embedded in the video stream and can be enabled or hidden by the viewer. *Open* captions are always on-screen—and are described as “burned in.”

The colorful onscreen captions that often accompany social media content are examples of open captions.

Premiere Pro allows you to work with either kind of caption in the same way. In fact, you can even convert one kind of caption file to another (though there are some limitations set by captions delivery standards).

Closed-caption files have a more limited range of colors and design features than open captions. This is because closed captions are actually generated and displayed by the viewer's TV, set-top box, or online viewing software, so display options are universal and fixed.

Using closed captions

Video content can be enjoyed by more people when it is accessible. It's a requirement for most broadcast television stations to add closed-captioning information that can be decoded by television sets. Visible captions are inserted into a video file and travel through supported formats to specific playback devices.

Adding closed-captioning information is relatively easy. You can work with a captions file or generate new captions in Premiere Pro.

Here's how to add captions to a sequence using an existing file.

1. Keeping the current project open, choose File > Open Project. Browse to the Lessons folder, and open Lesson 15_02.prproj.
2. Click the Lesson 15_02 Project panel to make it active, and save the project as **15_02 Working.prproj**.
3. If it's not displayed in the Timeline panel already, open the sequence Coach Interview.

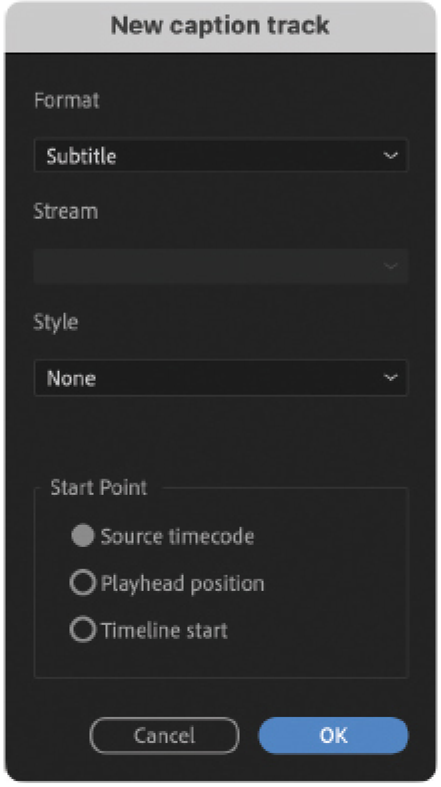
4. Choose File > Import, and navigate to the Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Interview folder. Import the file Coach Interview.srt. The DFXP, MCC, SCC, SRT, STL, and XML formats are all supported.

   Premiere Pro adds the caption file to the bin as if it were a video clip, with a frame rate and duration.

5. Drag the closed-captions clip into the Timeline panel. The New Caption Track dialog appears.

   There are different caption formats for different television systems:

- **Australian OP-47** is the Australian closed-captioning standard, used by Australian broadcast television networks.
- **CEA-608** (also known as Line 21) was the most commonly used standard for analog broadcast in the US and Canada.
- **CEA-708** is for digital broadcast in the US and Canada.


New caption track

Format: Subtitle

Stream:

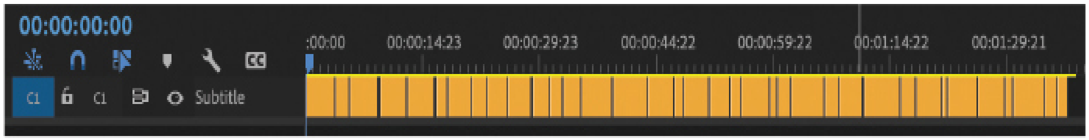
Style: None

Start Point
● Source timecode
○ Playhead position
○ Timeline start

- **EBU Subtitle** is an older but popular subtitle type with broad compatibility.
- **Subtitle** is a newer subtitle type.
- **Teletext** is sometimes used in PAL countries.

Within each type there are multiple possible streams. For example, one stream might be English language, while another might be French. The settings displayed are correct, so click OK.

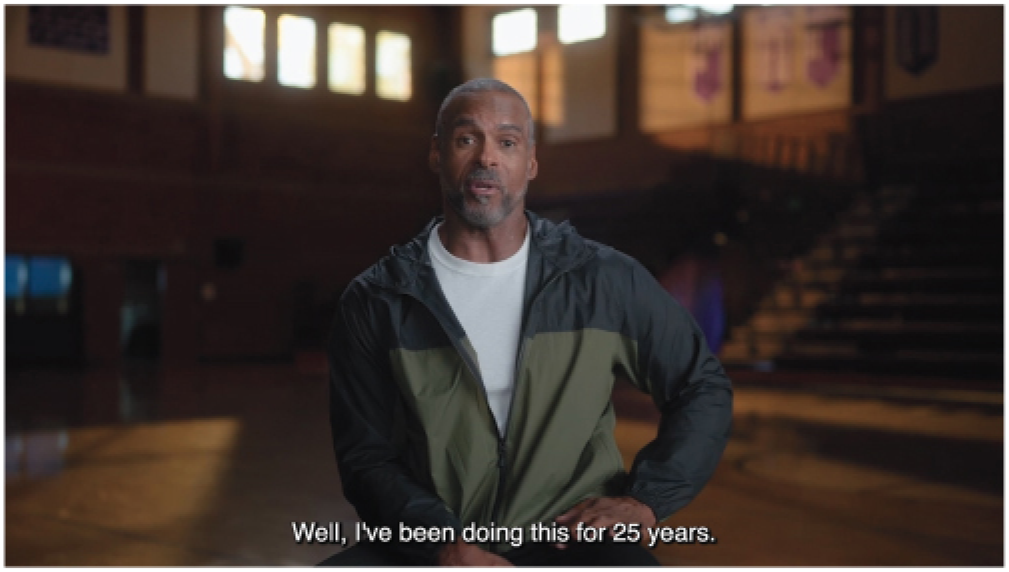
A new captions track is added to the sequence, with each part of the captions displayed as separate clips.


00:00:00:00
:00:00
00:00:14:23
00:00:29:23
00:00:44:22
00:00:59:22
00:01:14:22
00:01:29:21
C1
C1
Subtitle

6. You can add multiple captions tracks to a sequence. You can enable output for one captions track at a time by clicking the Toggle Active Captions Track button 👁.

   Try toggling the captions output off and on now.

7. Play the sequence to see the captions.



You can trim caption clips to adjust their timing like any other kind of sequence clips.

After selecting one or more caption clips in a sequence, you can adjust their appearance by changing settings in the Essential Graphics panel.

You can also edit caption text directly in the Program Monitor by double-clicking it.

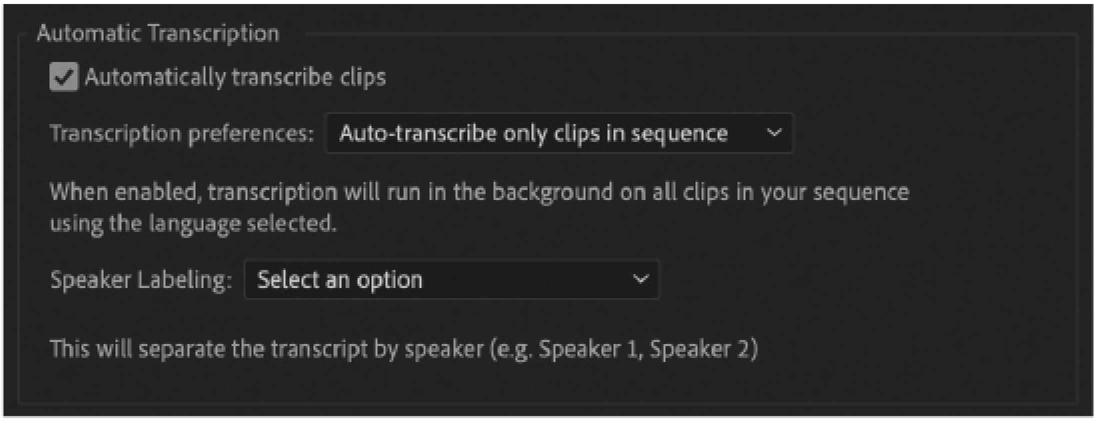
8. To make room for more captions in the next exercise, right-click the track header for the Subtitle captions track you just created and choose Delete Track.

Creating new captions

You can create your own closed captions automatically within Premiere Pro. There's even an option to automatically transcribe clips when you add them to a sequence.

You'll click to transcribe the current sequence, but to automatically transcribe all clips when they are added to a sequence, choose Premiere Pro > Settings > Transcription (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Transcription (Windows), and select Automatically Transcribe Clips.

To automatically transcribe all clips when they are imported, choose Auto-Transcribe All Imported Clips from the Transcription Preferences menu, and click OK to close the Preferences dialog box. For now, click Cancel to leave the setting unchanged.



Automatic Transcription

☑ Automatically transcribe clips

Transcription preferences: Auto-transcribe only clips in sequence

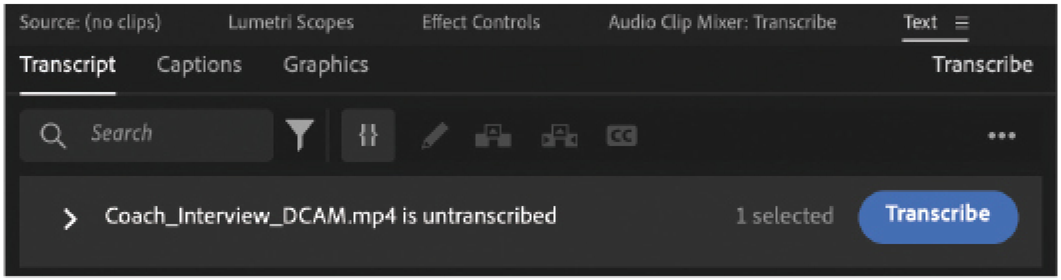
When enabled, transcription will run in the background on all clips in your sequence using the language selected.

Speaker Labeling: Select an option

This will separate the transcript by speaker (e.g. Speaker 1, Speaker 2)

Let's transcribe the current sequence:

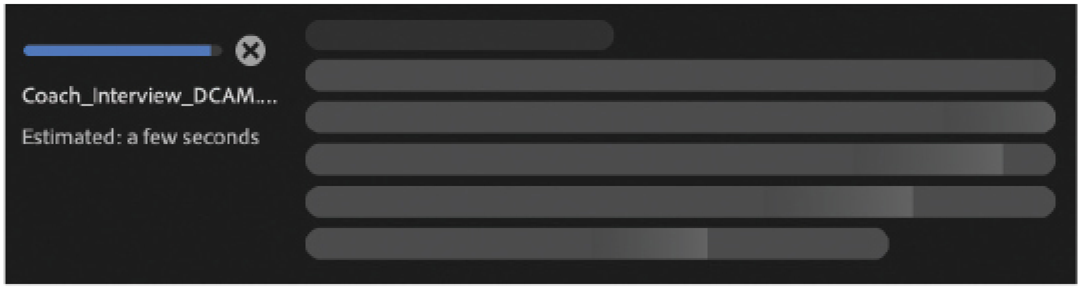
1. Open the Transcribe sequence. This is the same sequence but the clips have not been transcribed.
2. Open the Text panel and set it to the Transcript tab. If the Text panel isn't open already, you'll find it in the Window menu.


Source: (no clips)
Lumetri Scopes
Effect Controls
Audio Clip Mixer: Transcribe
Text
Transcript
Captions
Graphics
Transcribe
Search
Transcribe

Coach_Interview_DCAM.mp4 is untranscribed

1 selected

3. Click the blue Transcribe button. Premiere Pro transcribes the audio in the sequence.



Coach_Interview_DCAM....

Estimated: a few seconds

The accuracy of the transcription depends in part on the quality of the original audio recording. If you find a word that should be replaced, double-click it in the Text panel and retype it.

● Note

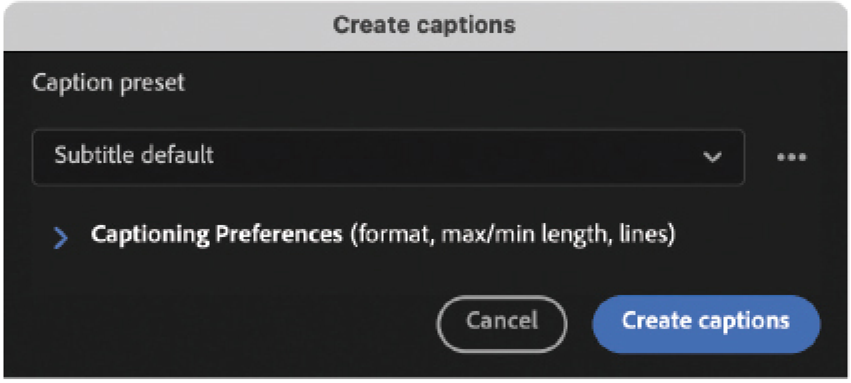
By default, Premiere Pro will transcribe the first audio channel for clips with multiple channels. If you are working with multichannel audio clips, it may be helpful to check and configure the channels before transcribing. Select the clips, then right-click the selection and choose Modify > Audio Channels to access the settings, or press Shift+G.

4. Click the Create Captions button CC at the top of the Text panel.

   You may need to resize the panel to see the button.

   The Create Captions dialog box opens.

   There are several options available to configure the way captions will be displayed. Initially, the Subtitle Default preset option is selected. If you click the disclosure triangle, › all of the detailed options become available. If you know the settings you need for your project, you can select them here.

   Caption preset: Subtitle default

   Keeping the default settings, click Create Captions.

   A new captions track is added to the sequence, much like the one you created when importing a caption file.

5. Play the sequence. The captions will update in the Text panel as the sequence plays.

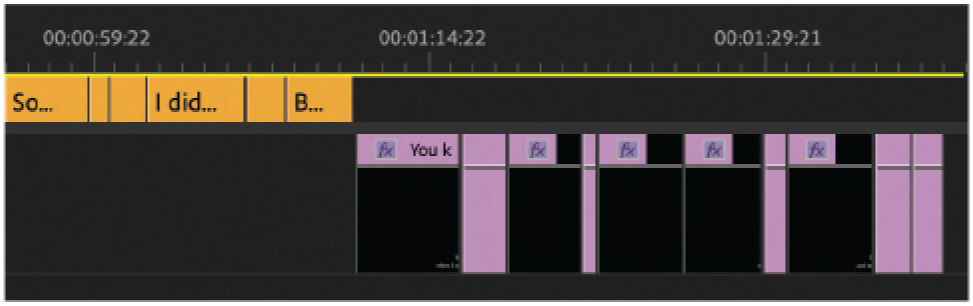
You can use the Essential Graphics panel to change the appearance of captions. You can select more than one caption clip and changes made in the Essential Graphics panel will apply to all selected items.

Upgrading captions to graphics

The appearance options for captions are limited to ensure compatibility with players. If you'd like to get a little more creative with your captions, you can convert them to graphics.

To upgrade, select one or more caption clips and choose Graphics And Titles > Upgrade Caption To Graphic.

The selected captions will be removed from the Captions track and added as graphics to an empty video track.



Now you'll have the full range of design features available in the Essential Graphics panel.

Closing multiple projects

You currently have two projects open at the same time. To close them both in a single step, choose File > Close All Projects. If you are invited to save a project, do so.

Review questions

1 What are the differences between point text and paragraph (or area) text?

2 Why display the title-safe zone?

3 How do you use the Rectangle tool to make a perfect square?

4 How do you apply a stroke or drop shadow?

5 What is the difference between kerning and tracking?

Review answers

1 You create point text by clicking in the Program Monitor with the Type tool. Its text box expands as you type. When you drag in the Program Monitor with the Type tool, you define a bounding box for paragraph text, and the characters remain within its confines. Changing the box's shape displays more or fewer characters.

2 Some TV sets cut off the edges of the picture. The amount lost varies from set to set. Keeping your text within the title-safe area ensures that viewers will see all your title. This is less of a problem with newer flat-screen TVs and isn't important for online video, but it's still a good idea to use the title-safe zone to frame your titles.

3 To create a perfect square, hold down the Shift key after you begin dragging as you draw using the Rectangle tool. You can create a perfect circle with the Ellipse tool in the same way.

4 To apply a stroke or drop shadow, select the text or object to edit, and enable the Stroke or Shadow options in the Essential Graphics panel.

5 Kerning adjusts the spacing between two characters. Tracking adjusts the spacing between multiple selected characters.

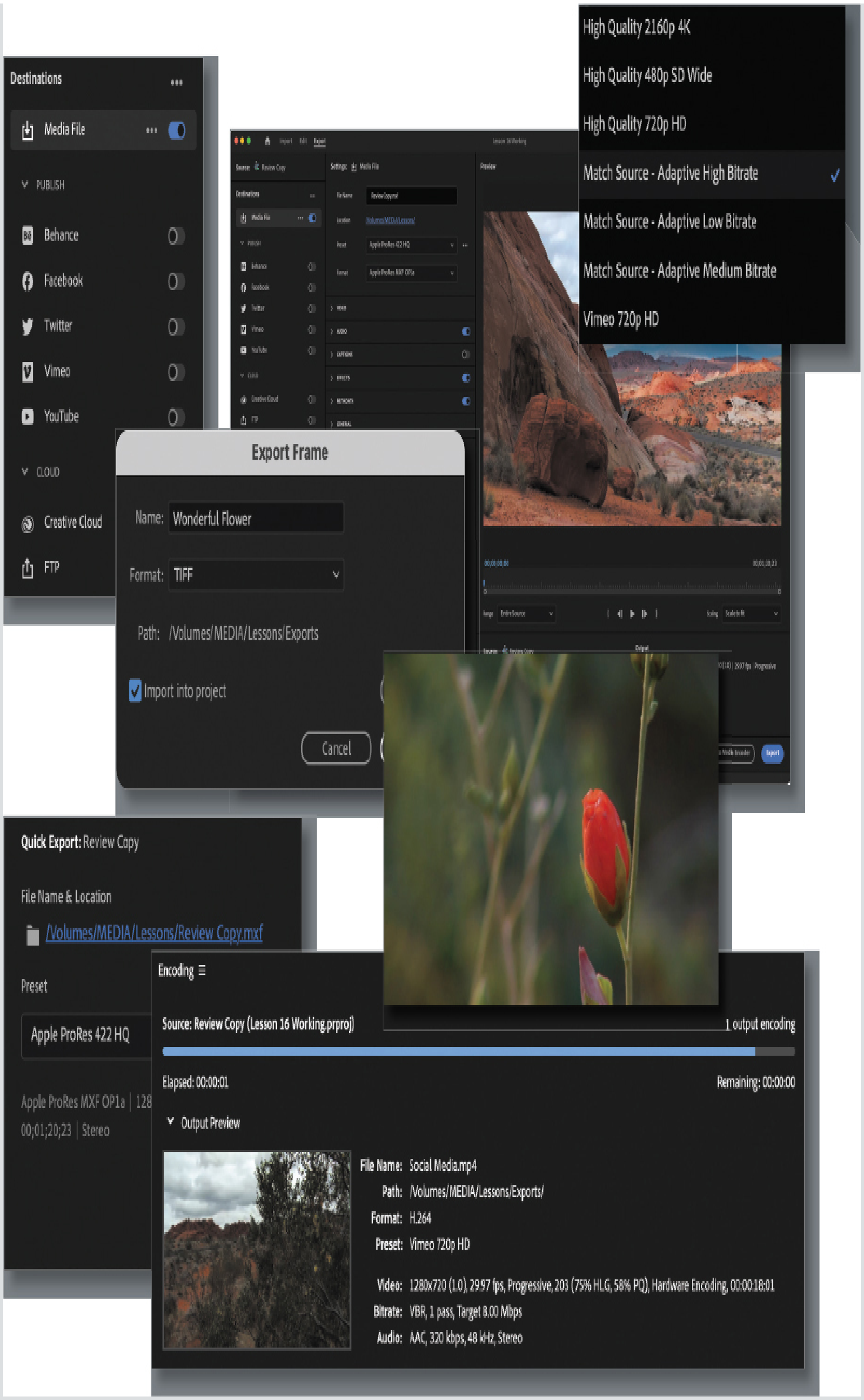
16 Exporting Frames, Clips, and Sequences

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Make quick exports.
- Configure your exported video for a specific audience and medium.
- Export single frames.
- Create movie, image sequence, and audio files.
- Use Adobe Media Encoder.
- Upload to social media and Adobe Stock.
- Share projects with editors using other editing apps.

This lesson will take about 90 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.


Destinations
Media File
PUBLISH
Behance
Facebook
Twitter
Vimeo
YouTube
CLOUD
Creative Cloud
FTP
High Quality 2160p 4K
High Quality 480p SD Wide
High Quality 720p HD
Match Source - Adaptive High Bitrate ✓
Match Source - Adaptive Low Bitrate
Match Source - Adaptive Medium Bitrate
Vimeo 720p HD
Export Frame
Cancel
Encoding

Name: Wonderful Flower

Format: TIFF

Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Exports

☑ Import into project

Quick Export: Review Copy

File Name & Location

/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Review Copy.mxf

Preset

Apple ProRes 422 HQ

Apple ProRes MXF OP1a | 128
00;01;20;23 | Stereo

Source: Review Copy (Lesson 16 Working.prproj)

1 output encoding

Elapsed: 00:00:01

Remaining: 00:00:00

Output Preview

File Name: Social Media.mp4
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Exports/
Format: H.264
Preset: Vimeo 720p HD
Video: 1280x720 (1.0), 29.97 fps, Progressive, 203 (75% HLG, 58% PQ), Hardware Encoding, 00:00:18:01
Bitrate: VBR, 1 pass, Target 8.00 Mbps
Audio: AAC, 320 kbps, 48 kHz, Stereo

One of the best things about editing video is the feeling you have when you can finally share it with your audience. Adobe Premiere Pro offers a wide range of export options. You can export to multiple high-level output formats using simplified Quick Export presets, using fully detailed settings, direct to social media, or even in batches via Adobe Media.

Starting the lesson

The most common form of media distribution is via digital files. Whether your completed project will be shown on a television, at the cinema, or on a computer or phone screen, you will usually deliver a file that has the particular specifications required for that medium.

To create a file, you can export directly from Premiere Pro or use Adobe Media Encoder. Adobe Media Encoder is a stand-alone application (included with your Creative Cloud membership and installed alongside Premiere Pro automatically) that handles file exports in batches, so you can export in several formats simultaneously and process in the background while you work in other applications, including Premiere Pro and Adobe After Effects.

● Note

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding Option (macOS) or Alt (Windows) while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

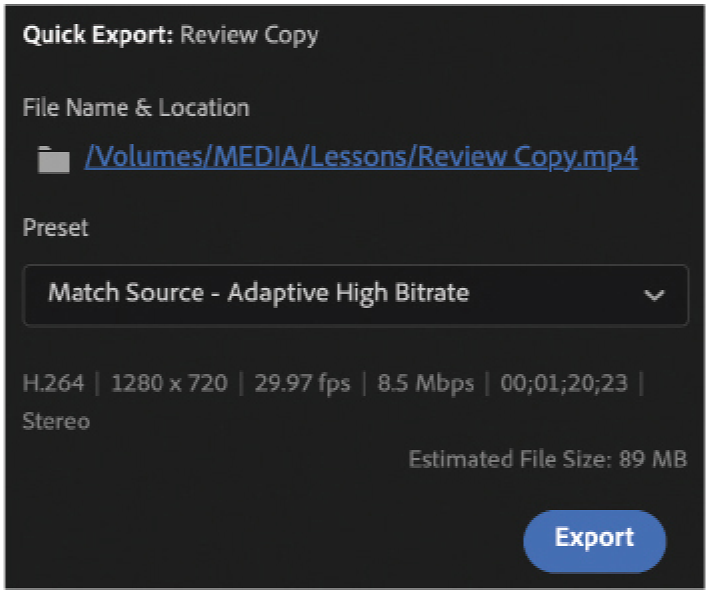
Making quick exports

Premiere Pro offers a Quick Export option that’s perfect when you simply want to export a media file with settings that are appropriate for your current sequence or clip with the minimum number of clicks. You can produce several file types by choosing the appropriate preset.

Let’s give Quick Export a try.

1. Open Lesson 16.prproj from the Lessons folder.
2. Save the project as Lesson 16 Working.prproj.

3. Switch to the Editing workspace, and reset the workspace to the saved layout.
4. If it’s not already open, open the sequence Review Copy.
5. Click the Quick Export icon in the top-right corner of the Premiere Pro window to open the Quick Export dialog box.



Quick Export: Review Copy

File Name & Location

/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Review Copy.mp4

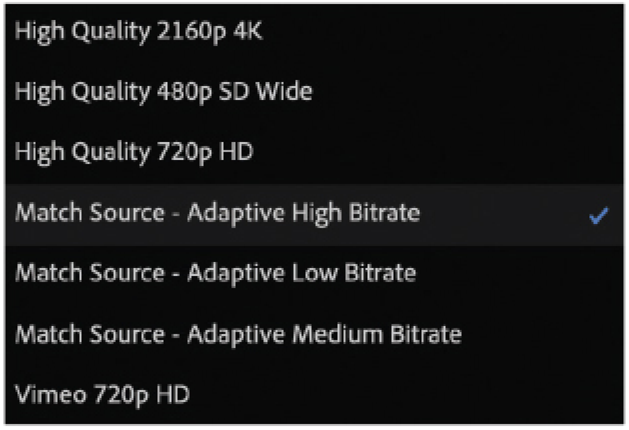
Preset

Match Source - Adaptive High Bitrate

H.264 | 1280 x 720 | 29.97 fps | 8.5 Mbps | 00;01;20;23 | Stereo

Estimated File Size: 89 MB

6. Use the Preset menu to choose Match Source – Adaptive High Bitrate. These settings automatically match the format of your sequence (or clip if you had selected one to export) and are encoded using the popular H.264 codec, which is perfect for uploading to social media or to streaming services.



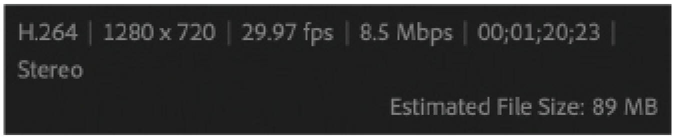
High Quality 2160p 4K
High Quality 480p SD Wide
High Quality 720p HD
Match Source - Adaptive High Bitrate ✓
Match Source - Adaptive Low Bitrate
Match Source - Adaptive Medium Bitrate
Vimeo 720p HD

There are also high quality 4K (Ultra High Definition), HD (High Definition), and SD (Standard Definition) presets available that will conform your export to a particular delivery standard.

A summary displays the settings you have chosen.

Note

Click the Preset menu and choose More Presets to see a full list of available presets.



H.264 | 1280 x 720 | 29.97 fps | 8.5 Mbps | 00;01;20;23 | Stereo

Estimated File Size: 89 MB

7. The blue text showing the output name is actually a button that opens a Save As dialog box. You’ll find the same type of text-as-a-button in Adobe Media Encoder. Click the blue text for the File Name & Location now. Create a folder named **Exports** in the Lessons folder. Browse into the new folder, name the file **Review Copy.mp4**, and click Save.

8. Click Export to create your new media file.

   When encoding is completed successfully, a notification will appear in the lower-right corner of the Premiere Pro interface.

Understanding the full media export options

Whether you’ve completed a project or you just want to share an in-progress version for review, you have several export options.

- You can export to an appropriate file type, format, and codec for your chosen delivery medium.
- You can export a single frame or a series of frames.
- You can choose audio-only, video-only, or full audio/video output.
- Captions can be included, embedded in the output file, or stored in a separate file.
- Exported media can be reimported into the project automatically for easy reuse.

Beyond choosing an export format (frame size, frame rate, and so on), there are several other important options when exporting a file:

- You can choose to create files in a similar format and at the same visual quality and data rate as your original media, or you can compress them to a smaller size to make distribution easier.

  Note

  Whatever is selected when you export is what Premiere Pro will use as the new media file source. This can consist of clips, sequences, or parts of clips or sequences.

- You can transcode your media from one codec to another to make it easier to exchange with creative collaborators.
- You can set the frame size, frame rate, data rate, or audio and video codec and configuration if an existing preset doesn't fit your needs.
- You can apply a color lookup table (LUT) to assign a Look. You can also apply a video limiter, HDR-to-SDR conversion, and audio normalization.
- You can burn in timecode, name, or image overlays.
- You can upload an exported file directly to social media accounts, an FTP server, Adobe Stock, or your Creative Cloud Files folder.

Exporting single frames

Even while an edit is in progress, you may want to export a still frame to send to a team member or client for review. You might also want to export an image to use as the thumbnail of your video file when you post it to social media.

When you export a frame from the Source Monitor, Premiere Pro creates a still image that matches the resolution of the source video file.

When you export a frame from the Program Monitor, Premiere Pro creates a still image that matches the resolution of the sequence.

Let's give it a try.

1. Continue working with the sequence Review Copy. Position the Timeline playhead on a frame you want to export.

2. In the Program Monitor, click the Export Frame button 📷 on the lower right. If you can't see the button, resize the Program Monitor.

● **Note**

If resizing the panel doesn't bring the button to light, it's possible that you removed it if you customized the Program Monitor buttons. You can select the Program Monitor or the Timeline panel and press Shift+E (macOS) or Shift+Ctrl+E (Windows) to export a frame.

3. In the Export Frame dialog box, enter a filename.
4. Choose a still-image format from the Format menu.

- **JPEG**, **PNG**, and **BMP** (Windows only) are universally readable. JPEG and PNG files are commonly used in website design.
- **TIFF**, **TGA**, and **PNG** are suitable for print and animation workflows.
- **DPX** is often used for digital cinema or color-grading workflows (fine color finishing).
- **OpenEXR** is used to store high dynamic range picture information.

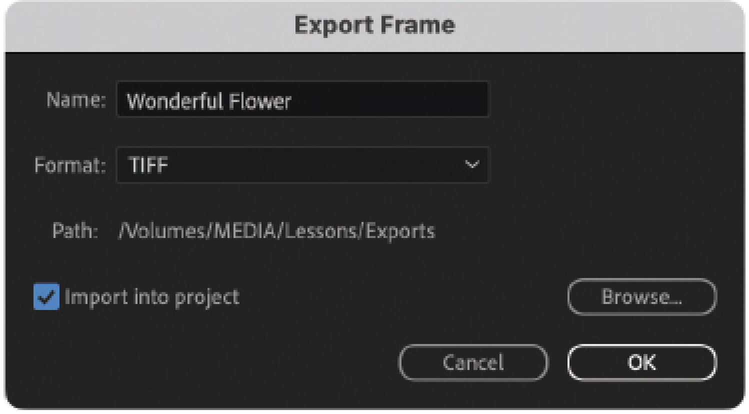
● **Note**

If your video format uses non-square pixels, the resulting image file will appear to have a different aspect ratio. This is because still image formats have square pixels. Using Adobe Photoshop, you can resize the image horizontally and restore the original aspect ratio.

5. Click the Browse button to choose the Exports folder you created earlier.
6. Select the Import Into Project option to add the new still image into your current project, and click OK.

● **Note**

In Windows, you can export to the BMP, DPX, GIF, JPEG, OpenEXR, PNG, TGA, and TIFF formats. In macOS, you can export to the DPX, JPEG, OpenEXR, PNG, TGA, and TIFF formats.



Name: Wonderful Flower

Format: TIFF

Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Exports

☑ Import into project

● **Note**

If you export a TIFF file from Premiere Pro, the file will have a three-letter .tif file extension, rather than .tiff. Both are valid and work interchangeably.

The new still image is created, and a clip linked to it is added to the Project panel.

Exporting a full quality media file

It can be useful to produce a pristine digital copy of your edited project that can be archived for future use. This is a self-contained, fully rendered output file from your sequence at the highest resolution and best quality possible. You can use a file of this kind as a source media file to produce other compressed output formats without opening the original project in Premiere Pro.

Though basing other copies on this source file technically means losing a tiny amount of quality (one digital generation), the loss is so minimal relative to the convenience and time-savings that many editors find it a worthwhile exchange.

In the next exercise, you’ll learn about the various settings you can configure when exporting to a new media file. Premiere Pro can also automatically post to social media accounts, cloud storage, and an FTP (File Transfer Protocol) server (see “Uploading to social media,” later in the lesson).

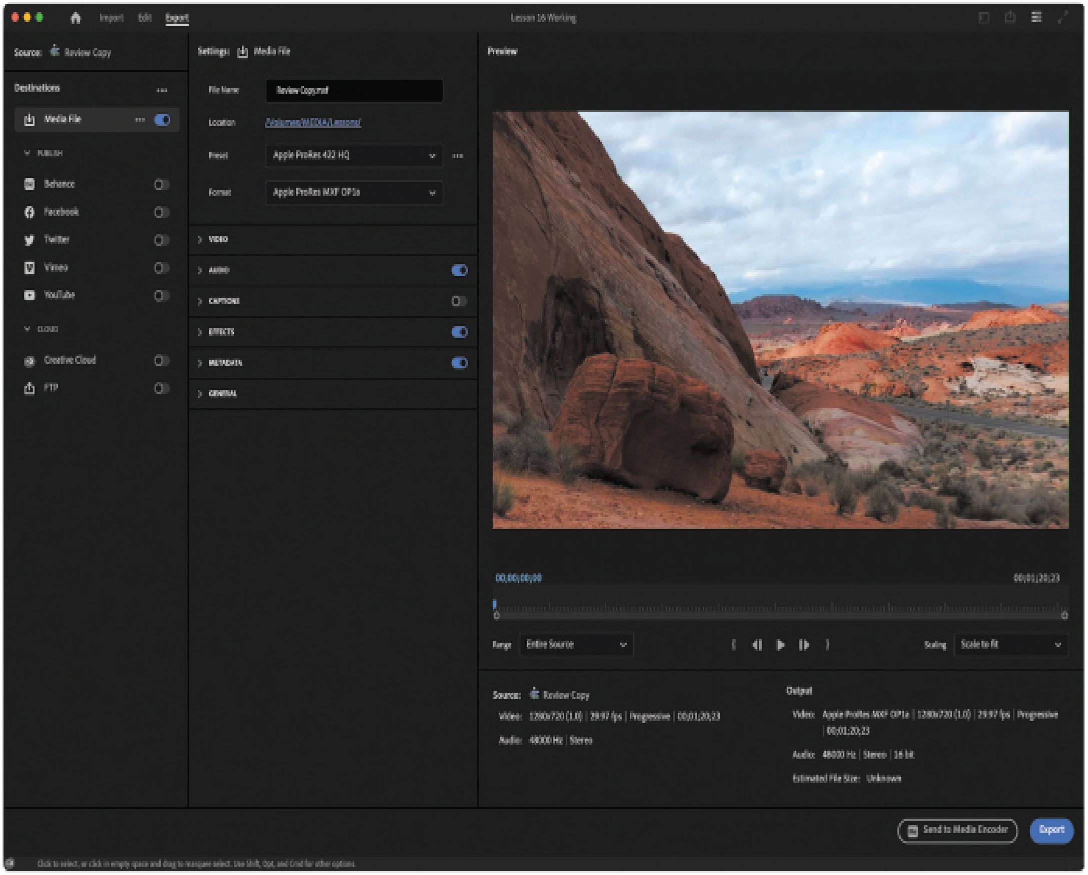
Once you have configured your output options appropriately, you’ll be able to quickly export new files in just a couple of clicks.

Matching sequence settings

Ideally, the frame size, frame rate, and codec of a full-quality media file will match the sequence it’s based on. It can seem like a lot of settings to think about when creating a new exported media file. Thankfully, Premiere Pro makes matching your sequence or original clip settings easy.

1. Continue working with the Review Copy sequence.
2. With the sequence selected in the Project panel or open in the Timeline panel, with that panel active (with a blue outline), click Export in the upper-left corner of the Application window, or choose File > Export > Media. You can also press Command+M (macOS) or Ctrl+M (Windows).

   Premiere Pro switches to Export mode.


Import
Edit
Export
Lesson 16 Working
Source: Review Copy
Destinations
Media File
PUBLISH
Behance
Facebook
Twitter
Vimeo
YouTube
CLOUD
Creative Cloud
FTP
Settings: Media File
VIDEO
AUDIO
CAPTIONS
EFFECTS
METADATA
GENERAL
Preview
Send to Media Encoder
Export

File Name: Review Copy.mxf

Location: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/

Preset: Apple ProRes 422 HQ

Format: Apple ProRes MXF OP1a

00;00;00;00

00;01;20;23

Range: Entire Source

Scaling: Scale to fit

Source: Review Copy

Video: 1280x720 (1.0) | 29.97 fps | Progressive | 00;01;20;23

Audio: 48000 Hz | Stereo

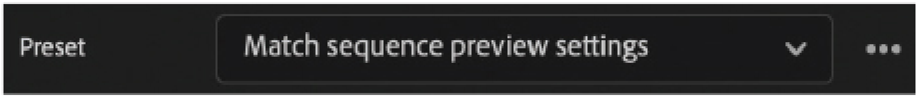
Output

Video: Apple ProRes MXF OP1a | 1280x720 (1.0) | 29.97 fps | Progressive | 00;01;20;23

Audio: 48000 Hz | Stereo | 16 bit

Estimated File Size: Unknown

3. You’ll learn more about this mode later. For now, scroll down in the Preset menu and choose Match Sequence Preview Settings.



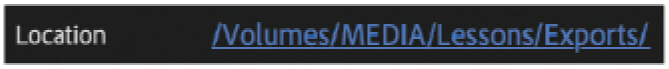
Preset: Match sequence preview settings

● **Note**

In some cases, the Match Sequence Preview Settings option cannot produce an exact match of the original camera media. For example, XDCAM EX will write to an MPEG2 file. In most cases, the file written will have an identical format and closely match the data rate of the original sources.

4. In the File Name box, enter **Review Copy - Match Previews**. (Don’t worry about the file extension; Premiere Pro adds it automatically.)

5. Click the blue Location text. Browse to and choose the Exports folder you created earlier.

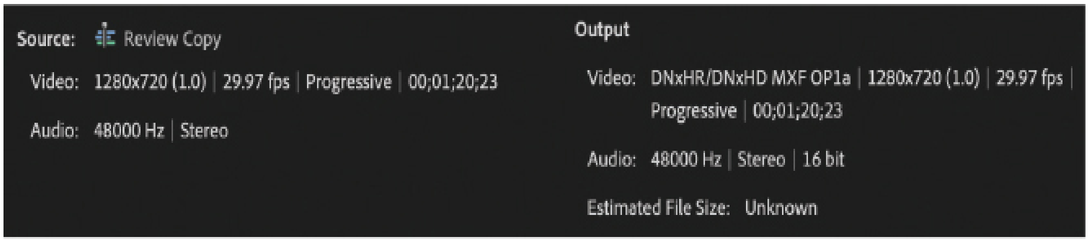


Location: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Exports/

6. Review the Output information to check that the output format matches the sequence settings. In this case, you should be using DNxHD media at 29.97 fps. The Summary information is a quick, easy reference that helps you avoid minor errors that can have big consequences. If the Source and Output Summary settings match, it minimizes conversion, which helps maintain the quality of the final output.

   ● **Note**

   The number in parentheses after the frame size in the export summary is the pixel aspect ratio.

   Source: Review Copy
   Video: 1280x720 (1.0) | 29.97 fps | Progressive | 00;01;20;23
   Audio: 48000 Hz | Stereo

   Output
   Video: DNxHR/DNxHD MXF OP1a | 1280x720 (1.0) | 29.97 fps | Progressive | 00;01;20;23
   Audio: 48000 Hz | Stereo | 16 bit
   Estimated File Size: Unknown

   When exporting a sequence, the sequence itself is the source in the Export dialog box—not the clips inside the sequence, because these will have already been conformed to the sequence settings.

7. Click the Export button to create a media file based on the sequence.

   When the export is complete, Premiere Pro returns to Edit mode. You can switch between Import, Edit, and Export mode at any time.

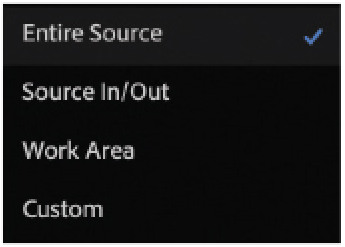
Choosing the source range

You don’t have to export a whole sequence. In fact, you’ll commonly export only a selected part of your sequence for review.

Click to make the Timeline panel active; then click Export in the upper-left corner to switch to Export mode.

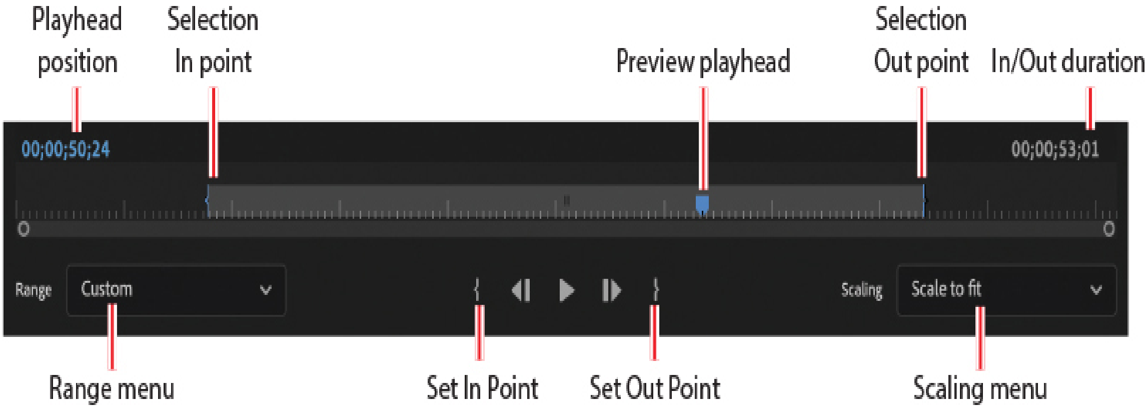
On the right side, above the output summary, you’ll see a preview, with controls for making a partial selection for export.

If your source sequence or clip has In and Out points, they are automatically used to define the partial output. They are also displayed on the preview time ruler. You can override existing In and Out points by choosing Entire Source from the Range menu.


Entire Source ✓
Source In/Out
Work Area
Custom

You can set new In and Out points by positioning the preview playhead and clicking the Set In Point and Set Out Point buttons or pressing I and O.

If you set new In and Out points, the Source Range menu updates to show Custom.


Playhead position
Selection In point
Preview playhead
Selection Out point
In/Out duration
00;00;50;24
00;00;53;01
Range
Custom
Scaling
Scale to fit
Range menu
Set In Point
Set Out Point
Scaling menu

Configuring mismatched exported aspect ratios

Occasionally, you might need to export to an image format with a different aspect ratio than your sequence (or source clip). For example, you might export a 2.39:1 cinemascope aspect ratio sequence to a 16:9 widescreen HD or UHD aspect ratio video file. As another example, you might export a widescreen sequence to square video for social media delivery. In both cases, you might decide to crop, stretch, or scale the frame to fit the new aspect ratio. There are both creative and technical reasons for choosing any of these options, and it’s easy to choose between them.

The Scaling menu lets you choose the way a mismatch between the source aspect ratio and the output settings is handled.

- **Scale To Fit:** The original aspect ratio will be maintained, and the frame will be scaled down to ensure the whole image can be seen within the new aspect ratio. This results in black areas at the top and bottom (letterboxing) or sides (pillarboxing), where there are gaps.
- **Scale To Fill:** The image will be scaled to ensure the frame is filled with no gaps. This results in cropping.
- **Stretch To Fill:** The image is stretched, changing its aspect ratio, so that it fits the new aspect ratio with no gaps and no cropping.

When you export a file with black bars at the top and bottom or sides, those bars become part of the file. These black pixels are sometimes desirable as it helps to ensure the image will be displayed with the correct aspect ratio within the delivered video.

Choosing another codec

When you export to a new media file, there are many settings available to define the output format and codec, audio encoding, metadata, effects, and more. The number of options can be overwhelming at first. The good news is that you will usually be able to choose settings based on a file delivery specification that is given to you.

In most cases, you will probably choose a preset and make just one or two adjustments (if any) to that preset before you click Export.

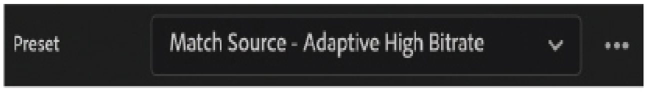
One of the most important choices you'll make is the output file's codec. Some camera capture formats (such as the H.264 MP4 files commonly produced by phones) are already heavily compressed, to save storage space. Using a higher-quality codec can help to preserve quality.

▶ Tip

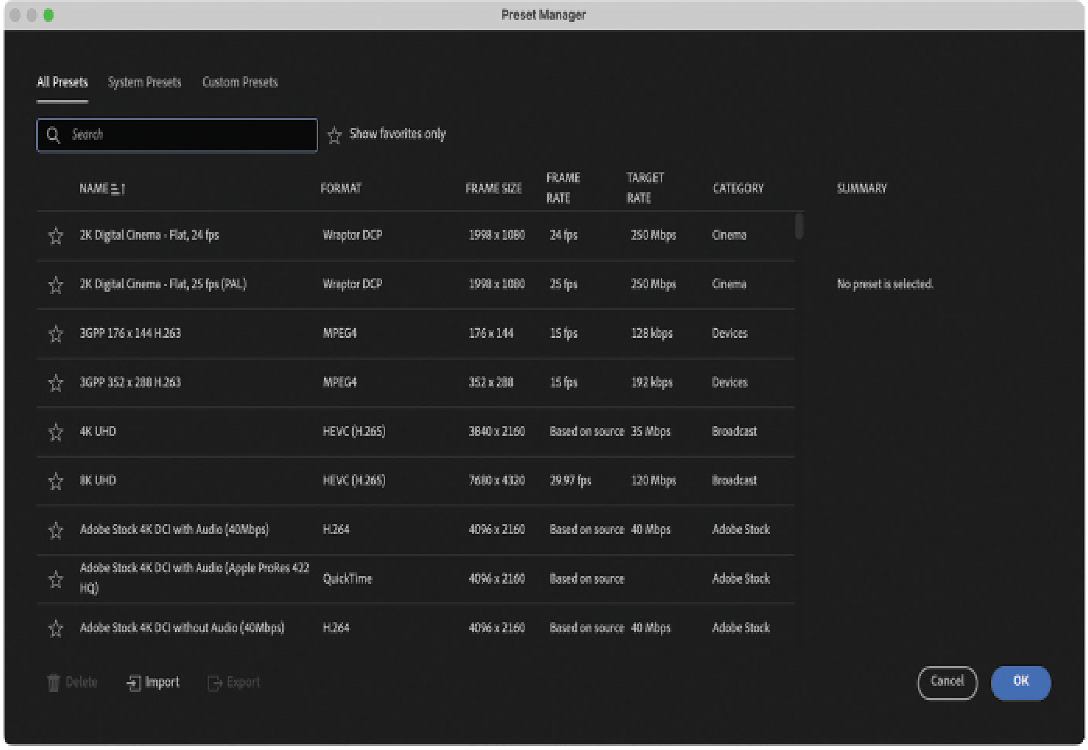
> Even if your original media is 8 bit, it is likely you will have been editing using higher-quality effects. The subtle results of color grading and adding graphics can be better captured in a 10-bit file than an 8-bit file.

Choose your preset and format, decide whether you'd like to export audio, video, or both by activating or deactivating those options, and then modify settings to suit. You can access groups of export settings by clicking a group heading.

1. With the Timeline panel active, press Command+M (macOS) or Ctrl+M (Windows) to switch to Export mode.
2. Next to the Preset menu, click the three dots for more options and choose More Presets.



Preset: Match Source - Adaptive High Bitrate



NAME	FORMAT	FRAME SIZE	FRAME RATE	TARGET RATE	CATEGORY
2K Digital Cinema - Flat, 24 fps	Wraptor DCP	1998 x 1080	24 fps	250 Mbps	Cinema
2K Digital Cinema - Flat, 25 fps (PAL)	Wraptor DCP	1998 x 1080	25 fps	250 Mbps	Cinema
3GPP 176 x 144 H.263	MPEG4	176 x 144	15 fps	128 kbps	Devices
3GPP 352 x 288 H.263	MPEG4	352 x 288	15 fps	192 kbps	Devices
4K UHD	HEVC (H.265)	3840 x 2160	Based on source	35 Mbps	Broadcast
8K UHD	HEVC (H.265)	7680 x 4320	29.97 fps	120 Mbps	Broadcast
Adobe Stock 4K DCI with Audio (40Mbps)	H.264	4096 x 2160	Based on source	40 Mbps	Adobe Stock
Adobe Stock 4K DCI with Audio (Apple ProRes 422 HQ)	QuickTime	4096 x 2160	Based on source		Adobe Stock
Adobe Stock 4K DCI without Audio (40Mbps)	H.264	4096 x 2160	Based on source	40 Mbps	Adobe Stock

SUMMARY: No preset is selected.

The Preset Manager offers many different presets you can use as a starting point for your configured export. To apply a preset, select it and click OK. For now, click Cancel.

3. Open the Format menu, and choose QuickTime.

   A quick glance at the export summary on the right will tell you this format leads to an Apple QuickTime file with ProRes 422 HQ compression. This is a popular option for professional media delivery.

4. Enter the file name, **Review Copy QT**, and make sure the Location is set to your Exports folder.

Below the Format menu, you’ll find a series of sections containing important additional options. Click a section name to view it.

Here’s an overview:

- **Video:** The Video section allows you to set the video codec, frame size, frame rate, field order, and profile. The settings available are based on the preset you chose.
- **Audio:** The Audio section allows you to adjust the bit rate of the audio and, for some formats, the codec. The default settings are based on the preset you chose.
- **Captions:** If your sequence has captions, you can specify whether they are ignored, burned in (added to the visuals permanently), or exported as a separate file (referred to as a *sidecar file*).
- **Effects:** You can add a number of useful effects and overlays as you output your media (see these options in the section “Applying effects during export.”

  ● **Note**

  The settings displayed in each section change depending on the format you choose.

- **Metadata:** Specify the way metadata associated with your sequence or source clip will be handled, as well as the start timecode for the new media file.
- **General:** Choose whether you would like the new media file to be imported into your project and whether you would like to use sequence previews or proxy files as the source.

5. Click the Video section to open it. In the Video Codec menu, browse the available codecs.

   When you have finished browsing, choose Apple ProRes 422 HQ. This produces a high-quality file that many editors choose for final delivery.

● Note

ProRes is a professional codec that is supported natively by Adobe Creative Cloud applications. Like all codecs, it will play back only in media applications that support it.

6. At the bottom of the Basic Video Settings section, click the More button.
7. In the Depth menu, choose 16-bpc.

   If this menu is set to 8-bpc (the default), the video file will be rendered with only 8 bits per channel. With a Depth setting of 16-bpc, the full quality of the ProRes 422 HQ codec is used.

8. Click to expand the Audio section. In the Basic Audio Settings area, make sure 48000 Hz is chosen from the Sample Rate menu and 16 bit is chosen from the Sample Size menu. Click More, and in the Audio Channel Configuration area, make sure Stereo is chosen from the Output Channels menu.

   These audio options are common standards for professional media delivery.

● Note

If you’re working with a professional format (such as MXF OP1a, DNxHD MXF OP1a, or QuickTime), you can export up to 32 channels of audio. To do so, the original sequence must be configured to use a multichannel mix track with the corresponding number of tracks.

9. Click Export at the lower-right corner to export the sequence and transcode it to a new media file.

Apple ProRes 422 HQ is a high-quality option for professional media delivery that produces relatively large media files.

The most popular delivery format and codec is MPEG4 (.mp4), using the H.264 codec. These media files are smaller than Apple ProRes 422 HQ files, so they are faster to upload to websites, and they produce acceptable quality for most online viewing purposes. You’ll find built-in presets for YouTube and Vimeo in the Preset Manager.

Applying effects during export

At the time of export, you can apply visual effects, add information overlays, and make automated adjustments to the output file.

Here’s an overview of the options on the Effects section:

- **Tone Mapping:** If you are working on a High Dynamic Range (HDR) sequence but exporting a Standard Dynamic Range (SDR) media file, use this option and select a Tone Mapping Method to automatically adjust the tones to fit the lower range.
- **Lumetri Look/LUT:** Choose from a list of built-in Lumetri Looks or browse to your own, allowing you to quickly apply a nuanced adjustment to the appearance of your output file. This is most commonly used when viewing recordings at the end of each day of production (the dailies).
- **SDR Conform:** If your sequence uses high dynamic range and you are delivering a standard dynamic range media file, you can make manual adjustments to the brightness and contrast using this effect.
- **Image Overlay:** Add a graphic, such as a company logo or network “bug,” and position it on-screen. The graphic will be incorporated into the image (burned in).
- **Text Overlay:** Add a text overlay to the image. This is particularly useful as a watermark to protect your content or as a way to identify different versions.
- **Timecode Overlay:** Display timecode for your finished video file, making it easy for viewers without specialized editing software to note reference times for commenting purposes.
- **Time Tuner:** Specify a new duration or playback speed, up to +/−10%. This is achieved by applying subtle adjustments to periods of low action where the soundtrack is silent. Results vary depending on the media you are working with, so test different speeds to compare the end results. A continuous music soundtrack will interfere with the Time Tuner.

- **Video Limiter:** Although it’s usually best to get your video levels right in the sequence, you can apply a limiter here too, to ensure your resulting file meets the required levels for broadcast television.
- **Loudness Normalization:** Use the Loudness scale to normalize audio levels in your output file. As with video levels, it’s best to get this right in the sequence, but it can be reassuring to know your levels will be limited during export.

Working with Adobe Media Encoder

Adobe Media Encoder is a stand-alone application that you can run independently or launch from Premiere Pro. One advantage of using Media Encoder is that you can send an encoding job directly from Premiere Pro and then continue working on your edit as the encoding is processed. If your client asks to see your work before you finish editing, Media Encoder can produce the file in the background without interrupting your flow.

By default, Media Encoder pauses encoding when you play video in Premiere Pro to maximize playback performance. You can change this in the Premiere Pro Playback preferences.

Choosing a file format for export

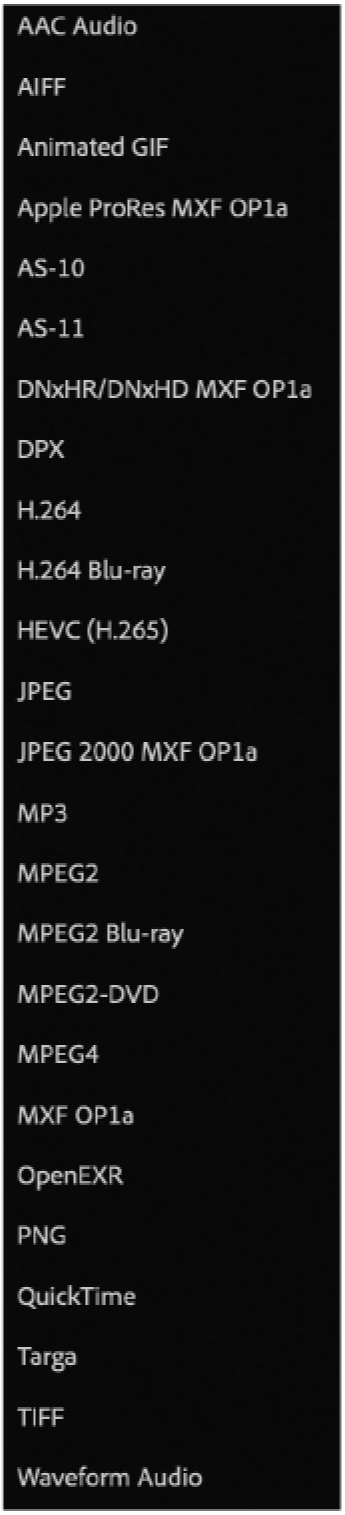
It can be a challenge to know how to deliver your finished work. Ultimately, choosing delivery formats is a process of planning backward; find out how the file will be presented, and it’s then usually straightforward to identify the best file type for the purpose. Often, clients will have a delivery specifications document to follow, making it easier to select the right options for encoding.

Premiere Pro and Adobe Media Encoder can export to many formats. In fact, Premiere Pro shares Adobe Media Encoder’s Format options.

Let’s take a look at some common scenarios and review which formats are typically used. There are few absolutes, but these should get you close to the desired output.

It’s a good idea to test your output on a short section of your video before producing a full-length finished file. This will save you waiting for the complete version only to discover there is a better setting to choose.

- **Encoding for user-generated video sites:** The H.264 format includes presets for YouTube, Vimeo, Facebook, and Twitter in widescreen, SD, HD, and 4K.
- **Producing a DCP for theatrical distribution:** Choose the Wraptor DCP format and then pick 24 or 25 frames per second. If your sequence is 30 frames per second, choose 24 frames per second for output to a DCP. Settings are limited to ensure compatibility with standard DCI-compliant cinema-projection systems.


AAC Audio
AIFF
Animated GIF
Apple ProRes MXF OP1a
AS-10
AS-11
DNxHR/DNxHD MXF OP1a
DPX
H.264
H.264 Blu-ray
HEVC (H.265)
JPEG
JPEG 2000 MXF OP1a
MP3
MPEG2
MPEG2 Blu-ray
MPEG2-DVD
MPEG4
MXF OP1a
OpenEXR
PNG
QuickTime
Targa
TIFF
Waveform Audio

In general, the presets are proven and will work for your intended purpose.

Most presets are conservative and will deliver good results with the default settings, so you probably won’t improve the quality by making adjustments.

Configuring the export

To export from Premiere Pro to Adobe Media Encoder, you'll need to queue the export. The first step is to use Export mode to make choices about the file you're going to export.

1. Continue working with the Review Copy sequence. Either select the sequence in the Project panel or have it open in the Timeline panel, with that panel active.
2. Choose File > Export > Media, or press Command+M (macOS) or Ctrl+M (Windows).
3. For this example, open the Preset menu and choose More Presets, or click the three dots next to the Preset menu and choose More Presets. Type **Vimeo** in the Search box; then select the Vimeo 720p HD preset and click OK.

   These settings match the frame size and frame rate of the sequence.
4. Click the File Name box and give the file a new name, **Social Media**. The location should already be set to your Exports folder. If not, set it now.
5. Check the summary information text to verify your choices.

Queuing the export

When you're ready to create your media file, you have a few more options to consider. These are some of the more advanced options available in Export mode. You may not decide to use any of these when exporting a particular sequence, or they may be central to your workflow. Either way, it's worth taking a moment to consider them before proceeding.

These are available whether you are exporting directly from Premiere Pro or queuing the export in Adobe Media Encoder.

- **Video > More > Use Maximum Render Quality:** If your sequence includes transformations like Scale, Position, or Rotation adjustments, or if you have used effects like the Warp Stablizer, consider selecting this option to produce the highest quality output possible. This option requires more RAM and can take longer to encode. This option is usually required only when working without GPU acceleration (in software-only mode) or when using non-GPU-accelerated effects.

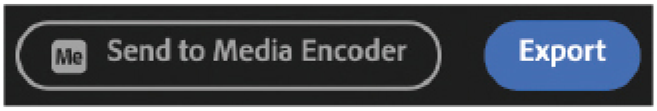
- **Video > More > Render Alpha Channel Only:** Some post-production workflows require a separate grayscale file representing the alpha channel (the channel that defines opacity). This option produces that file, rather than a full-color version.
- **Video > More > Time Interpolation:** If your exported file will have a different frame rate than your sequence or source clip, this menu lets you specify the way the frame-rate change is rendered. The options are the same as those that apply when changing clip playback speed in a sequence.
- **Metadata > Set Start Timecode:** This allows you to specify a start timecode other than 00:00:00:00 for the newly created file. This is useful if you are working in a broadcast environment where a specific timecode start may be a delivery requirement.
- **General > Import Into Project:** This option automatically imports the newly created media file into your current project so you can review it or use it as new source footage.
- **General > Use Previews:** When you render effects, preview files are produced that look like your original footage combined with the effects. If you enable this option, the preview files will be used as the source for the new export. This can save a significant amount of time that would otherwise be spent rendering the effects again. The result might be lower quality, depending on the format of the sequence preview files (see Lesson 2, “Setting Up a Project”).

  If you have configured your sequence previews to be very high quality and have rendered all effects already, this option can save an enormous amount of time when exporting—possibly 10x faster or more. If you have enough storage space, a good example of this workflow would be setting your previews to ProRes 422 HQ and then delivering a ProRes 422 HQ media file.
- **General > Use Proxies:** If you have created and/or attached proxies to your media to speed up previews, Premiere Pro will normally use the

original media files for the purposes of exporting. If you select the Use Proxies option, the proxies will be used instead. This can speed up exporting in a similar way to the Use Preview option—though be warned that proxy video files are usually low quality to keep file sizes small.

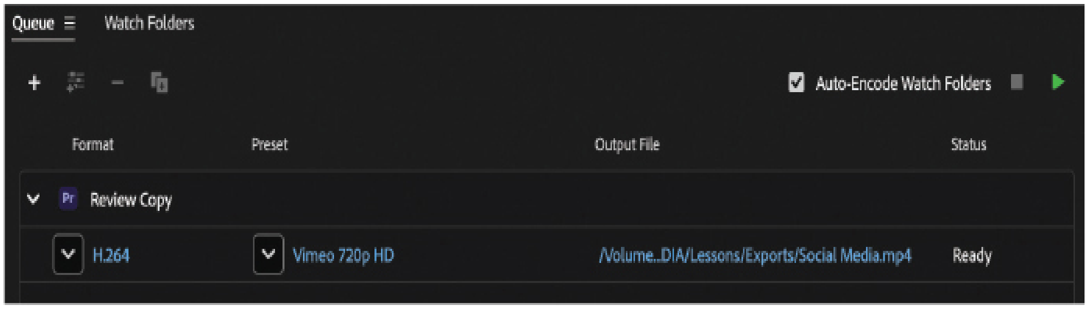
Finally, there are these options to consider when exporting any kind of media file:

- **Send To Media Encoder:** Click the Send To Media Encoder button to send the file to Adobe Media Encoder, which will open automatically, allowing you to continue working in Premiere Pro while the export takes place.



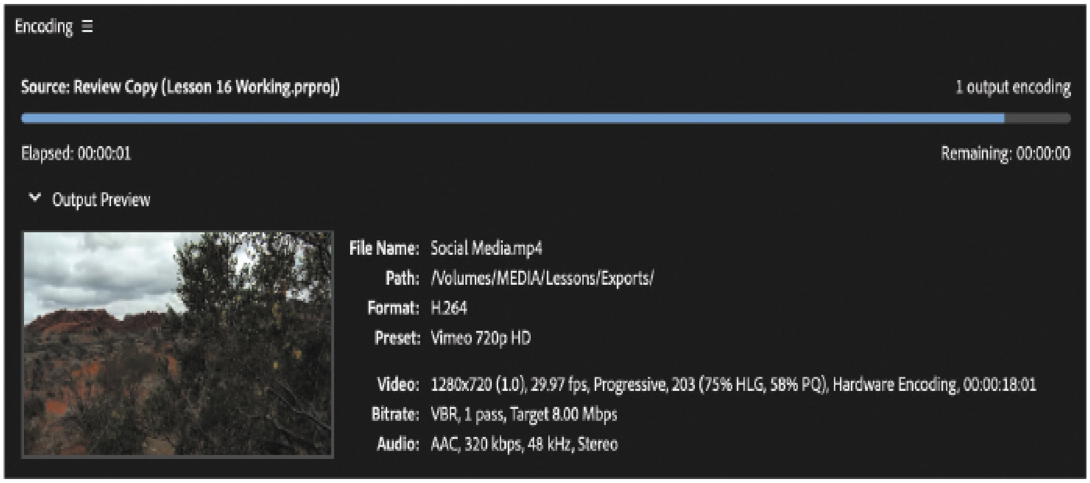
- **Export:** Select this option to export directly from the Export Settings dialog box rather than sending the file to the Adobe Media Encoder queue. This is a simpler workflow and usually a faster export, but you won't be able to edit in Premiere Pro until the export is complete.

1. For this exercise, click the Send To Media Encoder button to send the file to Adobe Media Encoder. Media Encoder should start automatically, with your media encoding tasks ready to go.



Format	Preset	Output File	Status
Review Copy			
H.264	Vimeo 720p HD	/Volume...DIA/Lessons/Exports/Social Media.mp4	Ready

2. Media Encoder will not begin encoding automatically. To begin encoding, click the Start Queue button ▶ in the upper-right corner.



Source: Review Copy (Lesson 16 Working.prproj)
1 output encoding
Elapsed: 00:00:01
Remaining: 00:00:00

File Name: Social Media.mp4
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Exports/
Format: H.264
Preset: Vimeo 720p HD

Video: 1280x720 (1.0), 29.97 fps, Progressive, 203 (75% HLG, 58% PQ), Hardware Encoding, 00:00:18:01
Bitrate: VBR, 1 pass, Target 8.00 Mbps
Audio: AAC, 320 kbps, 48 kHz, Stereo

3. To add another item to the queue, choose more export settings in Premiere Pro and click the Send To Media Encoder button. Adobe Media Encoder will encode items in the order that they are added to the queue.

Exploring additional options in Adobe Media Encoder

Adobe Media Encoder brings a number of additional benefits. Although it involves a few extra steps beyond simply clicking the Export button in the Export Settings dialog box of Premiere Pro, the extra options are often worthwhile.

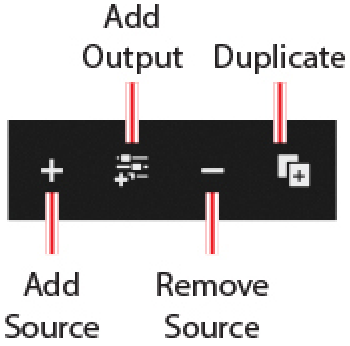
● Note

Adobe Media Encoder does not have to be used from Premiere Pro. You can launch Adobe Media Encoder on its own and browse inside Premiere Pro projects to choose items to transcode.

Here are some useful features:

- **Add files for encoding:** You can add files to Adobe Media Encoder by choosing File > Add Source. You can even drag files in from the Finder (macOS) or Windows Explorer (Windows). There’s a Media Browser too, which you can use to locate items just as you would in Premiere Pro.

- **Import Premiere Pro sequences directly:** You can choose File > Add Premiere Pro Sequence to select a Premiere Pro project file and choose sequences to encode without ever launching Premiere Pro.
- **Render After Effects compositions directly:** You can import and encode compositions from Adobe After Effects by choosing File > Add After Effects Composition. Once again, you don't need to open Adobe After Effects.
- **Use a watch folder:** If you'd like to automate some encoding tasks, you can create watch folders by choosing File > Add Watch Folder and then assigning a preset to that watch folder. Watch folders exist in the Finder (macOS) or Windows Explorer (Windows) like any other folder. Provided Adobe Media Encoder is running, media files placed into the folder can be automatically encoded to the format specified in the preset.
- **Modify a queue:** You can add, duplicate, or remove any encoding tasks using buttons at the top of the list.
- **Modify settings:** Once the encoding tasks are loaded into the queue, changing settings is easy; click the item's Format or Preset entry (in blue text), and the Export Settings dialog box appears.



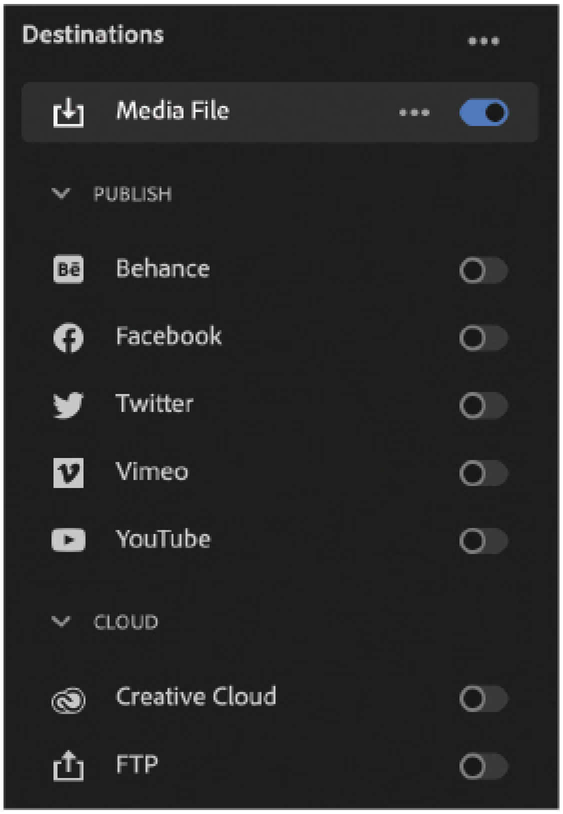
When encoding has completed, you can quit Media Encoder.

Uploading to social media

Back in Premiere Pro, when encoding is complete, the next step is often to publish the video. In Export mode, you can pre-configure publishing settings to automatically upload your video when encoding is complete.

You will have noticed there are several output options displayed on the left side of the Export mode interface.

By default, the only enabled option is Media File, and these are the settings displayed in the middle of the interface. There are several other options that you can enable or disable at any time.



After selecting and activating a social media destination to display its settings, click Sign In beside the Publish heading in Settings to log into your account. You can configure media encoding and metadata settings, and Premiere Pro will upload the file automatically when it is created.

The settings you choose are stored for future exports. This powerful feature is particularly useful: It allows you to preconfigure your social media upload settings and apply those settings to multiple future media uploads simply by activating an option.

If you click the three dots ••• at the top of the list of output options, you’ll find the option to add a media file destination. You can add multiple destinations, and each can have its own encoding settings.

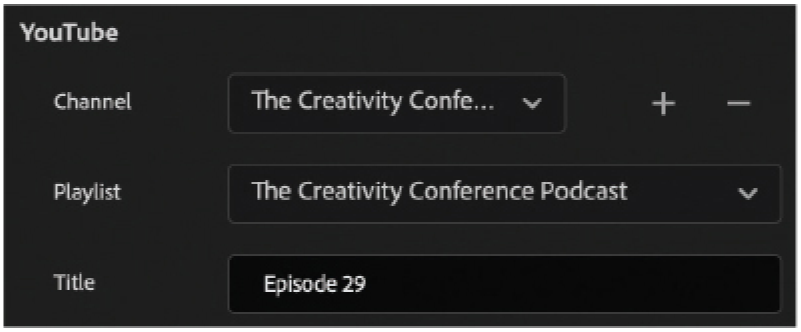
▶ Tip

Adobe Media Encoder has similar options for uploading to social media accounts, with a different interface. Access these settings by editing the encoding format or preset from inside Media Encoder.

All the activated output options are produced when you click Export. This means, in a single step, you can produce a full-quality exported media file, create a low-resolution small-file-size version for quick sharing and reviews, and upload to multiple social media accounts.

1. Click Edit to return to the Edit mode.
2. Make sure the Timeline panel is active, click Export at the top left of the interface.
3. Select and activate one of the social media output options to view its settings.
4. Click Sign In beside the Publish heading in Settings and to choose particular ways to deliver the file. For example, the YouTube output options allow you to specify a particular channel and/or playlist.

   The menus populate automatically based on the account you have logged into.



YouTube

Channel: The Creativity Confe...

Playlist: The Creativity Conference Podcast

Title: Episode 29

5. When you are ready, click Edit to return to the Edit mode.

Each platform has its own delivery standards, though in many cases you can choose a high-quality source file and let the platform do the work of producing more highly compressed alternative versions from that file. Adobe Stock, for example, supports a range of video formats and codecs. If you produce a high-quality UHD (3840×2160) file, the server can handle the rest.

Exchanging projects with other editing applications

Collaboration is an essential part of post-production. Premiere Pro can both read and write project files and footage files that are compatible with many of the top editing and color-grading tools on the market. This makes it easier to share creative work, even if you and your collaborators are using different editing systems.

Premiere Pro supports EDLs (Edit Decision Lists), OMF (Open Media Framework), AAF (Advanced Authoring Format), ALE (Avid Log Exchange), and XML (Extended Markup Language) import and export.

If you’re collaborating with an Avid Media Composer editor, you can use AAF as an intermediary, allowing the exchange of clip information, edited sequences, and some effects.

If you’re collaborating with an Apple Final Cut Pro editor, you can use XML as an intermediary similarly.

It’s straightforward to export an AAF or XML file from Premiere Pro; select a sequence you want to export, and either choose File > Export > AAF or choose File > Export > Final Cut Pro XML.

For more information about best practices when sharing creative work between applications, see *helpx.adobe.com/premiere-pro/using/exporting-projects-applications.xhtml*.

Now that you have explored the export options, make sure you are in Edit mode, choose File > Close Project, and click Yes if you are invited to save.

Final practice

Congratulations! You have now learned how to import media; organize projects; create sequences; add, modify, and remove effects; mix audio; work with graphics and titles; and output to share your work with the world.

Now that you have completed this book, you may want to practice. To make this easier, the media files for a few productions have been combined in a single project file so you can explore the techniques you have learned.

These media files can be used only for personal practice and are not licensed for any form of distribution, including YouTube or any other online distribution, so please *do not upload* any of the clips or the results of any editing work you do with them. They are not for sharing with the public; they are just for you to practice with privately.

Trying out other workspaces

Throughout these lessons, you have worked in just a few of the available workspaces. Now that you have tried out several tools and explored many of the available panels, you may want to try out other workspaces.

All the available workspaces are listed in the Workspaces menu .

Consider starting with the Essentials workspace, which includes several panels you may find useful for different aspects of post-production.

Using practice media

The Final Practice.prproj project file, in the Lessons folder, contains original clips for a few productions that you can use to practice the editing techniques you have learned in this book:

- **Andrea Sweeney NYC:** This is a short road-movie diary piece. Use the voice-over as a guide to practice combining 4K and HD footage in a single timeline. Experiment with panning and scanning in the 4K footage if you choose to use HD sequence settings.
- **Bike Race Multi-Camera:** This is simple multicamera footage. Experiment with live editing on a multicamera project.
- **Boston Snow:** This is a mixture of shots of Boston Common filmed in three resolutions. Use this media to experiment with Scale To Frame Size, Set To Frame Size, and keyframe controls to scale shots. Try using the Warp Stabilizer effect to lock one of the high-resolution clips and then scale up the clip and create a pan from one side to the other.
- **City Views:** This is a series of shots from the air and on land. Use these to experiment with image stabilization, color adjustment, and

visual effects.

- **Desert:** Use the diverse colors to try color correction tools and combine the footage with music to produce a montage.
- **Interview:** This footage is useful for experimenting with the transcription and captioning tools. There are two camera angles for the same interview. You’ll find an SRT file in the original media folder in case you want to practice importing captions.
- **Jolie’s Garden:** This consists of atmospheric tableaux shot at 96 fps, set to play back at 24 fps, and filmed for a new feature film social media marketing campaign. Use these clips to experiment with the Lumetri Color panel Looks and speed change effects.
- **Laura in the Snow:** This is media for a commercial shot at 96 fps, set to play back at 24 fps. Use this footage to practice color correction and grading adjustments. Experiment with ramping slow motion and masking both the video and the effects you apply.
- **Music:** Use these music clips to practice creating an audio mix and editing visuals to music.
- **She:** This is a series of stylized, mostly slow-motion clips that will be useful for experimenting with speed changes and visual effects.
- **TAS:** This is footage from a short film, *The Ancestor Simulation*. Use this footage to try color grading and, as the footage is in two aspect ratios, mixing and matching the shots.
- **Theft Unexpected:** This is footage from an award-winning short film directed and edited by the author. Use this footage to experiment with trimming, and practice adjusting timing in simple dialogue to achieve different comic and dramatic results, changing the actors’ performances.
- **Valley of Fire:** Try color adjustments to bring variation and visual interest, use speed changes to transform the experience of flying across a desert, and keyframe the rotating view to compensate for the movement and produce a static shot.

One of the best ways you can learn to edit with Premiere Pro is to create new projects of your own and explore new techniques. Non-linear editing means ongoing learning to continually improve your skills and expand your creativity.

Review questions

1 What's an easy way to export digital video if you want to create a self-contained file that can be played by most devices?

2 What social media-ready export options are available in Adobe Media Encoder?

3 What encoding format should you use when exporting a high-quality source file?

4 Must you wait for Adobe Media Encoder to finish processing its queue before working on a new Premiere Pro project?

Review answers

1 Click the Quick Export icon in the upper-right corner of the Premiere Pro interface.

2 There are built-in preset options for Vimeo, YouTube, X (formerly Twitter), and Facebook.

3 Use a format that supports high-quality codecs. A popular choice is QuickTime, which supports the ProRes codec. You could also choose DNxHR/DNxHD. It's important to check the required media specifications before exporting.

4 No. Adobe Media Encoder is a stand-alone application. You can work in other applications or even start a new Premiere Pro project while the render queue is processed.

Index

5:1 audio, 48, 278
8-bit video, 367
32-bit color effects, 336
180° video, 59, 82, 162
360° video, 14, 59, 82, 111, 162
    See also VR video

A

A/B timeline display, 187, 197, 198
accelerated effects, 336
action-safe area, 54, 110, 442–443
adaptive audio tracks, 48
additive color, 382, 406
adjustment layers
    applying effects using, 340–342, 359–360
    creating a color look using, 401–402
Adobe After Effects, 15, 77, 342–344, 460, 483
Adobe Audition, 15, 216, 292, 311, 326–327
Adobe Character Animator, 15
Adobe Color service, 437
Adobe Creative Cloud. *See* Creative Cloud

Adobe Dynamic Link, 15, 77
Adobe Express, 14
Adobe Fonts, 435, 460
Adobe Illustrator, 15, 80–81
Adobe Media Encoder, 14, 15, 16, 69, 470, 480–484
Adobe Photoshop. *See* Photoshop
Adobe Premiere Rush, 14, 17
Adobe Stock, 285–286, 485
aligning text, 439, 441–442
alpha channels
    explanation of, 406–407, 410
    rendering only, 481
    transparency adjustments, 415–416
amplitude, 284
anchor points, 246, 254, 255
animation
    of clip size changes, 258–259
    keyframe interpolation and, 260–263
    toggling on and off, 247, 251, 259
    See also Motion effect
Appearance preferences, 28
aspect ratios, 263–265, 473, 476
assembly edits, 145–146
audio, 12, 272–329
    Adobe Stock, 285–286
    characteristics of, 283–285
    clarity improvements, 316–317
    creative adjustments, 318
    dialogue adjustments, 307–325
    display format options, 53–54
    dragging without video, 157
    ducking applied to, 293–294
    editing in Audition, 326–327

  - effects for improving, 306–307, 319–325
  - Enhance Speech feature, 316
  - export options for, 478, 479
  - gain adjustments, 289–290
  - hardware preferences, 2
  - installing plug-ins for, 323
  - interface setup, 275–283
  - loudness options, 308–309
  - mix setting, 277–278
  - monitoring process, 283
  - noise reduction, 310, 311–314, 326–327
  - normalizing, 290–292
  - Pan and Balance controls, 289
  - recording voice-over, 83–84
  - repairing or cleaning up, 310–316, 326–327
  - retiming with Remix, 295–296
  - reverb reduction, 310, 315–316
  - samples and sample rate, 53, 280–281
  - sending to Audition, 292
  - speed changes and, 216, 218–219
  - split edits, 296–297
  - syncing with video, 116
  - track types, 47–48, 283
  - transitions, 203–205
  - volume adjustments, 287–292, 297–302, 318
  - waveforms, 281–282
- audio channels, 113–115, 278
- Audio Clip Mixer, 24, 277, 300–302
- audio effects, 306–307, 319–325, 333
  - Notch Filter effect, 324–325
  - Parametric Equalizer effect, 320–323
  - *See also* video effects
- audio meters, 278–279, 323
- Audio Mix setting, 277–278

Audio Track Mixer, 277
Audio workspace, 275–277
Audition, Adobe, 15, 216, 292, 311, 326–327
Auto Bezier interpolation, 261, 353
Auto Reframe effect, 263–265
Auto Save feature, 28–29, 57
automatic clip selection, 370

B

backdrop for text, 447
background noise removal, 326–327
backups, file, 28–29
Balance control, 289
Basic 3D effect, 268–269
Bezier interpolation, 261, 353
bins, 11, 22, 96–104
    creating new, 39, 96–97
    customizing, 106
    filtering content in, 93–95
    managing media in, 97–98
    naming/renaming, 97
    Project panel and, 79, 99
    Search Bin creation, 102
    view options for, 99–102
bit depth, 46, 336
Black & White effect, 337–338
blend modes, 411
    alpha channels and, 416
    combining tracks using, 414–415
    video effects and, 342
Brightness & Contrast effect, 348, 391–392

Button Editor, 111–112, 140, 276, 323, 458

C

captions, 461–465
    closed, 461–463
    converting to graphics, 465
    creating new, 463–465
    open, 461
Captions and Graphics workspace, 430
Center Align Text button, 439
chapter markers, 163
chroma key effects, 409, 417–421
Clamp Signal option, 376, 379
Clarity options, 316–317
Clip Name effect, 359–360
clipboard, 178
clips, 10, 36
    closing, 107
    conforming, 41, 134
    copying/pasting, 178
    disabling, 181
    dragging, 175–176
    finding, 92–96
    grouping, 174
    handles of, 188–189, 200–202
    importing, 72–75
    label colors for, 102–103
    linking and unlinking, 175
    markers added to, 166–167
    masking, 421–425
    media files vs., 64–65
    merging, 116

  - moving, 175–178
  - naming, 68, 103–104, 122, 128
  - nesting, 265
  - nudging, 176–177
  - playback speed, 106, 210, 212–219
  - playing, 105–106, 108–109
  - previewing, 73, 75
  - range selections, 125–128
  - rearranging, 177–178
  - removing, 178–181
  - replacing, 220–223
  - repositioning, 249–250
  - resizing, 255–257
  - rotating, 253–254
  - selecting, 171–173, 204
  - source, 344–347
  - splitting, 173–174
  - subclips created from, 129–130
  - volume adjustments, 297–302
- closed captions, 461–463
- codecs, 44, 476–478
- collaboration, 485
- color balance. *See* white balance
- color correction, 12, 364–403
  - color grading vs., 368, 384
  - Color workspace for, 369–370
  - Comparison view for, 384–386
  - creating a distinctive look through, 401–402
  - effects related to, 387–389, 399–400
  - exposure problems and, 389–394
  - guidelines for checking, 394
  - Lumetri Color panel for, 370–374, 395–399, 400
  - Lumetri Scopes panel for, 375–384
  - matching colors for, 386–387

  - Ultra Key effect and, 421
  - white balance and, 394–399
  - workflow for, 368–384
- color grading, 368, 384
- Color Picker, 434
- color space, 376
- color wheels, 372, 395–396
- Color workspace, 369–370, 388
- colors
  - label, 68, 102–103
  - matching, 386–387
  - primary and secondary, 382
  - text, 436–437
- comment markers, 163
- Comparison view, 384–386
- compositing, 404–427
  - alpha channels used in, 415–416
  - blend modes used in, 414–415
  - color keying greenscreen shots for, 417–421
  - Opacity effect used in, 411–415
  - partially masking clips for, 421–425
  - preprocessing footage for, 410
  - shooting videos for, 409
  - terminology related to, 410–411
- conforming process, 41, 84, 134
- Constant Gain crossfade, 203
- Constant Power crossfade, 203
- Continuous Bezier interpolation, 261, 353
- contrast, text, 437
- Copy Media option, 39
- copying/pasting
  - clip segments, 178
  - transition effects, 195–196

  - video effects, 339
- creative adjustments
  - for audio, 318
  - for color, 371
- Creative Cloud
  - components overview, 14–15
  - media file storage, 29, 57
- credits, 430, 458–459
- Cross Dissolve effect, 190–191, 195
- crossfade transitions, 203
- curves adjustments, 372, 397–399
- cuts, 186, 188

D

- DCP format, 480
- decibel (dB) scale, 279, 309
- DeEss audio option, 310
- default settings, 16, 38, 64
- DeHum audio option, 310–311, 325
- DeNoise effect, 312–314
- DeReverb effect, 315–316
- dialogue adjustments, 307–325
  - audio effects, 319–325
  - clarity options, 316–317
  - Creative Reverb effect, 318
  - Enhance Speech feature, 316
  - loudness settings, 308–309
  - noise reduction, 310, 311–314
  - repair or cleanup features, 310
  - reverb reduction, 310, 315–316
  - volume settings, 318
  - *See also* voice-overs

Dip to White transition, 191–192
Directional Blur effect, 338–339
Display Color Management feature, 367, 394
Drag Audio Only icon, 111, 157, 281
Drag Video Only icon, 111, 157
dragging clips, 175–176
drop shadows
  motion effects and, 266, 267–268
  text styles and, 448
drop zone, 26
dropped frames, 49–50
ducking audio, 293–294
duration
  audio transition, 203
  display showing, 93, 110
  pre-roll and post-roll, 238
  setting for still images, 148
  speed changes related to, 215–217, 219
  video transition, 193–194, 198, 202
Dynamic Link, 15, 77, 342
dynamic trimming, 237–238

E

Ease In/Out controls, 262–263, 353
Edit Original option, 81
editing
  multicamera, 13
  nonlinear, 10
  Text-Based, 223–227
  touchscreen, 107
  See also video editing
Editing workspace, 21, 122

edits
  assembly, 145–146
  delete, 180–181
  extract, 170–171, 180
  four-point, 145, 210–212
  insert, 142–144, 156–157
  lift, 179–180
  overwrite, 141–142, 169
  replace, 220–222
  ripple, 230–231
  rolling, 231–232
  slide, 233
  slip, 232–233
  split, 296–297
  three-point, 144–145
Effect Controls panel, 23
  audio effects, 307, 313, 319–325
  Brightness & Contrast controls, 348
  Filter Properties menu, 260
  Motion effect controls, 245–247, 248
  transition options, 187, 192, 197–199
  video effects, 337, 338, 346–347
  volume adjustments, 287–288
effects. *See* audio effects; video effects
Effects panel, 23, 334–335
  audio effects, 306–307, 319–325
  color-adjustment effects, 388–389
  finding effects in, 335, 337, 388
  video effects, 334–337
Ellipse tool, 431, 453
Enhance Speech feature, 316
Essential Graphics panel, 430–435
  Appearance options, 434, 444, 446, 447–448

  - Browse tab, 430, 459, 460
  - Edit tab, 430, 432, 438, 439, 440, 458
  - formatting text in, 438, 439, 440–441, 458
  - layers used in, 432–433, 454
  - rolling titles or credits in, 459
  - styling text in, 447–449
- Essential Sound panel, 306–318
  - clarity adjustments, 316–317
  - creative adjustments, 318
  - dialogue adjustments, 307–319
  - ducking options, 293–294
  - Effect Controls panel and, 313
  - Enhance Speech feature, 316
  - improving audio with, 306–307
  - loudness settings, 308–309
  - noise reduction, 310, 311–314
  - presets used in, 308, 319
  - reverb reduction, 310, 315–316
  - stock audio clips in, 285–286
  - volume adjustments, 318
- Exponential Fade transition, 203
- Export Settings dialog box, 482, 483
- exporting, 468–485, 488–489
  - aspect ratios for, 476
  - codecs chosen for, 476–478
  - collaborating and, 485
  - configuration settings for, 480–481
  - effects applied during, 479
  - file formats for, 473, 480, 485
  - full quality media files, 473–479
  - markers, 167
  - overview of options for, 471–472
  - queuing media files for, 481–483
  - quick option for, 24, 470–471

    sequences, 14
    single frames, 472–473
    to social media, 484–485
    source range for, 475
exposure fixes, 389–394
    overexposed images, 393–394
    underexposed images, 391–393
extract edits, 170–171, 180
eyedroppers, 396, 398–399, 418–419, 434

F

Feet + Frames options, 53
file formats
    choosing for export, 473, 480
    supported by Premiere Pro, 10, 71, 485
    video and audio, 44
files, project, 17, 18, 28, 36, 146
    See also media files
Fill color swatch, 434
Filter Bin Content box, 94–95
Final Practice project, 486–487
Find dialog box, 95–96
finding assets
    Effects panel for, 335, 337
    Project panel for, 92–96
    Timeline panel for, 167–168
Fit Clip dialog box, 210–211, 212
fixed effects, 244, 332–334, 339
Flash cue points, 163
flicker reduction, 246
folders, importing, 82

fonts
  factors for choosing, 436
  resizing in Project panel, 27, 100
  warning about missing, 460
four-point editing, 145, 210–212
frame rate, 37, 117, 213, 214–215
Frame Size options, 45
frames, 37
  display option, 53
  dropped, 49–50
  exporting single, 472–473
  stepping through, 109
Freeform view, 75, 92, 100, 112, 146–148
freeze frame, 200–201, 202
frequency, audio, 284
FX badges, 181, 212, 338, 351, 412, 413

G

gain adjustments, 289–290
gaps, finding/removing, 170–171
Gaussian Blur effect, 341, 399
GPU acceleration, 3, 13, 46, 51–52, 336
GPU cards, 3, 336, 357
graphics
  adding image files to, 454–455
  creating in Photoshop, 451
  importing into projects, 76–81
  layered Photoshop files as, 77–80
  Motion Graphics templates for, 58, 459–461
  saving Source, 450
  single-layer files as, 77
  upgrading captions to, 465

greenscreen, 411
  color keying shots made with, 417–421
  shooting videos using, 409
Grid view, 40, 72
grouping
  clips, 174
  panels, 21–22
guides and rulers, 456–458

H

H.264 codec, 471, 478, 480
handles, clip, 188–189, 200–202
hard drives
  finding media files on, 98–99
  typical setup for, 57
HDR video, 54, 376
headers, track, 83, 140
History panel, 24
Hold interpolation, 261, 353
Home screen, 16–17, 21
hover scrubbing, 105
HSL Secondary settings, 372
Hue Saturation Curves controls, 397–399

I

Icon view, 19, 75, 79, 99, 101
Illustrator program, 15, 80–81
image stabilization effect, 357–359
images. *See* still images
immersive video. *See* VR video

Import command, 67–68
Import Into Project option, 482
Import mode
    adding clips using, 72–73
    Favorite Location button, 76
    Media Browser panel vs., 65–67
importing, 62–87
    customizing media cache for, 84–86
    file formats supported for, 71
    folders and subfolders, 82
    Illustrator files, 80–81
    ingest process and, 58–59, 68–70
    layered Photoshop files, 77–79, 98
    media files, 64–75
    proxy file creation and, 68–70
    still image files, 76–81
    VR video, 82
In and Out points
    clearing or removing, 138
    options for setting, 110, 137, 180, 225
    Source Monitor, 123, 125, 126–128, 228
    three-point editing with, 144–145
    Timeline panel, 137–138
indexed MPEGs, 84
Info panel, 24
ingest settings, 58–59, 68–70
insert edits, 142–144, 156–157
installing Premiere Pro, 2
instances, clip, 103
interpolation methods, 260–261, 351–352, 353
interpretation
    audio channel, 114–115
    video footage, 117, 123, 214

J

J-cut edits, 296–297
jump cuts, 188

K

kerning text, 437–438
Key Color eyedropper, 418–419
keyboard shortcuts, 20, 29–31
    for adding markers, 166
    for In and Out points, 138, 180
    for nudging clips, 177
    for ripple edits, 231
    for toggling snapping, 175
    for trimming, 239
    for volume adjustments, 299
Keyboard Shortcuts dialog box, 194
keyframes, 12–13, 244, 260–263
    adding to clips, 350–351
    clip vs. track, 300
    Ease In/Out controls for, 262–263
    interpolation methods for, 260–261, 351–352, 353
    opacity adjustments with, 413–414
    Velocity graph for, 351, 353–354
    video effects using, 349–354
    volume adjustments with, 299–300
keying process, 310, 406, 409, 410
keywords, 460

L

label colors, 68, 102–103

layers
    Essential Graphics panel, 432–433, 454
    Photoshop, 77–79, 80, 98
L-cut edits, 297
leading, text, 440–441
Learning workspace, 24
Lens Flare effect, 350–354
lesson files, 3, 4–5, 18
letterboxing, 257
Libraries panel, 23, 57
lift edits, 179–180
Linear interpolation, 260, 353
linking/unlinking clips, 175
List view, 20, 39, 75, 79, 92, 99, 101
locking
    guides, 457
    tracks, 168–170
looped playback, 112, 127, 238, 323
loudness adjustments, 308–309, 479
Lumetri Color effect, 346–347, 389, 400
Lumetri Color panel, 369, 370–374
    adjusting settings in, 373–374
    built-in looks, 400, 401–402
    example of using, 374
    match color feature, 386–387
    Reset Effect button, 380
    sections and controls, 370–373
    white balance adjustments, 395–399
Lumetri Color presets, 389, 400
Lumetri Look effects, 479
Lumetri Scopes panel, 369, 375–384
    RGB parade, 383–384

- waveform display, 377–380
- YUV vectorscope, 380–383

LUT files, 371, 400

M

Maintain Audio Pitch option, 216

margins, safe, 110–111, 442–443

Mark In/Out buttons, 110, 125, 126, 137

markers, 163–167

- adding, 125, 164, 166
- clip, 166–167
- explanation of, 163
- exporting, 167
- sequence, 163–166
- types of, 163

Markers panel, 164, 166, 167

masking

- composited clips, 421–425
- text used for, 455–456
- video effects, 347–349

Match Frame command, 256

Match Sequence Preview Settings option, 474

Match Source settings, 471

matching colors, 386–387

mattes, 410–411

- creating custom, 422–423
- generating and adjusting, 420–421

MDS verification, 69

Media Browser panel, 23

- adding clips using, 73–75
- browsing inside projects with, 67
- folder imports using, 82

  - Import mode vs., 65–67
  - navigation features, 76
- media cache, 84–86
- Media Encoder, 14, 15, 16, 69, 470, 480–484
- media files
  - clips vs., 64–65
  - compressed, 409
  - exporting, 14, 473–479
  - Final Practice project, 486–487
  - guidelines for working with, 70–71
  - importing, 64–75
  - locating on drives, 98–99
  - managing in bins, 97–98
  - organizing, 90–104
  - proxy, 68–70
- Mercury Playback Engine, 13, 51–52, 159
- merging clips, 116
- metadata, 13, 106, 113, 478, 481
- Monitor panels. *See* Program Monitor; Source Monitor
- mono audio, 48, 278
- Morph Cut effect, 199–200
- Motion effect, 243, 244–259, 333
  - adjusting, 244–250
  - animating size changes, 258–259
  - options for working with, 245–250
  - position changes, 245, 250–251
  - reusing settings for, 251–253
  - rotation option, 245, 253–255
  - scale settings, 245, 255–257
- Motion Graphics templates, 58, 459–461
- motion paths, 261, 352
- moving clips, 175–178
- MPEG4 file format, 478

multicamera editing, 13
multichannel audio, 278
music tracks. *See* audio

N

narration. *See* voice-overs
nesting
    clips, 265
    sequences, 22, 133
network-based storage, 57
noise reduction, 310, 311–314, 326–327
nonlinear editor (NLE), 10
normalizing audio, 290–292, 479
Notch Filter effect, 324–325
nudging clips, 176–177
numeric keypad, 126

O

online content, 3–4
opacity, 407, 411, 413–414, 417
Opacity effect, 333, 411–415
open captions, 461
Optical Flow option, 219
organizing media, 90–104
    bins used for, 96–104
    Project panel for, 90–96
overcranking technique, 213
overexposed images, 393–394
overlay options, 111, 155, 479
overwrite edits, 141–142, 169

P

Pan control, 289
panel menu, 24, 27
panels, 20
    active, 124
    grouping, 21–22
    monitor, 23
    overview of, 22–24
    resizing, 25, 27
    stacked, 186
paragraph text, 443, 446–447
Parametric Equalizer effect, 306, 320–323
Paste Attributes dialog box, 252
Paused Resolution setting, 161–162
pauses, removing, 226
peak level, 309
Pen tool, 299, 431, 452–453, 454
performance
    optimizing, 2–3
    playback, 52
phase, audio, 284
photomontage, 194–195
Photoshop, 15
    creating graphics or titles in, 451
    importing layered files from, 77–79, 98
    working with files from, 80
pillarboxing, 257
pixel aspect ratio, 117
playback
    controls for, 108–109
    looping, 112, 127, 238, 323

    - Mercury Playback Engine and, 51–52
    - methods for performing, 105–106, 108–109
    - performance of, 52
    - real-time, 49–50, 51
    - rendered, 51
    - resolution for, 109, 159–162
    - speed controls for, 106, 210, 212–219
    - VR video, 162
- plug-ins, 323
- point text, 443–446
- Polygon tool, 431, 453
- Position control, 245, 250–251
- poster frames, 102
- preferences
    - introduction to setting, 27–29
    - resetting to default, 16, 38, 64
- Premiere Rush, 14, 17
- presets
    - audio effect, 308, 319
    - built-in, 354–355
    - file export, 471, 477, 480
    - Lumetri Color, 389
    - saving, 355–357
    - sequence, 43–44, 46
    - video effect, 339, 354–357
- previews
    - exporting files of, 482
    - Project panel, 92
    - thumbnail, 73, 75
- primary and secondary colors, 382
- Program Monitor, 23, 25, 152–158
    - adding clips with, 154–156
    - Comparison View, 384–386

  - customizing display of, 111–112
  - insert editing with, 156–157
  - overview of, 152–153
  - rulers and guides, 456–458
  - selecting layers in, 435
  - Source Monitor vs., 153
  - trimming in, 234–238
  - *See also* Source Monitor
- project files, 17, 18, 28, 36, 146
- Project panel, 22, 90–96
  - bins and, 79, 99
  - customizing, 91–92
  - editing video from, 127
  - features overview, 90–91
  - filtering bin content in, 93–95
  - finding assets in, 92–96
  - label colors in, 102–103
  - renaming items in, 104
  - viewing clips in, 75
- Project Settings dialog box, 49, 69
- project-based storage setup, 55, 56
- projects
  - browsing, 67
  - closing multiple, 465
  - creating new, 17, 38–41
  - managing, 13, 18
  - opening, 17, 67
- ProRes 422 HQ codec, 478
- proxy media, 59, 68–70, 216, 482

Q

- queuing exports, 481–483

Quick Export option, 24, 470–471

R

Rate Stretch tool, 218–219
Razor tool, 173
real-time playback, 49–50, 51
recording voice-overs, 83–84
Rectangle tool, 431, 453
regular trim, 228, 234
Remix tool, 295–296
rendering
    effects in a sequence, 51, 360
    maximum quality option for, 46, 481
    parts of sequences, 196
    real-time playback vs., 51
    and replacing, 361
replace edits, 220–222
Replace Footage command, 222–223
Reset button, 247, 259
Reset To Saved Layout command, 20
resolution, playback, 109, 159–162
resources, Adobe, 6–7
Reverb effect, 318
reverb reduction, 310, 315–316
Reverse Speed option, 216, 217
reviewing footage, 104–112
RGB color, 80, 367
RGB parade, 383–384
Ripple Edit tool, 201, 202, 230–231
ripple edits, 230–231, 234
rolling credits, 458–459

Rolling Edit tool, 198–199, 202, 231–232, 297
rolling edits, 231–232, 234
Rotation control, 245, 253–255, 445
rubber bands, 288, 297–298, 412, 413
rulers and guides, 456–458
rumble reduction, 310

S

safe margins display, 110–111, 442–443
saving, automated, 28–29, 57
Scale controls, 245, 255–257, 258, 444–445, 476
Scene Edit Detection, 131
scratch disks, 54–58
scrubbing, 84, 139, 288
SDR Conform option, 479
Search Bin creation, 102
second monitor, 124
segmentation markers, 163
Selection tool, 24, 133, 172, 173, 229, 230, 231
Send To Media Encoder button, 482, 483
sequences, 10, 12, 22, 36–37
    adding clips to, 154–156
    audio tracks in, 47–48
    configuring settings for, 37, 45–47
    conforming clips in, 41, 134
    creating new, 39, 133–134
    directly importing, 483
    explained, 133–134
    extract edits in, 170, 180
    finding/removing gaps in, 170–171
    insert edits in, 142–144, 156–157
    lift edits in, 179–180

  - markers added to, 163–166
  - matching settings in, 42–43, 474–475
  - nested, 22, 133
  - opening in Timeline, 134
  - overwrite edits in, 141–142
  - presets for, 43–44, 46
  - rearranging clips in, 177–178
  - removing clips from, 178–181
  - rendering parts of, 196
  - selecting clips in, 172, 204
  - setting up, 41–48
  - trimming in, 228–229
- Set Poster Frame button, 92
- shadow effects. *See* drop shadows
- shapes, creating, 452–454
- shot types, 128
- single-layer image files, 77
- single-sided transitions, 190–191
- slide edits, 233
- Slide tool, 199, 233
- slip edits, 232–233
- Slip tool, 232–233
- slow motion effect, 212–214, 215
- snapping feature, 20, 175–176
- social media uploads, 484–485
- Solarize effect, 354–355, 400
- Solo button, 279, 283
- Sort Icons menu, 101
- sound editing options. *See* audio
- source clip effects, 344–347
- Source Graphics, 450
- Source Monitor, 23, 25, 123–130

  - controls overview, 125
  - customizing display of, 111–112
  - In and Out points, 123, 125, 126–128, 228
  - opening clips in, 124
  - playback controls, 108–109
  - Program Monitor vs., 153
  - timecode display, 110
  - trimming in, 228
  - Zoom Level menu, 107–108
  - *See also* Program Monitor
- Source Range controls, 475
- spatial interpolation, 261, 352
- special effects. *See* audio effects; video effects
- speed controls, 106, 210, 212–219
- SpeedLooks effect, 401–402
- spill suppression, 421
- split edits, 296–297
- splitting clips, 173–174
- stacked panels, 186
- standard audio tracks, 48, 283
- stereo audio, 278
- still images
  - adding to graphics, 454–455
  - exporting single frames as, 472–473
  - importing into projects, 76–81
  - setting duration for, 148
  - *See also* graphics
- stock audio clips, 285–286
- storage setups, 54–58
- storyboards, 145–148
- strokes, text, 446, 447
- styles, text, 447–449
- Stylize effects, 400

subclips, 129–130
subtractive color, 382
sync locks, 168–169
synchronizing
    audio with video, 116
    replace edits, 221–222
    user settings, 31
system requirements, 1, 3
system-based storage setup, 55, 56

T

Team Projects, 17
television screens, 110–111, 367, 394
templates, Motion Graphics, 58, 459–461
temporal interpolation, 261, 352
text
    aligning, 439, 441–442
    captions as, 461–465
    colors for, 436–437
    contrast needed for, 437
    fonts for, 436
    kerning, 437–438
    leading for, 440–441
    lower-third, 430
    masking with, 455–456
    paragraph, 443, 446–447
    point, 443–446
    rolling, 458–459
    rotating, 445
    safe margins for, 442–443
    strokes added to, 446, 447
    styles for, 447–449

  - tracking, 439
  - *See also* titles
- Text panel, 223, 224–227, 446
- Text-Based Editing, 223–227
  - adding content using, 226–227
  - removing content using, 223–226
  - transcription features for, 223, 224
- three-point editing, 144–145
- thumbnails
  - navigating, 105–106
  - previewing clips from, 73, 75
  - resizing, 39, 72, 74, 101, 146
- Time Interpolation option, 481
- Time Remapping effect, 333
- time rulers, 19, 127, 138–139
- Time Tuner option, 479
- timecode display, 53, 110, 126, 127, 156, 382
- Timecode panel, 139–140
- Timeline panel, 22, 131–140
  - colored lines on, 50, 196
  - facts about, 131–132
  - features illustration, 131
  - finding clips in, 167–168
  - In and Out points, 137–138
  - locking tracks on, 168–170
  - opening sequences in, 134
  - showing clip names and labels in, 68
  - targeting tracks in, 136
  - time rulers, 19, 138–139
  - track headers, 140
  - trimming in, 228–229
- titles, 13, 430–450
  - appearance options for, 447–448

  - creating for video, 443–447
  - Essential Graphics panel for, 430–435
  - Photoshop for creating, 451
  - safe margins for, 442–443
  - stylizing text for, 447–449
  - typography essentials for, 436–443
  - *See also* text

title-safe area, 54, 110, 442–443

Toggle Animation button, 247, 251, 259

Toggle Track Output button, 79, 253, 445

tone mapping, 373, 479

Tools panel, 24, 133

touchscreen editing, 107

track headers, 83, 140

track locks, 170

Track Matte Key effect, 423–425

tracking
  - motion, 347, 349
  - text, 439

tracks, 12, 23
  - audio, 47–48, 283
  - explained, 135
  - locking, 168–170
  - selecting all clips on, 173
  - targeting, 136

transcoding files, 58, 69, 472

transcription feature, 39, 223, 224, 227, 463–464

Transform effect, 267–268

transitions, 184–207
  - audio, 203–205
  - copying/pasting, 195–196
  - customizing, 197–199
  - duration of, 193–194, 198, 202, 203

  - explanation of, 186–187
  - handles and, 188–189, 200–202
  - knowing when to use, 187–188
  - Morph Cut effect, 199–200
  - multiple-clip, 194–195
  - single-sided, 190–191
  - two-clip, 191–194
  - video, 189–196
- transparency, 407, 408, 415–416, 445
- trimming, 13, 199, 228–239
  - keyboard shortcuts for, 239
  - modifier keys to refine, 237
  - performing dynamic, 237–238
  - Program Monitor options for, 234–238
  - ripple edits for, 230–231
  - rolling edits for, 231–232
  - slide edits for, 233
  - slip edits for, 232–233
  - Source Monitor for, 228
  - Timeline panel for, 228–229
- Type tool, 431, 438, 443, 446
- typography essentials, 436–443

U

- Ultra Key effect, 418–421
- underexposed images, 391–393
- user settings, 31

V

- vector graphics, 80
- Vector Motion effect, 253–254

vectorscope display, 380–383

Velocity graph, 351, 353–354

video

- 8-bit, 367
- display format options, 53
- dragging without audio, 157–158
- interpreting footage from, 117, 123, 214
- reviewing, 104–112
- supported files types, 71
- syncing audio with, 116
- transition effects, 189–196
- VR, 14, 59, 82, 162

video editing

- advanced techniques of, 208–241
- delete edits in, 180–181
- extract edits in, 170, 180
- four-point, 145, 210–212
- insert edits in, 142–144, 156–157
- lift edits in, 179–180
- opening clips for, 124
- overwrite edits in, 141–142
- Program Monitor for, 152–158
- Project panel for, 127
- replacing clips/footage, 220–223
- second monitor used in, 124
- selecting parts of clips for, 125–128
- sequences used in, 133–134
- Source Monitor for, 123–130
- speed/duration changes, 212–219
- storage setups for, 54–58
- storyboards for, 145–148
- subclip creation in, 129–130
- three-point, 144–145
- Timeline panel for, 131–140

- tracks used in, 135–136
- transitions used in, 184–207
- trimming as, 228–239

video effects, 330–363
- adjustment layers for, 340–342, 359–360
- After Effects used for, 342–344
- applying to clips, 337–339
- Clip Name effect, 359–360
- color-adjustment, 387–389, 399–400
- copying/pasting, 339
- Effects panel, 334–335
- exporting media with, 479
- finding, 190, 335, 337, 388
- fixed, 244, 332–334, 339
- frequently used, 357–360
- keyframing, 349–354
- masking and tracking, 347–349
- Motion effect, 244–259
- presets for, 339, 354–357
- real-time playback of, 49–50, 51
- removing from video, 339
- rendering sequences with, 51, 360
- source clip, 344–347
- types of, 335–337
- Video Limiter effect, 388, 479
- Warp Stabilizer effect, 357–359
- *See also* audio effects

Video Limiter effect, 388, 479

video scopes, 375–376

vignette effect, 373

voice-overs
- adjusting audio for, 307–325
- recording, 83–84
- *See also* dialogue adjustments

volume adjustments, 287–292
    Audio Clip Mixer, 300–302
    Effect Controls panel, 287–288
    Essential Sound panel, 318
    gain adjustments, 289–290
    keyboard shortcuts for, 299
    keyframes for making, 299–300
    loudness settings and, 308–309
    normalizing audio, 290–292
    overall clip levels, 298
VR video
    360° video vs., 162
    display mode for, 14, 111
    importing, 82
    playing back, 162
    Premiere Pro support for, 59, 82

W

Warp Stabilizer effect, 357–359
watch folders, 483
waveform display
    audio waveforms, 281–282
    Lumetri Scopes panel, 377–380
Web Edition of book, 3, 4
web link markers, 163
white balance, 394–399
    curves for adjusting, 397–399
    Lumetri color wheels for, 395–396
    secondary color adjustment of, 396–397
workflow
    color adjustment, 368–384
    proxy media, 68–70

    - standard digital video, 11–12
- workspaces, 16, 20–27, 486
    - Audio workspace, 275–277
    - Captions and Graphics workspace, 430
    - Color workspace, 369–370, 388
    - customizing and saving, 25–27
    - Editing workspace, 21, 122
    - Learning workspace, 24
    - Text-Based Editing workspace, 224
- Workspaces menu, 21, 41, 186, 486

Y

- YC waveform display, 378
- YUV color, 337, 367
- YUV effects, 337
- YUV vectorscope, 380–383

Z

- Zoom control, 100, 101, 105, 109, 146
- Zoom Level menu, 107–108
- zooming in/out, 109, 142, 191

Glossary

Throughout this book, specialized terms will be used that relate to video and audio technology and to nonlinear post-production in particular. If you are learning to edit for the first time, several of these may be new or perplexing to you. This glossary is designed to help. Return to it when you need an explanation or a reminder as you explore the lessons in this book.

- **Alpha channel:** A nonvisible channel that defines the opacity of a pixel. This fourth channel is stored in a very similar way to the three visible color channels (see *RGB color*) and can be adjusted in a multitude of ways using manual adjustments or visual effects. When you create a greenscreen effect, for example, Premiere Pro adjusts the alpha channel level for your selected pixels to allow a background to be visible.
- **Aspect ratio:** This describes the shape of an image, expressed as the ratio of Width:Height. 1:1 is square. 16:9 is standard widescreen. Regardless of the size of the screen or the resolution of an image, the frame will have a particular aspect ratio. Sequences have an aspect ratio, and so do pixels. Most pixels are square, but there are some video formats that use non-square pixels.
- **Bin:** Bins look and work very much like folders in the Finder (macOS) or Explorer (Windows). However, they exist only in the Premiere Pro project file you are working on.
- **Bit depth:** The number of possible steps from completely dark to fully bright (for example, from no blue at all to fully blue) is set by the bit

depth for your media. The number used to describe bit depth is literally the number of bits (0s and 1s) that are being used to record the information.

Bit depth produces scales that are multiples of 2, doubling with each added bit.

Most video is 8 bit, which allows 256 steps from completely dark to fully bright. 10-bit video is 2 bits more than 8 bit or 1,024 steps (256 doubled twice). 16-bit video allows a staggering 65,536 steps.

These scales always need to begin at 0, so the actual ranges are 0–255, 0–1,023, and 0–65,535.

Increased bit depth makes it easier to maintain high-quality visuals when adjusting levels using color correction techniques and avoid posterizing the image, which produces visible bands of color.

- **Clip:** This is a link (think of an alias or shortcut) to a media file (which might be video, a graphic, audio, or any other kind of media). Clips look and behave as if they were the media file they link to, and they display information that relates to the media file, such as image size and frame rate (fps).
- **Codec:** This is short for *coder/decoder*. This is a way of storing digital information (like video and audio), which often allows the data to be stored in a more compact form than the original. Like shorthand writing, this takes less space but requires more effort to write and, later, to read.
- **Compression:** This word has two different meanings: First, it’s a reduction in the size of video and audio files by storing the information using a codec (coder/decoder). Second, it’s a reduction in the difference between the loudest and quietest parts of sound. This allows the overall sound level to seem louder.
- **Cut:** In a sequence, a cut is the moment one clip ends and another begins. The term comes from celluloid film editing, where the film is literally cut. A cut is technically a form of *transition* and is the most common kind.

- **Effect:** This is a process that modifies the appearance of images or the quality of sound. Video and audio effects are used to change the shape of an image, to make visuals brighter or darker, to animate the position of images on the screen, to make audio louder or quieter, or to apply any number of other adjustments.
- **Export:** After your clips are combined in a *sequence* in Premiere Pro, you must then *export* that sequence to share the creative work with the world in the form of a new media file. When you export, you choose the format, codec, and settings for the file that will be created.
- **Footage:** Originally this was a film term used to indicate recording duration because film is measured in feet. This now refers to any original video material and is usually described in hours and minutes—rather than the file size.
- **Format:** Sometimes this word is used to refer to a media file type (AVI, MOV, MP4, etc.), but it actually refers to the specific frame size (image size), frame shape, pixel shape, and frame rate (measured in frames per second).
- **Frame:** This means one whole still image. Video is made up of a series of frames that play fast enough to appear to be a continuous moving image. The number of frames playing per second is called the *frame rate*, measured in frames per second (fps).
- **High Dynamic Range (HDR):** The brightness of a screen can be measured in several ways; a unit commonly used for this purpose is the *nit*. Historically, the average home TV screen might have had a maximum brightness of around 200 nits, while a cinema screen might reach only 100 nits.

  In basic terms, this can be considered to be a measure of the total range between the darkest level that will still show detail and the brightest level. The range between the two is called the *Dynamic Range*. A range of around 0–200 nits is considered to be *Standard Dynamic Range*, or *SDR*.

  As it became possible to produce much brighter screens, a new term was defined: *High Dynamic Range*, or *HDR*. This describes a range of technologies for cameras, editing systems, delivery standards, and screens that can display up to 10,000 nits.

To give a sense of the difference, most home TV sets that are described as HDR have a dynamic range of around 1,000 nits. This means you can see detail in the shadows of a scene at night and make out the color and image details of fireworks in the sky.

- **Import:** To bring a media file into a Premiere Pro project, you *import* it. No data is really moved into the project file. Instead, Premiere Pro creates links (called *clips*) that contain information about the media, and it’s those links that you combine when editing.
- **Keyframe:** A keyframe marks the point in time where you specify the value of a property, such as spatial position, opacity, or audio volume. To create a change in a property over time, you set at least two keyframes: one keyframe for the value at the beginning of the change and another keyframe for the value at the end of the change. Premiere Pro automatically changes the values over time between the keyframes—a process called *interpolation*.
- **Look Up Table (LUT):** These are files that store precise color adjustments. You can apply LUTs in several ways in Premiere Pro, including by using the menu at the top of the Lumetri Color panel. LUTs are a convenient way to store information about color adjustments that you intend to re-use or share.
- **Media:** This is your original and newly created content. This could be video files, graphics, photos, animation, music, voice-over, or audio special effects (like a sword clash or explosion).
- **Metadata:** Metadata is information about information. There are many forms of metadata, but they always include information about something. For example, metadata associated with a video file might include the camera system used to record it or the name of the camera operator.
- **Pixel:** This is a single dot, or point of light. Pixels have color values that are often (but not always) measured as a combination of red, green, and blue colors.

- **Project:** This is the container for all of your clips and sequences. A project is stored as a file that contains your creative work.
- **Proxy file:** A media file that is used, usually temporarily as a low resolution, small file size replacement for a full quality media file. The small file size and low resolution makes proxy files easier to play back (improving playback performance) and to transport (useful when collaborating with other editors remotely). Proxy files are often used when the original source media is such high resolution and at such a high file size that it's difficult for the editing system to play smoothly.
- **RGB color:** There are three color channels that combine to produce a full-color video image. While there are several arrangements of colors that can be used, the most commonly known combination is Red, Green, and Blue. When combined, these three monochromatic channels can produce the full range (or *gamut*) required to produce color images.
- **Sequence:** This is a series of clips, combined in a particular order, often in multiple layers. Most of the creative work you will perform in Premiere Pro will be on clips in sequences.
- **Timecode:** This is a system for measuring time in recorded media. Its units are hours, minutes, seconds, and frames (the number of frames per second will vary depending on the media). Professional video recording systems always record timecode information.

  NTSC broadcast television uses a system that drops frames from the timecode to compensate for the slightly slower playback during broadcast. This is called *drop frame timecode* and is displayed in Premiere Pro with semicolons as dividers. If you are delivering content for broadcast television, you will use an NTSC frame rate, such as 29.97 fps, in preference to a non–drop frame timecode frame rate, such as 30 fps.

  Drop frame timecode looks like this: 00;15;07;19.

  Non–drop frame timecode looks like this: 00:15:07:19.

  The difference is subtle but important.

- **Timeline:** Premiere Pro has a Timeline panel, in which you will view and edit sequences. Editors often use the words *timeline* and *sequence* interchangeably. For example, “On the timeline” and “in the sequence” have the same meaning. “A timeline” also means “a sequence.” In this book, we generally use the terms *Timeline panel* or *sequence* for clarity.
- **Transition:** This is the change that occurs when one clip ends and another begins. The most common type of transition between two clips is a *cut*. However, there are many transition effects available to add visual interest or enhance storytelling. A dip to black, for example, usually tells the viewer some time has passed. Transitions are part of a film language that audiences have a nuanced understanding of.
- **Tone Mapping:** A (usually automated) system for converting color and luminance values between one color system and another. In Premiere Pro, Tone Mapping is used to convert high dynamic range footage to standard dynamic range.
- **Vector-based graphics:** Images are usually made up of lots of dots, called *pixels*. The more pixels you have (the more visual resolution), the clearer the image usually appears. Pixel-based visuals are described as *raster*, or *bitmap*, images.

  When you increase the size of a rasterized image by scaling it up, the dots get bigger, which can produce softening or even jagged edges on organic shapes and curves.

  Vector graphics are not made up of pixels. Instead, they use a mathematical method to describe the image. You can display vector graphics at any resolution (any size), and they will always be perfectly sharp because they are drawn newly every time. This way, for example, a circle is a circle at any resolution (it won’t turn into a blocky shape if you scale it up in size). Graphics created in Premiere Pro are vector-based, while imported vector-based graphics are treated as pixels.
- **VR video:** A 360° video camera system produces a sphere of video that can be viewed from the inside. With a virtual reality headset, viewers can turn to look in any direction—in 360 degrees. Though this

type of video is technically *not* true virtual reality, the need for a VR headset to enjoy it means that many filmmakers refer to it simply as VR video.

Premiere Pro has a viewing mode and dedicated visual effects for VR. In addition, you can edit via a VR headset to review content more easily and quickly.

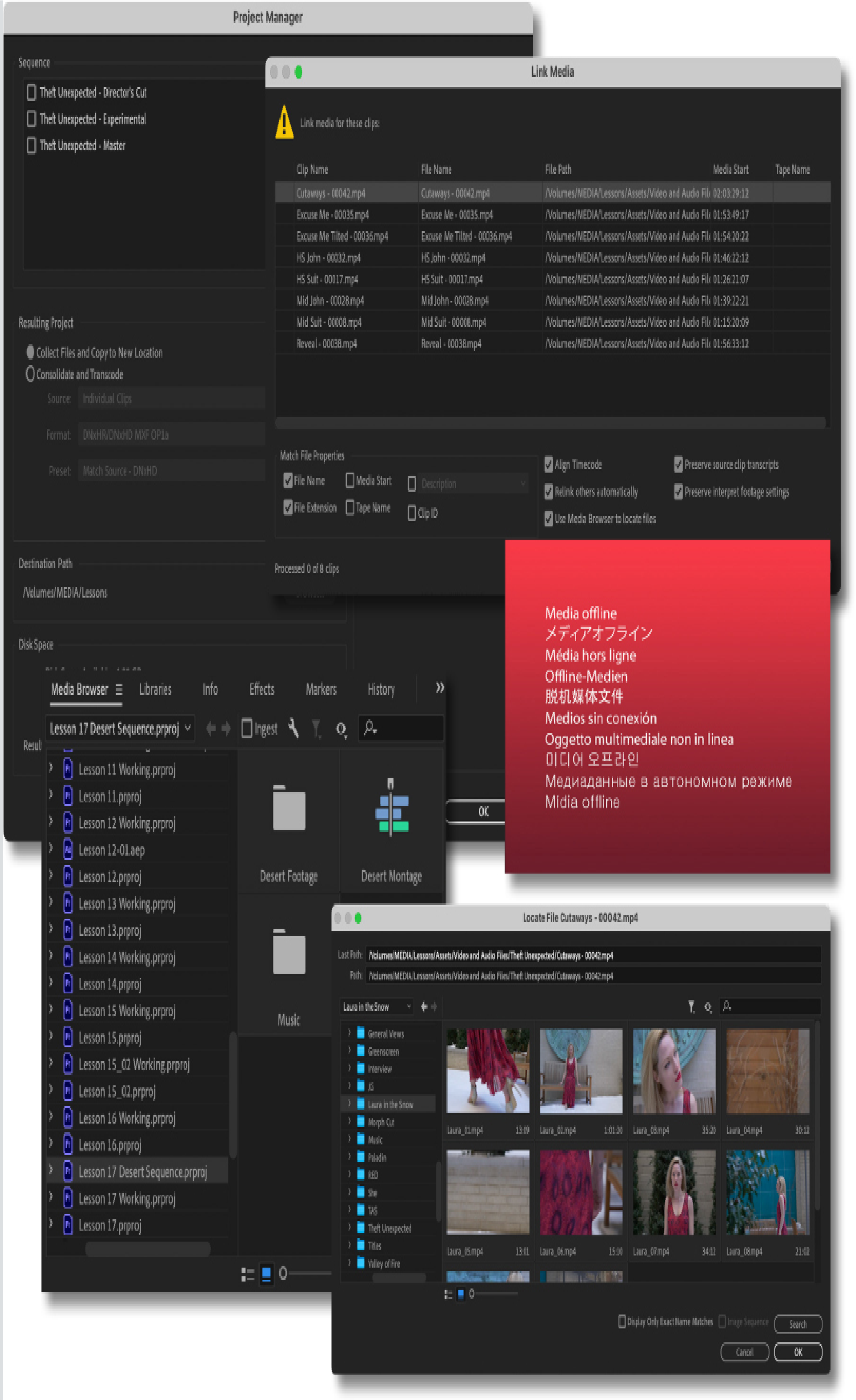
17 Managing Your Projects

Lesson overview

In this lesson, you’ll learn how to do the following:

- Work in the Project Manager.
- Import projects.
- Manage collaboration.
- Manage your hard drives.

This lesson will take about 60 minutes to complete. To get the lesson files used in this chapter, download them from the web page for this book at *peachpit.com/PremiereProCIB2024*. For more information, see “Accessing the lesson files and Web Edition” in the “Getting Started” section at the beginning of this book. Store the files on your computer in a convenient location.



Project Manager

Sequence
☐ Theft Unexpected - Director's Cut
☐ Theft Unexpected - Experimental
☐ Theft Unexpected - Master

Resulting Project
● Collect Files and Copy to New Location
○ Consolidate and Transcode
Source: Individual Clips
Format: DNxHR/DNxHD MXF OP1a
Preset: Match Source - DNxHD

Destination Path
/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons

Link Media

Link media for these clips:

Clip Name	File Name	File Path	Media Start	Tape Name
Cutaways - 00042.mp4	Cutaways - 00042.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	02:03:29:12	
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4	Excuse Me - 00035.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:53:49:17	
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4	Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:54:20:22	
HS John - 00032.mp4	HS John - 00032.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:46:22:12	
HS Suit - 00017.mp4	HS Suit - 00017.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:26:21:07	
Mid John - 00028.mp4	Mid John - 00028.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:39:22:21	
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4	Mid Suit - 00008.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:15:20:09	
Reveal - 00038.mp4	Reveal - 00038.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:56:33:12	

Match File Properties
☑ File Name ☐ Media Start ☐ Description
☑ File Extension ☐ Tape Name ☐ Clip ID
☑ Align Timecode
☑ Relink others automatically
☑ Use Media Browser to locate files
☑ Preserve source clip transcripts
☑ Preserve interpret footage settings

Processed 0 of 8 clips

Media offline
メディアオフライン
Média hors ligne
Offline-Medien
脱机媒体文件
Medios sin conexión
Oggetto multimediale non in linea
미디어 오프라인
Медиаданные в автономном режиме
Mídia offline

Locate File Cutaways - 00042.mp4

Last Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Theft Unexpected/Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Theft Unexpected/Cutaways - 00042.mp4

Disk Space
Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History
Lesson 17 Desert Sequence.prproj
Ingest
Lesson 11 Working.prproj
Lesson 11.prproj
Lesson 12 Working.prproj
Lesson 12-01.aep
Lesson 12.prproj
Lesson 13 Working.prproj
Lesson 13.prproj
Lesson 14 Working.prproj
Lesson 14.prproj
Lesson 15 Working.prproj
Lesson 15.prproj
Lesson 15_02 Working.prproj
Lesson 15_02.prproj
Lesson 16 Working.prproj
Lesson 16.prproj
Lesson 17 Desert Sequence.prproj
Lesson 17 Working.prproj
Lesson 17.prproj
Desert Footage
Desert Montage
Music
OK
Laura in the Snow
General Views
Greenscreen
Interview
JS
Laura in the Snow
Morph Cut
Music
Paladin
RED
She
TAS
Theft Unexpected
Titles
Valley of Fire
Laura_01.mp4 13:09
Laura_02.mp4 1:01:20
Laura_03.mp4 35:20
Laura_04.mp4 30:12
Laura_05.mp4 13:01
Laura_06.mp4 15:10
Laura_07.mp4 34:12
Laura_08.mp4 21:02
Display Only Exact Name Matches
Image Sequence
Search
Cancel
OK

Manage, archive, copy, and share your media and projects with a few simple steps.

Starting the lesson

When you start out creating projects with Premiere Pro, you may not feel the need to invest time in staying organized. Perhaps you’re working on your first project now, and if that’s the case, it’s going to be nice and easy to find it on your storage drive.

Once you start working on multiple projects, staying organized gets more complicated. You might use multiple media assets taken from multiple storage locations. You’ll have multiple sequences, each with its own particular structure, and you’ll be generating multiple graphics. You may also have multiple effect presets and Motion Graphics templates. All in all, you’ll need quite a filing system to keep all these project elements organized.

The solution is to create an organizational system for your projects and to have a plan in place for archiving those projects that you might want to work on again.

The thing about systems for organization is that they’re usually easier to use if they exist before you need them. Look at this idea from the other direction: If you don’t have an organizational system in the moment you need it—when you have a new video clip to put somewhere, for example—you might be too busy being creative to think about things such as names and file locations. Consequently, it’s common for projects to end up with similar names, stored in similar locations, with a mix of files that don’t go together. Don’t allow yourself to end up with an Untitled Project Final Final Final 27.prproj!

The solution is simple: Prepare your organizational system in advance. Map it out with pen and paper if it helps, and work out the journey you’ll take, starting with acquiring your source media files, moving through your edit, and finishing with output, archiving, and beyond.

In this lesson, you’ll learn about features in Premiere Pro that help you stay in control, without losing focus on what matters most—your creative work.

Then you'll learn about some ways to work as part of a team.

1. Open Lesson 17.prproj in the Lessons folder.
2. Save the project as Lesson 17 `Working.prproj`.
3. From the Workspaces menu, choose Editing. Then reset the workspace by choosing Reset to Saved Layout from the same menu.

● Note

To ensure that the tools function and the defaults are set exactly as described in this lesson, reset the Premiere Pro preferences by holding the Option/Alt key while launching the application and then clicking Continue in the Reset Options dialog box.

Using the File menu

The File menu gives you access to the project settings and to the Project Manager. You can use the Project Manager in several ways to prepare a project for archiving or for collaborative editing workflows.

Using the File menu commands

There are some important File menu options for project and media management.

- **Link Media:** If you have clips that have become unlinked, use this option to open the Link Media dialog box and relink the media (see the next section).

  Premiere Pro will automatically invite you to relink clips that are offline when you open a project or clips that go offline while you are working on the project. If you previously set the clips as offline manually, select Link Media to trigger the relinking process.

  ▶ Tip

  The commands Link Media and Make Offline are also available directly in the Project panel when you right-click selected clips.

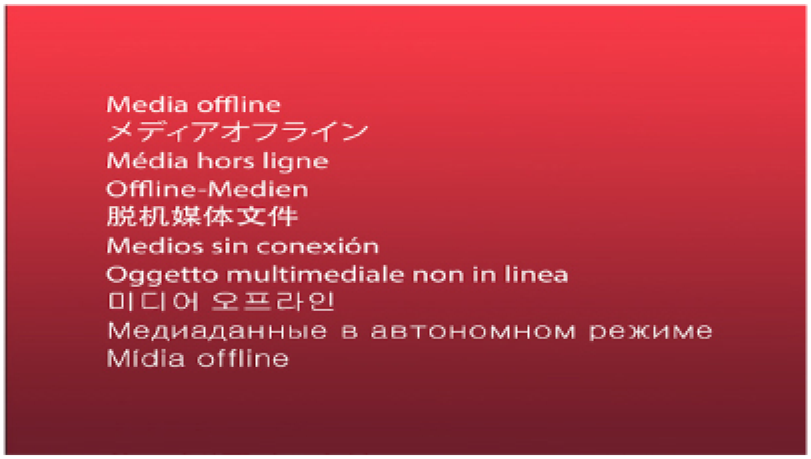
- **Make Offline:** You can deliberately break the connection between clips in the Project panel and their media files (see the next section).
- **Project Settings:** You can change any of the project settings at any time. Always save and close the current project before moving its PRPROJ file to a new location. Alternatively, choose File > Save As to create a separate project file. To make a separate backup copy of your current project while continuing to work on the original file, choose File > Save A Copy.
- **Project Manager:** This automates the process of backing up your project and associated media files and removing unused media files (described later in this lesson).
- **Export:** You'll use this menu to export media files, markers, and captions. If you choose to export media, Premiere Pro will switch to Export mode.

Making a clip offline

The benefit of making clips offline is that they can be reconnected with new media. If you've been working with low-resolution media, this means you can reimport alternative media files at a higher quality.

The words *offline* and *online* have different meanings in different contexts. In the language of Premiere Pro, they refer to the relationship between master clips in the Project panel and the media files they link to.

- **Online:** The clip is linked to a media file.
- **Offline:** The clip is not linked to a media file.

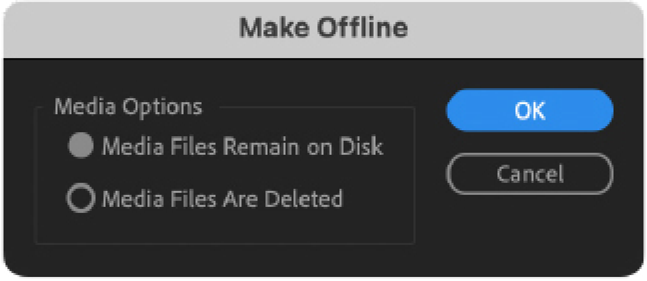


Media offline
メディアオフライン
Média hors ligne
Offline-Medien
脱机媒体文件
Medios sin conexión
Oggetto multimediale non in linea
미디어 오프라인
Медиаданные в автономном режиме
Mídia offline

When a clip is offline, you can still edit it into a sequence, and even apply effects to it, but you won’t be able to see any video. Instead, you’ll see a colorful, multilingual “Media offline” warning.

In almost all operations, Premiere Pro is nondestructive. This means that no matter what you do with the clips in your project, nothing will happen to the original media files. Making a clip offline presents a rare exception to this important rule.

If you right-click one or more selected clips in the Project panel and choose Make Offline, you’ll have two options:



Make Offline

Media Options
● Media Files Remain on Disk
○ Media Files Are Deleted

- **Media Files Remain On Disk:** This unlinks the clip from the media file and leaves the media file untouched. The clip goes offline. You can relink the clip to bring it back online.
- **Media Files Are Deleted:** This deletes the media file. The clip goes offline, *and* it cannot be relinked because there is now no media file to link to.

▶ Tip

You can also select clips in the Project panel and choose File > Make Offline.

Working with low-resolution media is sometimes desirable if you have limited disk storage or a large number of clips. When your editing work is complete and you’re ready for fine finishing, you can replace your low-resolution, small-file-size media with the selected high-resolution, large-file-size media.

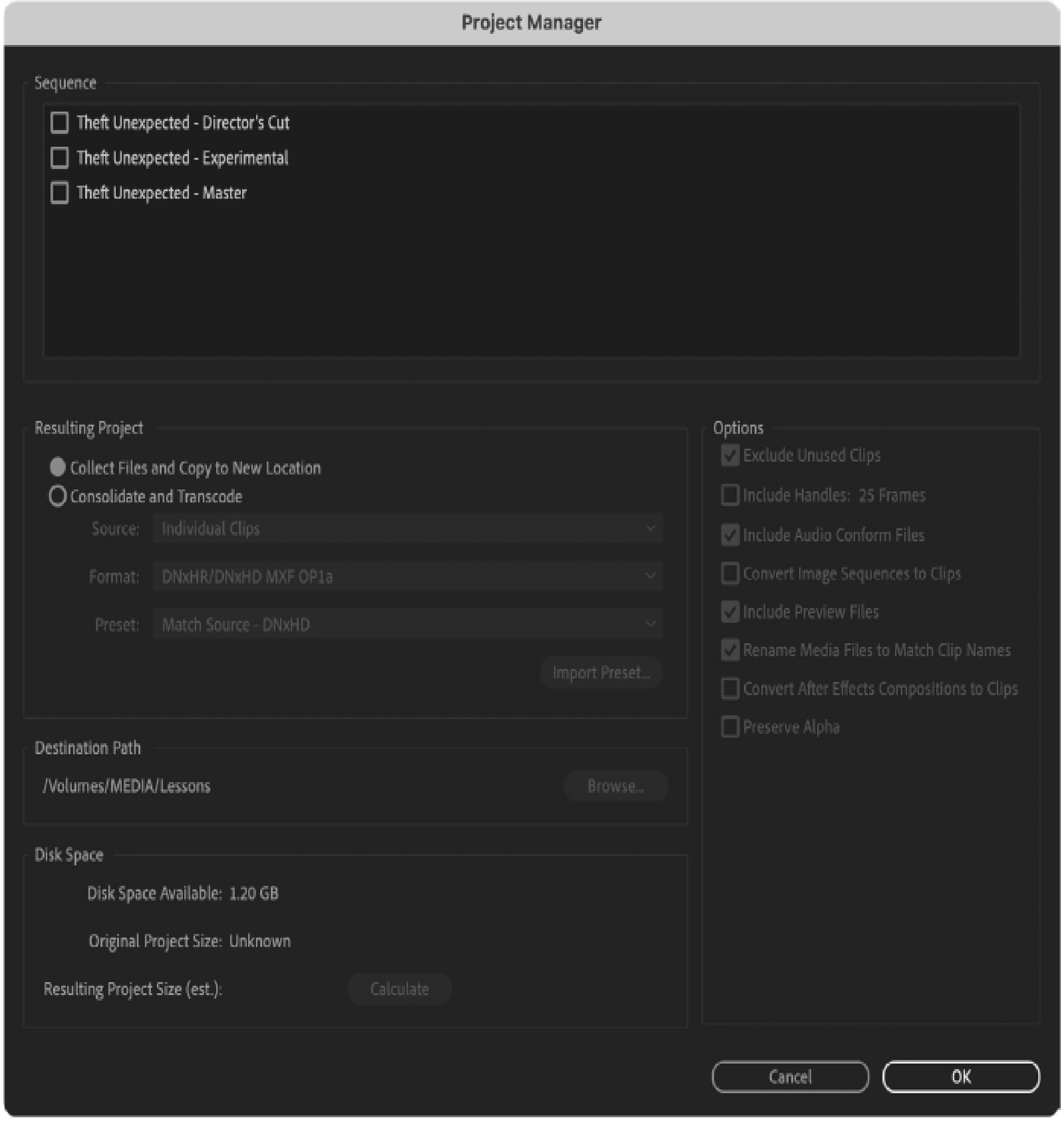
The proxy editing workflow handles this process well (see Lesson 3, “Importing Media”), but there will still be occasions when you want to set one or more particular clips to be offline to link to new media files. For example, you may receive temporary versions of animation content to incorporate into a sequence, and then receive final versions to replace them with.

Be careful with the Make Offline option, though! If you choose the option to delete your media, it’s gone—as in really gone, nowhere to be found, not even in the system Trash or Recycle Bin!

Using the Project Manager

The Project Manager provides several options that automate the process of *consolidating* your project. This means gathering together (collecting) all the media files you’ve used in one or more sequences.

Open the Project Manager now by choosing File > Project Manager.



Project Manager

Sequence

☐ Theft Unexpected - Director's Cut
☐ Theft Unexpected - Experimental
☐ Theft Unexpected - Master

Resulting Project

● Collect Files and Copy to New Location
○ Consolidate and Transcode

Source: Individual Clips
Format: DNxHR/DNxHD MXF OP1a
Preset: Match Source - DNxHD

Options

☑ Exclude Unused Clips
☐ Include Handles: 25 Frames
☑ Include Audio Conform Files
☐ Convert Image Sequences to Clips
☑ Include Preview Files
☑ Rename Media Files to Match Clip Names
☐ Convert After Effects Compositions to Clips
☐ Preserve Alpha

Destination Path

/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons

Disk Space

Disk Space Available: 1.20 GB
Original Project Size: Unknown
Resulting Project Size (est.):

Managing your project in this way is useful if you intend to archive your project or if you want to share your work. By using the Project Manager to gather all your media files, you can be confident nothing will be missing—or offline—when you hand the project over to colleagues or move it into storage for archiving.

The result of using the Project Manager is a new, separate project file and new copies of the associated media files. Because the new project file is independent of your current project, you should double-check it before deleting your original media or project file. It’s ideal to check the new project on a different editing system, just to be certain you have all the files you need. Make sure all the clips you expect are in the Project panel and all media is online.

To configure the Project Manager, select the sequences you want to include in the new project in the Sequence section.

Next, choose one of the options in the Resulting Project section:

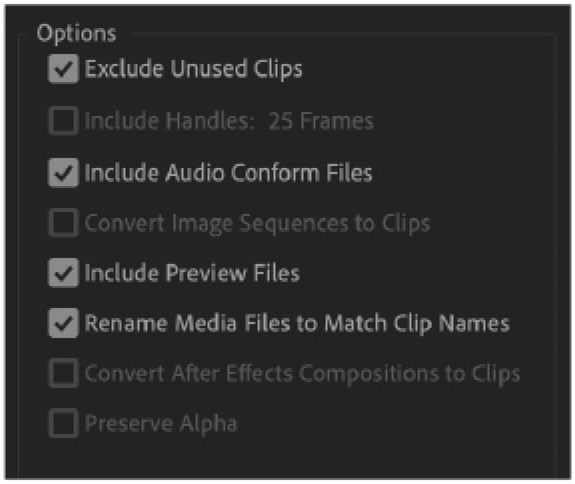
- **Collect Files And Copy To New Location:** Duplicate the media files used in your selected sequences, and save them in a location you choose, as described in “Collecting files and copying them to a new location.”
- **Consolidate And Transcode:** Create new versions of the media files based on just the parts of clips included in those sequences (the *trimmed* clips). When this option is selected, several menus become available. These menus, described in “Consolidating and transcoding,” allow you to choose from a range of formats and codecs.

● **Note**

Not all media formats can be trimmed. If you create a trimmed project that has media of this kind, the Project Manager creates copies of the full original clips.

Depending on your selection, further options may become available:

- **Exclude Unused Clips:** With this option selected, the new project will include only clips that are used in the sequences you selected at the top of the dialog box.



Options
☑ Exclude Unused Clips
☐ Include Handles: 25 Frames
☑ Include Audio Conform Files
☐ Convert Image Sequences to Clips
☑ Include Preview Files
☑ Rename Media Files to Match Clip Names
☐ Convert After Effects Compositions to Clips
☐ Preserve Alpha

- **Include Handles:** If you’re creating a trimmed project using the Consolidate And Transcode option, this includes additional frames. The extra frames give you the flexibility to trim and adjust the timing of your edits later—a great idea that is usually worth the extra storage required.
- **Include Audio Conform Files:** This includes the audio conform files that are already with your project, so Premiere Pro won’t need to conduct analysis of your audio again. Premiere Pro will re-create these files automatically as required, but choosing this option can save time waiting for the processing to complete. This is particularly noticeable on larger projects.
- **Convert Image Sequences To Clips:** If you have imported one or more image sequences as clips, this option converts them to regular video files. This is a useful option because it simplifies file management. It might also improve playback performance.
- **Include Preview Files:** If you’ve already rendered your effects, you can include the preview files with your new project so you won’t need to render them again. Like the audio conform files, these aren’t necessary but can save you a considerable amount of time waiting for complex effects to render.
- **Rename Media Files To Match Clip Names:** As the name implies, this option renames the new copies of your media files to match the names of the clips in your project (useful if you have renamed clips to make them easier to find). Consider carefully if you want to use this option, because it can make identifying the original source media difficult.
- **Convert After Effects Compositions To Clips:** Choose this option to replace dynamically linked After Effects compositions with rendered video files. This option can be helpful because the Project Manager is unable to collect dynamically linked After Effects compositions or the media files associated with them.

  This is a good reason to stay extra organized when working with After Effects and Premiere Pro together. See “Collecting files and copying them to a new location” for more information on collecting files.

- **Preserve Alpha:** If you are transcoding your footage, you can choose to include alpha channel information so transparent areas will stay transparent. This will lead to larger media files but means retaining valuable picture information. Be sure to select this option if you have chosen to convert After Effects compositions to clips. If your sequence includes dynamically linked After Effects compositions with transparency, the alpha channel information will be used.

In the Destination Path section of the dialog box, choose a location for your new project and media files.

Finally, click Calculate in the Disk Space section to see an estimate of the total storage space needed for your new project, including the copies of the media files.

Provided the estimated project size will fit in the available disk space, you can click OK to create your new consolidated project.

Managing media with Dynamic Link

Dynamic Link allows Premiere Pro to use After Effects compositions as imported media while they are still editable in After Effects. For Dynamic Link to work, Premiere Pro must have access to the After Effects project file that contains the composition, and After Effects must have access to the media files used in the composition.

While working on a single computer with both applications installed and your media assets located on internal storage, this is achieved automatically.

If you use the Project Manager to collect files for a new Premiere Pro project, it will not include copies of dynamically linked files. The clips will be in the project, but they will be offline. Duplicated audio files created when sending sequences to Adobe Audition are also not included.

Make copies of any media files associated with your project in Finder (macOS) or Windows Explorer (Windows). This is easy to do: Just copy the folder and include it with the assets already collected. In After Effects, choose File > Dependencies > Collect Files to automate this process.

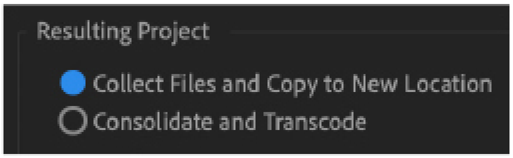
Collecting files and copying them to a new location

Perhaps your media files are in several locations in your storage system. Or perhaps you’re sharing your work with another editor. Perhaps you’re taking an edit on the road. You may not need every clip incorporated into your newly created project.

Selecting Collect Files And Copy To New Location creates perfect copies of your original, complete media files in a new single location. If you select the Exclude Unused Clips option, only clips used in the selected sequences will be included.

There’s no need for you to go right through the process with this Lesson 17 Working project, but let’s take a look at the options you’d select to collect all the files used in your selected sequences to a new, single location.

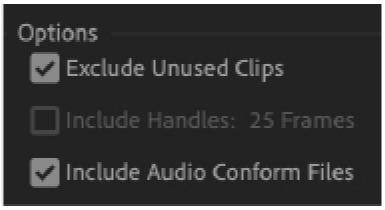
1. If it’s not already open, choose File > Project Manager.
2. Select the sequences you want to be included in your new project.
3. Select Collect Files And Copy To New Location.

   Resulting Project

   ● Collect Files and Copy to New Location
   ○ Consolidate and Transcode

4. Select Exclude Unused Clips.

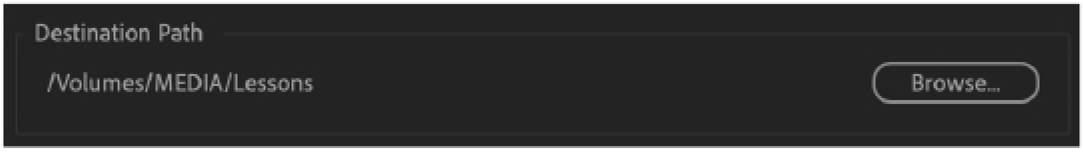
   Options
   ☑ Exclude Unused Clips
   ☐ Include Handles: 25 Frames
   ☑ Include Audio Conform Files

   If you want to include every clip in your project, regardless of whether they are used in a sequence, deselect this option. Deselect this option if you are creating a new project to organize your media files a little better—perhaps because you imported them from lots of different locations.

   When the new consolidated project is created, every media file used in the selected sequence(s) will be copied to the new project location.

5. Decide if you want to include Audio Conform Files to save Premiere Pro from having to analyze the audio files again for the new project.
6. Decide whether you want to include existing preview files to save you from having to re-render effects in the new project.
7. Decide whether you want to rename your media files to match their clip names. Generally, it’s better to leave your media files with their original names. However, if you’re producing a project to share with another editor, it might be helpful for them to identify the media files if they are renamed. If you are sure you will never need to reference your original source media again, renaming your clips is a great idea.

8. Click Browse, and choose a location for your new project file and associated media.



9. Click Calculate to see an estimate of the total new size of your project, based on your selections. Then click OK.

Premiere Pro will create copies of the original files in a single location. If you intend to create an archive of your entire original project, this is the way to do it.

Consolidating and transcoding

Premiere Pro can transcode (convert) all the media in your project to a new format and codec in a single step if you select Consolidate And Transcode in the Project Manager.

This is useful if you plan to use a so-called *mezzanine codec* (sometimes called a *house codec*). This means all media is converted to one codec (and usually one format) before being stored on a media server or edited. These codecs are usually easier for editing systems to play back than the original in-camera codecs, as well as being high quality, maintaining the quality of the original media. These codecs don’t add quality but do help maintain it.

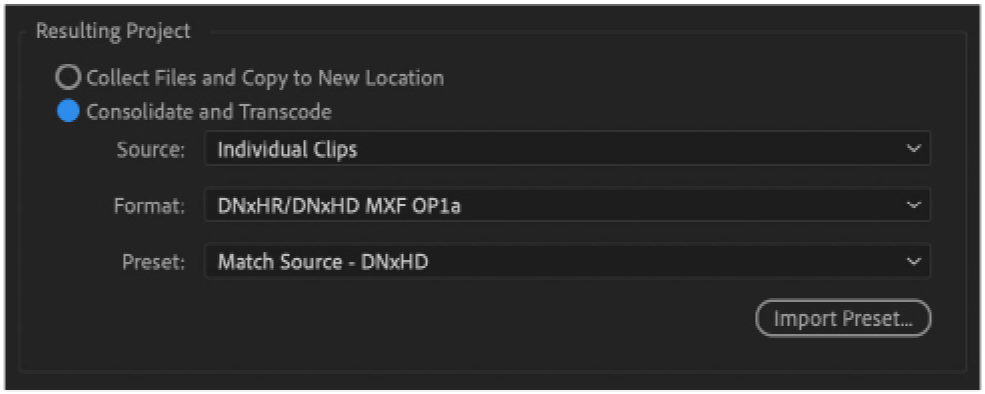
To create copies of *all* your media, deselect Exclude Unused Clips. Otherwise, the options are similar to those you’d choose when creating a trimmed project.

Creating a trimmed project

To create a new trimmed project file with new media files, including only the parts of clips used in your selected sequences, do the following:

1. Choose File > Project Manager.
2. Select the sequence or sequences you want to include in the new project.

3. Select Consolidate And Transcode.
4. From the Source menu, choose one of the following options:



Resulting Project

○ Collect Files and Copy to New Location

● Consolidate and Transcode

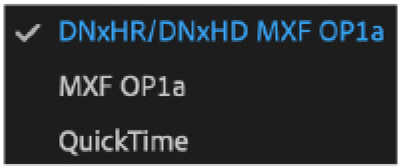
Source: Individual Clips

Format: DNxHR/DNxHD MXF OP1a

Preset: Match Source - DNxHD

- **Sequence:** If clips in the selected sequence (or sequences) match the sequence settings (frame size, frame rate, and so on), the newly created media files will be formatted to match the sequence they are used in. If they don’t match, the media files are copied instead to minimize format conversion.
- **Individual Clips:** The newly created clips will match their original frame size and format (though it is possible you will be changing the codec). It’s likely you will generally choose this option to maintain the maximum quality of your footage by minimizing conversion.
- **Preset:** This allows you to specify a new format using the Preset menu; many choices are available.

5. Use the Format menu to choose one of the following options:



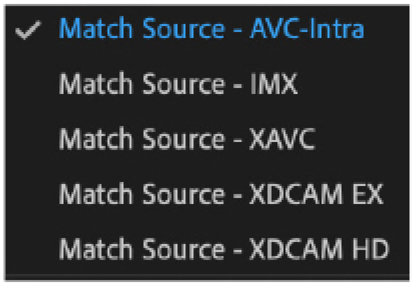
- **DNxHR/DNxHD MXF OP1a:** This is an MXF file type with DNxHR/DNxHD preselected as the codec. DNxHR and DNxHD are the preferred codecs for Avid Media Composer, but playback performance is also excellent in Premiere Pro.
- **MXF OP1a:** This selects an MXF file type with a range of other codec options in the Preset menu.

- **QuickTime:** This selects a QuickTime MOV file type, giving access to the Apple ProRes codec in the Preset menu.

  ▶ Tip

  Not every codec supports an alpha channel. The QuickTime format allows you to use Apple ProRes 4444, which includes alpha.

6. Choose the codec you prefer from the Preset menu or click to import a preset. You can create a transcoding preset in Adobe Media Encoder, export it as a file, and import it here. For more information about codecs and export options, see Lesson 16, “Exporting frames, clips, and sequences.”



7. Select Exclude Unused Clips.
8. Add some handles. The default is one second on each end of the clips used in your sequences. Consider adding more if you’d like to have more flexibility to trim and adjust your edits in the new project (the maximum number of frames is 999).

   ▶ Tip

   Adding 5 or 10 seconds of media at each end of the clip will do no harm; your media files will be a little larger, but you’ll have even more flexibility to re-edit your sequence later.

9. Decide if you want to rename your media files to match your clip names. Generally, it’s better to leave your media files with the original names. If you’re producing a trimmed project to share with another editor, however, renaming the media files might help that editor to identify them.
10. Click Browse, and choose a location for your new project file.

11. Click Calculate to have Premiere Pro estimate the new total size of your project, based on your selections. Then, click OK to close the dialog box and create the new project and associated media files.

The benefit of creating a newly transcoded, trimmed project is that you no longer have unwanted media files filling up your hard drive. It's a convenient way to transfer your project to a new location using the minimum storage space, and it's great for archiving.

When you create your trimmed project, Premiere Pro will not delete your original files automatically. Just in case you selected the wrong items, you can always go back and check before deleting the files manually.

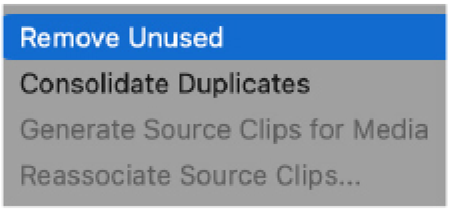
Be warned though—once your unused media files are deleted, they're gone! Be sure that you have a backup of your unused media or at least double-check that you definitely do not want the unused media before you create a trimmed project.

Performing final project management steps

Before archiving a project, there are some steps you may want to take to tidy up and re-organize your media and project contents. None of these steps is required, but they can make life easier if you need to work on a project again at a later date.

Removing unused clips

In the Edit menu, the Remove Unused command will remove any clips not currently used in any sequences. This can result in empty bins because they are not affected by this workflow.



This command will not have any effect on your media files, so if you intend to move your project to another editing system, you may find it more efficient to use the Project Manager to create a new project.

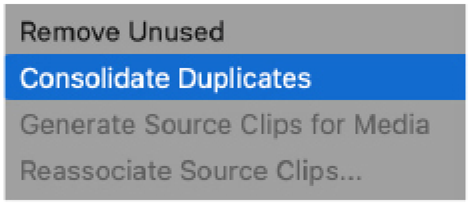
Removing unused clips is useful when working collaboratively with other editors using shared storage.

By saving a copy of the project file in which you have deleted all but the one sequence you'd like to share, you can remove the unused clips and then share the project file with another editor. This will make it easier for them to locate just the clips that are used in that sequence.

Consolidating duplicates

Another approach to reducing the number of unnecessary clips in a project is to merge duplicated clips into a single clip. This is helpful if you have imported multiple sequences from other projects, with duplicate media. You may discover you have lots of copies of the same clips.

To automatically identify which clips are duplicates and merge them, choose Edit > Consolidate Duplicates.



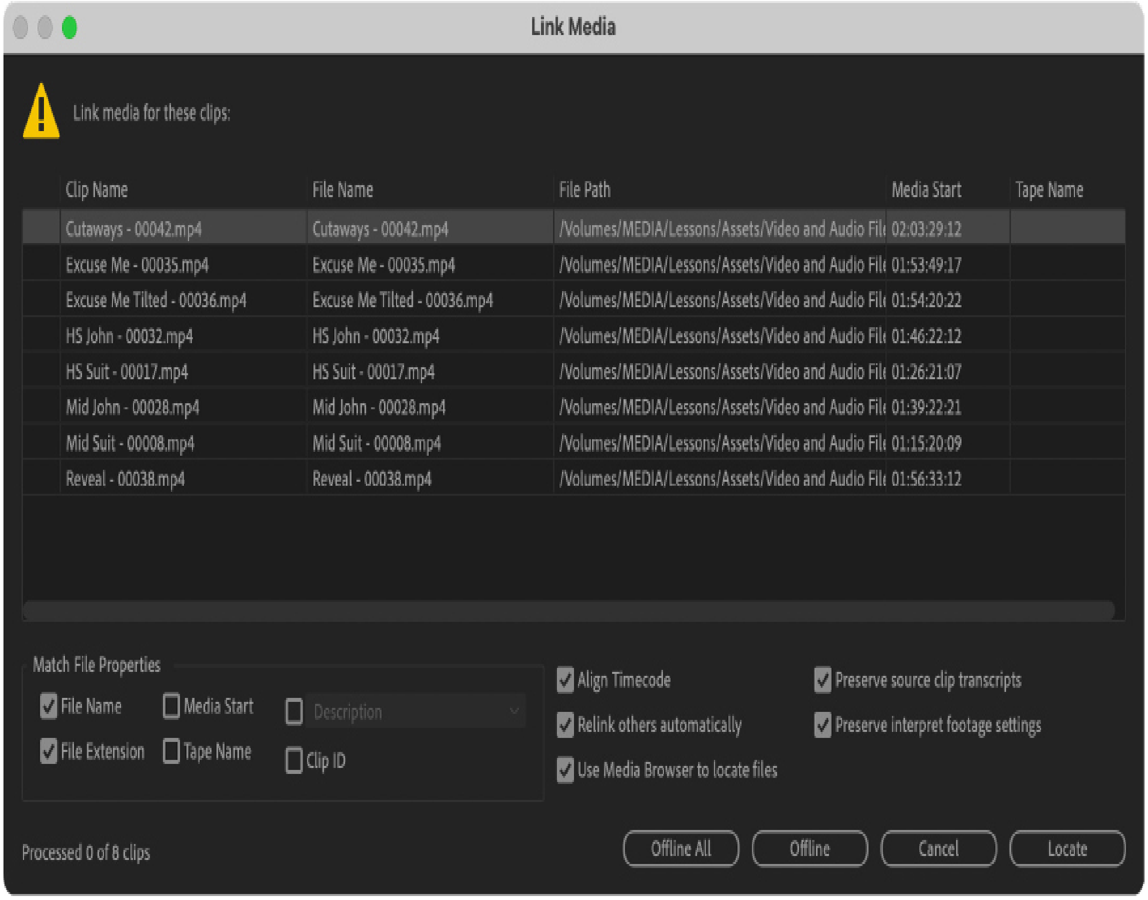
If you have added information like log notes or a description to two copies of a clip, the information is merged into the new clip, unless it conflicts, in which case the clip is not merged and the two separate instances will remain.

This is a great way to clean up a project. Where multiple copies of the same clip are incorporated into one or more sequences, those sequence instances are all automatically replaced with the single consolidated version of the clip.

Using the Link Media dialog box and the Locate command

The Link Media dialog box gives you straightforward options for reconnecting the clips in your bin with the media files on your storage drive.

The dialog box appears automatically if you open a project with clips that have become unlinked from their media files, perhaps because the project file or media has moved.



Link media for these clips:

Clip Name	File Name	File Path	Media Start	Tape Name
Cutaways - 00042.mp4	Cutaways - 00042.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	02:03:29:12	
Excuse Me - 00035.mp4	Excuse Me - 00035.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:53:49:17	
Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4	Excuse Me Tilted - 00036.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:54:20:22	
HS John - 00032.mp4	HS John - 00032.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:46:22:12	
HS Suit - 00017.mp4	HS Suit - 00017.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:26:21:07	
Mid John - 00028.mp4	Mid John - 00028.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:39:22:21	
Mid Suit - 00008.mp4	Mid Suit - 00008.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:15:20:09	
Reveal - 00038.mp4	Reveal - 00038.mp4	/Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Fil	01:56:33:12	

Match File Properties

☑ File Name ☐ Media Start ☐ Description

☑ File Extension ☐ Tape Name ☐ Clip ID

☑ Align Timecode

☑ Relink others automatically

☑ Use Media Browser to locate files

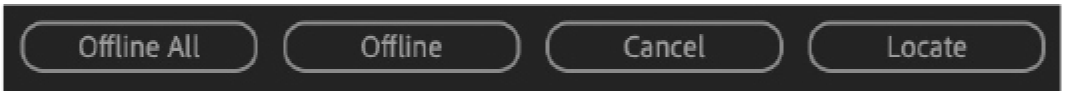
☑ Preserve source clip transcripts

☑ Preserve interpret footage settings

Processed 0 of 8 clips

The default options work well, but if you’re relinking to different file types or using a more complex system to organize your media files, you may want to enable or disable some of the options for file matching.

At the lower-right corner of the Link Media dialog box, you’ll find a series of buttons.

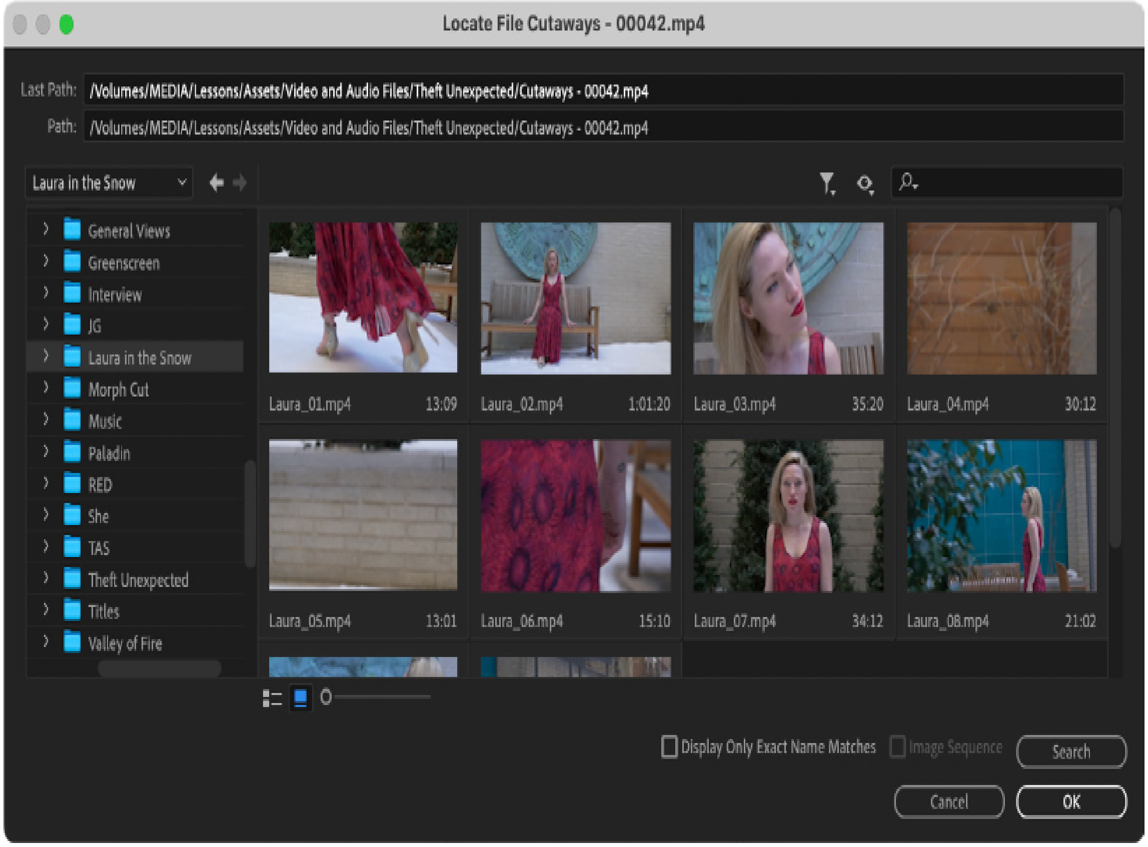


- **Offline All:** Premiere Pro will keep all the offline clips in the project and won’t prompt you to relink them (you can still start the relinking process manually).
- **Offline:** Premiere Pro will keep the selected offline clip (highlighted in the list) in the project and won’t prompt you to relink it. The next clip on the list will be highlighted, ready for you to make a selection.
- **Cancel:** Closes this dialog box. All the offline clips will remain offline, and the next time you open the project this dialog box will appear again.
- **Locate:** If you would like to relink clips, choose options to define the search settings, including File Name or File Extension (or both), and click Locate. The Locate [filename] dialog box appears, and you can search for your missing media.

  By default, Media Browser is used to locate and preview clips.

▶ Tip

If you’ve modified the way Premiere Pro interprets media, select Preserve Interpret Footage Settings to apply the same settings to the newly linked media files.


Locate File Cutaways - 00042.mp4
Laura in the Snow
General Views
Greenscreen
Interview
JG
Laura in the Snow
Morph Cut
Music
Paladin
RED
She
TAS
Theft Unexpected
Titles
Valley of Fire
Laura_01.mp4 13:09
Laura_02.mp4 1:01:20
Laura_03.mp4 35:20
Laura_04.mp4 30:12
Laura_05.mp4 13:01
Laura_06.mp4 15:10
Laura_07.mp4 34:12
Laura_08.mp4 21:02
Search
Cancel
OK

Last Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Theft Unexpected/Cutaways - 00042.mp4

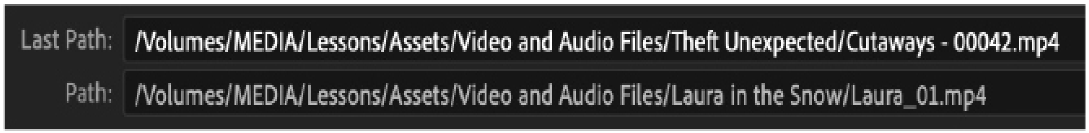
Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Theft Unexpected/Cutaways - 00042.mp4

☐ Display Only Exact Name Matches ☐ Image Sequence

The Locate File dialog box gives you a quick, easy way to locate your missing media. The simplest way to find a file is as follows:

1. Review the Last Path information as a guide to locating the file. Often the storage drive will have changed, but the path within the drive will be the same. You can use this information to manually browse and search for a containing folder.

   The Path information displayed below the Last Path field is the currently selected storage location and media file.

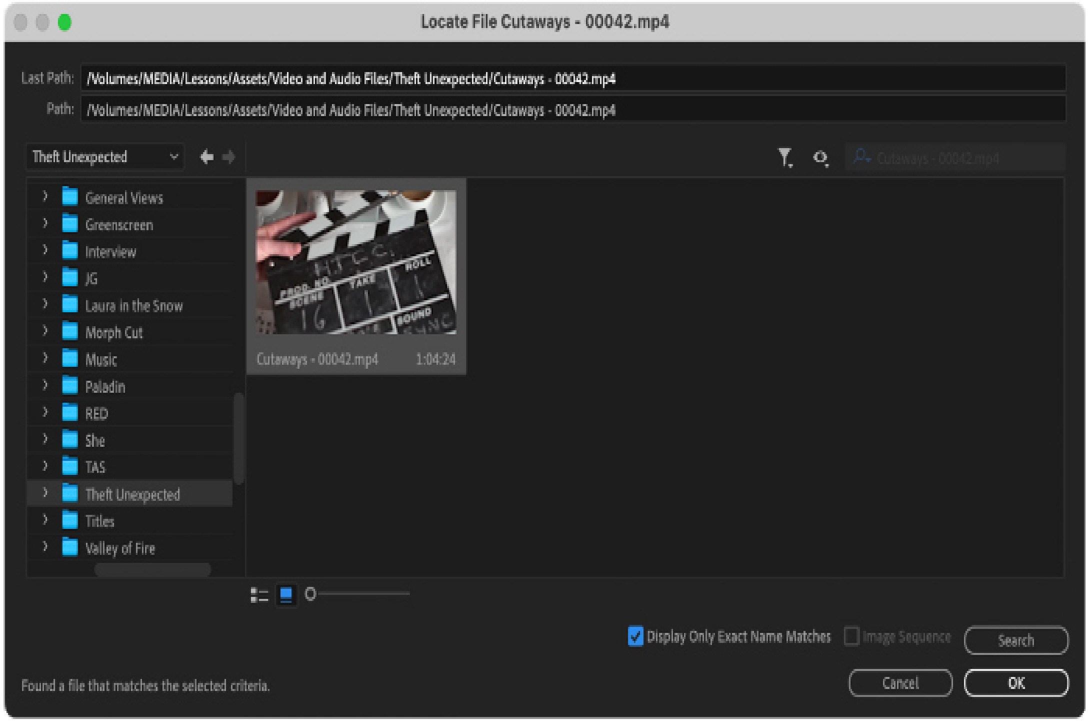
   Last Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Theft Unexpected/Cutaways - 00042.mp4

   Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Laura in the Snow/Laura_01.mp4

2. In the folder browser on the left, select a folder that you think contains the media. Don’t worry about choosing the subfolder that contains the media. Premiere Pro can search subfolders.

3. Click Search. Premiere Pro will locate a file that matches the selected missing clip.

4. If you select the option Display Only Exact Name Matches, Premiere Pro will hide media files whose names do not match, making it easier to identify which file to select.



Locate File Cutaways - 00042.mp4

Last Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Theft Unexpected/Cutaways - 00042.mp4

Path: /Volumes/MEDIA/Lessons/Assets/Video and Audio Files/Theft Unexpected/Cutaways - 00042.mp4

☑ Display Only Exact Name Matches ☐ Image Sequence

Found a file that matches the selected criteria.

Theft Unexpected
Cutaways - 00042.mp4
General Views
Greenscreen
Interview
JG
Laura in the Snow
Morph Cut
Music
Paladin
RED
She
TAS
Theft Unexpected
Titles
Valley of Fire
Cutaways - 00042.mp4
1:04:24
Search
Cancel
OK

5. Confirm the correct file is selected, and click OK.

When you click OK, Premiere Pro will automatically search for other missing media files in the same location. Other locations are searched, relative to the selected folder based on the last known locations for the other media files. This automation can dramatically speed up the process of relinking missing media files. In most cases, you will find that you need to locate only one clip, and the rest of the missing media will be relinked automatically.

Importing projects

As well as importing many kinds of media files, Premiere Pro can import sequences and clips from other existing projects.

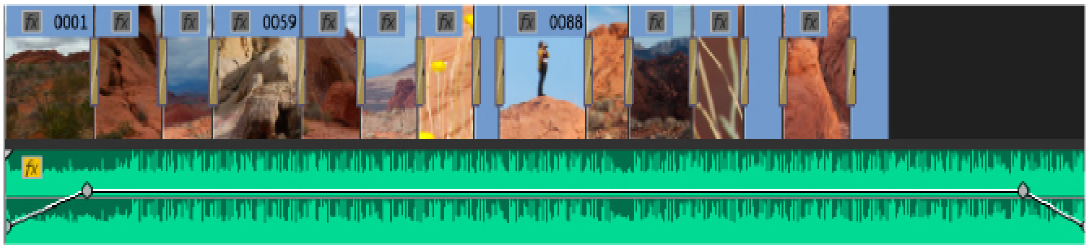
You can import a Premiere Pro project file just as you would import a media file, giving access to the project contents. You can also browse in a project file using the Media Browser.

Let’s explore both options.

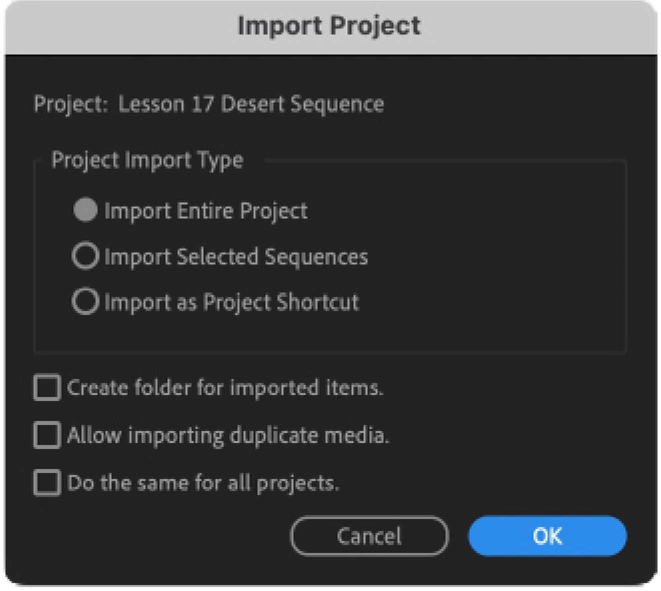
1. Choose File > Close Project, and save changes if necessary. Open the project Lesson 17 Desert Sequence.prproj in the Lessons folder.

   When the project opens, existing imported clips will be updated, linking to the copy of the media on your computer. Check that the sequence plays without any offline media.

   This is a montage sequence, showing images of a desert. We’ll take clips from this project.

2. Save and close the project. This updates the project file with links to the media you copied into your local storage in its current location.
3. Click the Lesson 17 Working project in the Premiere Pro Home screen to open the project.
4. Use any method you prefer to import a new media file to open the Import dialog box. File > Import will work.
5. Select the file called Lesson 17 Desert Sequence.prproj in the Lessons folder, and click Import. The Import Project dialog box appears.


Import Project

Project: Lesson 17 Desert Sequence

Project Import Type

● Import Entire Project

○ Import Selected Sequences

○ Import as Project Shortcut

☐ Create folder for imported items.

☐ Allow importing duplicate media.

☐ Do the same for all projects.

- **Import Entire Project:** This imports every sequence and clip in the project you're importing.
- **Import Selected Sequences:** Choose the specific sequence, or multiple sequences, you'd like to import. Only clips used in selected sequences will be imported. Hold Command (macOS) or Ctrl (Windows) to select multiple sequences to import.
- **Import As Project Shortcut:** This adds an alias (shortcut) linked to the imported project file to the current Project panel. This is a useful option if you intend to use multiple project files to store organized clips and sequences.
- **Create Folder For Imported Items:** This creates a bin in the Project panel for the clips and sequences you import rather than adding them to the main Project panel, which is usually a good idea as it avoids potentially mixing them up with existing items.
- **Allow Importing Duplicate Media:** If you import clips that link to media files you have already imported, by default Premiere Pro will consolidate the two clips into one. If you would prefer to have two copies of the clip to help stay organized, select this option.
- **Do The Same For All Projects:** Select this option to apply the same rules to the import of multiple project files in a single step. This is particularly useful when importing projects as shared project aliases

because the process is fast and gives access to the contents of those project files in the future.

6. For now, click Cancel. Let’s try another method.

Importing from projects with the Media Browser

You can import a whole project or individual clips and sequences using the Media Browser by browsing to a project file and opening it as if it were a folder.

Using the Media Browser to access the contents of project files this way allows you to browse the entire contents of the project, not just select sequences.

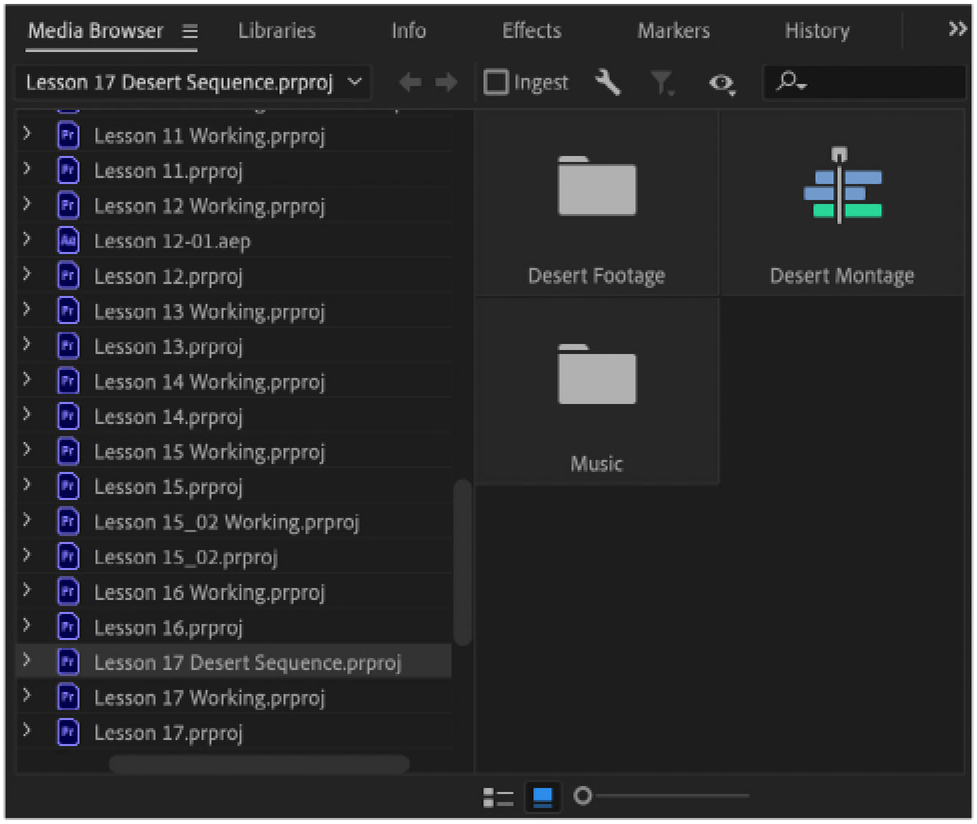
You can browse inside bins, select clips to import, and even view the contents of sequences.

When you want to import an item (including a sequence), drag it into your current project file, or right-click it and choose Import.

The beauty of this method is that though you’re browsing a “live” current version of the other project file, the contents are locked while browsing. This prevents any unintended changes being made to the other project.

Let’s try this.

1. In the Media Browser, browse to the Lessons folder and then double-click Lesson 17 Desert Sequence.prproj to browse inside the project.


Media Browser
Libraries
Info
Effects
Markers
History
Lesson 17 Desert Sequence.prproj
Ingest
Lesson 11 Working.prproj
Lesson 11.prproj
Lesson 12 Working.prproj
Lesson 12-01.aep
Lesson 12.prproj
Lesson 13 Working.prproj
Lesson 13.prproj
Lesson 14 Working.prproj
Lesson 14.prproj
Lesson 15 Working.prproj
Lesson 15.prproj
Lesson 15_02 Working.prproj
Lesson 15_02.prproj
Lesson 16 Working.prproj
Lesson 16.prproj
Lesson 17 Desert Sequence.prproj
Lesson 17 Working.prproj
Lesson 17.prproj
Desert Footage
Desert Montage
Music

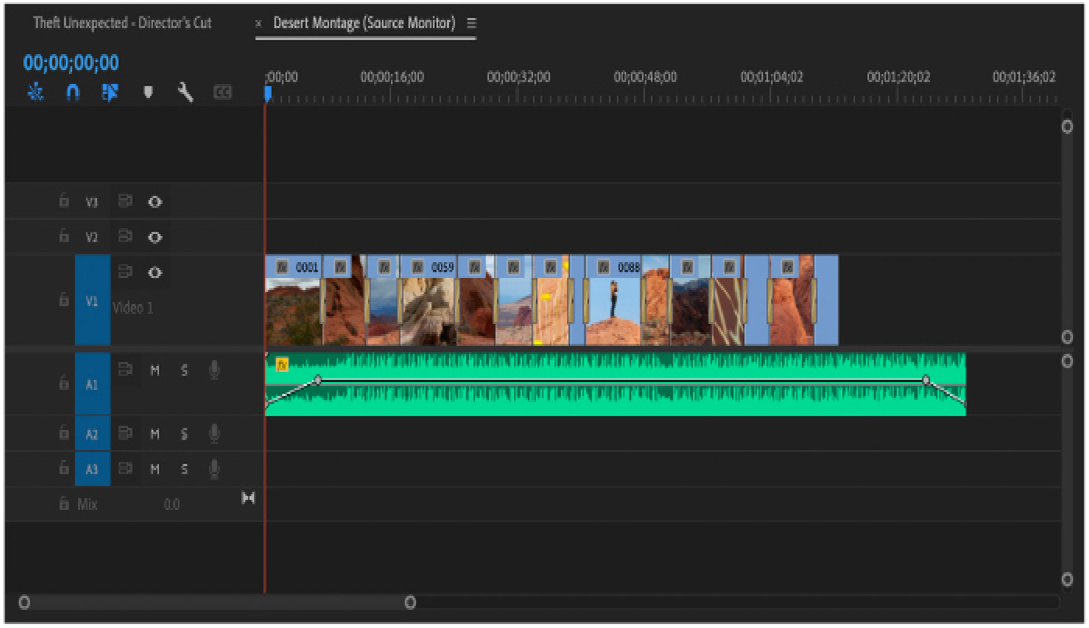
2. Double-click the Desert Montage sequence.

● Note

If the sequence does not automatically appear in the Timeline panel, click into the panel to make it active.

The sequence opens in the Source Monitor, just as you would expect a clip to—this is similar to dragging a sequence from the Project panel into the Source Monitor.

The sequence also opens in a new read-only Timeline panel; you can view the sequence, but you can't make changes to it.


Theft Unexpected - Director's Cut
Desert Montage (Source Monitor)
00;00;00;00
;00;00
00;00;16;00
00;00;32;00
00;00;48;00
00;01;04;02
00;01;20;02
00;01;36;02
V3
V2
V1
Video 1
0001
0059
0088
A1
A2
A3
M
S
Mix
0.0

In the Timeline panel, the sequence name includes *(Source Monitor)*, and the vertical line of the playhead is red to remind you that this is not a current project sequence and that the contents of the project file you are browsing in are protected.

You can import a whole sequence from the Media Browser by right-clicking it and choosing Import.

If you position the read-only Timeline panel separately to your current sequence Timeline panel (rather than keeping them grouped), you can drag clips directly from the read-only source sequence to your current project sequence. You can even drag clips from the read-only Source Monitor Timeline panel into the current Project panel.

Opening multiple projects rather than browsing them

Earlier you opened two projects at once, allowing you to access the contents of both projects and copy or move clips and sequences between them.

Unlike browsing safely inside a project via the Media Browser where projects are locked, when you fully open multiple projects, they are all editable. This means you'll want to be careful not to make unwanted changes, particularly if you're opening someone else's project using shared network-based storage to copy some contents from it. Changes made to open projects are saved in the project file.

Accepting that, opening multiple projects is fast and flexible, so provided you check the current project filename at the top of the Premiere Pro interface regularly, you’ll find you can quickly switch between the bins and Timeline panels of the various sequences you open.

Copying or moving sequences and clips between open projects is the same as working with multiple bins in the Project panel.

Managing collaboration

The option to import other projects, and to open multiple projects, presents novel workflows and opportunities for collaboration. You could, for example, share work on different parts of a program between different editors, all using the same media assets. Then, one editor could import all the other projects to combine them into a completed sequence.

Project files are small—often small enough to email. This means editors are able to share updated project files, provided that each editor has a copy of the same media files. You can use local-folder file-sharing services to update a shared project file that links to duplicated copies of local media files.

▶ Tip

> Although they are beyond the scope of this book, check out Team Projects and Pro Productions at *helpx.adobe.com* for more advanced collaborative project-sharing workflows.

You can add markers with comments to sequences. When updating a sequence, consider adding a marker to record changes for your collaborators.

By default, Premiere Pro does not lock project files when they are in use. This means two people sharing a project file via network-based storage can access the same project file at the same time. This could be creatively dangerous!

While working in a project file, you’re actually using a virtual copy. When you save, that copy replaces the original file. Now imagine a scenario where two people have opened the same original file.

As one person saves the project file, it updates, with their virtual copy overwriting the original. As the next person saves the file, it updates again, replaced with a different virtual copy. Every time the file is saved, a different virtual copy replaces changes made by the other editor—the last editor to save the project permanently replaces the project file. If you intend to collaborate, it’s usually best to work on separate project files or manage access to one project file carefully.

There are several dedicated media server systems made by third parties that help you to collaborate using shared media files. These allow you to store and manage your media in a way that is accessible by multiple editors at the same time.

Keep these questions in mind:

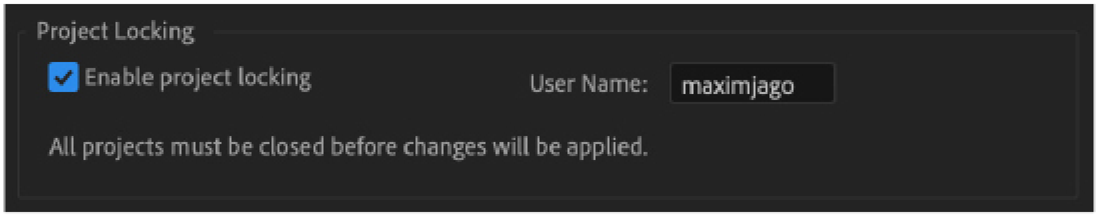
- Who has the latest version of the edited sequence?
- Where are the media files stored?

As long as you have clear answers to these questions, you should be able to collaborate and share creative work using Premiere Pro.

Project locking

At the lower-left corner of the Project panel, you’ll see a small green icon ✎ indicating that the project is writable. Clicking the icon locks the project 🔒. By default, the project-locking feature is not enabled in the Premiere Pro preferences, so clicking will have no effect.

You can enable support for project locking (preventing changes) in Premiere Pro > Settings > Collaboration (macOS) or Edit > Preferences > Collaboration (Windows).


Project Locking

☑ Enable project locking

User Name: maximjago

All projects must be closed before changes will be applied.

All editors that are collaborating must enable this option for project locking to work. If you ever need to ignore the locked status of a project, you can deselect Project Locking in the preferences.

Saving a selection as a project

Premiere Pro allows you to export a selection of clips and sequences as a new separate Premiere Pro project. This streamlined project file makes collaboration easier because it allows you to focus on precisely the content that matters.

To export a selection as a Premiere Pro project, select items in the Project panel, and choose File > Export > Selection As Premiere Project. Choose a name and location for the new project file, and click Save.

This workflow is a little different than using the Project Manager to create a new project because the new project file will link to your existing media files—no new media files are created.

Using the Libraries panel

The Libraries panel gives you direct access to stock assets, graphics, Motion Graphics Templates, and LUTS created elsewhere and shared via Creative Cloud, inside Premiere Pro.

Premiere Pro works well with file sharing services too. Only the file path (location) and filename matter to Premiere Pro for the purposes of linking clips and media, so provided your file-sharing service stores files locally or at an accessible network storage location, you should find Premiere Pro works as usual.

Network-based storage is sometimes too slow for media file playback, so check the sustained speed of your network before counting on it for video editing.

Managing your storage

Once you’ve used the Project Manager to create a new copy of your project or you have completed your project and finished with its media, you’ll want to clean up your drives. Video files are *big*. Even with large storage drives, you’ll quickly need to think about which files you want to keep and which ones you want to discard. You might want to move your project media to slower, larger, more robust long-term archive storage to keep as much fast media storage available as possible for current projects.

Unless you enable the Ingest Copy option, Premiere Pro creates a link to the file wherever it is on your computer. To make it easier to remove unwanted media when you’ve finished a project, consider putting all of your media in a single location before importing. By organizing media files before you import them, you’ll find it easier to remove unwanted content at the end of the creative process—everything will be conveniently located in one place.

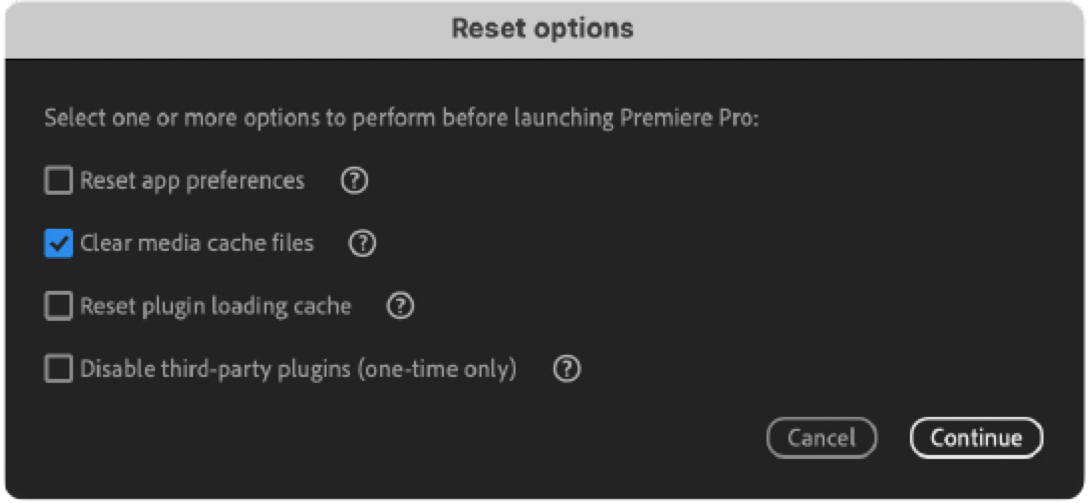
Deleting clips from a project, or even deleting the project file, will not delete media files. You’ll also have to account for proxy files if you have used them. It’s possible your proxy files will be stored in a different location from your full-resolution original media.

Removing cache and preview files

The Premiere Pro media cache uses storage space when you import new media files to your projects and they are analyzed. Also, each time you render effects, Premiere Pro creates preview files.

To remove these files and reclaim some space on your hard drive, there are several options.

- While Premiere Pro is starting up, hold any modifier key: Shift, Option, or Command (macOS) or Shift, Alt or Ctrl (Windows). The Reset Options dialog will appear. Select Clear Media Cache Files and click Continue.



Reset options

Select one or more options to perform before launching Premiere Pro:

☐ Reset app preferences

☑ Clear media cache files

☐ Reset plugin loading cache

☐ Disable third-party plugins (one-time only)

- Open the Premiere Pro Preferences dialog box and select Media Cache; then click Delete in the Media Cache Files section. This will remove cache files that are no longer referenced by a project.

  Note that even cache files associated with old projects that you haven't opened recently will not be deleted as they are still treated as in use.

  Media cache files for open projects will not be deleted. If you want to remove all media cache files, including those that are associated with projects (and your currently open projects), first restart Premiere Pro. Before opening a project, open the Premiere Pro Preferences dialog box and select Media Cache; then click Delete in the Media Cache Files section.

- You can delete render files associated with your current sequence by choosing Sequence > Delete Render Files.

- Locate your Preview Files folder by checking under File > Project Settings > Scratch Disks. Then, manually delete the folder and its contents using Finder (macOS) or Windows Explorer (Windows).

Consider carefully when choosing the location of the media cache and your project preview files. The total size of these files can be significant, and the speed of the drive will impact playback performance in Premiere Pro.

Review questions

1 Why would you choose to make a clip offline?

2 Why would you choose to include handles when creating a trimmed project with the Project Manager?

3 Why would you choose the Project Manager option called Collect Files And Copy To New Location?

4 What does the Remove Unused option in the Edit menu achieve?

5 How can you import a sequence from another Premiere Pro project?

6 Will the Project Manager collect dynamically linked assets, such as After Effects compositions?

Review answers

1 If you’re working with low-resolution copies of your media files, you’ll want to make your clips offline so you can reimport them at full resolution.

2 Trimmed projects include only the parts of your clips used in sequences. To give yourself the flexibility to adjust your edit points later, add handles; 30-frame handles would actually add 60 frames to the total duration of each clip because Premiere Pro adds one handle at the beginning and one at the end.

3 If you have imported media files from lots of different locations on your computer, it can be difficult to find everything and stay organized. By using the Project Manager to collect all the media files into one location, you’ll make it easier to manage your project media files.

4 When you choose Remove Unused, Premiere Pro removes any clips from your project that are not used in any sequences. No media files are deleted.

5 Import the project file as you would import any media file. Premiere Pro will invite you to import the entire project or selected sequences. You can also browse inside project files using the Media Browser or even simply open the other project file to copy and paste between the two projects.

6 The Project Manager does not collect dynamically linked assets when creating a new project. For this reason, it’s a good idea to create any new dynamically linked projects in the same location as your project folder or in a dedicated folder for your project. That way, it’s easier to manually locate and copy the assets for the new project.